

A BASIC
ENGLISH
GRAMMAR
with answers

Part-2

BY
SAYA U THEIN LWIN

A Basic
**ENGLISH
GRAMMAR**
With Answers

by **SAYA U THEIN LWIN**
Cover Design by San Toe



A Basic
**ENGLISH
GRAMMAR**
With Answer

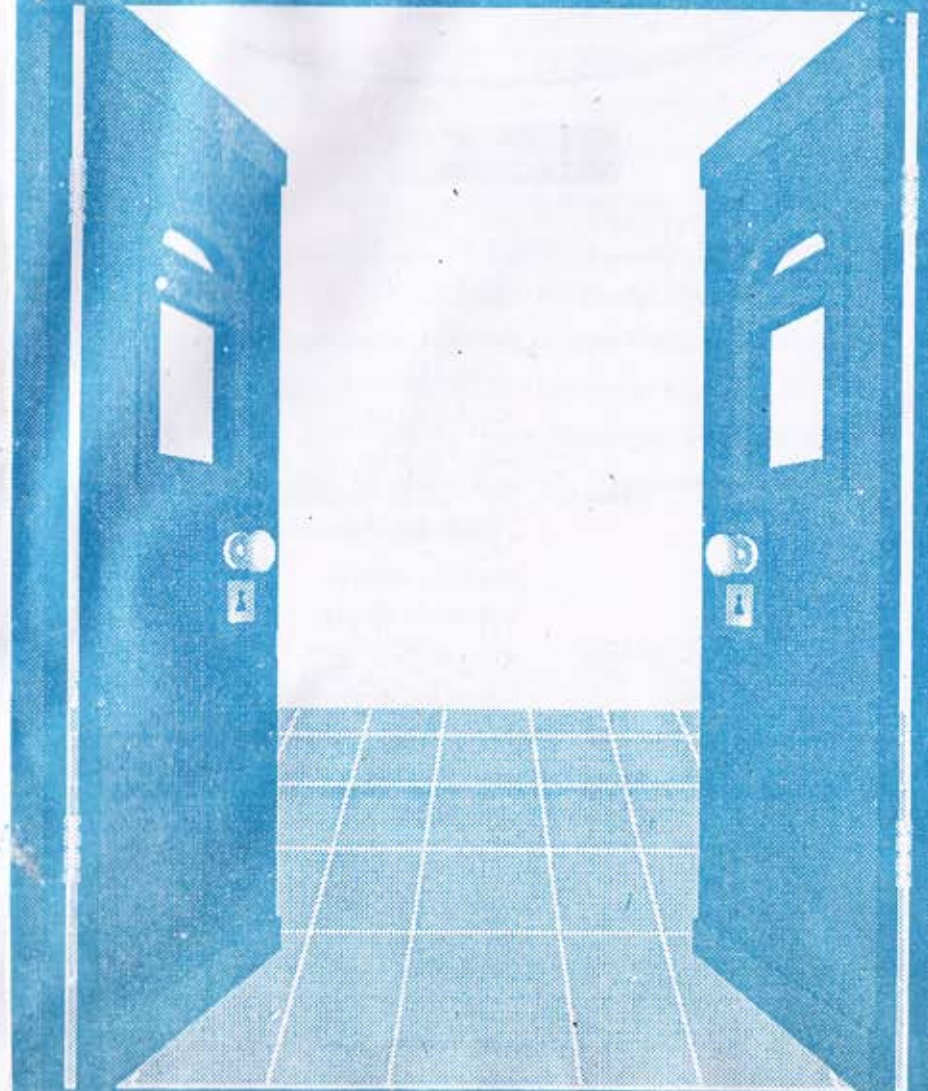
SAYA U THEIN LWIN

A Basic

ENGLISH GRAMMAR

With Answers

by SAYA U THEIN LWIN



No. 263, Selkkantha Street, Yangon. Tel: (951) 90515

ဒို့တာဝန် အရေးသုံးပါး

| | |
|----------------------------------|----------|
| ပြည်ထောင်စု မပြိုကွဲရေး | ဒို့အရေး |
| တိုင်းရင်းသားစည်းလုံးညီညွတ်ရေး | ဒို့အရေး |
| အချုပ်အခြာအာဏာ တည်တံ့ခိုင်မြဲရေး | ဒို့အရေး |

ပုံနှိပ်မှတ်တမ်း

- စာမူခွင့်ပြုချက် - ၉၀၁/၂၀၀၀ (၁၁)
- စာမူခွင့်ပြုချက် - ၈၇၁/၂၀၀၀ (၁၁)
- ဖျက်နှာမုံးသရုပ်ဖော် - ပန်းချီပုံတိုး
- ထုတ်ဝေသူ - ဦးတင်ရှိန် (၀၃၇၆၃)
- စနိုးရောင်ရှိန်စာပေ
- အမှတ် ၁၇၇၊ မေခလမ်း၊
- ဝေဘာပိမြို့သစ်
- ပုံနှိပ်သူ - ဦးဝင်းလွင် (မြ - ၀၅၃၆၆)
- ရွှေဟင်္သာပုံနှိပ်တိုက်
- အမှတ်(၇)၊ ရွှေလမ်း၊
- ပုလွန်တောင်၊ ရန်ကုန်။
- ပုံနှိပ်ခြင်း - စတုတ္ထအကြိမ်
- (၂၀၀၀၊ ဇူလိုင်လ)
- စာအုပ်ချုပ် - စိန်ကြည် (ဗိုလ်အောင်ကျော်)
- အုပ်ရေး - ၅၀၀
- ဖြန့်ချိရေး - ရွှေမာန် စာပေ
- အမှတ် ၂၆၃၊ ပ-ထပ်၊ ဆိပ်ကမ်းသာလမ်း၊
- ကျောက်တံတား၊ ရန်ကုန်။
- ဖုန်း - ၇၀၉၁၉၁



FOREWORD

In our high school days, English grammar was taught through Wren and Martin's and Nesfield's grammar books. Instead of trying to understand conceptually, most of us commit everything into memory, and thus our knowledge of English grammar is shallow, superficial, and temporary.

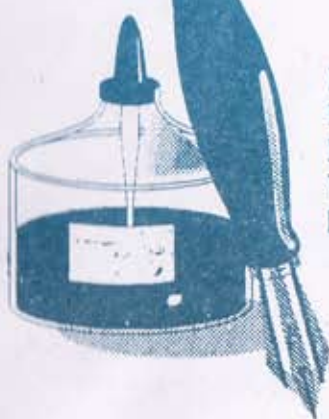
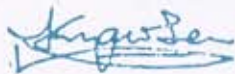
However, upon examining "A Basic English Grammar", by U Thein Lwin, it dawned upon me how nice it is to have an English grammar book written by a Myanmar for Myanmar students. Thus I sincerely hope that this book will be of great help to those Myanmar, both young and old, who like to study English grammar conceptually, meaningfully and efficiently."

KYAW SEIN
 M.A.(Ygn) Ph.D.(Columbia)
 Retired Rector
 Yangon / Mandalay Universities
 Dated 27 Mar, 1990.

FOREWORD

In the first edition of Saya U Thein Lwin's "A Basic English Grammar", I have written "It dawned upon me how nice it is to have an English grammar book written by a Myanmar for Myanmar students. Thus I sincerely hope that this book will be of great help to those Myanmar, both young and old, who like to study English grammar conceptually, meaningfully and efficiently."

For this present edition, I stand by the above mentioned comment without making a single change.



KYAW SEIN
M.A.(Ygn) Ph.D.(Columbia)
Retired Rector
Yangon / Mandalay Universities.
Dated 27 Sep, 1995.

YANGON ARTS & SCIENCE UNIVERSITY THE OPINION OF DAW E.J. KANGYI PROFESSOR OF ENGLISH (Retired)

A good knowledge of the grammar of a language is important for the understanding and correct and effective use of that language, especially if it differs in grammatical structures and usage from those of the user's mother tongue. I am sure that U THEIN LWIN's *A Basic English Grammar* will be of great help to students of English.



DAW E.J. KANGYI
Professor (Retired)
Department of English
University of Yangon
Yangon.

FOREWORD

A Basic English Grammar written by Saya U Thein Lwin is really a demanded book for the students. This book is especially useful for the basic, high school and university students who are studying English throughout their studies.

The author is quite competent in teaching English so he tries his best to give his experience and knowledge of grammar in his book. I surely hope that teachers, parents and guardians will find this book very useful in teaching and guiding their children in the teaching of this subject, English. Thus this book will be of great advantage for the young people as well as the adults who are interested in English grammar.



DAW KHIN LAT
Professor
Department of Psychology
Dagon University.
Yangon
25-9-95.

စာရေးသူ၏ အမှာ

အင်္ဂလိပ်စာ တတ်မြောက်လိုသူများ၊ လေ့လာလိုက်စားသူများအနေဖြင့်၊ "အင်္ဂလိပ်သဒ္ဒါ" ကို သိကျွမ်းရန် အထူးလိုအပ်လှပါသည်။ "သဒ္ဒါမတတ် စာမတတ်" ဟု ပြောစမှတ်ပင် ပြုကြပါသည်။

"သဒ္ဒါ" ဟူသည်၊ ဘာသာရပ်တစ်ခု၏ အရင်းခံအသံ၊ "သံရင်း" (Phonemes) မှ အစပြုသည်။ ထို သံရင်းမှ "ရုပ်ရင်း" (Morphemes) များဖြစ်လာအောင်၊ ရုပ်ရင်း မှ တစ်ဆင့် "စကားလုံး" (Words) များဖြစ်လာအောင်၊ စကားလုံးတို့မှတစ်ဆင့်၊ "ပုဒ်" (Phrases) များဖြစ်လာအောင် ပုဒ်တို့မှတစ်ဆင့်၊ "ဝါကျခွဲ" (Clauses) များ ဖြစ်လာ အောင် ဝါကျခွဲတို့မှတစ်ဆင့်၊ "ဝါကျ" (Sentences) များဖြစ်လာအောင် ဆောက်တည် သည့် အဆင့်ဆင့်သော စည်းကမ်းများဖြစ်သည်ဟု ပညာရှင်အသီးသီးက ဖွင့်ဆိုခဲ့ကြ သည်။

ဤစာအုပ်တွင် A B C ရေးနည်း အခြေခံမှစ၍ သိသင့် သိထိုက်သည့် သင်ခန်းစာများ၊ လေ့ကျင့်ခန်းများကို တစ်ဆင့်ပြီးတစ်ဆင့် စီစဉ်ထားပါသည်။ သိသင့် သိထိုက်သည့် သဒ္ဒါစည်းကမ်းများကို ပြည့်စုံလင်စွာ ဖော်ပြထားသော်လည်း မလိုအပ် ဟု ယူဆသည့်အပိုင်းများကို ချန်လှပ်ထားပါသည်။

သင်ခန်းစာ တစ်ခုချင်းတွင် ရှေ့ပိုင်းရှင်းလင်းချက်များသည် အခြေခံအဆင့် လေ့လာသူများအတွက် ဖြစ်ပါသည်။ နောက်ပိုင်း လေ့ကျင့်ခန်းများသည် အဆင့်မြင့် လေ့လာသူများအတွက် ဖြစ်ပါသည်။ ထို့ထက်ပို၍ လေ့လာလိုသူများအတွက်လည်း "ကျမ်းအညွှန်း" များကို စာမျက်နှာနံပါတ်နှင့်တကွ ဖော်ပြပေးထားပါသည်။

ပထမနှင့် ဒုတိယအကြိမ် ပုံနှိပ်စဉ်က ပုံနှိပ်အမှားများကို အမှားစင်အောင် တတ်နိုင်သမျှ ပြင်ဆင်ထားပါသည်။ ဤစာအုပ်ကို လေ့လာရာတွင် အခြေခံမှစ၍ တစ်ဆင့်ပြီးတစ်ဆင့် လေ့ကျင့်စေချင်ပါသည်။ ဖတ်သင့်သည်ကို ဖတ်၊ မှတ်သင့်သည်ကို မှတ်၊ ကျက်သင့်သည်ကို ကျက်ပြီးမှ လေ့ကျင့်ခန်းများကို ဖြေဆိုသင့်ပါသည်။ နောက်ဆုံး မှ မိမိ၏အဖြေနှင့် ဤစာအုပ်နောက်ဘက်တွင် ဖော်ပြထားသော အဖြေများကို တိုက်ဆိုင် စစ်ဆေးသင့်ပါသည်။ ဤသို့သာ လေ့ကျင့်သွားလျှင် ညံ့ရာမှ တော်၊ တော်ရာမှ ထူးချွန်ပြောင်မြောက်ပြီး၊ အတိုင်းအတာ တစ်ခုအထိ အကျိုးကျေးဇူးရှိလိမ့်မည်ဟု ယုံကြည်ပါသည်။

ဤစာအုပ် ဖြစ်မြောက်ရန်အတွက် အဘက်ဘက်မှ ကူညီခဲ့ကြသူများ အားလုံး ကို အထူးကျေးဇူးတင်ရှိကြောင်း မှတ်တမ်းတင်အပ်ပါသည်။

ဆရာဦးသိန်းလွင်
၁၉၉၅ ခု၊ အောက်တိုဘာလ (၇) ရက်

ဒေါက်တာဦးကျော်စိန်

ပါမောက္ခချုပ် (အငြိမ်းစား)

(ရန်ကုန်တက္ကသိုလ်/မန္တလေးတက္ကသိုလ်)၏ အမှာ

Foreword by Dr. U Kyaw Sein,

Rector (Retired)

Yangon/Mandalay University.

ဒေါ်အိးကျော်ကြီး

ပါမောက္ခ (အငြိမ်းစား)

အင်္ဂလိပ်စာဌာန၊ ရန်ကုန်တက္ကသိုလ်၏ အမှာစာ

Foreword by Daw E.J. Kangyi,

Professor (Retired),

Department of English,

University of Yangon.

ဒေါ်ခင်လတ်

ပါမောက္ခ

(ဒဂုံတက္ကသိုလ်)၏ အမှာ

Daw Khin Lat,

Professor,

Dagon University.

CONTENTS

| Chapter | Page |
|---|------|
| I. THE ALPHABET (ABC) Capital Letters and Small Letters - ပုံနှိပ်စာလုံးအကြီး - ပုံနှိပ်စာလုံးအသေး - လက်ရေးစာလုံးအကြီး - လက်ရေးစာလုံးအသေး - အင်္ဂလိပ်အက္ခရာ စာလုံးအကြီးများရေးနည်း - အင်္ဂလိပ်အက္ခရာ စာလုံးအသေးများရေးနည်း - ပုံနှိပ်စာလုံးအကြီး (စာလုံးစောင်း) - ပုံနှိပ်စာလုံးအသေး (စာလုံးစောင်း) - အင်္ဂလိပ်အက္ခရာစာလုံးများ | 23 |
| II. VOWELS AND CONSONANTS သရများနှင့် ဗျည်းများ - Word, Phrase, Clause, Sentence - Kinds of Sentences | 33 |
| III. THE VERB ကြိယာ - Verb to be, Verb to have, Verb to do | 43 |
| IV. FORMATION OF THE NEGATIVE ငြင်းဆိုဝါကျရေးဖွဲ့နည်း | 57 |
| - Verb to beနှင့် ရေးထားသော ဝါကျများအား ငြင်းဆိုဝါကျပြောင်းနည်း | 59 |
| - Verb to do နှင့် ရေးထားသော ဝါကျများအား ငြင်းဆိုဝါကျပြောင်းနည်း | 60 |
| - Verb to have နှင့် ရေးထားသော ဝါကျများအား ငြင်းဆိုဝါကျပြောင်းနည်း | 62 |
| - Perfect Tense နှင့် ရေးထားသော ဝါကျများအား ငြင်းဆိုဝါကျပြောင်းနည်း | 65 |
| - Will, Shall စသည့် အကူကြိယာများနှင့် ရေးထားသော ဝါကျများအား ငြင်းဆိုဝါကျပြောင်းနည်း | 67 |

CONTENTS

| Chapter | Page |
|---|------|
| - မေးခွန်း၊ ငြင်းဆိုဝါကျများနှင့်ပတ်သက်၍ Some နှင့် Any ၏ အသုံး | 69 |
| V. SHORT FORM NEGATIVE အတိုကောက်၊ အကျဉ်းချုံး၊ ငြင်းဆိုဝါကျပုံစံ | 73 |
| VI. SHORT FORM AFFIRMATIVE အတိုကောက်၊ အကျဉ်းချုံး၊ ရိုးရိုးဝါကျပုံစံ | 77 |
| VII. FORMATION OF THE INTERROGATIVE မေးခွန်းဝါကျရေးဖွဲ့နည်း | 83 |
| - Verb to be နှင့် ရေးထားသော ဝါကျများအား မေးခွန်းဝါကျပြောင်းနည်း | 85 |
| - Verb to do နှင့် ရေးထားသော ဝါကျများအား မေးခွန်းဝါကျပြောင်းနည်း | 86 |
| - Verb to have နှင့် ရေးထားသော ဝါကျများအား မေးခွန်းဝါကျပြောင်းနည်း | 88 |
| - Perfect Tense နှင့် ရေးထားသော ဝါကျများအား မေးခွန်းဝါကျပြောင်းနည်း | 91 |
| - Will, Shall စသော အကူကြိယာများနှင့် ရေးထားသော ဝါကျများအား မေးခွန်းဝါကျပြောင်းနည်း | 92 |
| - Interrogative - Negative Questions ငြင်းဆိုဝါကျများအား မေးခွန်းဝါကျပြောင်းနည်း | 93 |
| - Question-tags ဖြင့် မေးခွန်းဝါကျပြောင်းနည်း | 94 |
| - Tag-answers | 99 |
| VIII. INTERROGATIVES (QUESTION WORDS) အမေးစကားလုံးများ | 101 |
| IX. FRAMING QUESTIONS မေးခွန်းဝါကျများတည်ဆောက်ခြင်း | 113 |

CONTENTS

| Chapter | | Page |
|---------|--|------|
| X. | NOUNS AND ARTICLES | 137 |
| | NOUNS | 139 |
| | နာမ် | |
| | - Kinds of Nouns | 140 |
| | နာမ်အမျိုးမျိုး | |
| XI. | THE ARTICLES | 159 |
| | - Kinds of Articles | 161 |
| | (ပစ္စည်း) အာတိကယ်အမျိုးမျိုး | |
| | - The Use of "A and AN" | 164 |
| | A နှင့် AN ကို အသုံးပြုပုံ | |
| | - The Difference between "THE" and "A/AN" | 167 |
| | "THE" နှင့် "A/AN" တို့၏ ကွာခြားသော အသုံးအနှုန်း | |
| | - The Use of "THE" | 170 |
| | "THE" ကို အသုံးပြုပုံ | |
| | - Nouns without "THE" | 174 |
| | "THE" မသုံးရသည့် နေရာများ | |
| | - The Articles (Special Uses) | 179 |
| | တူးခြားသော အသုံးအနှုန်းများ | |
| | - Plural and Uncountable Nouns | 183 |
| | with and without "THE" | |
| | "THE" ပါခြင်း၊ မပါခြင်းကြောင့် ခြားနားသည့် အဓိပ္ပာယ် | |
| | - Geographical Names with and without "THE" | 184 |
| | ပထဝီအခေါ်အဝေါ်များတွင် "THE" ပါခြင်း၊ မပါခြင်း | |
| XII. | PRONOUNS | 187 |
| | နာမ်စားများ | |
| | - Kinds of Pronouns | 189 |
| | နာမ်စားအမျိုးမျိုး | |
| XIII. | THE ADJECTIVE | 207 |
| | နာမဝိသေသန | |
| | - Kinds of Adjectives | 210 |
| | နာမဝိသေသနအမျိုးမျိုး | |

CONTENTS

| Chapter | | Page |
|---------|--|------|
| XIV. | COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES | 215 |
| | နာမဝိသေသနများကို နှိုင်းယှဉ်ခြင်း | |
| | - Formation of Degree of Comparison | 217 |
| | ဒီဂရီတစ်မျိုးမှ တစ်မျိုးသို့ပြောင်းနည်း | |
| | - Interchange of the Degrees of Comparison | 224 |
| | (အဓိပ္ပာယ်မပြောင်းလဲစေဘဲ နာမဝိသေသနများကို ဒီဂရီတစ်မျိုးမှ တစ်မျိုးသို့ ပြောင်းခြင်း) | |
| | - Adjectives ending in "LY" | 232 |
| | "ly" နှင့် အဆုံးသတ်သော နာမဝိသေသနများ | |
| | - Adjectives ending in "ING" and "ED" | 233 |
| | "ing" (သို့) "ed" နှင့် အဆုံးသတ်သော နာမဝိသေသနများ | |
| | - Position of the Adjectives (Adjective Order) | 235 |
| | နာမဝိသေသနများ၏ အစီအစဉ်အနေအထား | |
| XV. | THE ADVERB | 237 |
| | ကြိယာဝိသေသန | |
| | - Kinds of adverbs | 239 |
| | ကြိယာဝိသေသနအမျိုးမျိုး | |
| XVI. | FORMS OF ADVERBS | 247 |
| | ကြိယာဝိသေသနများ၏ ပုံသဏ္ဍာန်များ | |
| XVII. | COMPARISON OF ADVERBS | 253 |
| | ကြိယာဝိသေသနများကို နှိုင်းယှဉ်ခြင်း | |
| XVIII. | MID-POSITION ADVERBS | 259 |
| | ဝါကျ၏ အလယ်တွင်ထား၍ ရေးရသော ကြိယာဝိသေသနများ | |
| XIX. | PREPOSITIONS | 265 |
| | ဝိဘတ် (ဦးစီးပုဒ်)များ | |
| | - Kinds of Prepositions | 267 |
| | ဝိဘတ် (ဦးစီးပုဒ်) အမျိုးမျိုး | |

CONTENTS

| Chapter | | Page |
|---------|--|------|
| XX. | CONJUNCTIONS အဆက်ပုဒ်များ | 295 |
| | - Kinds of Conjunctions | 297 |
| | - The "AND" Group, the "BUT" Group | |
| | - The "OR" Group, the "SO" Group | |
| XXI | INTERJECTIONS AND EXCLAMATIONS အာမေဇိုတ် | 303 |
| XXII. | AGREEMENT OF THE VERB WITH ITS SUBJECT | 307 |
| XXIII. | TENSES | 333 |
| | - Three Simple Tenses (ကာလသုံးမျိုး) | 335 |
| | - Action | 336 |
| | - Simple Present Tense | 338 |
| | - Present Continuous Tense | 341 |
| | - Verb ကို -ing ဆက်နည်း | 342 |
| | - Continuous Form မသုံးရသော ကြိယာများ | 346 |
| | - Present Continuous Tense ၏ အသုံးများ | 350 |
| | - Simple Present Tense (OR) Present Continuous | 351 |
| | - (Simple Present နှင့် Present Continuous တို့၏ ကွာခြားသော အသုံး) | |
| | - Simple Past Tense | 354 |
| | - Past Tense ပြောင်းနည်း | 355 |
| | - List of Irregular Verbs | 358 |
| | - Past Continuous Tense | 365 |
| | - Simple Past Tense (OR) Past Continuous Tense | 367 |
| | - (Past Tense နှင့် Past Continuous တို့၏ ကွာခြားသော အသုံး) | |
| | - Future Tense | 369 |
| | - Future Tense ပြောင်းနည်း | 369 |
| | - Will နှင့် Shall ၏ အသုံး | 371 |
| | - Review of Present, Past and Future Tenses | 373 |
| | - Present Perfect Tense | 374 |
| | - Present Perfect Tense ပြောင်းနည်း | 375 |

CONTENTS

| Chapter | | Page |
|---------|---|------|
| | - Perfect Tense နှင့် တွဲဖက်အသုံးပြုလေ့ရှိသော စကားစုံများ | 378 |
| | - Just and Already | 379 |
| | - Since and For | 380 |
| | - Since, For, Ago | 382 |
| | - Ever and Never | 384 |
| | - Yet | 385 |
| | - Yet and Already | 385 |
| | - Past Perfect Tense | 388 |
| | - Simple Past and Past Perfect Tense | |
| | - Past Tense နှင့် Past Perfect Tense တို့၏ ကွာခြားသောအသုံး | 390 |
| | - Simple Past and Present Perfect Tense | 392 |
| | - (Past Tense နှင့် Present Perfect Tense တို့၏ ကွာခြားသောအသုံး) | |
| | - Present Perfect Continuous Tense | 399 |
| | - Present Perfect and Present Perfect Continuous | 400 |
| | - (Present Perfect Tense နှင့် Present Perfect Continuous တို့၏ ကွာခြားသော အသုံး) | |
| | - Past Perfect Continuous Tense | 402 |
| | - (Past Continuous နှင့် Past Perfect Continuous တို့၏ ကွာခြားသော အသုံး) | 403 |
| | - Future Continuous Tense | 404 |
| | - Future Perfect Tense | 405 |
| | - Future Perfect Continuous Tense | 406 |
| | - Simple Present with a Future Meaning | 407 |
| | - (Simple Present Tense ကို Future အဓိပ္ပာယ်ဖြင့် သုံးခြင်း) | |
| | - Present Continuous Tense with a Future Meaning | 408 |
| | - (Present Continuous Tense ကို Future အဓိပ္ပာယ်ဖြင့် သုံးခြင်း) | |
| | - Future Substitutes | 408 |
| | - going to ၏ အသုံး | 409 |
| | - going to ၏ Past Tense အသုံး | 410 |
| | - will နှင့် going to တို့၏ ကွာခြားသော အသုံး | 411 |
| | - will ၏ အသုံး | 412 |
| | - Verb Forms (Questions) | 417 |
| | - Verb Forms (Negative) | 419 |

CONTENTS

| Chapter | | Page |
|---------|---|------|
| XXIV. | ACTIVE VOICE AND PASSIVE VOICE | 429 |
| | Active Voice မှ Passive Voice သို့ ပြောင်းနည်း | 437 |
| (A) | Present (Simple) နှင့် ရေးထားသော ဝါကျများကို Passive Voice သို့ပြောင်းနည်း | 437 |
| (B) | Past (Simple) နှင့် ရေးထားသော ဝါကျများကို Passive Voice သို့ပြောင်းနည်း | 443 |
| (C) | Continuous Tense နှင့် ရေးထားသော ဝါကျများကို Passive Voice သို့ ပြောင်းနည်း | 446 |
| (D) | Perfect Tense နှင့် ရေးထားသော ဝါကျများကို Passive Voice သို့ပြောင်းနည်း | 447 |
| (E) | Will, Shall, Can, Could စသည့် အကူကြိယာများနှင့် ရေးထားသောဝါကျများကို Passive Voice သို့ပြောင်းနည်း | 449 |
| (F) | IMPERATIVE MOOD | 452 |
| | - အမိန့်ပေးဝါကျများကို Passive Voice သို့ ပြောင်းနည်း | 453 |
| (G) | INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES | 457 |
| | - မေးခွန်းဝါကျများကို Passive Voice သို့ ပြောင်းနည်း | |
| (A) | YES, NO နှင့် ဖြေ၍ရသော မေးခွန်းများကို Passive Voice သို့ ပြောင်းနည်း | 458 |
| | 1. Verb to be နှင့် မေးသောဝါကျများကို Passive Voice ပြောင်းနည်း | 458 |
| | 2. Verb to have နှင့် မေးသောဝါကျများကို Passive Voice ပြောင်းနည်း | 459 |
| | 3. Verb to do နှင့် မေးသောဝါကျများကို Passive Voice ပြောင်းနည်း | 460 |
| | 4. Helping Verb အကူကြိယာနှင့်မေးသော ဝါကျများကို Passive Voice ပြောင်းနည်း | 461 |
| (B) | YES, NO နှင့် ဖြေ၍မရသော မေးခွန်းများကို Passive Voice သို့ ပြောင်းနည်း | 465 |
| | 1. Interrogative Adverbs (Where, When, How, Why) နှင့်မေးသော မေးခွန်းဝါကျများကို Passive Voice သို့ ပြောင်းနည်း | 465 |

CONTENTS

| Chapter | | Page |
|---------|--|------|
| | 2. Interrogative Pronouns (Who, Whom, What, Whose, Which) တို့နှင့် မေးသော မေးခွန်းဝါကျများကို Passive Voice သို့ ပြောင်းနည်း | 467 |
| | FOR STUDY | 472 |
| | သတိပြုရန် လေ့လာရန် အချက်များ | |
| (A) | Subject က No one, Nobody စသည့် ငြင်းဆိုစကားလုံးများ ဖြစ်နေလျှင် | 472 |
| (B) | "ly" နှင့် ဆုံးသော နည်းဟန်ပြုကြိယာဝိသေသန (Manner Adverb) ပါနေလျှင် | 472 |
| (C) | Object နှစ်ခုရှိသော ဝါကျဖြစ်နေလျှင် | 474 |
| (D) | (A.V) ဝါကျများတွင် in, on, at, down, after, off, ... စသော Preposition များပါနေလျှင် | 476 |
| (E) | "To" ပါသော ဝါကျများဖြစ်နေလျှင် | 477 |
| (F) | ပုံသေလိုက်ရသည့် ဝိဘတ်ဦးစီးပုဒ် (Preposition) နှင့် ယှဉ်တွဲရသော ကြိယာများဆိုလျှင် | 478 |
| (G) | (A.V) ဝါကျ၏ ကံ (Object) သည် Phrase, Clause များ ဖြစ်နေလျှင် | 479 |
| (H) | (A.V) တွင် not ... anybody ပါလျှင် | 480 |
| (I) | (A.V) ဝါကျတွင် Nobody/No one နှင့် ever တွဲလျက် ပါလာလျှင် | 481 |
| (J) | (Active Voice) ဝါကျ၏ Object နောက်တွင် Post Noun Modifier အထူးပြုပုဒ်ပါနေလျှင် | 481 |
| (K) | (Active Voice) ဝါကျတွင် ကံလိုသောကြိယာ Transitive Verb နှစ်ခုပါနေလျှင် | 482 |
| (L) | (Active Voice) ဝါကျ၏ (Object) သည် "That" နှင့်စသော Noun Clause ဖြစ်နေလျှင် | 482 |
| (M) | V-ING ပါဝင်သော ဝါကျများဖြစ်နေလျှင် | 483 |
| (N) | see, hear, make စသည့် စကားလုံးများကို အခြားကြိယာများနှင့် တွဲပက်ပြီး ဝါကျရေးလျှင် | 484 |
| (O) | ကံမလိုသော ကြိယာ (Intransitive Verb) အချို့နှင့် ပတ်သက်သော ခြွင်းချက် | 485 |

CONTENTS

| <i>Chapter</i> | | <i>Page</i> |
|----------------|---|-------------|
| XXV. | PASSIVE VOICE TO ACTIVE VOICE | 491 |
| | Passive Voice မှ Active Voice သို့ ပြောင်းနည်း | 493 |
| | - Simple Present Tense, Simple Past Tense တို့နှင့် ရေးထားသော ဝါကျများအား Passive Voice မှ Active Voice သို့ပြောင်းနည်း | 494 |
| | - Continuous Tense နှင့် ရေးထားသော ဝါကျများကို Passive Voice မှ Active Voice သို့ပြောင်းနည်း | 496 |
| | - Perfect Tense နှင့် ရေးထားသော ဝါကျများကို Passive Voice မှ Active Voice သို့ပြောင်းနည်း | 497 |
| | - Will, Shall စသည့် အကူကြိုယာများနှင့် ရေးထားသော ဝါကျများကို Passive Voice မှ Active Voice သို့ ပြောင်းနည်း | 499 |
| | မေးခွန်းဝါကျများကို Passive Voice မှ Active Voice သို့ ပြောင်းနည်း | 499 |
| | - Verb to be နှင့် အစပြု၍မေးသော (Continuous Tense) ဝါကျများကို ပြောင်းနည်း | 500 |
| | - Verb to be နှင့် အစပြု၍မေးသော (Simple Present and Simple Past Tense) ဝါကျများကို ပြောင်းနည်း | 501 |
| | - Will, Shall စသည့် အကူကြိုယာများနှင့် အစပြု၍ မေးသော ဝါကျများကို ပြောင်းနည်း | 503 |
| | - Verb to have နှင့် အစပြု၍မေးသော (Perfect Tense) ဝါကျများကို ပြောင်းနည်း | 504 |
| | - Interrogative Adverbs (Where, When, How, Why) နှင့် မေးသောဝါကျများကို Active Voice ပြောင်းနည်း | 505 |
| | - By whom နှင့် မေးသော ဝါကျများကို ပြောင်းနည်း | 506 |
| | - Who နှင့်မေးသော ဝါကျများကို ပြောင်းနည်း | 506 |
| | - What, Whose စသည်တို့နှင့် မေးသောဝါကျများကို ပြောင်းနည်း | 511 |
| XXVI. | DIRECT AND INDIRECT SPEECH (REPORTED SPEECH) | 511 |
| | Direct Speech မှ Indirect Speech သို့ ပြောင်းနည်း | 514 |
| | (A) Statement ရိုးရိုးဝါကျများကို Indirect Speech သို့ ပြောင်းနည်း | 515 |

CONTENTS

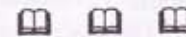
| <i>Chapter</i> | | <i>Page</i> |
|----------------|---|-------------|
| | (B) Question မေးခွန်းဝါကျများကို Indirect Speech သို့ ပြောင်းနည်း | 530 |
| | (C) Imperative အမိန့်ပေး၊ တောင်းပန်၊ စေခိုင်းဝါကျများကို Indirect Speech သို့ ပြောင်းနည်း | 536 |
| | (D) ဆန္ဒကိုဖော်ပြသော (optative) ဝါကျများကို Indirect Speech သို့ ပြောင်းနည်း | 538 |
| | (E) Exclamation အာပေဒိတ် ဝါကျများကို Indirect Speech သို့ ပြောင်းနည်း | 539 |
| | အာပေဒိတ်စကားလုံးများ၏ အဓိပ္ပာယ် | 540 |
| | (F) Reported Speech (Mixed Type) ဝေရာနှောထားသော ဝါကျအမျိုးမျိုးကို Indirect Speech သို့ ပြောင်းနည်း | 546 |
| | (G) Questions with some (YES, NO) Answers "YES, NO" ပါသည့် ဝါကျများကို Indirect Speech သို့ ပြောင်းနည်း | 549 |
| | (H) Conditional Sentences များကို Indirect Speech သို့ ပြောင်းနည်း | 552 |
| | အမိန့်ပေးဝါကျများကို ပြောင်းခြင်း | 553 |
| | (I) Changing Dialogue into the Indirect Speech (Dialogue) အပြန်အလှန် ပြောစကားများကို Indirect Speech သို့ ပြောင်းနည်း | 555 |
| | DIRECT SPEECH AND PUNCTUATION | 560 |
| | FOR STUDY | |
| | A. Must နှင့်ပတ်သက်ပြီး သတိပြုရန် | 566 |
| | B. Shall နှင့် ပတ်သက်ပြီး သတိပြုရန် | 569 |
| | C. Let နှင့် ပတ်သက်ပြီး သတိပြုရန် | 572 |
| | D. သတိပြုရမည့် ခြွင်းချက်ကလေးများ | 573 |
| XXVII. | INDIRECT SPEECH TO DIRECT SPEECH | 581 |
| | Indirect Speech မှ Direct Speech သို့ ပြောင်းနည်း | 583 |
| | - Statement ဝါကျများကို Direct Speech ပြောင်းနည်း | 583 |
| | - Question မေးခွန်းဝါကျများကို Direct Speech ပြောင်းနည်း | 585 |

CONTENTS

| Chapter | | Page |
|---------|---|------|
| | - Imperative အမိန့်ပေး၊ တောင်းပန်၊ စေခိုင်းစီကျပျားကို Direct Speech ပြောင်းနည်း | 589 |
| XXVIII. | SEQUENCE OF TENSES ကာလများ၏ အစီအစဉ် | 593 |
| XXIX. | CONDITIONS IF အကယ်၍ လျှင် (Conditional Sentences) | 609 |
| | - Future Possible Conditions (Type - 1) | 612 |
| | - Present Unreal Conditions (Type - 2) | 613 |
| | - Past Unreal Conditions (Type - 3) | 614 |
| XXX. | MODAL VERBS | 633 |
| | - Can | 635 |
| | - Could | 637 |
| | - Could do နှင့် Could have done | 640 |
| | - Could နှင့် Able to | 642 |
| | - May | 643 |
| | - Might | 645 |
| | - May နှင့် Might | 646 |
| | - Must | 651 |
| | - Must နှင့် Have to | 653 |
| | - Must နှင့် Must not, (Am, is, are) + not to | 657 |
| | - Must ၏ ငြင်းဆိုပုံစံနှစ်မျိုး (Must not နှင့် Need not) | 657 |
| | - Mustn't နှင့် Don't have to | 660 |
| | - Must ၏ အတိတ်ကြိယာပုံစံ ()မျိုး (had to နှင့် Must + Perfect infinitive) | 660 |
| | - Shall | 664 |
| | - Should | 666 |
| | - Will | 667 |
| | - Would | 671 |
| | OTHER USES OF THE AUXILIARIES | 673 |
| | - Used to လေ့ ... ရှိသည် | 673 |
| | - Ought to သင့်သည် | 675 |

CONTENTS

| Chapter | | Page |
|---------|---|------|
| | - Ought နှင့် Should | 679 |
| | - Should နှင့် Have to | 682 |
| | - Need လိုအပ်သည် | 683 |
| | - Didn't need to နှင့် Needn't have ၏ ကွာခြားချက် | 686 |
| | - Dare ဝံ့သည် | 687 |
| XXXI. | PUNCTUATION | 689 |
| | - The Full Stop, Question Mark | |
| | - The Exclamation Mark, The Comma, The Colon | |
| | - The Semicolon, The Dash, The Parentheses (Brackets) | |
| | - Quotation Marks (Inverted Commas) | |
| | - The Hyphen, The Apostrophe | |
| | CAPITALIZATION | 699 |
| | - The Use of Capitals | |
| | KEY TO EXERCISES | 711 |
| | အဖြေများ | |



BIBLIOGRAPHY

မိုးငြမ်းကိုးကားသော စာအုပ်စာတမ်းများ

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Living English Structure | W. Stannard Allen |
| 2. Modern English | Neile Osman |
| 3. High School English Grammar | Wren and Martin |
| 4. Modern English Grammar | J.C. Nesfield |
| 5. English Grammar Series (Book One - Four) | J.C. Nesfield |
| 6. Brighter English Grammar (Book One - Four) | Eckersley and Macaulay |
| 7. A Comprehensive English Grammar | C.E. Eckersley and J.M. Eckersley |
| 8. A Practical English Grammar | A.J. Thomson and A.V. Martinet |
| 9. A Practical English Grammar Combined Exercises (Vol. I & II) | A.J. Thomson and A.V. Martinet |
| 10. A Handbook of English Grammar | H.W. Zandvoort |
| 11. Simplified English Grammar | L. Tipping |
| 12. English Grammar in Use | Raymond Murphy |
| 13. Beginning Lessons in English | Isobel Y. Fisher Robert J. Dixon |
| 14. Regents English Workbook (Book 1 and Book 2) | Robert J. Dixon |
| 15. Graded Exercises in English (Revised Edition) | Robert J. Dixon |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 16. Graded Exercises in English (For the Foreign Born) | Robert J. Dixon |
| 17. Mastering American English | Grant Taylor |
| 18. Practical English Handbook | Watkins and Martin |
| 19. A Short Course in English Grammar | Lancelot Oliphant |
| 20. Review Exercises | Virginia F. Allen and Robert L. Allen |
| 21. Teaching and Learning Grammar | Jerency Harmer |
| 22. Understanding and Using English Grammar | Betty Schramper Azar |
| 23. English Grammar and Composition | Warriners |
| 24. Oxford Progressive English for Adult Learners (Book One-Three) | A.S. Hornby |
| 25. An Intermediate English Course for Adult Learners | D.H. Spencer and A.S. Hornby |
| 26. The New Method Grammar | Harold E. Palmer |
| 27. New English 900 (Books One-Six) | Collier Macmillan |
| 28. Composition through Grammar | Muriel Higgins |
| 29. Progressive Composition | P.C. Wren |
| 30. A High School Composition | E.E. Speight and G.L. Sethi |
| 31. English Composition for High schools | Liewelyn Tipping |
| 32. English Composition Without Trouble (Books One - Three) | F.G. French |
| 33. Basic English Usage | Michael Swan |
| 34. Modern English Usage | H.W. Fowler |
| 35. One Hundred Exercises in English Usage and Composition (Books One - Four) | T.H. Dalzell |

- | | | |
|-----|--|---|
| 36. | A Guide to Correct English | L. A. Hill |
| 37. | Common Mistakes in English | T. J. Fitikides |
| 38. | A General Certificate English Course | Lancelot Oliphant |
| 39. | Good English | R. P. Ghosh |
| 40. | Correct Your English | B. Mendelssohn and J. W. Palmer |
| 41. | Kernel Lessons Plus (A Post - Intermediate Course) | Robert O' Neill |
| 42. | Kernel Lessons (Intermediate Students' Book) | Robert O' Neill Roy Kingsbury Tony Yeadon |
| 43. | TOEFL (Test of English As a Foreign Language) | Edward C. Gruber |
| 44. | TOEFL (The New Edition) | Harriet. N. Moreno, Edith H. Babin and Carole V. Cordes |
| 45. | How to Prepare for the TOEFL | Harcourt - Brace Jovanovich |
| 46. | English Made Simple | Arthur Waldhorn Arthur Zeiger |
| 47. | Essential English for Foreign Students (Books One - Four) | C.E. Eckersley |
| 48. | The Students' Companion | Wilfred D. Best |
| 49. | Modern English in Action | Henry I. Christ |
| 50. | Language Studies for the Senior School | Celestina kitson |
| 51. | The Heinemann English Grammar | Digby Beaumont & Colin Granger |
| 52. | Oxford Practice Grammar | John Eastwood |
| 53. | Notes on Learning English | Ralph Cooke |

TENSES

TENSES

ကြိုယာဆိုတာ သက်ရှိ၊ သက်မဲ့တို့ရဲ့ ဖြစ်ပျက်ပုံ၊ ဝိုင်ဆိုင်ပုံ၊ ဆောင်ရွက်ပုံတို့ကို အညွှန်းပြုတဲ့ ပုဒ်ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

- ဖြစ်ပျက်ပုံကိုဖော်ပြရင် = Verb to be
- ဝိုင်ဆိုင်မှုကိုဖော်ပြရင် = Verb to have
- ဆောင်ရွက်မှုကိုဖော်ပြရင် = Verb to do လို့ ခေါ်ပါတယ်။

ဒါပေမယ့် အဲဒီဖြစ်ပျက်တာ၊ ဝိုင်ဆိုင်တာ၊ ဆောင်ရွက်တာတွေဟာ တယ်တုန်းတယ်၊ ခုလော လောဆယ်မှာ ဖြစ်ပျက်နေတာလား၊ အတိတ်ကဖြစ်ခဲ့တာလား၊ နောင် အနာဂတ်ကာလကျမှ ဖြစ်မှာလား ဆိုတဲ့ "ကာလ" ကလဲ သုံးမျိုးရှိသေးတယ်။ ဒါကို TENSES လို့ ခေါ်ပါတယ်။

When we use a verb, we always tell the time. It is impossible to use a verb without telling time. The time of verb action or state of being is called "tense".

TOEFL (PAGE. 199)
EDWARD C. GRUBER

THREE SIMPLE TENSES

(တူတူမျိုးသုံးမျိုး)

- အလုပ်တစ်ခု၊ ဖြစ်ရပ်တစ်ခုဟာ ယခုလောလောဆယ်မှာ ဖြစ်ပျက်နေတယ်လို့ ဖော်ပြပြောဆိုလိုရင် Present Tense
- အတိတ်ကာလက ဖြစ်ပျက်ခဲ့တာကို ဖော်ပြပြောဆိုလိုရင် Past Tense
- မဖြစ်သေးတဲ့ အနာဂတ်ကာလကို ကြိုတင်ပြီး ပြောဆိုလိုရင် Future Tense တို့ကို သုံးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. U Lwin *teaches* us English. (Present)
 2. U Lwin *taught* us English. (Past)
 3. U Lwin *will teach* us English. (Future)

The "TENSE" is a form of the verb showing the time of the happening of an action denoted by it and its state.

GOOD ENGLISH (PAGE. 42)

ACTION

ကြိယာတစ်ခု၊ အလုပ်တစ်ခုကို ဘယ်ကာလမှာပဲလုပ်လုပ် အဲဒီအလုပ်၊ အဲဒီဖြစ်ရပ်မှာ ဖြစ်စဉ် action (အဖြစ်အပျက်တစ်ခုရဲ့ အခြေအနေပြသဘော) (၄) ခု ရှိမြဲဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

- (၁) အဲဒီအလုပ်ကို စတင်ပြုလုပ်တဲ့ ဖြစ်ရပ်၊ ဖြစ်စဉ်၊
- (၂) အဲဒီအလုပ်ကို ဆက်လက်လုပ်ကိုင်နေဆဲ ဖြစ်ရပ်၊ ဖြစ်စဉ်
- (၃) အဲဒီအလုပ်ကို လုပ်ကိုင်နေတာလဲကြာပြီ၊ ပြီးကလဲ မပြီးသေး၊ (ကြာလှရှိပြီး၊ မပြီးသေး) တဲ့ဖြစ်ရပ်၊ ဖြစ်စဉ်
- (၄) အဲဒီ အလုပ်ကို လုပ်ကိုင် ပြီးစီးသွားတဲ့ ဖြစ်ရပ်ဖြစ်စဉ်ဆိုပြီး action (၄)မျိုး ရှိပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ ဒီနေ့ ကျောင်းသွားတယ် ဆိုတဲ့ ဖြစ်ရပ်ကလေးကို လေ့လာကြည့်ကြပါစို့။

- 1. I **go** to school. (Present Simple)
ကျွန်တော် ကျောင်းသွားသည်။
- 2. I **am going** to school. (Present Continuous)
ကျွန်တော် ကျောင်းသို့သွားနေသည်။ (သွားနေဆဲဖြစ်ရပ်၊ လမ်းခုလတ်မှာ)
- 3. I **have been going** to school. (Present Perfect Continuous)
ကျွန်တော် ကျောင်းသို့သွားနေပြီ။ (သွားနေတာလဲ ကြာလှပြီ၊ ကျောင်းသို့ ရောက်လှရောက်ခင်)
- 4. I **have gone** to school. (Present Perfect)
ကျွန်တော် ကျောင်းသွားပြီးပြီ။ (ကျောင်းသို့ ရောက်ပြီးခါစဖြစ်ရပ်)

ဒီနေ့ (Present) အနေနဲ့ ကျောင်းသွားတော့ အဲဒီဖြစ်စဉ် (၄) ခု ရှိသလို-

- မနေ့က သွားခဲ့တုန်းကလဲ ဖြစ်စဉ် (၄) ခု ရှိခဲ့ပါတယ်။
- နက်ဖြန်မှ သွားမယ်ဆိုရင်လဲ ဖြစ်စဉ် (၄) ခု ရှိလိမ့်ဦးမယ်။

မနေ့က ကျောင်းသွားခဲ့တယ်ဆိုရင်လဲ

- 1. I **went** to school. (Past Simple)
ကျွန်တော် ကျောင်းသွားခဲ့တယ်။
- 2. I **was going** to school. (Past Continuous)
ကျွန်တော် ကျောင်းသို့သွားနေခဲ့တယ်။
- 3. I **had been going** to school. (Past Perfect Continuous)
ကျွန်တော် ကျောင်းသို့ သွားနေခဲ့ပြီ။
- 4. I **had gone** to school. (Past Perfect)
ကျွန်တော် ကျောင်းသို့သွားခဲ့ပြီးပြီ။

နက်ဖြန်မှာ ကျောင်းသွားမယ်ဆိုရင်လဲ

- 1. I **will (shall) go** to school. (Future Simple)
ကျွန်တော် ကျောင်းသွားမယ်။
- 2. I **will (shall) be going** to school. (Future Continuous)
ကျွန်တော် ကျောင်းသွားနေလိမ့်မယ်။
- 3. I **will (shall) have been going** to school. (Future Perfect Continuous)
ကျွန်တော် ကျောင်းသွားနေပြီ ဖြစ်လိမ့်မယ်။
- 4. I **will (shall) have gone** to school. (Future Perfect)
ကျွန်တော် ကျောင်းသွားပြီးပြီ။ (ကျောင်းသို့ ရောက်ပြီးခါစဖြစ်ရပ်)

| Tense | Simple | Continuous | Perfect Continuous (have been + ing) | Perfect (have + V3) |
|---------|-----------|-----------------|--|------------------------|
| Present | I go | I am going | I have been going | I have gone |
| Past | I went | I was going | I had been going | I had gone |
| Future | I will go | I will be going | I will have been going | I will have gone |

SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE

Present Tense ကို အမှန်တရား၊ အကျင့်စရိုက်၊ ဝေလေ့ထုံးစံ၊ လက်ရှိဖြစ်ရပ်တို့ကို ဖော်ပြ ပြောဆိုတဲ့အခါမှာ သုံးရပါတယ်။ ဝိုဠ်၊ ရှင်းရှင်းလင်းလင်းဖြစ်သွားအောင် တစ်ခုချင်း လေ့လာကြည့် ကြပါစို့။

I. ယခုလောလောဆယ် ပြောဆိုနေတဲ့ ကာလမှာ လူ (သို့) အရာဝတ္ထု တစ်ခုခု အရှိတရား၊ အဖြစ်တရားနဲ့ ပတ်သက်ပြီး (အရှိအတိုင်း၊ အဖြစ်အတိုင်း) ရှိရင်းစွဲ အခြေအနေကို ဖော်ပြပြောဆိုတဲ့ အခါမှာ Simple Present Tense ကိုသုံးပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. My father **is** a doctor.
ကျွန်ုပ်၏ ဖခင်သည် ဆရာဝန်တစ်ယောက်ဖြစ်သည်။
 2. He **is** a bus driver.
သူသည် ဘတ်စ်ကားမောင်းသူ တစ်ယောက်ဖြစ်သည်။
 3. Cho Pyone **is** a singer and May Win Maung **is** an actress.
ချိုပြုံးသည် အဆိုတော်တစ်ယောက်ဖြစ်၍ မေဝင်းမောင်သည် သရုပ်ဆောင် (မင်းသမီး) တစ်ယောက်ဖြစ်သည်။
 4. Aung Net **is** a dog and Shwe War **is** a cat.
အောင်နက်သည် ဆွေးတစ်ကောင်ဖြစ်၍ ရွှေဝါသည် ကြောင်တစ်ကောင် ဖြစ်သည်။
 5. This **is** an old car and that **is** a new one.
ဒီကားက အဟောင်းကြီးဖြစ်ပြီး ဟိုကားကအသစ်ဖြစ်တယ်။
 6. A man **sees** with his eyes and **hears** with his ears.
လူဟာ မျက်စိနဲ့မြင်ပြီး နားနဲ့ကြားတယ်။

II. (Universal Truth ထာဝရ အမှန်တရား၊ General Truth ယေဘုယျ အမှန်တရား) စတဲ့ အမှန်တရားတွေကို ဖော်ပြပြောဆိုလိုတဲ့အခါမှာလဲ Simple Present Tense ကို သုံးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. Fire **is** hot and ice **is** cold.
မီးကပူပြီး ရေခဲက အေးတယ်။
 2. A cow **has** four legs.
နွားမှာ ခြေလေးချောင်းရှိတယ်။

3. The sun **rises** in the east.
နေမင်းကြီးဟာ အရှေ့အရပ်က ထွက်တယ်။
4. The earth **goes** round the sun.
ကမ္ဘာကြီးက နေကိုပတ်တယ်။
5. Man **is** mortal.
လူဟာ သေမျိုးဖြစ်တယ်။
6. Men **are** stronger than women.
ယောက်ျားတွေဟာ မိန်းမတွေထက် သန်မာတယ်။

III. အဖြစ်အပျက် တစ်ခုတစ်ရာဟာ ဖြစ်လေ့ဖြစ်ထရှိတယ်။ (သို့မဟုတ်) အလုပ်တစ်ခုကို တစ်ခု တစ်ယောက်က လုပ်လေ့ရှိတယ်။ ဆောင်ရွက်လေ့ ရှိတယ်လို့ အကျင့်စရိုက်ကို ဖော်ပြချင်တဲ့ အခါတွေမှာ Simple Present Tense ကို သုံးရပါတယ်။ ဒါပေမယ့် အဲဒီလုပ်ရပ်၊ အဲဒီဖြစ်ရပ်၊ ပြုမူချက်ဟာ ယခုလောလောဆယ် ပြောဆိုနေတဲ့ အချိန်မှာ ဖြစ်ဖို့၊ ပြုဖို့က အဓိက မဟုတ်ပါဘူး။

ဥပမာ Nurses look after patients in hospitals.
ဆေးရုံတွေမှာ သူနာပြုတွေက လူမမာတွေကို ကြည့်ရှုစောင့်ရှောက်တယ် (ယခု ပြော ဆိုနေချိန်မှာ တကယ်လက်တွေ့ ကုသစောင့်ရှောက်နေဆဲဖြစ်ဖို့ မလိုဘူး) ဖြစ်လေ့ ဖြစ်ထရှိတဲ့ ဆောင်ရွက်လေ့၊ ဆောင်ရွက်ထရှိတဲ့ဖြစ်ရပ်ကိုသာ ဆိုလိုတယ်။

အကျင့်စရိုက်ကို ညွှန်းတဲ့ (Simple Present Tense ကို ညွှန်းတဲ့) အောက်က စာလုံးကလေးတွေကိုတော့ အလွတ်ကျက်ထားရပါမယ်။

လုပ်လေ့ လုပ်ထရှိတဲ့ ဖြစ်ရပ် (habitual action) တွေကို ဖော်ပြရေးသားချင်တဲ့အခါမှာ

| | | |
|------------|---|------------------------------------|
| generally | = | များသောအားဖြင့် |
| usually | = | လေ့ ရှိသည်။ (ထုံးစံအတိုင်း) |
| always | = | အစဉ်အမြဲ၊ ထာဝရ |
| often | = | မကြာခဏ |
| habitually | = | အလေ့အကျင့်တစ်ခု အနေနှင့် (ကဲ့သို့) |
| sometimes | = | တစ်ခါတစ်ရံ |
| almost | = | လှနီးပါး |

- never = ဘယ်တော့မှ
- frequently = ခဏခဏ
- occasionally = အခါအားလျော်စွာ

စတဲ့ (frequency adverbs) တွေနဲ့ ယှဉ်တွဲရေးသားလေ့ရှိပါတယ်။

every day = နေ့တိုင်း၊ every week = အပတ်တိုင်း (ရက်သတ္တပတ်တိုင်း)၊
every month = လတိုင်း၊ every year = နှစ်တိုင်း၊ every three hours =
သုံးနာရီတိုင်း၊ twice a day = တစ်နေ့နှစ်ကြိမ်၊ once in a while = တစ်ခါတစ်လေ၊
အခွင့်အခါကြုံမှ စတဲ့ (adverb phrase) တွေနဲ့လဲ ယှဉ်တွဲရေးသားလေ့ရှိပါတယ်။

We use the present simple to talk about things in general. We are not thinking only about the present. We use it to say that something happens all the time or repeatedly, or that something is true in general. *It is not important whether the action is happening at the time of speaking.*

ENGLISH GRAMMAR IN USE (PAGE. 4)

IV. အမိန့်ပေးစေခိုင်း၊ ညွှန်ကြားတဲ့စကားတွေ၊ တောင်းပန် ပန်ကြားတဲ့ စကားတွေ၊ အကြောင်းအရာ တွေကို ဖော်ပြပြောဆိုတဲ့အခါမှာလဲ **Simple Present Tense** ကို သုံးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. **Go** to bed early.
စောစော အိပ်ပါ။
 2. **Study** your lessons regularly.
စာမှန်မှန် ကျက်ပါ။
 3. **Please** open the door.
ကျေးဇူးပြုပြီး တံခါးဖွင့်ပါ။
 4. **Don't play** with fire.
မီးနဲ့ မကစားနဲ့။
 5. **Have** a cigarette.
ဆေးလိပ် သောက်ပါဦး။
 6. **Let us go** to school.
ကျောင်းသွားကြပါနို့။

PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE

ယခုပြောဆိုနေတဲ့ အချိန်ကာလမှာ၊ အလုပ်တစ်ခု မပြီးပြတ်သေးလို့ ဆက်လက်လုပ်ကိုင်နေဆဲ ဖြစ်တယ်လို့ ဖော်ပြပြောဆိုချင်တဲ့အခါမှာ Present Continuous Tense ကိုသုံးရပါတယ်။
ကြိယာ ပုံစံကတော့ -

(am/ is/ are) + V - ing ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. I **am reading** the newspaper.
ကျွန်တော် သတင်းစာ ဖတ်နေတယ်။
 2. He **is reading** the newspaper.
သူ သတင်းစာ ဖတ်နေတယ်။
 3. They **are reading** the newspaper.
သူတို့ သတင်းစာ ဖတ်နေကြတယ်။
 4. John **is going** to school.
ဂျွန်သည် ကျောင်းသို့သွားနေသည်။

The verb "is going" definitely states that the action is happening in the present time and is not yet complete but is still continuing of going on. So "is going" is said to be in the Present Continuous Tense.

GOOD ENGLISH (PAGE. 96)
R.P. GHOST

VERB ဟို -ING ဆက်နွဲ့

Continous tense ဆိုတာ Verb to be နဲ့ V- ing ကို ပေါင်းစပ်ခြင်း ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။ ဒီဟော့ ကြိယာ (Verb) တွေကို - ing ဆက်ပုံ ရေးပုံကို လေ့လာကြည့်ကြပါနို့ -

၁။ ကြိယာတစ်လုံးဟာ "e" (တစ်လုံး) နဲ့ ဆုံးနေရင် "e" ကိုဖြုတ်ပြီးမှ - ing ဆက်ရပါတယ်။

| | | | |
|--------|------------|-------|---------|
| ပုဇွန် | လာသည် | come | coming |
| | ကယ်ဆယ်သည် | save | saving |
| | နေထိုင်သည် | live | living |
| | စာရေးသည် | write | writing |

ခြွင်းချက်အနေနဲ့ ee, oe နဲ့ ဆုံးတဲ့ စကားလုံးတွေကိုတော့ "e" မဖြုတ်ရပါဘူး။

| | | |
|--------|--------------|----------------|
| ပုဇွန် | see - seeing | flee - fleeing |
| | hoe - hoeing | toe - toeing |

၂။ ကြိယာတစ်လုံးဟာ ဗျည်းနဲ့ဆုံးပြီး၊ ဗျည်းရဲ့ရှေ့မှာ သရ တစ်လုံးရှိနေရင် နောက်ဆုံး စာလုံးကို နှစ်ဆပြုပြီးမှ - ing ဆက်ရပါတယ်။

သရ = A, E, I, O, U

ဗျည်း = ကျွန် (၂၁) လုံး

| | | | |
|--------|---------------------|-----|---------|
| ပုဇွန် | ပြေးသည် | run | running |
| | ထိုင်သည် | sit | sitting |
| | (လ၊ ကြယ်၊ နေ)ဝင်သည် | set | setting |
| | ထားသည် | put | putting |

၃။ ဗျည်းနဲ့ဆုံးပေမယ့် ဗျည်းရဲ့ရှေ့မှာ သရ (j) လုံးရှိနေရင်တော့ နှစ်ဆမပြုရပါဘူး။

| | | | |
|--------|-------------|-------|----------|
| ပုဇွန် | စားသည် | eat | eating |
| | တွေ့ဆုံသည် | meet | meeting |
| | စကားပြောသည် | speak | speaking |
| | အိပ်သည် | sleep | sleeping |

၄။ y, w, တို့နဲ့ ဆုံးနေရင်လဲ နောက်ဆုံးအလုံးကို နှစ်ဆမပြုရပါဘူး။

| | | | |
|--------|-------------|------|---------|
| ပုဇွန် | ဝယ်သည် | buy | buying |
| | ကစားသည် | play | playing |
| | ကြီးထွားသည် | grow | growing |

၅။ ကြိယာတစ်လုံးဟာ "c" နဲ့ဆုံးနေရင်တော့၊ အဲဒီ ကြိယာရဲ့အဆုံးမှာ "k" ကို ထပ်ပေါင်း ထည့်ပေးပြီးမှ - ing ဆက်ရပါတယ်။

| | | | |
|--------|-----------------------|--------|------------|
| ပုဇွန် | နောက်ပြောင်သည် | frolic | frolicking |
| | တုပပြောဆိုသည် | mimic | mimicking |
| | (လိုက်တူ၍ ပြောဆိုသည်) | | |
| | ဖျော်ပွဲစားထွက်သည် | picnic | picnicking |

၆။ ကြိယာတစ်လုံးဟာ "ie" နဲ့ဆုံးနေရင်တော့၊ ie ကို y ပြောင်းပြီးမှ -ing ဆက်ရပါတယ်။

| | | | |
|--------|---------------|-----|-------|
| ပုဇွန် | သေသည် | die | dying |
| | လိမ်ပြောသည် | lie | lying |
| | လဲလျောင်းသည် | | |
| | ချည်နှောင်သည် | tie | tying |

၇။ အပေါ်မှာပြထားတဲ့ ဆက်နည်းတွေကလွဲရင် ကျန်ကြိယာတွေကိုတော့ -ing ဆက်ရုံပဲ ဆက်ပေးရပါတယ်။

| | | | |
|--------|--------------|--------|-----------|
| ပုဇွန် | ပြုလုပ်သည် | do | doing |
| | ထသည်၊ ရပ်သည် | stand | standing |
| | တည်ဆောက်သည် | build | building |
| | နားထောင်သည် | listen | listening |

ခြွင်းချက်

အပေါ်မှာ စည်းကမ်းချက်လေးတွေ ပေးထားပေမယ့် ခြွင်းချက်အနေနဲ့ အဲဒီစည်းကမ်းလေး တွေအတိုင်း မရေးရတဲ့ ကြိယာတွေကိုတော့ အလွတ်ကျက်ထားရပါတယ်။

| | | |
|---------------|-------|----------|
| ဆေးဆိုးသည် | dye | dyeing |
| ကြည့်သည် | eye | eyeing |
| တူးဖွဲ့သည် | hoe | hoeing |
| သံဇာရိုက်သည် | shoe | shoeing |
| လည်ပတ်သည် | visit | visiting |
| တည်းဖြတ်သည် | edit | editing |
| ပုံးလွှမ်းသည် | cover | covering |
| ဖွင့်သည် | open | opening |

Continuous Tense နဲ့ တွဲဖက်သုံးလေ့ရှိတဲ့ ဒီစကားလုံးလေးတွေကို အလွတ်ကျွတ်မှတ်ထားပါ။

- Now** = ယခု
- At present** = ယခုလောလောဆယ်
- At this moment** = ဤအခါ၌
- At the moment** = ယခုအခါ၌၊ ယခု
- Look !** = ကြည့်စမ်း
- Listen !** = နားထောင်စမ်း

Exercise No. (76)

Write the present continuous tense form of the verbs in brackets.

တွင်းထဲမှာရှိတဲ့ ကြိယာကို present continuous tense ပုံစံဖြင့် ဖြေဆိုရေးသားပါ။

1. She (sing) a lovely song.
Ans: She is singing a lovely song.
2. The bus (stop) for us now.
3. He (open) the window.
4. The girl (put) on new clothes.
5. We (study) English now.
6. They (leave) for Mandalay.
7. Our mother (buy) rice.
8. A boy (make) a kite.
9. Thiha (write) a letter.
10. I (watch) television at present.
11. The telephone (ring) now.
12. Look! U Ni (smoke) a cigarette.
13. Listen! Someone (knock) at the door.
14. Daw Sein (sit) in the park.
15. They (play) tennis.

Exercise No. (77)

Change the verb of the following sentences from simple present to present continuous form.

အောက်ပါဝါကျများရှိကြိယာကို Present tense မှ Present continuous ပုံစံသို့ပြောင်းပါ။

1. He eats a mango.
Ans: He is eating a mango.
2. The watchman turns on the light.
3. We learn many new words.
4. He prepares his homework.
5. The teacher rings the bell.
6. She does well in her English.
7. He has his dinner.
8. The wind blows hard.
9. The girl sleeps soundly.
10. Lay Lay studies in this class.
11. The leaves fall from the trees.
12. U Kyaw Win speaks very quickly.
13. U Lwin teaches us English.
14. The boys swim in the river.
15. The villagers dig a canal.

Exercise No. (78)

Choose the correct form of the verb.

ကြိယာပုံစံအမှန်ကို ရွေးချယ် (ဖြေဆို) ပါ။

1. May Sweet (sings, is singing) a song now.
2. They (study, are studying) English every day.
3. Look! The boys (play, are playing) football.
4. She usually (goes, is going) to the pagoda in the evening.
5. He always (tells, is telling) the truth.
6. Listen! The girl (sings, is singing) a song.
7. We (have, are having) an English class now.
8. Cho Cho (prepares, is preparing) her homework now.

- 9. Our father (takes, is taking) a walk in the park every day.
- 10. The officer (signs, is signing) the letters now.
- 11. U Lwin (sleeps, is sleeping) only five hours each day.
- 12. The maid (cleans, is cleaning) the room every day.
- 13. I (get, am getting) very hungry at present.
- 14. Look! They (shake, are shaking) hands like old friends.
- 15. They (come, are coming) to visit us every year.

CONTINUOUS FORM မသုံးရသော ကြိယာများ

အောက်မှာ ဖော်ပြတဲ့ ကြိယာလေးတွေကို အထူးဂရုပြုလေ့လာပါ။ သူတို့ကို continuous form အဖြစ်နဲ့ သုံးလေ့မရှိပါဘူး။

1. Verbs of Perception

- see = မြင်သည်။
- hear = ကြားသည်။
- smell = အနံ့ရသည်။
- taste = အရသာပေါ်ထွက်သည်။
- feel = ထိတွေ့ခံစားသည်။

2. Verbs of emotion

- love = ချစ်သည်။
- hate = မုန်းသည်။
- like = ကြိုက်သည်။
- dislike = မနှစ်မသက်ဖြစ်သည်။
- want = လိုချင်သည်။
- wish = ဆန္ဒရှိသည်၊ လိုချင်တောင့်တသည်။
- desire = အလိုရှိသည်။
- refuse = ငြင်းဆန်သည်။
- prefer = ပိုမိုနှစ်သက်သည်။

3. Verbs of thinking

- think = ထင်သည်။
- realize = သိရှိသဘောပေါက်သည်။

- understand = နားလည်သည်။
- know = သိသည်။
- suppose = ထင်မြင်သည်။
- believe = ယုံကြည်သည်။
- trust = ယုံကြည်စိတ်ချသည်။
- recollect = သတိရ၊ မှတ်မိသည်။
- remember = သတိရသည်။

4. Some others

- possess = ဝိုင်ဆိုင်သည်။
- contain = ပါဝင်သည်။
- consist = ပါဝင်သည်။
- belong = ဝိုင်ဆိုင်သည်။
- own = ဝိုင်ဆိုင်သည်။

There are certain verbs in English which are not used with the -ing form *except in a few special cases*. The verbs of perception *see, hear, feel, seem, taste, and smell*, and the verbs of mental activity *understand, know, think, believe, forget, remember, like, love, hate, hope, mean, need, prefer, recognize and want* are among the commonest verbs of the type.

A GUIDE TO CORRECT ENGLISH (PAGE. 294)
L. A. HILL

ဝါပေမယ့် ခြွင်းချက်တွေ ရှိပါတယ်။

- *** (၁) မြင်သည်။
- (၂) ကြည့်သည်။
- "မြင်သည်" ဆိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့ ရေးရင် continuous မသုံးရပါဘူး။
- "ကြည့်သည်" "တွေ့ဆုံသည်" ဆိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့ ဆိုရင် continuous သုံးခွင့် ရှိပါတယ်။ သုံးကြပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ

- 1. A blind man **cannot** see.
မျက်ကန်းဟာ မမြင်ရဘူး။
- 2. I **see** the boys going to school .
ကောင်လေးတွေ ကျောင်းသွားတာကို ကျွန်တော်မြင်တယ်။
- 3. I **am seeing** the sights of Mandalay.
မန္တလေးမြို့ရဲ့မြင်ကွင်း (ရှုခင်း) တွေကို ကျွန်တော်လိုက်ကြည့်နေတယ်။
- 4. I **shall be seeing** them tomorrow.
သူတို့ကို မနက်ဖြန်ကျရင် ကျွန်တော် သွားတွေ့မယ်။

hear = (၁) ကြားသည်။
(၂) receive news of (သတင်း ရရှိသည်)

ကြားသည်ဆိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့ရေးရင် continuous မသုံးရပေမယ့် (သတင်းရရှိသည်) ဆိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့ ရေးသားရင်တော့ continuous သုံးလေ့ရှိပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ

- 1. I **am hearing** the most sorrowful news about my old friend.
ကျွန်တော်မိတ်ဆွေဟောင်းတစ်ယောက်ရဲ့ ဝမ်းနည်းဖွယ်သတင်းတွေကို ရရှိပါတယ်။
- 2. She **is not hearing** of her husband's death.
သူ့ယောက်ျားသေတဲ့သတင်းကို သူမ မရရှိသေးဘူး။
- 3. I **hear** somebody laughing.
တစ်ယောက်ယောက် ရယ်မောနေသံကို ကျွန်တော်ကြားတယ်။
- 4. I can't **hear** what he is saying.
ဘာပြောနေသလဲဆိုတာ ကျွန်တော် မကြားဘူး။

think = (၁) ထင်သည်။
(၂) တွေးသည်။

ထင်သည်ဆိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့ရေးရင် continuous မသုံးရပေမယ့် "တွေးသည်" ဆိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့ ရေးရင်တော့ continuous သုံးပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ

- 1. I **think** this book is **very interesting**.
ဒီစာအုပ်ဟာ သိပ်စိတ်ဝင်စားဖွယ်ကောင်းတယ်လို့ ဖါဆင်တယ်။

2. **Are you thinking** about your lover?

မင်းရဲ့ချစ်သူအကြောင်းကို တွေးနေသလား။

smell = (၁) အနံ့ရသည်။
(၂) ရှုသည်၊ နှမ်းသည်။

အနံ့ရသည်ဆိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့ဆိုရင် continuous မသုံးရပေမယ့်၊ ရှုသည်၊ ရှုရှိုက်သည်၊ နှမ်းသည် ဆိုတဲ့အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့ ရေးရင်တော့ continuous သုံးနိုင်ပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ

- 1. I can't **smell** because I have a cold.
ငါအအေးမိနေလို့ အနံ့မရဘူး။
- 2. She **was smelling** at a flower.
သူမက ယန်းကလေးတစ်ပွင့်ကို နှမ်းကြည့်နေတယ်။

have = (၁) ပိုင်ဆိုင်မှုပြု (မှာ.....ရှိသည်)
(၂) ဆောင်ရွက်မှုပြု (စားသည်၊ သောက်သည် စသည်)

ပိုင်ဆိုင်မှုပြု အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့ရေးရင် continuous မသုံးရပေမယ့်၊ ဆောင်ရွက်မှုပြု အဓိပ္ပာယ် အနေနဲ့ဆိုရင်တော့ continuous သုံးနိုင်ပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ

- 1. She **has** much money.
သူမမှာ ပိုက်ဆံများစွာရှိသည်။
She is having much money ဟု မသုံးရ။
- 2. She **has** her dinner.
သူမ ညစာစားသည်။ (ဆောင်ရွက်မှုပြု)
She **is having** her dinner.
သူမ ညစာစားနေသည်ဟု သုံးနိုင်သည်။
- 3. I **have** a bath.
ကျွန်တော် ရေချိုးသည်။ (ဆောင်ရွက်မှုပြု)
I **am having** a bath.
ကျွန်တော် ရေချိုးနေသည်ဟု သုံးနိုင်သည်။

These verbs are used in the Simple Present. They may, however, be used in the continuous tense with a change of meaning; as an example, I am thinking of (= considering the idea) of going to America.

Mr. Singh is minding (= looking after) the baby while his wife is out shopping.

H. S. E. G. (PAGE. 108)
WREN AND MARTIN

PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE မှု အားပါးများ။

၁။ ယခုလောလောဆယ် ပြောဆိုရေးသားနေချိန်မှာ ဖြစ်ပျက်နေတဲ့ အဖြစ်အပျက်ကို ဖော်ပြရာမှာ သုံးပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ**
1. I **am writing** a book now.
ယခု ကျွန်တော် စာအုပ်တစ်အုပ် ရေးနေတယ်။
 2. It **is raining** at the moment.
ယခု မိုးရွာနေတယ်။

၂။ မဝေးလှတဲ့ အနာဂတ်ကာလ (near future) မှာ အလုပ်တစ်ခုကို လုပ်မှာဖြစ်ကြောင်း (Future - သဘောနဲ့) ဖော်ပြရေးသားရာမှာလဲ သုံးပါတယ်။ များသောအားဖြင့် အနာဂတ် အချိန်ပြ ပုဒ်တွေဖြစ်တဲ့ tomorrow, next စသည်တို့နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ရေးသားလေ့ရှိပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ**
1. I **am leaving** for Mandalay tomorrow.
မနက်ဖြန်ကွရင် မန္တလေးမြို့သို့ ကျွန်တော်သွားမလို့။
(သွားနေသည်ဟု ဘာသာမပြန်ရ)

၃။ ယခုလောလောဆယ် ပြောဆိုနေတဲ့အချိန်မှာ (temporary action) ခေတ္တယာယီမျှ လုပ်ကိုင်နေတဲ့ အလုပ်ကလေးတစ်ခု မပြီးပြတ်သေးလို့ ဆက်လက်လုပ်ကိုင်နေဆဲဖြစ်တယ်လို့ ဖော်ပြချင်တဲ့အခါမှာလဲ သုံးပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ**
- Hnin Hnin **is knitting** a sweater for her father.
နှင်းနှင်းက သူ့အဖေအတွက် ဆွယ်တာအင်္ကျီတစ်ထည် ထိုးနေတယ်။

၄။ မကြာခဏ၊ ထပ်တလဲလဲ ဖြစ်လေ့ဖြစ်ထရှိတဲ့ အကွင့်စရိုက်ကို ဖော်ပြရေးသားရာမှာလဲ သုံးပါတယ်။ များသောအားဖြင့် always, continually စတဲ့ Frequency adverb တွေနဲ့ တွဲဖက်ရေးသားလေ့ရှိပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ**
1. This careless boy **is always** losing his book.
ဒီ ပေါ့လျော့တဲ့ကောင်လေးဟာ စာအုပ်အမြဲတမ်း ပျောက်နေတာပဲ။

2. This curious girl is continually asking questions.
ဒီ စပ်စုတဲ့ကောင်မလေးဟာ မေးခွန်းတွေကို အဆက်မပြတ်မေးနေတာပဲ။

၅။ ပြောင်းလဲနေတဲ့ အခြေအနေတွေ (changing situations) ကို ဖော်ပြရေးသားရာမှာလည်း သုံးပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ**
1. The population of the world **is rising** very fast.
ကမ္ဘာ့လူဦးရေကတော့ အမြန်ပြောင်းလဲတိုးပွားနေတာပဲ။
 2. **Is** your English **getting** better?
မင်းရဲ့အင်္ဂလိပ်စာ တိုးတက်မှုရှိရဲ့လား။

SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (OR) PRESENT CONTINUOUS PRESENT နှင့် CONTINUOUS ပါး၏ ကွဲပြားခြားနားမှု အပေါ်

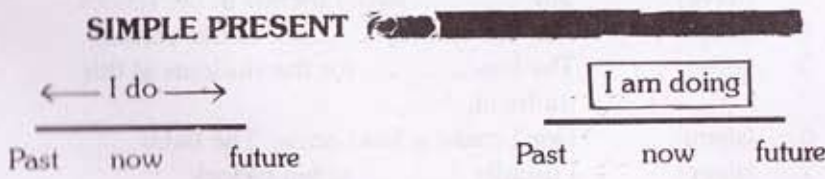
Simple Present Tense

အမှန်တရား၊ အကွင့်စရိုက်၊ မလေ့ထုံးစံ၊ လက်ရှိဖြစ်ပျက်မှုတို့ကို ဖော်ပြချင်တဲ့အခါမှာ (Present Tense) ကို သုံးကြောင်း ရှင်းပြခဲ့ပြီးဖြစ်ပါတယ်။ ယေဘုယျအားဖြင့် ဖြစ်တဲ့ သဘော၊ ထပ်တလဲလဲဖြစ်တတ်တဲ့သဘောတွေကို ဖော်ပြပြောဆိုလိုတဲ့အခါ သုံးပါတယ်။ "ယခုလောလောဆယ် ပြောဆိုရေးသားနေတဲ့အချိန်မှာ တကယ် ပြုလုပ်နေဖို့ မလိုပါဘူး။"

Present Continuous Tense

ယခုလောလောဆယ် ပြောဆိုနေတဲ့အချိန်ကာလမှာ တကယ်ဖြစ်ပျက်ပြုလုပ်နေတဲ့ ဖြစ်ရပ်များကို ဖော်ပြချင်တဲ့အခါမှာသာ သုံးပါတယ်။

အောက်က ရှင်းလင်းချက်ကို ယှဉ်တွဲပြီး လေ့လာကြည့်ပါဦး။



- ဥပမာ**
1. The kettle **is boiling** now.
ရေခွေးဆိုးဆူနေတယ်။ (ယခုပြောနေတဲ့အချိန်မှာ ဆူနေတာ)

- 2. Water boils at 100 degrees centigrade.
ရေဟာ (၁၀၀) ဒီဂရီစင်တီဂရိတ်ကိုရောက်ရင် ဆူတယ်။
(ဘယ်အချိန်မဆို ရေဆူမှတ် ၁၀၀ ဒီဂရီစင်တီဂရိတ်ရောက်ရင် ဆူတယ်။)

ဒါကြောင့် Simple Present & Present Continuousရဲ့ ကွာခြားချက်က-

၁။ ယခုလောလောဆယ် ပြောဆိုရေးသားနေတဲ့အချိန်မှာ တကယ် ပြုလုပ် နေဖို့ လိုတာ မလိုတာ ကွာခြားပါတယ်။

Present = လောလောဆယ်မှာ ပြုလုပ် နေဖို့ မလိုဘူး။

Continuous = လောလောဆယ်မှာ ပြုလုပ် နေဖို့လိုတယ်။

၂။ ယာယီအခြေအနေနဲ့ အမြဲတမ်းဖြစ်ပျက်နေတဲ့ အခြေအနေအရလဲ ကွာခြားပါတယ်။

Present = အမြဲတမ်း (permanent situation) အခြေအနေကို ညွှန်းတယ်။

Continuous = ယာယီ (temporary situation) အခြေအနေကို ညွှန်းတယ်။

ဥပမာ 1. I live in Yangon. I have been there for twenty years.
ကျွန်တော် ရန်ကုန်မှာနေတယ်။ ဒီ (ရန်ကုန်) မှာနေတာ အနှစ် နှစ်ဆယ် ရှိပြီ။

2. I am living with some friends until I can find a flat.
ကျွန်တော် (အတွက်) အခန်းတစ်ခန်းမရခင် မိတ်ဆွေတချို့နဲ့ (ခေတ္တ) နေပါတယ်။

Exercise No. (79)

Write whichever is correct, the present continuous tense or the simple present tense of the verbs in brackets.

- 1. (come) He sometimes to visit us.
- 2. (have) She a cold bath now.
- 3. (have) She many friends in her school.
- 4. (stop) The bus usually at this corner.
- 5. (stop) The bus for the students at this moment.
- 6. (sleep) Don't make a loud noise. The baby
- 7. (sleep) I usually at ten o'clock.
- 8. (come) He always to school on foot .
- 9. (come) Our teacher to school on foot now.

- 10. (teach) Don't talk! Our teacher us how to write essays.
- 11. (teach) U Lwin is a teacher . He English.
- 12. (fall) The leaves from the trees in summer.
- 13. (sleep) Look! The baby soundly.
- 14. (sleep) He fourteen hours a day.
- 15. (do) He usually his work well.
- 16. (do) He his homework now.
- 17. (write) Ma Ei is busy now. She a letter.
- 18. (write) Ma Ei many letters to her parents.
- 19. (smoke) U Su usually a cigarette.
- 20. (smoke) U Aung Myint very much.
- 21. (have) We English lessons three times a week.
- 22. (study) We our English lesson now.
- 23. (love) Mothers their children.
- 24. (love) Now our father our mother very much.
- 25. (rain) It a great deal in June and July.
- 26. (rain) Look! It heavily.
- 27. (know) Now she what is right and what is wrong.
- 28. (remember) At present, I my old friends.
- 29. (be) Now my father a doctor.
- 30. (think) He about his lover at present.

SIMPLE PAST TENSE

အတိတ်က အကျိုးဆက်ပြတ်တဲ့ဖြစ်ရပ်တွေကို ဖော်ပြပြောဆိုချင်ရင်ဟော့ Past tense ကို သုံးရပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ

- 1. She was born in 1970.
သူမကို ၁၉၇၀ ခုနှစ်မှာ မွေးဖွားခဲ့ပါတယ်။
- 2. Daw Sein died two years ago.
လွန်ခဲ့တဲ့နှစ်နှစ်က ဒေါ်စိန်သေခဲ့တယ်။
- 3. The thief stole the money last night.
ပိုက်ဆံကို မနေ့ညက သူခိုးခိုးသွားတယ်။

Past tense နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ပြီး သုံးလေ့ရှိတဲ့ ဒီစကားလုံးလေးတွေကိုလည်း ကျက်ထားဖို့ လိုပါတယ်။

| | | |
|--------------|---|-------------------------------------|
| previous | = | အရင် ကျသော |
| last | = | လွန်ခဲ့သော (last week, year, month) |
| ago | = | လွန်ခဲ့သော၊ လွန်ခဲ့သည့်အခါက |
| yesterday | = | မနေ့က |
| yester-night | = | မနေ့ညက |
| yester-week | = | လွန်ခဲ့သောအပတ်က |
| yester-year | = | လွန်ခဲ့သောနှစ်က |

အတိတ်က အကျိုးဆက်ပြတ်တဲ့ ဖြစ်ရပ်ဆိုတာက အတိတ်တစ်ချိန်က စတင်ဖြစ်ပျက်ခဲ့ပြီး တော့ အတိတ်တစ်ချိန်မှာတင်ပဲ ပြီးဆုံးခဲ့တယ်။ အတိတ်မှာပဲ ကျန်ရစ်ခဲ့တဲ့ အကြောင်းအရာတွေကို ဆိုလိုပါတယ်။

ယခု ပြောဆိုရေးသားနေချိန်မှာ အဲဒီဖြစ်ရပ်ဟာ ဆက်လက်ပြီး မဖြစ်တော့ဘူး။ မရှိတော့ဘူး လို့ ဆိုလိုပါတယ်။

PAST TENSE ပြောင်းပျက်ခြင်း

ဝါကျတစ်ကြောင်းကို Past Tense ပြောင်းတော့မယ်ဆိုရင် အဲဒီဝါကျမှာရေးထားတဲ့ ကြိယာအမျိုးအစားကို ဂရုပြုရပါတယ်။

- 1. Verb to be နဲ့ ရေးထားတဲ့ ဝါကျဆိုရင်
am, is ကို was ပြောင်း
are ကို were ပြောင်း
- 2. Verb to have နဲ့ ရေးထားတဲ့ ဝါကျဆိုရင်
has, have ကို had ပြောင်း
- 3. အကူကြိယာနဲ့ ရေးထားတဲ့ ဝါကျဆိုရင်
will ကို would ပြောင်း shall ကို should ပြောင်း
can ကို could ပြောင်း may ကို might ပြောင်း
- 4. Verb to do နဲ့ ရေးထားတဲ့ ဝါကျဆိုရင်
regular verb လား၊ irregular verb လား
ဘယ်လိုကြိယာအမျိုးအစားနဲ့ ရေးထားသလဲဆိုတာသတိပြုရပါတယ်။

(A) Regular Verb နှင့် ရေးထားတဲ့ ဝါကျဆိုရင်

Regular Verb ဆိုတာ Present Tense ကြိယာတစ်လုံးကို ed တို့ d တို့ ပေါင်းပေး လိုက်ရုံနဲ့ Past Tense နဲ့ Past Participle ဖြစ်သွားတဲ့ ကြိယာတွေကို ခေါ်ပါတယ်။ အဲဒီလို Regular Verb တွေနဲ့ ရေးထားတဲ့ ဝါကျတွေဆိုရင်တော့ အောက်မှာဖော်ပြထားတဲ့ ကြိယာကို Past Tense နဲ့ Past participle ပြောင်းနည်း စည်းမျဉ်းတွေကို သတိပြုလိုက်မှာ ရေးသားရပါတယ်။

A regular verb is one which forms its past and past participle forms by merely adding -ed or -d to the present forms.
WARRINER'S E. G AND C. (PAGE. 120)

I. ကြိယာတစ်လုံးဟာ e နဲ့ဆုံးနေရင် Past Tense နဲ့ Past Participle ပြောင်းပို့ရန် အတွက် "d" ကိုပဲ ထည့်ပေးရပါတယ်။

| | | | | |
|------|-----------|-------|--------|--------|
| ဥပမာ | ချစ်သည် | love | loved | loved |
| | မုန်းသည် | hate | hated | hated |
| | ကြိုက်သည် | like | liked | liked |
| | ပြုံးသည် | smile | smiled | smiled |
| | ကသည် | dance | danced | danced |

II. ကြိယာတစ်လုံးဟာ "y" နဲ့ဆုံးနေပြီး၊ y ရဲ့ရှေ့မှာ "ဗျည်း" ရှိနေမယ်ဆိုရင် y ကို i ပြောင်းပြီး၊ ed ထည့်ပေးရပါတယ်။

| | | | | |
|------|--------------------|-------|---------|---------|
| ဥပမာ | ကြိုးစားသည် | try | tried | tried |
| | လက်ထပ်သည် | marry | married | married |
| | လေ့လာသည် | study | studied | studied |
| | လျှောက်ထားသည် | apply | applied | applied |
| | အလျင်အမြန်လှုပ်သည် | hurry | hurried | hurried |

III. y နဲ့ဆုံးပေးမယ့် "y" ရှေ့မှာ သရ ရှိနေရင်တော့ y ကို i မပြောင်းရပါဘူး။ "ed" ကိုပဲ ပေါင်းထည့်ပေးရပါတယ်။

| | | | | |
|------|-----------------|--------|----------|----------|
| ဥပမာ | ကစားသည် | play | played | played |
| | နာခံသည် | obey | obeyed | obeyed |
| | အသုံးချသည် | employ | employed | employed |
| | နှစ်သက်ခံစားသည် | enjoy | enjoyed | enjoyed |

IV. ကြိယာတစ်လုံးဟာ "ဗျည်း" နဲ့ဆုံးနေမယ်၊ ဗျည်းရဲ့ရှေ့မှာ "သရ" တစ်လုံးရှိနေမယ်ဆိုရင် နောက်ဆုံးက ဗျည်းကိုနှစ်ဆပြုပြီးမှ ed ထည့်ရပါတယ်။

| | | | | |
|------|------------------|--------|-----------|-----------|
| ဥပမာ | ရပ်တံ့သည် | stop | stopped | stopped |
| | လုယူသည် | rob | robbed | robbed |
| | တပ်ဆင်သည် | fit | fitted | fitted |
| | ပိုမိုနှစ်သက်သည် | prefer | preferred | preferred |
| | နောင်တရသည် | regret | regretted | regretted |
| | ညွှန်းသည် | refer | referred | referred |

V. ကြိယာတစ်လုံးဟာ "l" နဲ့ဆုံးပြီး (များသောအားဖြင့်) ရှေ့မှာ သရတစ်လုံးရှိနေရင် "l" ကို နှစ်ဆပြုပြီးမှ "ed" ထည့်ရပါတယ်။

| | | | | |
|------|---------------|---------|------------|------------|
| ဥပမာ | ခရီးသွားသည် | travel | travelled | travelled |
| | ပယ်ဖျက်သည် | cancel | cancelled | cancelled |
| | အံ့ဩသည် | marvel | marvelled | marvelled |
| | ထိန်းသိမ်းသည် | control | controlled | controlled |

VI. ကြိယာတစ်လုံးဟာ "c" နဲ့ ဆုံးနေရင်တော့ "k" ထပ်ထည့်ပြီးမှ "ed" ကို ပေါင်းစပ်ရပါတယ်။

| | | | | |
|------|--------------------|--------|-----------|-----------|
| ဥပမာ | ဖျော်ပွဲစားထွက်သည် | picnic | picnicked | picnicked |
| | တုပပြောင်လှောင်သည် | mimic | mimicked | mimicked |
| | နောက်ပြောင်သည် | frolic | forlicked | frolicked |

VII. အထက်ပါနည်းလမ်းတွေကလွဲရင် ကျန်ကြိယာတွေမှာ "ed" ကိုသာ ပေါင်းထည့်ပေးရပါတယ်။

| | | | | |
|------|-------------|---------|-----------|-----------|
| ဥပမာ | လိုအပ်သည် | need | needed | needed |
| | ကျိုချက်သည် | boil | boiled | boiled |
| | လှည့်သည် | turn | turned | turned |
| | ရောက်ရှိသည် | reach | reached | reached |
| | ရှင်းပြသည် | explain | explained | explained |

(B) Irregular Verb နှင့် ရေးထားသော ဝါကျများ

Irregular Verb ဆိုတာ Present Tense ကြိယာတစ်လုံးကို d / ed တို့ပေါင်းပေးရုံနဲ့ Past Tense နဲ့ Past Participle ဖြစ်မသွားတဲ့ ကြိယာတွေကို ခေါ်ပါတယ်။ သီးသန့် ကျက်မှတ်ထားရမှာဖြစ်ပါတယ်။ အုပ်စု (၅) စုခွဲပြီး ဖော်ပြထားပါတယ်။ အလွတ်ကျက်မှတ် ထားရမှာဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

An irregular verb is one that does not form its past and past participle forms by adding -ed or -d to the present form.

LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

GROUP 1

ဒီအုပ်စုမှာ Present tense နဲ့ Past tense သုံးခုလုံး စာလုံးပေါင်း တူနေတာကို သတိပြုပါ။

Infinitive Past simple Past Participle

| | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|------------------------------------|
| put | put | put | ထားသည်။ ထည့်သည်။ |
| bet | bet | bet | လောင်းကစားသည်။ |
| burst | burst | burst | ပေါက်ကွဲသည်။ |
| cast | cast | cast | (ခေါင်းလောင်းစသည်) သွန်းလောင်းသည်။ |
| cost | cost | cost | တန်ဖိုးကျသင့်သည်။ |
| cut | cut | cut | ဖြတ်တောက်သည်။ |
| hit | hit | hit | ထိမှန်သည်။ ရိုက်သည်။ ထိုးသည်။ |
| hurt | hurt | hurt | ထိခိုက်နာကျင်သည်။ |
| let | let | let | ခွင့်ပြုသည်။ |
| set | set | set | လ/ ကြယ်/ နေဝင်သည်။ |
| shut | shut | shut | (တံခါး) ပိတ်သည်။ |
| spread | spread | spread | ဖြန့်သည်။ ဖျံ့သည်။ |
| thrust | thrust | thrust | တွန်းထိုးသည်။ |
| upset | upset | upset | (ကိုယ်/စိတ်) မတည်မငြိမ်ဖြစ်သည်။ |

(from "set")

GROUP 2

ဒီအုပ်စုမှာ Present tense နဲ့ Past tense စာလုံးပေါင်း တူနေတာကို သတိပြုပါ။

Infinitive Past simple Past Participle

| | | | |
|------|------|--------|----------|
| beat | beat | beaten | ရိုက်သည် |
|------|------|--------|----------|

GROUP 3

ဒီအုပ်စုမှာ Present tense နဲ့ Past participle စာလုံးပေါင်း တူနေတာကို သတိပြုပါ။

Infinitive Past simple Past Participle

| | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|------------|
| become | became | become | ဖြစ်လာသည်။ |
|--------|--------|--------|------------|

(from "come")

| | | | |
|---------------|----------|----------|---------------------------------|
| come | came | come | လာသည်။ |
| overcome | overcame | overcome | အောင်မြင်/ နှိမ်နင်းသည်။ |
| (from "come") | | | |
| overrun | overran | overrun | အနှံ့အပြား ရောက်သည်။ |
| (from "run") | | | |
| run | ran | run | ဝင်ရောက် တိုက်ခိုက် ဖျက်ဆီးသည်။ |
| | | | ပြေးသည်။ |

GROUP 4

ဒီအုပ်စုမှာ Past tense နဲ့ Past participle စာလုံးပေါင်း တူနေတာကို သတိပြုပါ။

Infinitive Past simple Past Participle

| | | | |
|-------|---------|---------|--|
| bend | bent | bent | ကောက်ကွေးသည်။ ကွေးသည်။ ကိုင်းညွတ်သည်။ |
| bind | bound | bound | ချည်နှောင်သည်။ |
| bleed | bled | bled | သွေးထွက်သည်။ |
| bring | brought | brought | ယူလာသည်။ |
| build | built | built | တည်ဆောက်သည်။ |
| burn | burnt | burnt | လောင်ကျွမ်းသည်။ |
| buy | bought | bought | ဝယ်ယူသည်။ |
| catch | caught | caught | ဖမ်းဆီးသည်။ |
| deal | dealt | dealt | ဝေငှသည်။ ပေါင်းသင်းဆက်ဆံသည်။ |
| dig | dug | dug | တူးဆွသည်။ |
| dream | dreamt | dreamt | အိပ်မက်မက်သည်။ |
| feed | fed | fed | အစားကျွေးသည်။ |
| feel | felt | felt | ထိတွေ့ခံစားသည်။ |
| fight | fought | fought | တိုက်ခိုက်သည်။ |
| find | found | found | တွေ့ရှိသည်။ |
| fling | flung | flung | (လွှဲ၍) ပစ်သည်။ |
| get | got | got | ရရှိသည်။ |
| hang | hung | hung | ချိတ်ဆွဲသည်။ |
| have | had | had | (မှာ) ရှိသည်။ |
| hear | heard | heard | ကြားသည်။ |
| hold | held | held | ကွင်းပသည်။ ကိုင်တွယ်သည်။ |

| | | | |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|-------------------------------------|
| keep | kept | kept | သိမ်းထားသည်။ |
| lay | laid | laid | ထားသည်၊ ဥသည်။ |
| lead | led | led | ခေါင်းဆောင်သည်။ |
| lean | leant | leant | ငုံသည်၊ ကုန်းသည်၊ ကော့သည်၊ လှန်သည်။ |
| leap | leapt | leapt | ခုန်လွှားသည်။ |
| learn | learnt | learnt | သင်ယူသည်။ |
| leave | left | left | ထွက်ခွာသည်။ |
| lend | lent | lent | ချေးငှားသည်။ |
| light | lit | lit | မီးညှိသည်။ |
| lose | lost | lost | ပျောက်ဆုံးသည်။ |
| make | made | made | ပြုလုပ်သည်။ |
| mean | meant | meant | ဆိုလိုသည်။ |
| meet | met | met | တွေ့ဆုံသည်။ |
| mislead | misled | misled | တလွဲလမ်းညွှန်သည်။ |
| (from "lead") | | | လှည့်ဖြားသည်။ |
| mislay | mislaid | mislaid | တလွဲထားမိသည်။ |
| (from "lay") | | | |
| overhear | overheard | overheard | အမှတ်တမဲ့ ကြားမိသည်။ |
| (from "hear") | | | |
| pay | paid | paid | ပေးသည်။ |
| read | read | read | စာဖတ်သည်။ |
| say | said | said | ပြောဆိုသည်။ |
| seek | sought | sought | ရှာဖွေသည်။ |
| sell | sold | sold | ရောင်းချသည်။ |
| send | sent | sent | ပေးပို့သည်။ |
| shine | shone | shone | တောက်ပသည်။ |
| sit | sat | sat | ထိုင်သည်။ |
| shoot | shot | shot | ပစ်ခတ်သည်။ |
| sleep | slept | slept | အိပ်သည်။ |
| slide | slid | slid | လျှောသွားသည်။ ချော်လဲသည်။ |
| smell | smelt | smelt | အနံ့ရသည်၊ အနံ့ခံသည်။ |
| spell | spelt | spelt | စာလုံးပေါင်းသည်။ |
| spend | spent | spent | အသုံးပြုသည်။ |
| spill | spilt | spilt | ဖိတ်စင်သည်။ |

| | | | |
|----------------|-------------|------------|---|
| spin | spun | spun | မိုင်းငင်သည်။ |
| | (or "span") | | |
| spoil | spoilt | spoilt | ဖျက်စီးသည်၊ ဖျက်စီးစေသည်။ |
| stand | stood | stood | မတ်တပ်ရပ်သည်။ |
| stick | stuck | stuck | ထိုးသည်၊ စိုက်သည်၊ (ကော်) ကပ်သည်။ |
| sting | stung | stung | (ဖျား) တုပ်သည်၊ ထိုးသည်၊ စူးရှထိခိုက်သည်။ |
| strike | struck | struck | တိုက်ပုတ်သည်၊ ထိုးသည်၊ (တံမြက်) လှည်းသည်။ |
| sweep | swept | swept | ဒန်းစီးသည်၊ ဟီးလေးနီသည်။ |
| swing | swung | swung | သင်ပေးသည်။ |
| teach | taught | taught | ပြောဆိုသည်။ |
| tell | told | told | ကြားသည်၊ ထင်သည်။ |
| think | thought | thought | စားလည်သည်။ |
| understand | understood | understood | |
| (from "stand") | | | |
| weep | wept | wept | ငိုကြွေးသည်။ |
| win | won | won | အောင်မြင်သည်။ |
| wind | wound | wound | ရစ်ပတ်သည်။ |
| withhold | withheld | withheld | ချုပ်တည်းသည်၊ ကန့်ကွက်သည်။ |
| (from "hold") | | | လိမ်၍ ညှစ်သည်။ |
| wring | wrung | wrung | |

GROUP 5

ဒီဆုပ်စုမှာ Present tense, Past tense နဲ့ Past participle (၃) ခုလုံး စာလုံးပေါင်း တစ်ခုနဲ့တစ်ခု မတူတာကို သတိပြုပါ။

| Infinitive | Past simple | Past Participle | |
|---------------|-------------|-----------------|-------------------------|
| arise | arose | arisen | တက်သည်၊ ထသည်၊ ကြွသည် |
| (from "rise") | | | |
| begin | began | begun | အစပြုသည်။ |
| bear | bore | born (e) | သည်းခံသည်၊ မွေးဖွားသည်။ |
| bite | bit | bitten | ကိုက်သည်။ |
| blow | blew | blown | တိုက်ခတ်သည်။ |
| break | broke | broken | ချိုးဖဲ့သည်။ |

| | | | |
|---------------|---------|-----------|-------------------------------|
| choose | chose | chosen | ရွေးချယ်သည်။ |
| do | did | done | ပြုလုပ်သည်။ |
| draw | drew | drawn | ဆွဲသည်။ |
| drink | drank | drunk | သောက်သည်။ |
| drive | drove | driven | မောင်းနှင်သည်။ |
| eat | ate | eaten | စားသည်။ |
| fall | fell | fallen | ကျသည်။ |
| fly | flew | flown | ပျံသန်းသည်။ |
| forget | forgot | forgotten | မမေ့လျော့သည်။ |
| forgive | forgave | forgiven | အပြစ်လွှတ်သည်။ ခွင့်လွှတ်သည်။ |
| (from "give") | | | |
| freeze | froze | frozen | ရေခဲသည်။ အေး၍ခဲသည်။ |
| give | gave | given | ပေးသည်။ |
| go | went | gone | သွားသည်။ |
| grow | grew | grown | စိုက်ပျိုးသည်။ ပေါက်သည်။ |
| hide | hid | hidden | ပုန်းသည်။ ဝှက်သည်။ |
| know | knew | known | သိသည်။ |
| lie | lay | lain | လဲလျောင်းသည်။ |
| mistake | mistook | mistaken | မှားယွင်းသည်။ |
| (from "take") | | | |
| ride | rode | ridden | စီးသည်။ စီးနှင်းသည်။ |
| ring | rang | rung | တီးသည်။ ထိုးသည်။ လှုပ်သည်။ |
| rise | rose | risen | တိုးတက်သည်။ |
| saw | sawed | sawn | လွှတ်တိုက်သည်။ |
| see | saw | seen | မြင်သည်။ |
| sew | sewed | sewn | (အပ်နှင့်) ချုပ်သည်။ သီသည်။ |
| shake | shook | shaken | လှုပ်သည်။ |
| show | showed | shown | ပြသည်။ |
| shrink | shrank | shrunk | ရွံ့တွန့်သည်။ |
| sing | sang | sung | သီချင်းဆိုသည်။ |
| sink | sank | sunk | နစ်မြုပ်သည်။ |
| speak | spoke | spoken | စကားပြောသည်။ |
| spin | span | spun | ဝိုင်းငင်သည်။ |
| (or spun) | | | |
| spring | sprang | sprung | ခုန်လွှားသည်။ |

| | | | |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|--------------------------------|
| steal | stole | stolen | နိုးသည်။ |
| strive | strove | striven | အားစိုက်ထုတ်သည်။ ကြိုးပမ်းသည်။ |
| swear | swore | sworn | ကနိန့်ဆိုသည်။ |
| swim | swam | swum | ရေကူးသည်။ |
| take | took | taken | ယူသွားသည်။ |
| throw | threw | thrown | ပစ်သည်။ လွှဲပစ်သည်။ |
| tread | trod | trodden | ခြေချသည်။ နင်းသည်။ |
| undergo | underwent | undergone | ခံရသည်။ တွေ့ကြုံသည်။ |
| (from "go") | | | |
| undo | undid | undone | ဖျက်ပြယ်စေသည်။ ဖြေသည်။ |
| (from "do") | | | |
| wake | woke | waken | နိုးသည်။ နိုးစေသည်။ |
| wear | wore | worn | ဝတ်ဆင်သည်။ |
| withdraw | withdrew | withdrawn | ရုပ်သိမ်းသည်။ ဆုတ်ခွာသည်။ |
| (from "draw") | | | |
| write | wrote | written | ရေးသည်။ |
| am | was | been | ရှိသည်။ ဖြစ်သည်။ |
| is | was | been | ရှိသည်။ ဖြစ်သည်။ |
| are | were | been | ရှိကြသည်။ ဖြစ်ကြသည်။ |

အချို့ကြိယာတွေကတော့ Regular Verb ရော Irregular Verb ရော ဖြစ်နိုင်ပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ

| | | | |
|------------------|-------|---------|---------|
| လောင်ကျွမ်းသည် | burn | burned | burned |
| | burn | burnt | burnt |
| အိပ်မက်မက်သည် | dream | dreamed | dreamed |
| | dream | dreamt | dreamt |
| မှီသည် | lean | leaned | leaned |
| | lean | leant | leant |
| သင်ယူသည် | learn | learned | learned |
| | learn | learnt | learnt |
| အနံ့ရသည်၊ ရှူသည် | smell | smelled | smelled |
| | smell | smelt | smelt |
| စာလုံးပေါင်းသည် | spell | spelled | spelled |
| | spell | spelt | spelt |

| | | | |
|------------|-------|---------|---------|
| ဖိတ်ကျသည် | spill | spilled | spilled |
| | spill | spilt | spilt |
| ဖျက်ဆီးသည် | spoil | spoiled | spoiled |
| | spoil | spoilt | spoilt |

N.B

- Past Participle - တွေကို
 1. Perfect Tense - ဝါကျတွေ ရေးဖွဲ့တဲ့အခါနဲ့
 2. Passive Voice - ဝါကျတွေ ရေးဖွဲ့တဲ့အခါမှာ သုံးပါတယ်။ သက်ဆိုင်ရာအခန်းမှာ အသေးစိတ်ကြည့်ပါ။

Exercise No. (80)

Change the verb of the following sentences from simple present to simple past tense form.

အောက်ပါဝါကျများကို Past tense ကြိယာပုံစံသို့ ပြောင်းပါ။

- I am interested in English.
- They are brothers.
- He is a good friend.
- This lesson is very easy.
- I have many friends.
- She has a very bad cold.
- We have a new house.
- The boy buys many books.
- The girls go to school on foot.
- She sits near the window.
- Our father reads the newspaper.
- Phyu Phyu puts on new clothes.
- They write their exercises in ink.
- We swim in the river.
- The boy smiles at the girl.
- The man runs after the dog.
- He listens to some music.
- She comes to school late.
- He takes his books home.
- He drinks a glass of milk.

- I wake up early.
- They want to have a holiday.
- She knows all the answers.
- The girl shouts at the boy.
- Our teacher reads us a story.

PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE

အတိတ်ကာလရဲ့ တိကျတဲ့အချိန်တစ်ချိန်မှာ အလုပ်တစ်ခုကို မပြီးမပြတ်သေးလို့ ဆက်လက်လုပ်ကိုင်နေဆဲဖြစ်တယ်လို့ ဖော်ပြချင်ရင်ဖြစ်စေ၊ အတိတ်ကာလအပိုင်းအခြားတစ်ခုမှာ ဖြစ်ရပ်တစ်ခု မပြီးသေးကြောင်း ဆက်တိုက်ဖြစ်ပျက်လျက်ရှိကြောင်း ဖော်ပြချင်ရင်ဖြစ်စေ Past continuous tense ကို သုံးရပါတယ်။ ကြိယာပုံစံကတော့

“(was/were) + v-ing” ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

- This time last year, I was living in Paungde.
မနှစ်က ဒီအချိန်မှာ၊ ကျွန်တော် ပေါင်းတည်မြို့မှာ နေနေခဲ့တာပေါ့။
- What were you doing at nine o'clock last night?
ပြီးခဲ့တဲ့ ည (၉)နာရီက မင်း ဘာလုပ်နေလဲ။
- We were watching television at nine o'clock last night.
ပြီးခဲ့တဲ့ ည (၉) နာရီက ကျွန်တော်တို့ ရုပ်မြင်သံကြား ကြည့်နေခဲ့ကြပါတယ်။

Exercise No. (81)

Change the verb of the following sentences from simple present to past continuous form.

အောက်ပါဝါကျများကို Past Continuous ပုံစံပြောင်းပါ။

- Cho Pyone sings a song.
Ans: Cho Pyone was singing a song.
- He drives a bus.
- Daw Aye washes the clothes.
- The girl cooks rice and curry.
- She does her homework.
- They wait for the bus.

- 7. We listen to the radio.
- 8. U Tun Maung goes to the cinema to see a film.
- 9. The children clap their hands.
- 10. The boys play football.
- 11. The teacher draws a map on the blackboard.
- 12. The wind blows very hard.
- 13. Win Zaw wears a white shirt.
- 14. Thiha sits at the back.
- 15. The pupils write in their books.

Compare:

PAST CONTINUOUS

We use the past continuous to say that we were in the middle of an action:
I was walking across the field.
(I was in the field.)
The plane was flying very low.

PAST SIMPLE

We use the past simple for a complete action in the past:
I walked across the field.
(I crossed it completely.)
The plane crashed in a field.

We often use the past continuous to describe the background and the past simple for the actions in a story:

The sun was shining . . . I ran to the village.
The crowds were waiting . . . The Princess arrived.

Verbs of thinking and feeling and state verbs are usually simple, not continuous. (For more details see Unit 3.)

I thought everything was OK. *We liked the film.*
I knew there was a problem. *Mr Young once owned the field.*

We often use the past continuous and simple together when a shorter action interrupted a longer one (came in the middle of it):

I fell asleep while I was watching television.
We were sitting in the garden when it suddenly started to rain.
The phone rang while Gary was making lunch.

Longer action: . . . Gary was making lunch . . .

Shorter action: The phone rang

We use two past simple verbs for one action after another:
When I heard the crash, I ran to the village. (= I heard it and then I ran.)

Oxford Practice Grammar John Eastwood (p.24)

SIMPLE PAST TENSE OR PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE
 PAST TENSE နှင့် PAST CONTINUOUS တို့၏ ဖွဲ့စည်းပုံအား အချိုး

၁။ Past Continuous tense ကို သီးသန့်တစ်ခုတည်းသုံးတာထက် Past tense နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ပြီး အသုံးပြုလေ့ရှိပါတယ်။
 အတိတ်ကပြီးစီးခဲ့တဲ့ ဖြစ်ရပ်နှစ်ခုမှာ ဖြစ်ရပ်တစ်ခုက အရှိန်ယူဆက်ဖြစ်နေတုန်း ကျန် ဖြစ်ရပ်တစ်ခုက ရုတ်တရက်ဖြစ်ပျက်ခဲ့ရင် အရှိန်ယူဆက်ဖြစ်နေတဲ့ ကြိယာကို Past continuous tense နဲ့ ရေးရပါတယ်။ ရုတ်တရက်ဖြစ်ပျက်တဲ့ ကြိယာကို Past tense နဲ့ ရေးရပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ

1. *I was reading* a book when the lights *went* out.
 ကျွန်တော် စာအုပ်တစ်အုပ်ဖတ်နေတုန်း မီးပျက်သွားတယ်။
 စာဖတ်နေတဲ့ဖြစ်ရပ်က အရှိန်ယူဆက်ဖြစ်တဲ့ ဖြစ်ရပ်ဖြစ်တယ်။ မီးပျက်တဲ့ဖြစ်ရပ်က ရုတ်တရက်ဖြစ်တဲ့ဖြစ်ရပ် ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။
2. *We were having* our dinner when the visitors *arrived*.
 ကျွန်တော်တို့ ထမင်းစားနေတုန်း ဧည့်သည်တွေ ရောက်လာခဲ့ကြတယ်။
3. When the telephone *rang*, *I was drinking* a cup of tea.
 တယ်လီဖုန်းလာတော့ ကျွန်တော်လက်ဖက်ရည်တစ်ခွက် သောက်နေတယ်။

Exercise No. (82)

Write whichever is correct, the simple past tense or the past continuous tense of the verbs in brackets.

Past Tense (သို့မဟုတ်) Past Continuous သင့်တော်ရာပုံစံဖြင့် ဖြေဆိုပါ။

1. (prepare) My mother dinner when I got home.
2. (leave) It was raining hard when I home.
3. (sleep) The children when their father came back home

- 4. (shine) The sun when we got up this morning.
- 5. (sleep) I well last night.
- 6. (write) He a letter when his friends called him.
- 7. (rain) It hard yesterday.
- 8. (read) I a detective story last night.
- 9. (play) The boys football in the evening yesterday.
- 10. (die) The old man of a heart attack two days ago.
- 11. (speak) I to him on the telephone last night.
- 12. (have) We dinner when you telephoned.
- 13. (see) I my friend at the movie last night.
- 14. (enter) The school-boys were playing when the teacher the classroom.
- 15. (draw) My sister a map when I saw her.
- 16. (take) He my photo while I was having dinner.
- 17. (watch) I television when my friends came to me.
- 18. (meet) I them when they were crossing the street.
- 19. (come) They here a month ago.
- 20. (discover) Columbus America in 1492.
- 21. (go) The sun was shining when we out.
- 22. (burn) The fire still at six o'clock this morning.
- 23. (cut) She her finger while she was cutting the bread.
- 24. (run) The little boy fell down while he
- 25. (go) I to the Sule Pagoda when I met them.

၂။ Past Continuous Tense ရဲ့နောက်အသုံးတစ်ခုကိုလဲ သတိပြုရပါမယ်။

အတိတ်က ပြီးစီးခဲ့တဲ့ ဖြစ်ရပ်နှစ်ခုမှာ နှစ်ခုလုံးဟာ တစ်ပြိုင်နက်တည်း၊ တစ်ချိန်တည်းမှာ ဖြစ်ပျက်ခဲ့တာဆိုရင် အဲဒီဖြစ်ရပ်နှစ်ခုလုံးကို Past continuous Tense သုံးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ 1. U Ko Ko **was playing** the piano while Mar Mar Aye **was singing** a song.
ဦးကိုကို စန္ဒယားတီးနေတုန်း မာမာအေးက သီချင်းဆိုနေတယ်။
2. I **was doing** my homework while my sister **was writing** an essay.
ကျွန်တော်တို့မလေး စာစီစာကုံးတစ်ပုဒ်ရေးနေတုန်း ကျွန်တော်က အိမ်စာလုပ်နေတယ်။

- 3. Our father **was watering** the flowers while our mother **was cooking** the dinner.
အဖေက ပန်းပင်တွေ ရေလောင်းနေတုန်း အမေက ညစာကို ချက်နေတယ်။
- 4. While I **was studying** my English lesson, my parents **were watching** television.
ကျွန်တော်က အင်္ဂလိပ်စာ သင်ခန်းစာတွေ လေ့လာနေတုန်း ကျွန်တော်မိဘတွေက ရုပ်မြင်သံကြား ကြည့်နေခဲ့ကြတယ်။

FUTURE TENSE

မဖြစ်သေးတဲ့ အာဂတိကာလမှာ ဖြစ်ရပ်တစ်ခု ဖြစ်ပျက်မယ်၊ ပြုလုပ်မယ်စသည်ဖြင့် ကြိုတင် ပြောဆိုချင်တဲ့အခါမှာ Future Tense ကို သုံးပါတယ်။ ကြိုယာတွဲပုံကတော့-

| | | |
|--------|-----------|----------------------|
| V/be | နဲ့ဆိုရင် | will + be |
| V/have | နဲ့ဆိုရင် | will + have |
| V/do | နဲ့ဆိုရင် | will + V1 ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။ |

အောက်ဖော်ပြပါ စကားလုံးတွေကလေးတွေကို Future Tense နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ပြီး သုံးစေရမို့ပါတယ်။

- Next = လာမည့်
- Coming = လာမည့်
- Tomorrow = မနက်ဖြန်

- ဥပမာ 1. I **will come** to you tomorrow.
မင်္ဂလာနဂါး မနက်ဖြန်လာမယ်။
2. They **will be** University students next year.
နောင်နှစ်ရောက်ရင် သူတို့ တက္ကသိုလ်ကျောင်းသားတွေ ဖြစ်လိမ့်မယ်။

FUTURE TENSE ပြုပုံပိုမိုနားထောင်ရန်

- 1. am, is, are တွေ V/be တွေပါတဲ့ ဝါကျဆိုရင် သူတို့ကိုဖြတ်ပြီး **will be, shall be** နဲ့ အစားထိုးရေရပါတယ်။
ဥပမာ 1. She **is** a teacher.
She **will be** a teacher.
- 2. There **is** a class next Friday.
There **will be** a class next Friday.

- 3. It **is** still open at four this evening.
It **will still be** open at four this evening.
- 4. I **am** very busy.
I **shall be** very busy.
- 5. We **are** very happy to hear the news.
We **shall be** very happy to hear the news.
- 6. There **is** time to buy the tickets.
There **will be** time to buy the tickets.

2. **has, have, had** စတဲ့ V **have** တွေပါတဲ့ ဝါကျဆိုရင် သူတို့ကိုဖြတ်ပြီး **will have, shall have** နဲ့ အစားထိုးရေးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
- 1. He **has** much money.
He **will have** much money.
 - 2. She **has** time to do homework.
She **will have** time to do homework.
 - 3. I **have** time to finish this book.
I **shall have** time to finish this book.
 - 4. We **have** our dinner.
We **shall have** our dinner.
 - 5. You **have** some more tea.
You **will have** some more tea.
 - 6. We **have** our lessons at two o'clock.
We **will have** our lessons at two o'clock.

3. **go, eat, sleep** စတဲ့ V/do တွေရဲ့ ရေးထားတဲ့ဝါကျဆိုရင်တော့ V/do ရဲ့ ရှေ့က **will (သို့) shall** ခံပေးရပါတယ်။ **will** တို့ **shall** တို့နောက်ကလိုက်တဲ့ ကြိယာမှာ **s, es, ed** စသည်တို့ မပါရပါဘူး။ (Present Tense) အများကိန်း ဖြစ်ရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
- 1. She **studies** her lessons well.
She **will study** her lessons well.
 - 2. He **comes** to the pictures with you.
He **will come** to the pictures with you.
 - 3. We **see** you again.
We **shall see** you again.
 - 4. You **marry** her.
You **will marry** her.
 - 5. I **remember** these sentences next lesson.
I **shall remember** these sentences next lesson.

WILL နှင့် SHALL ရဲ့ အသုံး

ရွေးစေတံသဒ္ဒါကျမ်းများအလိုအရဆိုရင်

မဖြစ်သေးတဲ့ (အနာဂတ်) ကာလမှာ အဖြစ်အပျက်၊ အကြောင်းအရာတစ်ခု ဖြစ်ပျက်လိမ့်မယ်။ ပြုလုပ်လိမ့်မယ်လို့ သာမန်အားဖြင့် ဖော်ပြလိုတဲ့အခါ...

* I, We စတဲ့ (First Person) တွေကို shall နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ရေးသားရပါတယ်။

* You, He, She, It, They စတဲ့ (Second Person, Third Person) တွေကို will နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ပြီး ရေးသားရပါတယ်။

မဖြစ်သေးတဲ့ (အနာဂတ်) ကာလမှာ သေချာစွာဖြစ်မယ့်သဘော၊ စိတ်ပိုင်းဖြတ်ထားတဲ့ သဘော၊ ကတိပေးထားတဲ့သဘောတွေနဲ့ ဖော်ပြလိုတဲ့အခါ...

* I, We စတဲ့ (First Person) တွေကို will နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ရေးသားရပါတယ်။

* You, He, She, It, They စတဲ့ (Second Person, Third Person) တွေကို shall နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ရေးသားရပါတယ်။

ဒါပေမယ့် စေတံသံသဒ္ဒါကျမ်းများရဲ့ အလိုအရဆိုရင်တော့

I, We တို့ကို shall နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ရေးသားရတယ်လို့ ဆိုပေမယ့် အောက်မှာဖော်ပြထားတဲ့ အချက်(၂) ချက်ကလွဲရင် I, We တို့ကို will နဲ့လည်း တွဲဖက်ရေးသားနိုင်ပါတယ်။

(A) I, We တို့နဲ့ မေးခွန်းဝါကျ တည်ဆောက်တဲ့အခါ shall နဲ့ ရေးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
- Shall I understand it?
ကျွန်တော် နားလည်ပါ့မလား။
 - Shall we be back in time?
ကျွန်တော်တို့ အချိန်မီပြန်ရောက်ပါ့မလား။

(B) When, If, Unless, Until တို့နဲ့ အစပြုတဲ့ ဝါကျပိုင်း (clause) တွေနဲ့ တွဲဖက်ပြီး ရေးသားတဲ့အခါ I တို့ We တို့ကို shall နဲ့ ရေးနိုင်ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
- 1. If we are ill, we **shall** go to the doctor.
ကျွန်ုပ်တို့ဖျားရင် ဆရာဝန်ဆီသွားမှာပေါ့။
 - 2. I **shall** wait until you come.
မင်း မလာမချင်း ငါစောင့်မယ်။
 - 3. I **shall** buy you a book when I get some money from my mother.
အဖေ့ဆီက ပိုက်ဆံရရင် မင်းကိုငါ စာအုပ်တစ်အုပ်ဝယ်ပေးမယ်။

Although "shall" exists as the classic, first-person auxiliary in the future tense, most Americans today use "will" in all three persons, singular and plural.

G. E. E (PAGE. 43)
R. J. DIXSON

Exercise No. (83)

Change the verb of each sentence to future time.

အောက်ပါဝါကျများကို Future Tense ပုံစံပြောင်းပါ။

1. He arrives on the three o'clock train.
2. They return sometime next month.
3. She writes to you again.
4. We like that picture very much.
5. He speaks to us in English.
6. The girl brings her books to school.
7. U Win Tint plays the violin well.
8. The boy writes a letter to his mother.
9. I walk to my work.
10. U Tun teaches us Physics.
11. They are glad to hear the news.
12. These exercises are easy for him.
13. The teacher is very tired after each lesson.
14. He is the best student in the class.
15. We are interested in the news.
16. She has a bad headache.
17. They have many friends in this school.
18. U Swe has a new car.
19. He has his lunch at our house.
20. We have our English class at ten o'clock.

Exercise No. (84)

Write the correct form (present, past, or future) of the verbs.

1. (be) I very busy now.
I very busy yesterday.
I very busy tomorrow.
2. (be) There many boys in the park today.
There many boys in the park yesterday.
There many boys in the park tomorrow.
3. (be) She ill today.
She ill yesterday.
She ill tomorrow.
4. (be) Our teacher angry now.
Our teacher angry yesterday.
Our teacher angry tomorrow.
5. (be) This lesson easy for her now.
This lesson easy for her last year.
This lesson easy for her next year.
6. (have) She a new dress now.
She a new dress last month.
She a new dress next month.
7. (have) I a bad headache today.
I a bad headache yesterday.
I a bad headache tomorrow.
8. (have) Every student in the class a copybook now.
Every student in the class a copybook yesterday.
Every student in the class a copybook tomorrow.
9. (sit) He always near me in the class.
He near me in the class yesterday.
He near me in the class tomorrow.
10. (give) She usually me many presents.
She me many presents last month.
She me many presents next month.
11. (see) I often them on the street.
I them on the street yesterday.
I them on the street tomorrow.
12. (help) We usually her with her lessons.
We her with her lessons yesterday.
We her with her lessons tomorrow.

- 13. (come) The boy usually to school by bus.
The boy to school by bus yesterday.
The boy to school by bus tomorrow.
- 14. (attend) I always class regularly.
I class yesterday.
I class tomorrow.
- 15. (speak) She always English well.
She English well yesterday.
She English well tomorrow.

PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

- ၁။ ။ အလုပ်တစ်ခုကို လုပ်ကိုင်ပြီးစီးကာစဖြစ်ကြောင်း။
- ၂။ ။ အတိတ်က ဖြစ်ရပ်တစ်ခုဟာ ယခုပြောဆိုနေတဲ့အချိန်အထိ အကျိုးဆက်ရှိနေသေးကြောင်း။
- ၃။ ။ အဖြစ်အပျက်၊ အကြောင်းအရာတစ်ရပ်ဟာ အတိတ်တစ်ချိန်ကနေ ယခုအချိန်ထိ တောက်လျှောက်ဖြစ်ပျက်နေကြောင်း။

စသည်ဖြင့် ဖော်ပြပြောဆိုလိုတဲ့အခါမှာ Present Perfect Tense ကို သုံးရပါတယ်။

ကြိုယာတွဲပုံစံကတော့

“(has/ have) + V3 (ed/en) Past Participle” ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
- 1. I **have bought** a car.
ကျွန်တော် ကားတစ်စီးဝယ်ပြီးပြီ။
 - 2. She **has eaten** rice.
သူ(မ) ထမင်းစားပြီးပြီ။
 - 3. They **have washed** the clothes.
သူတို့ အဝတ်တွေ လျှော်ပြီးပြီ။
 - 4. He **has opened** the door.
သူ တံခါးဖွင့်ပြီးပြီ။
 - 5. We **have printed** the book.
ကျွန်ုပ်တို့ စာအုပ်ကို ပုံနှိပ်ပြီးပြီ။

- 6. I **have lost** my key. Can you help me look for it?
(ခုလေးတင်) သော့ပျောက်သွားတယ်ကွာ၊ ငါ့ကိုကူပြီး ရှာပေးစမ်းပါဦး။
(ယခု ပြောဆိုနေချိန်ထိ ပြန်မတွေ့သေးဟု ဆိုလိုသည်။)

Present Perfect Tense ပြောင်းနည်း

1. go, eat, sleep တွေ V/Do တွေရဲ့ ရေးထားတဲ့ဝါကျဆိုရင် သူတို့ရဲ့ရှေ့က သင့်တော်ရာ Verb to have တစ်လုံးခံပေးရပါတယ်။ မူလကြိုယာကိုလဲ Past Participle ပုံစံ ပြောင်းရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
- 1. I **learn** many new words.
I **have learnt** many new words.
 - 2. He **speaks** to Thidar about that matter.
He **has spoken** to Thidar about that matter.
 - 3. She **loses** her copybook.
She **has lost** her copybook.
 - 4. We **see** her this morning.
We **have seen** her this morning.
 - 5. You **forget** to phone me.
You **have forgotten** to phone me.

2. am, is, are တွေ V/be တွေပါတဲ့ ဝါကျဆိုရင် သူတို့ကိုဖြတ်ပြီး has been, have been သင့်တော်ရာ တစ်လုံးလုံးနဲ့ အစားထိုးပေးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
- 1. She **is** ill.
She **has been** ill.
 - 2. They **are** good friends.
They **have been** good friends.
 - 3. I **am** a doctor.
I **have been** a doctor.
 - 4. We **are** in trouble.
We **have been** in trouble.
 - 5. He **is** late for class.
He **has been** late for class.

3. **has, have** တွေ **V/have** တွေပါတဲ့ ဝါကျဆိုရင်တော့ သူတို့ကိုဖြတ်ပြီး **has had, have had** သင့်တော်ရာ တစ်လုံးလုံးနဲ့ အစားထိုးရေးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. She **has** a bad cold.
She **has had** a bad cold.
 2. They **have** their lunch.
They **have had** their lunch.
 3. The boy **has** his hat on.
The boy **has had** his hat on.
 4. I **have** a bad headache.
I **have had** a bad headache.
 5. He **has** a holiday.
He **has had** a holiday.

Exercise No. (85)

Change the following verbs of the sentences from simple present to present perfect form.

Present Perfect ပုံစံပြောင်းပြီး ဝါကျများကို ပြန်လည်ရေးသားပါ။

1. The teacher asks me a question.
2. The two friends shake hands.
3. They close their books.
4. I write my name in the book.
5. She draws a map on the blackboard.
6. The thief steals the money.
7. The dog eats the food.
8. He blows out the light.
9. U Lwin teaches us this lesson before.
10. We finish our work.
11. They dig a well.
12. He is a famous writer.
13. The naughty boy is punished.
14. We learn English grammar.
15. Daw Su Su is a good teacher.
16. I have my dinner.

17. She has a walk.
18. We have an English lesson.
19. They have a rest.
20. He has his breakfast.

Exercise No. (86)

Rewrite the following sentences putting the verbs in the Present Perfect Tense.

အောက်ပါဝါကျများကို Present Perfect Tense ပုံစံဖြင့် ပြန်လည်ရေးသားပါ။

1. The shoe (be) mended.
2. The exercises (be) finished.
3. She (wash) some clothes.
4. The workers (paint) the walls.
5. The boy (finish) the work.
6. Someone (break) my pencil.
7. No one (clean) the blackboard.
8. She (drop) her handkerchief.
9. The boys (do) their homework.
10. The child (eat) all the food.
11. I (read) all the articles.
12. The man (take) away the old books.
13. U Swe (sell) his old car.
14. Mon Yi (write) a letter to her mother.
15. The boy (buy) a new shirt.

Exercise No. (87)

Write the present perfect tense form of the verbs in brackets.

အောက်ပါဝါကျများကို Present Perfect Tense ပုံစံဖြင့် ပြန်လည်ရေးသားပါ။

1. I (hear) Cho Cho sing once or twice.
2. They (see) the same movie four times.
3. Myint Myint (be) late for school several times.
4. The teacher (advise) us about it many times.

- 5. Thidarand Nilar (be) good friends for years.
- 6. We (have) our dinner since 5 o'clock.
- 7. He (study) that same exercise four or five times.
- 8. She (be) to Mandalay three times.
- 9. The boy (study) English grammar since last year.
- 10. U Nyunt (be) our teacher since June.
- 11. We (know) each other for a long time.
- 12. They (live) in this village for five years.
- 13. Nyo Nyo (be) sick for a long time.
- 14. I already (have) my breakfast.
- 15. He (have) strange ideas about money since his childhood.



Perfect Tense နဲ့ တွဲဖက်အသုံးပြုလေ့ရှိတဲ့ စကားလုံးကလေးတွေကို အထူးဂရုပြုပြီး

လေ့လာပါ။

- 1. just = ရုံမျှ၊ ဖြစ်သော
- 2. already = နှင့်ပြီး
- 3. for = ကြာမြင့်အောင်
- 4. since = ကတည်းက
- 5. twice = နှစ်ကြိမ်
- 6. many times = အကြိမ်များစွာ
- 7. several times = အကြိမ်များစွာ
- 8. recently = မကြာမီက
- 9. lately = မကြာသေးခင်က
- 10. yet = သေး/ ဘူး
- 11. ever = (လုပ်ဖူးလား၊ ကိုင်ဖူးလား၊ သွားဖူးလား) အစဉ်၊ အမြဲ
- 12. never = (မလုပ်ဖူးဘူး) ဘယ်ခါမှ၊ ဘယ်တော့မှ



"JUST" AND "ALREADY"

just = ရုံမျှ၊ ဖြစ်သော၊ ခုလေးတင်
 = အလုပ်တစ်ခုကို မကြာသေးမီ လောလောလတ်လတ်မှာ ပြီးစီးတာဖြစ်ကြောင်း ဖော်ပြပါတယ်။

1. Have you seen Kyaw Swa anywhere?
 Yes, I **have just seen** him.
 ကျော်စွာကို တစ်နေရာရာမှာများ တွေ့ခဲ့မိလားဟေ့။
 ဟုတ်ကဲ့ ခုလေးတင် သူ့ကို တွေ့ခဲ့တယ်။

2. Would you like something to eat?
 No, thanks. I **have just had** dinner.
 တစ်ခုခုစားမလားဟေ့။
 ကျေးဇူးတင်ပါတယ်။ ခုလေးတင် ညစာစားထားပြီးလို့ပါ။

3. Would you like to read this book?
 No, thank you. I've **just read** it.
 မင်း ဒီစာအုပ်ကို ဖတ်မလား။
 ဟင့်အင်း ကျေးဇူးပါပဲ၊ ကျွန်တော် ခုလေးတင် ဖတ်ပြီးတယ်။

4. Would you like a drink?
 No, thank you. I've **just had** one.
 တစ်ခုခုသောက်ပါလား။
 ဟင့်အင်း ကျေးဇူးပဲဗျာ၊ ကျွန်တော် ခုလေးတင် သောက်ပြီးလို့ပါ။

already = နှင်ပြီး (သိနှင့်ပြီး၊ စားနှင့်ပြီး)
 = အလုပ်တစ်ခုကို ကြိုတင် လုပ်ကိုင် ပြီးစီးနှင့်ပြီး ဖြစ်ကြောင်း ဖော်ပြပါတယ်။

1. Don't forget to post the letter, will you?
 I've **already posted** it.
 စာကိုထည့်ဖို့ မမေ့ပါနဲ့နော်။
 ကျွန်တော် ထည့်တောင်ပြီးပါပြီ။

2. When is Ko Myo going to school?
 He **has already gone**.
 ကိုမျိုး ကျောင်းကို ဘယ်အချိန်သွားမှာလဲ။
 သူ သွားနှင့်ပြီ။

- 3. Be careful! You will tear your longyi.
I **have already torn** it.
သတိထား၊ လုံချည် (စုတ်) ပြဲလိမ့်မယ်။
ပြုပြီးသွားပါပြီဗျာ၊ (ပြောတာကတောင် မှောက်ကျနေသေးတယ်) ဟုလို။
- 4. When will you sell your car?
I **have already sold** it. I sold it yesterday.
ခင်ဗျားရဲ့ကားကို ဘယ်တော့ရောင်းမှာလဲ။
ရောင်းပြီး (နှင့်) ပြီဗျာ၊ မနေ့က ရောင်းလိုက်တယ်။
- 5. When will U Tun go to Mandalay?
He **has already gone** there.
He went there this morning.
မန္တလေးကို ဦးထွန်း ဘယ်တော့သွားမှာလဲ။
သူ သွား (နှင့်) ပြီလေ၊ ဒီမနက်ကပဲ သွားပြီ။

"SINCE" AND "FOR"

Since = ကတည်းက၊ မှ စ၍

အတိတ်ရဲ့ တိကျတဲ့ အချိန်တစ်ချိန်က စတင်ဖြစ်ပျက်ခဲ့ပြီး၊ ယခုထိဖြစ်ပျက်နေဆဲဖြစ်တယ် လို့ ဖော်ပြချင်တဲ့ ဖြစ်ရပ်များနဲ့ ယှဉ်တွဲပြီး သုံးပါတယ်။ ဒါကြောင့် Present Perfect Tense နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ရေးသားလေ့ရှိပါတယ်။

for = (အချိန်ကာလ) ကြာမြင့်အောင် (ကြာအောင်၊ လုံးလုံး၊ တိုင်တိုင်)

ဖြစ်ရပ်တစ်ခု၊ ပြုမှုချက်တစ်ခုဟာ (ယခုပြောဆိုနေချိန်ထိ) ဘယ်ရွေ့ဘယ်မျှ ကြာမြင့်တယ်ဆိုတာ ကို ဖော်ပြချင်တဲ့ဖြစ်ရပ်များနဲ့ ယှဉ်တွဲပြီးသုံးရပါတယ်။ (Present, Past, Future, Perfect သင့်လျော်ရာကြိုယာနဲ့ တွဲဖက်သုံးနိုင်ပါတယ်။)

"SINCE" — denotes "from some definite "point" or period in the past till "NOW"

"FOR" — denotes "a length of time till "NOW"

ပိုပြီးသဘောပေါက်သွားအောင် အောက်မှာယှဉ်တွဲပြီး ရှင်းလင်းဖော်ပြထားပါတယ်။

| | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| - since 1986 | _ for three years |
| ၁၉၈၆ ခုနှစ်ကတည်းက | သုံးနှစ်ကြာအောင် |
| - since March | _ for four months |
| မတ်လကတည်းက | လေးလကြာအောင် |
| - since Friday | _ for two days |
| သောကြာနေ့ကတည်းက | နှစ်ရက်ကြာအောင် |
| - since 3 o'clock | _ for three hours |
| သုံးနာရီထိုးကတည်းက | သုံးနာရီကြာအောင် |

ခုနှစ်၊ လ၊ နေ့ရက်၊ နာရီ အတိအကျကို ရည်ညွှန်းရင် since ကို သုံးရပါတယ်။

နှစ်၊ လ၊ နေ့ရက်၊ နာရီ ဘယ်ရွေ့ဘယ်မျှ ကြာမြင့်တယ်လို့ ညွှန်းရင် for ကို သုံးရပါတယ်။

since ကို အချိန်ကာလတွေနဲ့တင်မဟုတ်ဘဲ အဖြစ်အပျက် အကြောင်းအရာတွေနဲ့လဲ တွဲဖက် ပြီး သုံးပါသေးတယ်။

since my childhood = ကျွန်တော်ကလေးဘဝကတည်းက

since he was born = သူ့ကို မွေးကတည်းက

Exercise No. (88)

Fill in the blanks with "since" or "for".

1. I haven't seen her two weeks.
2. I have known this matter April.
3. She hasn't bought any rice three weeks.
4. They haven't spoken to each other last week.
5. She has lived in this street ten years.
6. She has lived in the village 1987.
7. I haven't had time to read the books I was ill.
8. They haven't spoken English their childhood.
9. My father has not sent me any money five months.
10. He has read the book 10 o'clock.
11. The cat has been sitting in front of the fire tea time.
12. Our grandfather hasn't eaten any meat he was a boy.
13. The baby has been sleeping three hours.
14. We haven't read the newspaper many days.
15. I haven't bought any new books over a year.

SINCE - FOR - AGO

Since = ကတည်းက၊ မှ စ၍

အတိတ်တစ်ချိန်ကဖြစ်ရပ်ဟာ ယခုပြောဆိုနေချိန်အထိ ဆက်လက်ဖြစ်ပျက်နေတယ် ဆိုတာကို ညွှန်းတယ်။

- ဒါကြောင့် Present Perfect နဲ့ပဲ ယှဉ်တွဲပြီးသုံးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ 1. I have lived here since July.
- 2. They have studied Chemistry since 1988.

Ago = လွန်ခဲ့သည့်အခါက

- အတိတ်ကာလက ဖြစ်ပျက်ခဲ့တယ်ဆိုတာကို ညွှန်းတယ်။

- ဒါကြောင့် Past Tense နဲ့ပဲ ယှဉ်တွဲပြီးသုံးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ 1. My mother died ten years ago.
- 2. She left for Mandalay two days ago.

For = ကြာအောင်၊ လုံးလုံး၊ တိုင်တိုင်

- အချိန်ကာလကြာမြင့်မှု၊ ကြာမြင့်တဲ့ အချိန်အတိုင်းအတာကို ညွှန်းတယ်။

- ဒါကြောင့် Present, Past, Future, Perfect Tense တို့နဲ့ ယှဉ်တွဲပြီး သုံးနိုင်တယ်။

- ဥပမာ 1. He **worked** there for six months.
- 2. He **stayed** with us for about two months.
- 3. He **has been teaching** English for many years.
- 4. He **has studied** English for twenty years.
- 5. He **sleeps** here for two hours.
- 6. He **will work** there for six months.

Exercise No. (89)

Fill in the blanks with "since", "for" or "ago".

1. U Thein has been teaching in this school 1965.
2. He has been teaching English twenty years.
3. The two friends talked about two hours.
4. She hasn't talked with her husband yesterday.
5. He has told me about it ten minutes
6. She has been reading since an hour
7. Daw Lay has been sewing an hour.
8. War War has been writing a letter ten minutes.
9. Phyu Phyu has been writing a letter 10 o'clock.
10. Nyo Nyo has helped her mother this morning.
11. What have you been doing three days?.
12. We met Ni Ni about a month
13. I visited her a week
14. He studied Chemistry a long time.
15. Kyi Pyar saw Ni Lar about two weeks
16. She saw her again two days
17. "Five minutes" is a moment of time, not a period.
18. How long did the accident happen?
19. He got there just ten minutes
20. Thidar has been absent from class Monday.
21. She has been absent three days.
22. They have been waiting for the bus two hours.
23. Thuzar hasn't seen me August.
24. They have been friends high school.
25. She has been blind she was born.
26. The patient hasn't eaten anything 7 o'clock.
27. He hasn't eaten anything four hours.
28. We haven't seen Cho Cho several days.
29. They have bought a house they were married.
30. She has not seen her father her childhood.

“EVER” AND “NEVER”

ever= တစ်နေရာကို ရောက်ဖူးသလား၊ သွားဖူးသလား၊ တစ်စုံတစ်ရာကို တွေ့ကြုံခံစားဖူးသလားလို့ မေးချင်ပြောချင်တဲ့အခါ

never= တစ်နေရာကို မရောက်ဖူးဘူး၊ မသွားဖူးဘူး၊ တစ်စုံတစ်ရာကို မတွေ့ကြုံ မခံစားဖူးဘူးလို့ ပြောချင်တဲ့အခါတွေမှာ ever နဲ့ never ကို Present Perfect Tense နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ပြီး အသုံးပြုလေ့ရှိပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ**
1. Have you **ever** been to Mandalay?
မင်း မန္တလေးကို ရောက်ဖူးသလား။
I have **never** been to Mandalay.
ကျွန်တော် မန္တလေးကို မရောက်ဖူးပါဘူး။
 2. Have you **ever** been in an aeroplane?
မင်း လေယာဉ်ပျံစီးဖူးသလား။
I have **never** been in an aeroplane.
ကျွန်တော် လေယာဉ်ပျံ မစီးဖူးပါဘူး။
 3. Have you **ever** played football?
မင်း ဘောလုံးကန်ဖူးသလား။
I have **never** played football.
ကျွန်တော် ဘောလုံးမကန်ဖူးဘူး။
 4. Have you **ever** watched television?
မင်း ရုပ်မြင်သံကြား ကြည့်ဖူးသလား။
No, I've **never** watched television.
ကျွန်တော် ရုပ်မြင်သံကြား မကြည့်ဖူးပါဘူး။
 5. Have you **ever** seen a tiger?
မင်း ကျားကို မြင်ဖူးသလား။
No, I have **never** seen a tiger.
ကျွန်တော် ကျားကို မမြင်ဖူးဘူး။



“YET”

yet = သေး / ဘူး

ထမင်းမစားရသေးဘူးလား၊ မအိပ်သေးဘူးလား စသည်ဖြင့် မေးမြန်းချင်တဲ့အခါ- မစားရသေးဘူး၊ မအိပ်သေးဘူးလို့ (ငြင်းဆို) ပြောဆိုဖော်ပြချင်တဲ့အခါတွေမှာ **yet** ကို သုံးပါတယ်။

ဒါကြောင့် yet ကို မေးခွန်းဝါကျ ငြင်းဆိုဝါကျတွေနဲ့ တွဲဖက်ပြီး အသုံးပြုရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ**
1. Have you done your work **yet**?
မင်း အလုပ်ကို လုပ်လို့ မပြီးသေးဘူးလား။
No, I haven't done it **yet**.
ဟင့်အင်း- မပြီးသေးပါဘူး။
 2. Have you seen the new film **yet**?
ရုပ်ရှင်ကားအသစ်ကို မကြည့်ရသေးဘူးလား။
I haven't seen it **yet**.
မကြည့်ရသေးဘူး။
 3. Have you read this book **yet**?
မင်း ဒီစာအုပ်ကို မဖတ်ရသေးဘူးလား။
I haven't read it **yet**.
မဖတ်ရသေးဘူး။



“YET” AND “ALREADY”

yet = သေး / ဘူး

မေးခွန်းဝါကျတွေနဲ့ ငြင်းဆိုဝါကျတွေမှာသာ သုံးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ**
1. Have you bought the books **yet**?
မင်း စာအုပ်တွေ ဝယ်မပြီးသေးဘူးလား။
 2. Have you done the housework **yet**?
အိမ်အလုပ်တွေ လုပ်မပြီးသေးဘူးလား။
 3. I haven't finished dinner **yet**.
ငါ ညစာစားမပြီးသေးဘူး။

already = နှင့်ပြီး၊ (ရေးပြီး၊ ဖတ်ပြီး)

- ရိုးရိုးဝါကျတွေနဲ့ မေးခွန်းဝါကျတွေမှာ သုံးပါတယ်။
- ဥပမာ 1. Have you **already** eaten lunch?
မင်း နေ့လည်စာ စားပြီးနှင်ပြီလား။
- 2. Have you **already** seen Ni Ni?
မင်း နိနိနဲ့ တွေ့ပြီးပြီလား။
- 3. They have **already** bought a house.
သူတို့ အိမ်တစ်လုံး ဝယ်နှင်ပြီးပြီ။

Exercise No. (90)

Supply "yet" or "already", whichever is correct.

1. Have you bought the tickets for the show?
2. Has your brother found a job ?
3. Have you finished your homework ?
4. U San has not sold his car
5. Daw Htay has washed the clothes.
6. When is your mother going to the market?
She has gone.
7. Be careful! You will tear your book.
I have torn it.
8. Ni Ni must read this book.
She has read it.
9. I havebeen to Pyin-Oo-Lwin three times.
10. The plane has left the airport.
11. The poor boy has not bought the books
12. Has Daw Moe gone to Sagaing ?
13. Thin Thin has been to Mandalay two times.
But she hasn't visited Pagan
14. When will Nyo Nyo begin the book?
She has begun it.
15. Has Nyo Nyo finished reading the book
16. Most of the guests have gone home
17. Some of the students were in the classroom.
18. Most of the students have done those two lessons
19. The maid has washed all the clothes
20. The students have learnt a lot of things about English

Twice, three times, four times, etc., many times, several times နှစ်ကြိမ်၊ သုံးကြိမ်၊ လေးကြိမ် (စသည် ...) အကြိမ်များစွာ၊ စတု အကြိမ်အရေအတွက် ပြုပုံကလေး တွေကိုလည်း Perfect Tense နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ပြီး သုံးလေ့ရှိပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ 1. I **have read** this book twice.
ဒီစာအုပ်ကို ငါဖတ်ပြီးတာ နှစ်ခါရှိပြီ။
- 2. He **has read** that novel three times.
ထိုဝတ္ထုစာအုပ်ကို သူဖတ်ပြီးတာ (၃) ကြိမ်ရှိပြီ။
- 3. I **have warned** you about it many times.
ဒီကိစ္စနဲ့ပတ်သက်ပြီး မင်းကိုငါ အကြိမ်ကြိမ်သတိပေးပြီးပြီ။

ခြွင်းချက်

twice a week တစ်ပတ်နှစ်ကြိမ်၊ three times a day တစ်နေ့သုံးကြိမ်၊ twice a month တစ်လနှစ်ကြိမ် စသည်ဖြင့် နောက်ဘက်က အတွဲအဖက်စကားလုံးတွေပါလာရင်တော့ ပြုလုပ်ဆောင်ရွက်၊ ဖြစ်ပျက်မှုရဲ့အကျင့်၊ ဓလေ့ကိုဖော်ပြတဲ့အတွက် Simple Present Tense ဝဲ သုံးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ 1. Our father **goes** to the pagoda **twice a month**.
ကျွန်ုပ်တို့၏ဖခင်သည် ဘုရားသို့ တစ်လနှစ်ကြိမ်သွား(လေ့ရှိ)သည်။
- 2. He **goes** to the movies **twice a week**.
သူသည် တစ်ပတ်လျှင်နှစ်ကြိမ် ရုပ်ရှင်ကြည့်(လေ့ရှိ)သည်။
- 3. He **takes** the medicine **three times a day**.
သူသည် တစ်နေ့လျှင်သုံးကြိမ် ဆေးသောက်(လေ့ရှိ)သည်။

"this morning, this evening, today, this week, this term" etc.

ယခု ပြောဆိုရေးသားနေတဲ့အချိန်အထိ ဆောင်ရွက်မှုတစ်ခု၊ ဖြစ်ရပ်တစ်ခုဟာ မပြီးသေးဘူးလို့ ဖော်ပြချင်ရင် အပေါ်မှာပေးထားတဲ့ စကားလုံးတွေကို Present Perfect Tense နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ပြီးတော့ သုံးနိုင်ပါတယ်။

We use the present perfect with "this morning / this evening / today/ this week / this term etc." (when these periods are not finished at the time of speaking)

- I've smoked ten cigarettes today. (perhaps I'll smoke more before today finishes)
- Has Ann had a holiday this year?
- I haven't seen Tom this morning. Have you?
- Tom hasn't studied very much this term.
- Bill is phoning his girl-friend again. That's the third time he's phoned her this evening.

E. G. IN USE (PAGE. 30)

PAST PERFECT TENSE

had & V3 ကို ပေါင်းစပ်ရင် **Past Perfect Tense** လို့ ခေါ်ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. She **had eaten** rice. သူမ ထမင်းစားပြီးခဲ့ပြီ။
 2. I **had done** my homework. ကျွန်တော် အိမ်စာလုပ်ပြီးခဲ့ပြီ။
 3. They **had bought** a house. သူတို့ အိမ်တစ်ဆောင် ဝယ်ပြီးခဲ့ပြီ။

Past Perfect Tense ကို ကြိုယာနှစ်လုံး အတွဲအဖက်ရှိမှ သုံးလေ့ရှိပါတယ်။

အတိတ်က ပြီးစီးခဲ့တဲ့ ဖြစ်ရပ်နှစ်ခုရှိရပါမယ်။ အဲဒီဖြစ်ရပ်နှစ်ခုအနက် အရင်စောပြီး ပြီးတဲ့ ဖြစ်ရပ် (အရင်ကုတ်ဖြစ်ရပ်) ကို Past Perfect Tense နဲ့ ရေးရမယ်။ နောက်ကျပြီး ပြီးစီးတဲ့ ဖြစ်ရပ်အတွက် Simple Past Tense နဲ့ သုံးရပါမယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. I **had done** my homework when I **went** to bed. ကျွန်တော် အိမ်ရာဝင် (တော့) သောအခါ အိမ်စာတွေလုပ်ပြီးပြီ။
 2. After I **had done** my homework, I **went** to bed. ကျွန်တော် အိမ်စာလုပ်ပြီးသောအခါ အိမ်ရာဝင်သည်။

ဒီပါကျနှစ်ကြောင်းလုံးမှာ အိမ်စာလုပ်တာက အရင်စောပြီး ပြီးစီးတဲ့ဖြစ်ရပ် ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။ ဒါကြောင့် Past Perfect Tense သုံးပါတယ်။ အိမ်ရာဝင်တာကတော့ နောက်ကျပြီးမှဖြစ်တဲ့ ဖြစ်ရပ်ဖြစ်တယ်။ ဒါကြောင့် Simple Past Tense သုံးပါတယ်။

Exercise No. (91)

Supply the Past Perfect Tense of the verbs in parenthesis (brackets).

ကွင်းထဲမှာရှိတဲ့ ကြိုယာကို Past Perfect Tense ဝှံ့ပြောင်း (ပြီးပြန်ရေး) ပါ။

1. She felt that she (meet) the man before.
2. He said that he (read) the book.
3. They said they (have) their dinner.
4. When we arrived he (leave) for Mandalay.
5. After I (write) an essay, I went to bed.
6. The teacher corrected the exercises which I (do).
7. It was clear that he (swindle) his own brother.
8. Our father asked us why we (go) to school very early.
9. The hunter saw that the travellers (take) the wrong road.
10. After being punished by the teacher, this boy (be) a very hardworking pupil.
11. After she (wash) the clothes, she ironed them.
12. I saw that the girl (write) a letter.
13. We believed that we (do) the right thing.
14. By the time we arrived, they (go) to market.
15. He thought that he (make) a serious mistake.
16. It was U Tun who (teach) us English.
17. I was sure that she (be) sick.
18. She said she (buy) the book.
19. He went to bed after the visitor (go) back.
20. The girl told me the name after I (ask) her twice.

PAST TENSE နှင့် PAST PERFECT ပိုမို ဖြည့်စွက်အားဖြင့်

Simple Past Tense and Past Perfect Tense

အတိတ်က အကျိုးဆက်ဖြစ်တဲ့ဖြစ်ရပ်တွေကို ဖော်ပြချင်တဲ့အခါမှာ simple past tense နဲ့ ရေးသားရပါတယ်။ ကြိယာနှစ်လုံး အတွဲအဖက်မရှိဘဲနဲ့လဲ ရေးသားနိုင်ပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ 1. Daw Sein died in 1988.
၁၉၈၈ ခုနှစ်က ဒေါ်စိန်သေခဲ့သည်။

Past Perfect Tense ကိုတော့ ကြိယာနှစ်လုံး အတွဲအဖက်ရှိမှ သုံးလေ့ရှိပါတယ်။

- အတိတ်ကာလက ပြီးစီးခဲ့တဲ့ ဖြစ်ရပ်နှစ်ခုမှာ...
(က) အရင်စောပြီးဖြစ်တဲ့ဖြစ်ရပ်ကို Past Perfect Tense နဲ့ ရေးရပါမယ်။
(ခ) နောက်ကျပြီးမှဖြစ်တဲ့ဖြစ်ရပ်ကို Past Tense နဲ့ ရေးရပါမယ်။

ဥပမာ Mar Mar said that she had seen the movie.
ဒီရုပ်ရှင်ကို ကြည့်ပြီးသားလို့ မာမာကပြောတယ်။
(ရုပ်ရှင်ကြည့်ခဲ့တာက အရင်ကျတယ်၊ ကြည့်ပြီးပြီလို့ ပြောတာက နောက်ကျတယ်။)
I visited many of the places where I had played as a boy.
ကလေးဘဝက ကစားခဲ့တဲ့နေရာတွေကို ကျွန်တော် သွားရောက်လည်ပတ်ခဲ့တယ်။

(ကလေးဘဝ (ကလေးအဖြစ်နဲ့) ကစားခဲ့တာက အရင်စောပြီးဖြစ်ခဲ့တဲ့၊ အရင်ကျတဲ့ဖြစ်ရပ် ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။ ဒါကြောင့် Past Perfect Tense သုံးရပါတယ်။)
(လူကြီးဖြစ်လာပြီးမှ) အမှတ်တရ သွားလည်ပတ်တာက နောက်ကျပြီးမှဖြစ်တဲ့ဖြစ်ရပ် ဖြစ်ပါ တယ်။ ဒါကြောင့် Past Tense သုံးရပါတယ်။

Exercise No. (92)

Write whichever is correct, the "simple past tense" or the "past perfect tense" of the verbs in brackets.

ကွင်းထဲမှာပေးထားတဲ့ ကြိယာများကို Simple Past Tense (သို့) Past Perfect Tense သင့်တော်ရာ ပုံစံဖြင့် ပြန်ရေးပါ။

- 1. My sister (cook) rice and curry when the visitors arrived.
2. The children (sleep) when their father came home.
3. The girl (wash) the clothes when it began to rain.

- 4. Our father (leave) for work when his friends came to fetch him.
5. I (do) my lessons when my friends came.
6. We had watered the flowers when breakfast (be) ready.
7. My elder sister had swept the floor when mother (come) back from the market.
8. Mother had cooked the dinner when I (come) back from school.
9. Father had read the newspaper when he (go) to work.
10. Mu Mu had ironed the clothes when she (go) to school.
11. After we had watched television, we (go) to bed.
12. After she had washed the clothes, she (iron) them.
13. After the teacher had taught the pupils, they (understand) the lesson well.
14. After the teacher had punished the girl, she never (talk) in the class.
15. After the travellers had got onto the bus, it (break) down.
16. The old woman had just recovered from an illness when she (get) ill again.
17. She had just sat down to study when the lights (go) out.
18. After she (come) back from the market, she cooked our breakfast.
19. After the old man (retire), he opened a shop.
20. After the children (be) fed, they were put to sleep.
21. After he (read) the newspaper, he went to work.
22. Farmers had ploughed the fields when they (sow) the seeds.
23. U Hla said that his friend (buy) the car.
24. They (clean) the rooms when we got home.
25. We had moved to a small village when the war (break) out.

Exercise No. (93)

Write whichever is correct, the simple past tense or the past perfect tense of the verbs in brackets.

ကွင်းထဲရှိ ကြိယာများကို Simple Past tense (သို့) Past Perfect tense သင့်တော်ရာ ပုံစံဖြင့် ပြန်ရေးပါ။

- 1. After she (hear) the bad news, she (weep) sorrowfully.
2. I (think) it was Ko Ko who (steal) my books.
3. She (tell) me that she (see) the movie previously.

4. I (be) sure that I never (see) him before.
5. I (thank) her for what she (do) for me.
6. After the visitors (go), I (take) a rest.
7. They(go) to bed after they (finish) the work.
8. When they got home, they (find) that the thief (break) into their room.
9. When we (arrive), he (go) back home.
10. When we (arrive) at the cinema late, the film (begin) already.
11. The teacher (ask) me why I (not do) the exercises.
12. The children (go) out to play when it (begin) to rain.
13. He (enter) the room when the front door bell (ring).
14. After she (put) the clothes out to dry, it (begin) to rain.
15. U Thukha (write) one book when he (begin) to write another.
16. The old woman already (die) when the doctor (arrive).
17. The lesson (start) when she (get) to class.
18. The train (arrive) when we (get) to the station.
19. The bus (leave) when the girls (get) to the bus stop.
20. I (go) to sleep when I (finish) my work.

PAST TENSE နှင့် PRESENT PERFECT တို့၏ ကွာခြားချက် အချို့

Simple Past Tense and Present Perfect Tense

I Simple Past Tense ကို အတိတ်ကာလရဲ့ တိကျတဲ့အချိန် တစ်ချိန်ချိန်မှာ အလုပ်တစ်ခုကို ပြီးစီးခဲ့ကြောင်း ဖော်ပြချင်တဲ့အခါမှာသုံးတယ်။

ဥပမာ I **washed** my hands five minutes ago.
 လွန်ခဲ့တဲ့ငါးမိနစ်က ကျွန်တော်လက်ဆေးခဲ့တယ်။
 I **slept** soundly last night.
 မနေညက ကျွန်တော်နှစ်နှစ်ခြိုက်ခြိုက် အိပ်ခဲ့တယ်။

Present Perfect Tense ကို အတိတ်ကာလက အလုပ်တစ်ခုကို ပြီးစီးခဲ့တယ်။ အတိတ်ကာလရဲ့ ဘယ်အချိန်မှာ တိတိကျကျပြီးစီးခဲ့တာလို့ မသိပေမယ့် အဲဒီအလုပ်ရဲ့ အကျိုးဆက် ဖြစ်ရပ်ဟာ ယခုပြောဆိုနေချိန်ထိရှိတယ်လို့ ဖော်ပြချင်တဲ့အခါမှာ သုံးတယ်။

ဥပမာ I **have washed** my hands.
 ကျွန်တော် လက်ဆေးပြီးပြီ။

(လက်ကို ဘယ်အချိန်က ဆေးပြီးခဲ့တယ်လို့ အတိအကျ မဖော်ပြပေမယ့် ခုပြောတဲ့အချိန်မှာ လည်း လက်ကဖြူလို့၊ သန့်လို့ရှိတုန်းပဲလို့ ဆိုလိုတယ်။)
 အဲဒီလိုဝါကျမျိုးကို (just, yet, already) စတဲ့ (time adverbs) ကလေးတွေနဲ့ တွဲပြီးသုံးလေ့ရှိပါတယ်။

အောက်က ဥပမာလေးတွေကို ယှဉ်တွဲပြီးလေ့လာကြည့်ပါဦး။

- I **have just read** the newspaper.
 သတင်းစာကို ဖတ်ပြီးရုံလေးရှိသေးတယ်။
 (ဘယ်အချိန်ကပြီးတယ်လို့ အတိအကျ မဖော်ပြ)
- I **read** the newspaper five minutes ago.
 သတင်းစာကို ပြီးခဲ့တဲ့ ငါးမိနစ်က ဖတ်ခဲ့တယ်။
 ((ပြီးခဲ့တဲ့အချိန် အတိအကျ ဖော်ပြတယ်))
- I **have already written** the letter.
 စာကို ကျွန်တော်ရေးပြီးနှင့်ပြီ။
 (ဘယ်အချိန်ကပြီးတယ်လို့ အတိအကျမဖော်ပြ)
- I **wrote** the letter two hours ago.
 စာကို ကျွန်တော် လွန်ခဲ့တဲ့ (၂) နာရီက ရေးခဲ့တယ်။
 ((ပြီးစီးတဲ့အချိန်ကို အတိအကျ ဖော်ပြတယ်))

ပါကြောင့်

| | | |
|-----------------------|---|--|
| five minutes ago | = | လွန်ခဲ့တဲ့ ငါးမိနစ်က |
| two hours ago | = | လွန်ခဲ့တဲ့ နှစ်နာရီက |
| three days ago | = | လွန်ခဲ့တဲ့ သုံးရက်က |
| six weeks ago | = | လွန်ခဲ့တဲ့ ခြောက်ပတ်က |
| three months ago | = | လွန်ခဲ့တဲ့ သုံးလက |
| two years ago | = | လွန်ခဲ့တဲ့ နှစ်နှစ်က |
| a moment ago | = | လွန်ခဲ့တဲ့ အချိန်အနည်းငယ်က |
| a few minutes ago | = | လွန်ခဲ့တဲ့ မိနစ်အနည်းငယ်က |
| in 1980 | = | ၁၉၈၀ ခုနှစ်က (ယခု ရောက်ရှိနေတဲ့နှစ်ရဲ့ ဟိုဘက်က နှစ်အား လုံး) |
| at five o'clock today | = | ဒီနေ့ငါးနာရီက |
| at lunch time today | = | ဒီနေ့ နေ့လည်စာ စားချိန်က |

| | | |
|--------------------------|---|--|
| yesterday | = | မနေ့က |
| the day before yesterday | = | တဖြန်နေ့က |
| last night | = | လွန်ခဲ့တဲ့ (ပြီးခဲ့တဲ့) ညက |
| last Sunday | = | လွန်ခဲ့တဲ့ တနင်္ဂနွေနေ့က |
| last week | = | (လွန်ခဲ့တဲ့) ပြီးခဲ့တဲ့အပတ်က |
| last month | = | လွန်ခဲ့တဲ့ (ပြီးခဲ့တဲ့) လက |
| last week-end | = | လွန်ခဲ့တဲ့ ရက်သတ္တပတ်အကုန် (စနေ၊ တနင်္ဂနွေ)က |

စတဲ့ အတိတ်ကာလရဲ့ပြီးဆုံးမှု အတိအကျညွှန်ပြတဲ့ အချိန်ပြပုဒ်တွေကို Present perfect Tense နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ပြီးတော့ မသုံးရပါဘူး။

just, yet, already စတဲ့ Perfect Tense ကိုညွှန်းတဲ့ အချိန်ပြပုဒ်တွေကိုလည်း Past Tense နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ပြီး မသုံးရပါဘူး။

မှားတတ်တဲ့ အမှားတွေ

အောက်မှာဖော်ပြထားတဲ့ ဝါကျတည်ဆောက်ပုံတွေဟာ မှားပါတယ်။ သတိပြုလေ့လာပါ။

1. I **have opened** the door *ten minutes ago*.
2. I **have read** the newspaper *yesterday*.
3. She **has washed** the clothes *two hours ago*.
4. He **has written** the letter *last night*.
5. I **already opened** the door, but I didn't open the windows yet.
6. He **finished** his work *already*.
7. **Did you borrow** the books yet?
8. She **just ironed** the clothes.

အခြေမှန်က

1. opened, 2. read, 3. washed, 4. wrote, 5. have already opened, haven't opened, 6. has finished, 7. Have you borrowed, 8. has just ironed.

II Simple Past Tense ကို အတိတ်တစ်ချိန်မှာ ဖြစ်ပျက်ခဲ့ပြီး၊ အတိတ်မှာပဲ ပြီးဆုံးခဲ့တဲ့ အကြောင်း အရာတွေ၊ ဖြစ်ရပ်တွေကို ဖော်ပြချင်တဲ့အခါမှာလဲ သုံးပါတယ်။

1. U Pon Nya wrote the plays.
ဦးပုညသည် ပြဇာတ်များကို ရေးခဲ့သည်။
2. Bagyo Aung San was assassinated in 1947.
၁၉၄၇ ခုနှစ်က ဗိုလ်ချုပ်အောင်ဆန်း လုပ်ကြံခံခဲ့ရသည်။

3. The First World War began in 1914 and ended in 1918.
ပထမကမ္ဘာစစ်ကြီးဟာ ၁၉၁၄ ခုနှစ်မှာ စတင်ဖြစ်ပွားခဲ့ပြီး၊ ၁၉၁၈ ခုနှစ်မှာ ပြီးဆုံးခဲ့တယ်။
4. I met him yesterday.
ကျွန်တော် သူ့ကို မနေ့က တွေ့ခဲ့တယ်။

အထက်က ဖော်ပြခဲ့တဲ့ဖြစ်ရပ်တွေက အတိတ်ကာလက ဖြစ်ပျက်ခဲ့တာတွေဖြစ်တယ်။ ယခု ပြောဆိုနေချိန်အထိ ဆက်လက်ဖြစ်ပျက်နေတာတွေ မဟုတ်ပါဘူး။ အတိတ်ကာလမှာပဲ ပြီးဆုံးခဲ့ပါပြီ။ အဆုံးသတ်ခဲ့ပါပြီ။

Present Perfect Tense ကတော့ ဖြစ်ရပ်တစ်ခု၊ အတိတ်တစ်ချိန်က ဖြစ်ခဲ့တာ လုပ်ခဲ့တာတော့ဟုတ်တယ်။ ဒါပေမယ့် ယခုပြောဆိုနေချိန်အထိ အကျိုးဆက်ရှိနေတယ်။ ဖြစ်နေဆဲ၊ လုပ်နေဆဲပဲလို့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်ရပါတယ်။ (သို့) အကြောင်းအရာ၊ အဖြစ်အပျက်တစ်ခုဟာ အတိတ် တစ်ချိန်ကနေ၊ ယခုအထိတစ်လျှောက်လုံး ဖြစ်ပျက်ခဲ့တယ်လို့လဲ အဓိပ္ပာယ်ရပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ We have lived in this town since 1980.
ကျွန်တော်တို့ ဒီမြို့မှာ ၁၉၈၀ ခုနှစ်ကတည်းကနေတိုင်ခဲ့တယ်။
(စတင်နေထိုင်ခဲ့တာကတော့ ၁၉၈၀ကတည်းကပါပဲ။ ယခုထိလဲ ဆက်လက်နေထိုင်ဆဲ ဖြစ်တယ်လို့ ဆိုလိုပါတယ်။)

ဝိုပြီးရှင်းရှင်းလင်းလင်းဖြစ်သွားအောင် အောက်က ဥပမာလေးတွေကို လေ့လာကြည့်ပါဦး။

- I **ate** rice = ကျွန်တော်ထမင်းစားခဲ့တယ်။
- I **have eaten** rice = ကျွန်တော် ထမင်းစားပြီးပြီ။

ဆိုတဲ့ ဝါကျနှစ်ကြောင်းကို ယှဉ်ကြည့်ပါ။
စားခဲ့တာနဲ့ စားပြီးပြီ ဆိုတာဟာ ပြီးတာချင်းတူပေမယ့် ဆိုလိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်ချင်း မတူပါဘူး။

Simple Past Tense နဲ့ ရေးတဲ့ I **ate** rice က အတိတ်တစ်ချိန်က စားခဲ့တာကို ပြောတာ။ ခု လောလောဆယ် ထပ်စားနိုင်လား၊ မနိုင်လား မသိဘူး။

Present Perfect Tense နဲ့ ရေးတဲ့ I **have eaten** rice က ခုလေးတင်စားပြီး ကာစဖြစ် တယ်။ ထပ်မစားနိုင်တော့ဘူးလို့ ဆိုလိုပါတယ်။

- U Kyaw lost his key.
ဦးကျော်သော့ပျောက်ခဲ့တယ်။
- U Kyaw has lost his key.
ဦးကျော် သော့ပျောက်သွားပြီ။ ဆိုတဲ့ဝါကျနှစ်ကြောင်းကို ယှဉ်ကြည့်ပါဦး။

Simple Past Tense (lost) လိုသုံးရင် ဦးကျော်ဟာ အတိတ်တစ်ချိန်က သော့ပျောက်ခဲ့တယ်။ ခုပြောနေတဲ့အချိန်မှာ အဲဒီသော့ကို ပြန်တွေ့ပြီလား။ မတွေ့ဘူးလား မသိနိုင်ပါဘူး။

Present Perfect Tense(has lost) လို သုံးလိုက်ရင်တော့ အဲဒီသော့ကို ယခုပြောနေချိန်ထိ ပြန်မတွေ့သေးဘူးလို့ ဆိုလိုပါတယ်။

III Present Perfect Tense ကို အလုပ်တစ်ခုနဲ့ ပတ်သက်ပြီး အတိတ်ကာလရဲ့ အချိန်တွေက ထပ်တလဲလဲ ပြုလုပ်ခဲ့ပြီးဖြစ်တယ်လို့ ဖော်ပြချင်တဲ့အခါမှာလဲ သုံးပါတယ်။ (To describe an action which was repeated at indefinite times in the past.)

- ၉၀၈ 1. I **have read** this book *many times*.
ဒီစာအုပ်ကို ကျွန်တော်အကြိမ်များစွာ ဖတ်ပြီးပြီ။
- 2. He **has spoken** to me about it *several times*.
ဒီကိစ္စနဲ့ ပတ်သက်ပြီး သူကျွန်တော့်ကို အကြိမ်ကြိမ် ပြောပြီးပြီ။
- 3. I **have often eaten** in this restaurant.
ဒီစားသောက်ဆိုင်မှာ မကြာခဏ ကျွန်တော်စားဖူးတယ်။

THE PRESENT PERFECT always has a connection with the present, THE PAST SIMPLE tells us only about the past.
E. G. IN USE (PAGE. 42)

Exercise No. (94)

Write whichever is correct, the simple past tense or the present perfect tense of the verbs in brackets.

Simple past (သို့) present perfect သင့်လျော်ရာ ကြိယာပုံစံဖြင့် ဖြည့်ပါ။

- 1. (be) She a nurse for three years.
- 2. (be) Her mother dead last year.
- 3. (write) Nobody to me since Christmas.
- 4. (write) I an article last night.
- 5. (read) He that novel yesterday.
- 6. (read) He that novel several times.
- 7. (lose) The girl her book a week ago.
- 8. (lose) The girl her book for three weeks.
- 9. (visit) We the hospital yesterday.

- 10. (visit) We the hospital many times.
- 11. (not rain) It here for more than a month.
- 12. (not rain) It here last night.
- 13. (be) I tired yesterday.
- 14. (be) I sick for a week.
- 15. (have) She a bad dream last night.
- 16. (have) She a headache for two hours.
- 17. (fall) The boy as he was running.
- 18. (fall) The leaves from the tree since last night.
- 19. (study) They this exercise yesterday.
- 20. (study) They this exercise for two weeks.

Exercise No. (95)

Fill in the blanks with the correct tense of the verb. (Simple Past Tense or Present Perfect)

ကွင်းထဲရှိ ကြိယာများကို Simple Past Tense (သို့) Present Perfect Tense သင့်လျော်ရာ ကြိယာပုံစံဖြင့် ကွက်လပ် ဖြည့်ပါ။

- 1. (get) We up at six o'clock yesterday.
- 2. (bring) I my children to the park two weeks ago.
- 3. (fight) Win Lwin with his sister last night.
- 4. (be) They close friends for two years.
- 5. (be) As he angry, he beat his children yesterday.
- 6. (go) They to school and saw their teacher.
- 7. (buy) She went to the market and a longyi.
- 8. (study) He wanted to pass the examination and very hard last year.
- 9. (have) I a bad headache since I was ill.
- 10. (lose) I my book. I am looking for it now.
- 11. (do) How you do that yesterday?
- 12. (do) I my housework for two hours.
- 13. (not see) I her for more than two weeks.
- 14. (not see) I her yesterday.
- 15. (cut) Oh! I my finger. It's bleeding.
- 16. (get) Have you heard? Su Su married!
- 17. (get) My grandparents married in a small village fifty years ago.
- 18. (lose/find) Thida her book but now she it. (Ten minutes ago Thida lost her book. Now she has back it in her hand.)

- 19. (go/come back) She to Pyin-Oo-Lwin but now she home.
(She went to Pyin-Oo-Lwin but she is back in her town again.)
- 20. (buy/sell) U Khin a house but now he it.
(Last year U Khin bought a house. Now it belongs to someone else.)

သတိပြုရန်

အချို့ ဝါကျတွေကိုတော့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်ကိုကြည့်ပြီး Simple Past Tense နဲ့ပဲဖြစ်ဖြစ် Present Perfect Tense နဲ့ပဲဖြစ်ဖြစ် ရေးလို့ရပါတယ်။ တစ်မျိုးပဲ ရေးလို့ရတယ်လို့ ပုံသေမမှတ်ရပါဘူး။

She says that she *lost* her pocket book. (OR)
She says that she *has lost* her pocket book.
G. E. E. (PAGE. 82-83)

3 We can use *today, this morning, this afternoon, etc.* with the present perfect when these periods of time are not finished. | with the past when these periods of time are finished.

I've spoken to Peter this morning. (It is still morning.) | *I spoke to Peter this morning.* (It is now afternoon, evening, or night time.)

4 We normally use a past tense, not the present perfect, to ask when something happened.
When did you arrive home last night? (Not: *When have you arrived home last night?*)

PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE

အလုပ်တစ်ခုကို အတိတ်တစ်ချိန်က စတင်လုပ်ကိုင်ခဲ့တယ်။ အဲဒီ အလုပ်ကို လုပ်ကိုင်နေတာလဲ ကြာလှပြီ။ ယခုပြောဆိုနေတဲ့ အချိန်ထိလဲ အဆုံးမသတ်၊အပြီးမသတ်နိုင်သေးဘူး။ ဆက်လက်လုပ်ကိုင် ဖြစ်ပျက်နေဆဲဖြစ်တယ်။ ရှေ့ကိုလဲ ဆက်လက်ဖြစ်ပျက်ဦးမယ်လို့ ဖော်ပြပြောဆိုချင် တဲ့အခါမှာ Present Perfect Continuous Tense ကို သုံးရပါတယ်။ ကြိုယာတွဲ ပုံစံကတော့

(has/have) + been + V-ing ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. I **have been living** in this town for many years.
ကျွန်ုပ် ဒီမြို့မှာနေတာ နှစ်ပေါင်းများစွာရှိပြီ။
(ယခုလည်း နေဆဲ၊ ဆက်၍လည်း နေဦးမည်။)
 2. It **has been raining** for two hours.
မိုးရွာနေတာ (၂) နာရီကြာပြီ။
(ယခုလည်း ရွာဆဲ။)
 3. They **have been waiting** here for over an hour.
သူတို့ ဒီမှာစောင့်နေတာ တစ်နာရီကျော်ကျော်ကြာပြီ။
(ယခုလည်း စောင့်နေဆဲ။)
 4. He **has been learning** English since 1985.
၁၉၈၅ ခုနှစ်ကတည်းက သူ အင်္ဂလိပ်စာကို လေ့လာ (သင်ယူ) နေတယ်။
(ယခုလည်း လေ့လာသင်ယူဆဲ။)
 5. I **have been taking** that medicine for six months.
ကျွန်တော် ဒီဆေးကိုသောက်တာ (၆) လ ကြာပြီ။
(ယခုလည်း သောက်နေဆဲ။)

Present Perfect Continuous Tense ရဲ့နောက်အသုံးတစ်မျိုး ရှိသေးတယ်။
ဖြစ်ရပ်တစ်ခု/ အလုပ်တစ်ခုကို ဟို-တော်တော်ကြာတဲ့ အချိန်တစ်ချိန်က ဖြစ်ပျက်လုပ်ကိုင်ခဲ့တယ်။ ပြီးခဲ့တဲ့ (တော်တော်လေး ကြာခဲ့ပြီဖြစ်တဲ့) အတိတ်တစ်ချိန်က စတင်ဖြစ်ပျက်လုပ်ကိုင်ခဲ့တာပေါ့။ ခုလောလောလတ်လတ် (ယခုပြောဆိုနေတဲ့ အချိန်ကာလနဲ့ အနီးကပ်ဆုံးအချိန်ကာလ) မှာမှ ပြီးဆုံးသွားတယ်ဆိုရင် Present Perfect Continuous ကို သုံးပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. Is it raining?
No, it isn't but the ground is wet.
It has been raining.
 2. The girl is very tired. She has been working hard.
 3. The boy is out of breath. He has been running.

Present Perfect Continuous နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ပြီးသုံးတဲ့....

- 1. over and over (again) = ထပ်တလဲလဲ
- 2. all the time (all the year/ month/ day/ morning/ night etc.)
- 3. the whole time (the whole year/ month/ morning/ night etc.)
- 4. How long = ဘယ်လောက်ကြာကြာ
- 5. Since = ကတည်းက၊ မှ စ၍
- 6. for = (ဘယ်၍/ ဘယ်မျှအချိန်) ကြာအောင် တိုင်တိုင်၊ လုံးလုံး

•တဲ့ စကားလုံးကလေးတွေကိုလဲ ဂရုပြု ကျက်မှတ်ထားရပါမယ်။

stay, wait, sit, stand, lie, study, learn, live, rest, etc. ... စတဲ့ ကြိယာ လေးတွေကို များသောအားဖြင့် Present Perfect Continuous Tense နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ရေးသားလေ့ ရှိပါတယ်။

PRESENT PERFECT AND PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS

Present Perfect Tense နှင့် Present Perfect Continuous တို့၏ ကွားခြားသော အသုံး

Present Perfect Tense ကို အရည်အတွက်၊ ပမာဏ၊ အကြိမ်၊ ဘယ်လောက်များများ လုပ်ကိုင်တယ်ဆိုတာကို ဖော်ပြချင်တဲ့အခါမှာ သုံးပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
- 1. Nilar **has read** two books today.
နီလာဟာ စာအုပ်နှစ်အုပ်ကို ဒီနေ့ဖတ်ပြီးပြီ။
 - 2. Ko Ko **has played** tennis three times this week.
ဒီအပတ်ထဲမှာ ကိုကိုဟာ တင်းနစ်ကို (၃) ကြိမ် ကစားပြီးပြီ။

Present Perfect Continuous Tense ကို အဖြစ်အပျက်၊ အလုပ်အကိုင်တစ်ခု ဘယ်လောက်ကြာကြာ ဖြစ်ပျက်လုပ်ကိုင်သလဲဆိုတာကို ဖော်ပြချင် တဲ့အခါမှာ သုံးပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
- 1. Nilar **has been reading** all day.
နီလာဟာ စာအုပ်ကို တစ်နေ့ကုန်ဖတ်တယ်။
 - 2. Ko Ko **has been playing** tennis since 2 o'clock.
(၂) နာရီကတည်းက ကိုကို တင်းနစ်ကစားနေတာ။

- We use the "present perfect form" to say how much we have done, how many things we have done, or how many times we have done something.

- We use the "present perfect continuous form" to say how long something has been happening.

E. G. IN USE (PAGE. 34)

Continuous မသုံးရတဲ့ ကြိယာတွေအကြောင်းကို စာမျက်နှာ (၃၄၆) မှာ ရှင်းပြခဲ့ပြီးဖြစ် ပါတယ်။ အဲဒီကြိယာတွေနဲ့ ရေးသားမယ်ဆိုရင်လည်း Present Perfect Tense ကိုသာ သုံးရပါတယ်။ Present Perfect Continuous ကို မသုံးရပါဘူး။

- ဥပမာ
- 1. We **have known** each other for three years.
(have been knowing လို့ မရေးရပါဘူး။)
 - 2. He **has understood** what you mean.
(has been understanding လို့ မရေးရပါဘူး။)
 - 3. She **has had** a cold for the past week.
(has been having လို့ မသုံးရပါဘူး။)
 - 4. They **have been** married for twenty years.
(have been being လို့ မရေးရပါဘူး။)
 - 5. My father **has always worked** hard.
(has been working လို့ မသုံးရပါဘူး၊ always ပါတဲ့အတွက် ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။)

We use the "present perfect" for situations that exist for a long time especially if we say "always".

E. G. IN USE (PAGE. 36)

Present Perfect Tense နဲ့ Present Perfect Continuous Tense တို့ရဲ့ အသုံးမှာ သိသာတဲ့ ကွဲလွဲမှုတွေကလွဲရင် (ဥပမာ - know, love, understand စတဲ့ Continuous Tense မသုံးရတဲ့ ကြိယာတွေကို Present Perfect Continuous မသုံးရတာမျိုး စသည်) ဒီ Tense နှစ်မျိုးလုံးရဲ့အသုံးကို အတူတူလို့ပဲ သုံးလို့ရပါတယ်။

- He **has worked** there for five years.
- He **has been working** there for five years.

ဆိုတဲ့ ဝါကျနှစ်ကြောင်းမှာ အဓိပ္ပာယ်သက်ရောက်ပုံချင်း သိပ်မကွာခြားသလိုပေါ့။ မိမိ ရေးသားချင်တဲ့အနှုအယူအဆပေါ်မှာ မူတည်ပါတယ်။

PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE

Past Perfect Continuous Tense ဟာ Present Perfect Continuous Tense ရဲ့ အတိတ် ကြိယာသဏ္ဍာန်ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။ ကြိယာတွဲပုံကတော့....

"had + been + v-ing" ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ 1. It **had been** raining.
- 2. They **had been** sleeping.
- 3. She **had been** cooking. (စသည်ဖြင့်)

Past Perfect Continuous Tense ကို အတိတ်ကာလက ဖြစ်ခဲ့တဲ့ဖြစ်ရပ်တွေနဲ့ ယှဉ်တွဲပြီး သုံးလေ့ရှိပါတယ်။ ဖြစ်ရပ်များအနက် ကြာမြင့်စွာ အချိန်ယူ ဆက်လက်ဖြစ်ပျက်ခဲ့တဲ့ ဖြစ်စဉ်ကို Past Perfect Continuous နဲ့ သုံးလေ့ရှိပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ I was very tired when I arrived home.
I had been working hard all day.
အိမ်ပြန်ရောက်တော့ ကျွန်တော် အရမ်းမောတာပဲ။ တစ်နေ့ကုန် ပင်ပင်ပန်းပန်း လုပ်ကိုင်ခဲ့ရတာကိုး။
(တစ်နေ့ကုန် အလုပ်လုပ်ခဲ့ရတာက ၊ ကြာကြာမြင့်မြင့် ဆက်လက်လုပ်ကိုင် ခဲ့ရတဲ့ဖြစ်ရပ် ဖြစ်တယ်။)

က... 3 ဥပမာလေးတွေကိုလည်း သဘောပေါက်အောင် လေ့လာကြည့်ပါ။

1. The two boys came into the house. One had a black eye and the other had a cut lip.
They had been fighting.
2. The two boys came into the house. They had a football and they were both very tired.
They had been playing football.
3. We began playing football. After half an hour, there was a terrible storm.
We had been playing for half an hour when there was a terrible storm.
4. U Moe and his family went to live in Mandalay. Six months later, U Moe died.
They had been living in Mandalay for six months when U Moe died.

PAST CONTINUOUS AND PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS (was doing) and (had been doing)

PAST CONTINUOUS နှင့် PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS ဖြစ်ပုံများအား အသုံးပြုပါ။

Past Continuous Tense နဲ့ ရေးရင် ဖြစ်ရပ် (သို့) ပြုလုပ်ချက်တစ်ခုဟာ ဆက်လက် ဖြစ်ပျက်နေဆဲဖြစ်တယ်။ မပြီးသေးဘူးဆိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ် သက်ရောက်ပါတယ်။

Past Perfect Continuous Tense နဲ့ ရေးရင် ဖြစ်ရပ် (သို့) ပြုလုပ်ချက်တစ်ခုဟာ အရှိန်ယူဆက်ဖြစ်ခဲ့ပေမယ့် ပြောဆိုပေးပြတဲ့အချိန်မှာ ပြီးသွားပြီးကာစဖြစ်တယ်ဆိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ် သက် ရောက်ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ - When I looked out of the window, it had been raining = (It wasn't raining when I looked out; it had just stopped.)
ပြတင်းပေါက်ကနေ ထွက်ကြည့်တော့ မိုးကရွာပြီးနေပြီ။ (မိုးတိတ်သွားပြီးကာစ)
- When I looked out of the window, it was raining = (Rain was falling at the time I looked out.)
ပြတင်းပေါက်ကနေထွက်ကြည့်တော့ မိုးရွာနေတယ်။ (မိုးက မတိတ်သေးဘူး၊ ရွာနေဆဲ)
- When I arrived, everyone was sitting round the table with their mouths full. *They were eating.*
ကျွန်တော်ရောက်သွားတော့ လူတိုင်း စားပွဲမှာ ဝိုင်းထိုင်နေကြတယ်။ ပါးစပ်ကလည်း ပလုပ်ပလောင်း အပြည့်လေ။
သူတို့ စားသောက်နေကြတာလေ။ (စားဆဲ၊ မပြီးသေး)
- When I arrived, everyone was sitting round the table and talking. Their mouths were empty but their stomachs were full. *They had been eating.*
ကျွန်တော်ရောက်သွားတော့ လူတိုင်း စားပွဲမှာ ဝိုင်းထိုင်ပြီး စကားပြောနေကြတယ်။ ပါးစပ်ကလည်း ဘာမှမရှိပေမယ့် သူတို့ ဝမ်းဗိုက်ကြီးတွေကတော့ တင်းကားပြီး အပြည့် ပါပဲ။
သူတို့ စားသောက်ပြီးနေကြပြီ။ (စားပြီးကာစ)

- When I arrived, she *was waiting* for me.
- She was rather annoyed with me because I was late and she *had been waiting* for a very long time.

ကျွန်တော်ရောက်သွားတော့ သူမက စောင့်နေတုန်းပဲ။
 ကျွန်တော်နောက်ကျလို့ အကြာကြီး စောင့်နေရတဲ့အတွက် သူမတော်တော်လေး စိတ်ဆိုးနေတယ်။

FUTURE CONTINUOUS TENSE

လာမယ့် အနာဂတ်ကာလရဲ့ အချိန်တစ်ချိန်မှာ၊ အလုပ်တစ်ခု (သို့) ဖြစ်ရပ်တစ်ခု ဆက်လက် ပြုလုပ် ဖြစ်ပျက်နေမှာပဲ လို့မဖြစ်သေးခင် ကြိုတင်ခန့်မှန်း ပြောဆိုချင်ရင် Future Continuous Tense ကို သုံးရပါတယ်။ သူ့ရဲ့ ကြိယာတွဲပုံစံကတော့-

“will be + v-ing” ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. I *will be sleeping*.
ကျွန်တော် အိပ်နေလိမ့်မယ်။
 2. She *will be working*.
သူမ အလုပ်လုပ်နေလိမ့်မယ်။
 3. They *will be writing* a book.
သူတို့ စာအုပ်တစ်အုပ် ရေးနေလိမ့်မယ်။

The future continuous tense describes an action which will be going on or continuous at some point in the future.

- Tomorrow afternoon at this time, we will be watching television.
နက်ဖြန်နေ့လည် ဒီအချိန်လောက်ဆိုရင် တို့တွေ ရုပ်မြင်သံကြား ကြည့်နေကြလိမ့်မယ်။
- At this time next year, they will be studying in the University.
နောက်နှစ်ဒီအချိန်လောက်ဆိုရင် သူတို့တွေ တက္ကသိုလ်မှာ ပညာသင်ယူနေကြလိမ့်မယ်။



Exercise No. (96)

Write the Future continuous tense form of the verbs in brackets.

ကွင်းထဲရှိ ကြိယာကို Future Continuous Tense ပုံစံဖြင့် ရေးသားဖြေဆိုပါ။

1. (do) If you come after six tomorrow, I, my homework.
2. (listen) If you come after six tomorrow, I to the radio.
3. (travel) At this time next month, we in India.
4. (watch) If you come at night, we television.
5. (have) At six o'clock tomorrow night, she her dinner.
6. (cook) At six o'clock tomorrow morning, mother the breakfast.
7. (rain) Do you see the black clouds? It soon.
8. (meet) He us next week.
9. (stay) I here till Sunday.
10. (play) When I get home, my children
11. (work) At five o'clock tomorrow evening, I in the garden.
12. (wait) She for me at the usual time tomorrow morning.
13. (prepare) If you come at four o'clock in the evening, we our dinner.
14. (have) Don't call her now. She her music lesson.
15. (study) If you go to your friend now, she her lessons.

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

လာမယ့်အနာဂတ်ကာလရဲ့ တိကျတဲ့အချိန်တစ်ချိန်မှာ အလုပ်တစ်ခု၊ ဖြစ်ရပ်တစ်ခု၊ လုပ်ကိုင် ဖြစ်ပျက် ဖြီးစီးပေးလိမ့်မယ်လို့ ကြိုတင်ပြောဆိုချင်တဲ့အခါမှာ သုံးပါတယ်။ အချိန်ကာလ အပိုင်းအခြား ရဲ့ရှေ့မှာ "by" ထည့်သုံးလေ့ရှိပါတယ်။
 ကြိယာတွဲပုံစံကတော့ -

“will + have + V3” ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ By the time next year, I will have died.
နောင်နှစ် ဒီအချိန်လောက်ဆိုရင် ငါသေပြီးလောက်ပြီပေါ့။

I am sure they will have known the truth by the time next month.
နောက်လ ဒီအချိန်လောက်ဆိုရင် အမှန်တရားကို သူတို့သိလောက်ပြီဆိုတာ သေချာပါတယ်။

I shall have left for Mandalay by this time tomorrow.
နက်ဖြန် ဒီအချိန်လောက်ဆိုရင် ငါမန္တလေးကို သွားနေပြီပေါ့။

အနာဂတ်ကာလမှာ ဖြစ်ပျက်လာမယ့် ဖြစ်ရပ် (၂) ခု ရှိနေမယ်ဆိုရင်လဲ အရင်စောပြီး ပထမ ဦးဆုံး ဖြစ်ပျက်မယ့် ကြိယာကို **Future Perfect Tense** နဲ့ သုံးရပါတယ်။ ကျန်ကြိယာကို **Present Tense** နဲ့ သုံးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ 1. I will have reached your house before you **get** up.
 မင်း အိပ်ရာကမထခင် ငါက မင်အိမ်ကို ရောက်နေနှင့်ပြီး ဖြစ်နေမှာပါ။
- 2. Your sons will have passed their examinations before you **die**.
 မင်း မသေမီ၊ မင်သားတွေက စာမေးပွဲအောင်နှင့်ပြီး ဖြစ်မှာပါ။
- 3. They will have bought a house before they **get** married.
 သူတို့ လက်ထပ်ခင် အိမ်တစ်လုံးတော့ ဝယ်ပြီးဖြစ်မှာပါ။

FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE

လာမယ့်အနာဂတ်ကာလရဲ့ အချိန်တစ်ချိန်မှာ အလုပ်တစ်ခု (သို့) ဖြစ်ရပ်တစ်ခုဟာ လုပ်ကိုင် ဖြစ်ပျက်နေပြီးဖြစ်တယ်။ အဲဒီဖြစ်ရပ်ဟာ ဆက်လက်ပြီးတော့ ဖြစ်ပျက်နေဆဲလည်း ဖြစ်မယ်။ (to denote an action which is considered as already finished at some definite time in the future, but which will be in progress until then) ဆိုတဲ့ ဖြစ်ရပ်ကို ဖော်ပြချင်တဲ့အခါမှာ သုံးပါတယ်။ တစ်နည်းအားဖြင့် ပြောရရင်တော့ ဖြစ်ရပ်တစ်ခုဟာ အနာဂတ်ကာလရဲ့ အချိန်တစ်ချိန်မှာ ကြာကြာမြင့်မြင့် ဆက်လက်ဖြစ်ပျက်နေလိမ့် မယ်လို့ ကြိုတင်ပြောဆိုချင်တဲ့အခါမှာ သုံးတယ်ဆိုရမယ်ပေါ့။

ကြိယာတွဲပုံစံကတော့ -
"will have been + V-ing" ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ 1. Hnin Hnin will have been going to school by this time tomorrow.
 မနက်ဖြန် ဒီအချိန်ဆိုရင် နှင်းနှင်း ကျောင်းကို သွားနေလောက်ပြီပေါ့။
- 2. At this time next month, we will have been travelling in the Shan State.
 နောက်လ ဒီအချိန်လောက်ဆိုရင် ကျွန်တော်တို့ ရှမ်းပြည်မှာ ခရီးလှည့်လည်နေပြီပေါ့။

3. At this time next year, they will have been studying in Mandalay University.

နောက်နှစ် ဒီအချိန်လောက်ဆိုရင်တော့ သူတို့တွေ မန္တလေးတက္ကသိုလ်မှာ ပညာသင် ယူနေကြပြီပေါ့။

Future Perfect နဲ့ Future Perfect Continuous Tense တွေကို ယခုခေတ် (Modern English Usage) မှာတော့ အသုံးနည်းပါတယ်။

SIMPLE PRESENT WITH A FUTURE MEANING

Simple Present Tense ကို Future အဓိပ္ပာယ်ဖြင့်သုံးခြင်း

အများပြည်သူတို့ သွားရေးလာရေး၊ ခရီးသွားလာမှု အစီအစဉ်တို့၊ ရုပ်ရှင်၊ ပြဇာတ်အစီအစဉ် တို့ အချိန်စာရင်းတို့ကို Present Tense နဲ့ ရေးထားပေမယ့် Future အဓိပ္ပာယ်သဘောကို ဆောင် ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ 1. The football match starts at 4 o'clock.
 ဘောလုံးပွဲ (စကန်မည့်) အချိန်မှာ (၄) နာရီဖြစ်သည်။
 (၄-နာရီမှာ ဘောလုံးပွဲ စမယ်)
- 2. The film begins at 3.30.
 ၃ နာရီခွဲမှာ ရုပ်ရှင်ပြမယ်။
 (နေ့တိုင်းလဲ ဒီအချိန်ပြမယ်)
- 3. The train leaves Paungde at 7.30 and arrives in Yangon at 12.30.
 ရထားသည် ပေါင်းတည်မြို့မှ (၇) နာရီခွဲတွင် ထွက်ခွာ၍ ရန်ကုန်သို့ (၁၂) နာရီခွဲတွင် ဆိုက်ရောက်သည်။
 (တစ်ရက်ထဲ အတွက် မဟုတ်ဘူး၊ နောက်နေ့တွေလဲ ဒီအချိန်စာရင်း အတိုင်းပဲ)
- 4. Tomorrow is Friday.
 မနက်ဖြန် သောကြာနေ့ဖြစ်တယ်။
 (မနက်ဖြန်ကို မရောက်သေးဘူး၊ ကြိုပြောတာ။)
- 5. The exhibition opens on 3 May and finishes on 15 July.
 ပြပွဲ မေလ (၃) ရက်နေ့မှာ ဖွင့်ပြီး၊ ဇူလိုင်လ (၁၅) ရက်နေ့မှာ ပိတ်မယ်။

PRESENT CONTINUOUS WITH A FUTURE MEANING

Present Continuous Tense ကို Future အဓိပ္ပာယ်ဖြင့် သုံးခြင်း

အနာဂတ်ကာလအတွက် အစီအစဉ် (arrangement) တစ်ခုခု လုပ်ထားပြီးဖြစ်တယ် ဆိုပါ တော့၊ အဲဒီအစီအစဉ်ကို ကြိုတင်ပြောဆိုချင်ရင် Present Continuous Tense နဲ့ သုံးလေ့ရှိပါတယ်။ အဓိပ္ပာယ်ကတော့ (Future) အနာဂတ်သဘော သက်ရောက်ပါတယ်။ (များသော အားဖြင့် ကတော့ အနာဂတ်အချိန်ပြ စကားလုံးတွေဖြစ်တဲ့ next, tomorrow စသည်တို့နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ရေးသား လေ့ ရှိပါတယ်။)

- ဥပမာ
1. I **am going** to Mandalay tomorrow.
မနက်ဖြန်ကျရင် ငါမန္တလေးကို သွားမလို့။
(သွားနေတယ်လို့ ဘာသာမပြန်ရ။)
 2. We **are playing** football tomorrow.
မနက်ဖြန်ကျရင် တို့တွေ ဘောလုံးကန်မလို့။
(ကန်မည်။)
 3. She **is leaving** for Mandalay next Friday.
She **is staying** there for two weeks.
လာမယ့် သောကြာနေ့ကျရင် သူမန္တလေးကို သွားမလို့။
အဲဒီမှာ သူသီတင်း (၂) ပတ်လောက် နေလိမ့်မယ်။
 4. Cho Cho, is it true that you **are getting** married next month?
လာမယ့်လမှာ မင်းတို့ လက်ထပ်ကြတော့မယ်ဆိုတာ အမှန်ပဲလားချို့ချို့။

FUTURE SUBSTITUTES

going to = တော့မည်၊ လိမ့်မည်။

Future Tense ရဲ့ ကြိုယာပုံစံက will + V1 ဖြစ်တယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. I **will buy** a house.
ကျွန်တော် အိမ်တစ်လုံး ဝယ်မလို့။ (ဝယ်မည်)
ဒါပေမယ့် တစ်ခါတရံ အဲဒီ will အစား going to ကို သုံးပြီး Future Tense ကို ရေးလေ့ရှိပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ I **am going to buy** a house.
ကျွန်တော် အိမ်တစ်လုံး ဝယ်မလို့။ (ဝယ်မည်)
အဲဒီလို (will/ shall) ရဲ့ အစား အနာဂတ်အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ (to be going to) ကို Future Substitutes လို့ ခေါ်ပါ

GOING TO

Going To ကို

၁။ အနာဂတ်ကာလမှာ အလုပ်တစ်ခုကိုလုပ်ဖို့ ဆုံးဖြတ်ပြီးပြီ၊ (သို့) လုပ်ဖို့ ရည်ရွယ်ထားတယ်။ (already intended to do (or) intended to do in the future) ဆိုရင် going to ကို အသုံးပြုပြီး ရေးသားရပါတယ်။ ရည်ရွယ်ချက်ပြ အနာဂတ်ကာလလို့လဲ ဆိုနိုင်ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. There is a film on television tonight.
Are you *going to* watch it?
ဒီည ရုပ်မြင်သံကြားက ရုပ်ရှင်လာလိမ့်မယ်၊ မင်းကြည့်မလား။
No, I am too tired. I *am going to* have an early night.
ဟင့်အင်း မကြည့်ပါဘူး၊ ပင်ပန်းလွန်းလို့၊ မောလွန်းလို့။
ဒီည စောစောအိပ်မလို့။ (မူလတည်းက အိပ်ဖို့ဆုံးဖြတ်ပြီးသား၊ ရည်ရွယ်ပြီး သား)
 2. I *am going to see* my friend tomorrow.
နက်ဖြန်ကျရင် ကျွန်တော့်သူငယ်ချင်းဆီကို သွားတွေ့မလို့။
(ဆုံးဖြတ်ပြီး၊ ရည်ရွယ်ပြီးသား)
 3. We *are going to spend* the summer holidays in Pyin-Oo-Lwin.
နွေရာသီအားလပ်ရက်မှာ တို့တွေ ပြင်ဦးလွင်မှာ နေမလို့။
(ဆုံးဖြတ်ပြီး၊ ရည်ရွယ်ပြီးသား)
 4. We *are going to stay* home tonight and watch television.
ဒီနေ့ည အိမ်မှာပဲနေပြီး ရုပ်မြင်သံကြား ကြည့်မလို့။
(ဆုံးဖြတ်ပြီး၊ ရည်ရွယ်ပြီးသား)
 5. Yan Aung *is going to take* May Sweet to the dance tonight.
ဒီနေ့ည ရန်အောင်က မေဆွိကို ကပွဲကို ခေါ်သွားမလို့။
(ဆုံးဖြတ်ပြီး၊ ရည်ရွယ်ပြီး သား)

သတိပြုမိ

going to eat, going to sleep, going to drive လို့ သုံးပေမယ့်၊
go = သွားသည်၊ come = လာသည် ဆိုတဲ့ ကြိယာကျတော့ -

He is going to go to Mandalay next week. လို့ ရေးရမယ့်အစား -
He is going to Mandalay next week. လို့ ရေးရပါမယ်။

My parents are going to come to see me. လို့ ရေးရမယ့်အစား -
My parents are coming to see me. လို့ ရေးသင့်ပါတယ်။

၂။ အကြောင်းအရာ၊ အဖြစ်အပျက်၊ တစ်စုံတစ်ခုဟာ ကျိန်းသေဖြစ်ပျက်တော့မယ်၊ ဖြစ်ပျက်မှာ
သေချာတယ်ဆိုတဲ့သဘော အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့လဲ (going to) ကို သုံးပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. This boy is doing his examination tomorrow.
He hasn't done any work for them and he is not very intelligent.
He is going to fail in his examination.
မနက်ဖြန်ကျရင် စာမေးပွဲကို ဒီကောင်လေး ဖြေရတော့မယ်၊ စာလည်း
မကျက်ရသေးဘူး။ ပြီးတော့ ကောင်လေးက ဉာဏ်ကောင်းတာမဟုတ်ဘူး။
ကောင်လေးတော့ စာမေးပွဲကျမှာပဲ။ (ကျမှာ သေချာတယ်)
 2. The sky is full of black clouds. It is going to rain.
ကောင်းကင်တစ်ခုလုံး မိုးသားတွေနဲ့ မဲနေတာပဲ။ မိုးတော့ ရွာတော့မှာပဲ။
(ရွာမှာ သေချာတယ်)

GOING TO ၏ PAST TENSE အကျ

Going To (Past Tense Use)

အတိတ်ကာလက အလုပ်တစ်ခုကို လုပ်ဖို့တော့ ရည်ရွယ်ခဲ့တယ်။ ဒါပေမယ့် မလုပ်ဖြစ်ခဲ့ဘူး
ဆိုရင် -
was going to, were going to ကို အသုံးပြု ရေးသားလေ့ရှိပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. We were going to travel by train but then we decided to go by car.
အစကတော့ ရထားနဲ့သွားဖို့ ရည်ရွယ်ခဲ့တာပဲ။ ဒါပေမယ့် နောက်ပိုင်းကျတော့ ကားနဲ့
ပဲ သွားဖို့ ဆုံးဖြတ်လိုက်ကြတယ်။

2. We were going to spend the whole month in Pyin-Oo-Lwin but our money ran out.

အစကတော့ ပြည်ဦးလှိုင်မှာ တစ်လလုံးနေမလို့ (ရည်ရွယ်ခဲ့တာ) ဒါပေမယ့် ပါလာတဲ့
ပိုက်ဆံကုန်သွားတာနဲ့ (မနေဖြစ်တော့ဘူး)။

3. I was going to resign from my job but I changed my mind.

အစကတော့ အလုပ်ကနေ နုတ်ထွက်တော့မလို့ ရည်ရွယ်ခဲ့တာပဲ။ ဒါပေမယ့် ခုတော့
စိတ် (ရည်ရွယ်ချက်) ကို ပြောင်းလိုက်ပါပြီ။

WILL ၏ GOING TO ၏ အဓိပ္ပာယ်အကျ

will = တော့မည်၊ လိမ့်မည်
going to = တော့မည်၊ လိမ့်မည်

မြန်မာလို ဘာသာပြန်ရတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်ကတော့ တူသလိုလိုပေမယ့် အင်္ဂလိပ်စာ အရေးအသား
မှာတော့ အသုံးပြုပုံချင်း ကွာပါတယ်။

1. I will buy some copy-books tomorrow.
မနက်ဖြန်ကျရင် (ဗလာ) စာအုပ် ဝယ်ဦးမယ်။
(မူလက ဝယ်မယ်ဆိုတဲ့ ရည်ရွယ်ချက်မရှိဘူး။ လောလောဆယ် စာအုပ်ကုန်သွားလို့
(ရေးစရာ မရှိတော့လို့) ပြောတဲ့စကားဖြစ်တယ်)

I am going to buy some copy-books tomorrow.
မနက်ဖြန်ကျရင် စာအုပ်ဝယ်ဦးမယ်။
(မူလကတည်းက စာအုပ်ဝယ်မယ်လို့ ရည်ရွယ်ပြီး၊ ဆုံးဖြတ်ပြီးသားမို့
ပြောတဲ့စကားဖြစ်တယ်။)

2. It will rain.
မိုးရွာလိမ့်မယ်။
(ရွာချင်ရွာမယ်၊ ရွာချင်မှရွာမယ်၊ မိုးတွင်းမို့ မိုးရွာမယ်လို့ ပြောတာ)
It is going to rain.
မိုးတွေရွာလိမ့်မယ်။
(လျှပ်စီးတွေလက်၊ မိုးတွေခြိမ်း၊ မိုးသားတိမ်လိပ်တွေကလဲ တက်ပြီး၊ ကောင်းကင်
တစ်ခုလုံး မဲမှောင်နေတုန်း၊ မိုးရွာမှာသေချာလို့ ပြောတဲ့စကားဖြစ်တယ်။)

သတိပြုမိ

going to = ကို မူလကဘည်းက ရည်ရွယ်ချက်ရှိပြီး ဆုံးဖြတ်ချက်ချပြီးတဲ့ ဖြစ်ရပ်တွေ၊ သေချာမှုရှိတဲ့ ဖြစ်ရပ်တွေမှာ အသုံးပြုကြောင်း ဖော်ပြခဲ့ပြီးဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

ခါကြောင့်

ပြင်ပအခြေအနေ၊ မသေချာတဲ့ အခြေအနေ အကြောင်းခြင်းရာတစ်ရပ်အရ အနာဂတ်မှာ ဖြစ်ပျက်မှာပဲ၊ ဖြစ်ပျက်နိုင်တယ်လို့ ပြောဆိုရေးသားတဲ့ မသေချာ မရေရာတဲ့ဖြစ်ရပ်တွေမှာ going to ကို သုံးခဲ့ပါတယ်။ will ကိုပဲ သုံးရပါတယ်။

- ၁။ 1. If the weather is nice tomorrow, we will have a swim.
မနက်ဖြန် မိုးလေဝသ သာယာရင် ကျွန်တော်တို့ ရေကူးသွားမယ်။ (going to မသုံးရ၊ မိုးလေဝသ အခြေအနေသည် သေချာတိကျမှုမရှိ)
- 2. If it doesn't rain tomorrow, we will visit the zoo.
မနက်ဖြန် မိုးမရွာရင် တိရိစ္ဆာန်ရုံကို သွားလည်မယ်။ (going to မသုံးရ၊ မိုးရွာမရွာ သေချာမှုမရှိ။)

The construction, (to be) going to is used to express.

1. Intention,
2. Strong probability,
3. The speaker's certainty.

A. C. E. GRAMMAR (PAGE. 166)

WILL ၏ အသုံး

will = တော့မည်၊ လိမ့်မည်
Will နဲ့ ပတ်သက်ပြီး အခြားသိသင့်သိထိုက်တဲ့ အချက်အလက်ကလေးတွေကို ထပ်ပြီး လေ့လာကြည့်ပါဦး။

၁။ အနာဂတ်ကာလမှာ ဖြစ်ရပ်တစ်ခု၊ အလုပ်တစ်ခု ဖြစ်ပျက်ပြုလုပ်လိမ့်မယ်လို့ ကြိုတင် ပြောဆိုချင်တဲ့အခါမှာ "will" ကို သုံးပါတယ်။

- ၁။ 1. I will go to Mnadalay tomorrow.
မနက်ဖြန်ကျွန်ုပ် ငါ မန္တလေးကို သွားမလို့။
- 2. You will pass the examination if you try hard.
ကြိုးစားရင် မင်းစာမေးပွဲအောင်လိမ့်မယ်။

၂။ ယခု ပြောဆိုချိန်မှာမှ အလုပ်တစ်ခုကို လုပ်မယ်လို့ ဆုံးဖြတ်လိုက်ရင်လဲ "will" ကို သုံးပါတယ်။

- ၃။ ၁။ "What would you like to drink?"
ဘာသောက်မလဲဟေ့။
"I'll (I will) have a cup of tea, please."
ကျေးဇူးပြုပြီး လက်ဖက်ရည်တစ်ခွက်လောက် ပေးပါဗျာ။
(ဘာသောက်မလဲမေးမှ ဆုံးဖြတ်လိုက်တာ)
- 2. "Did you phone U Win?"
မင်း ဦးဝင်းဆီ ဖုန်းဆက်ခဲ့ရဲ့လားဟေ့။
"Oh no, I forgot. I'll do it now."
အို... မေ့သွားတယ်ဗျာ၊ ခုပဲ ဆက်လိုက်ပါမယ်။

၃။ တစ်စုံတစ်ခုကို ကတိပြုတဲ့သဘောနဲ့လဲ "will" ကို သုံးပါတယ်။

- ၄။ ၁။ Thank you for lending me the book. I will pay you back tomorrow.
စာအုပ်ငှားတဲ့အတွက် ကျေးဇူးတင်ပါတယ်။ မနက်ဖြန်ကျွန်ုပ် ကျွန်တော် ပြန်ပေးပါမယ်။
- 2. I won't tell Thida what you said. I promise.
မင်းပြောတာတွေကို ငါက သိတာကို ပြန်မပြောပါဘူး။ ကတိပေးပါတယ်။

၅။ Probably ဖြစ်ကောင်းဖြစ်မည်၊ (I'm) sure, (I) expect, I (think) စတဲ့ စကားလုံးတွေနဲ့ တွဲဖက်ပြီးတော့လဲ will ကို သုံးပါတယ်။

- ၆။ ၁။ I'll probably be late this evening.
ဒီညနေမှာ ငါ နောက်ကျကောင်း နောက်ကျမယ်။
(နောက်ကျချင်ကျမယ်။)
- 2. I expect Ko Kyaw will get the job.
ကိုကျော် အလုပ်ရလိမ့်မယ်လို့ ငါ မျှော်လင့်တယ်။

3. Do you think Aung Aung will pass the examination?

အောင်အောင် စာမေးပွဲအောင်လိမ့်မယ်လို့ မင်းထင် (မြင်ယူဆ) သလား

4. You must meet Cho Pyone. I'm sure you will like her.

မင်း ချိုပြုံးကို သွားတွေ့ပါ။ မင်း သူ့ကို သဘောကျသွားလိမ့်မယ်လို့ ငါ သေသေချာချာ ပြောရဲတယ်။

၅။ တစ်စုံတစ်ယောက်ကို တစ်ခုခုပြုလုပ်ပေးဖို့ စေခိုင်း၊ ပန်ကြား၊ တောင်းဆိုတဲ့အခါတွေမှာလဲ "will" ကို သုံးပါတယ်။

ပုံစံ 1. Will you open the window, please?

ကျေးဇူးပြုပြီး ပြတင်းပေါက်ကလေး ဖွင့်ပါလားဗျာ။

2. Will you please be quiet? The patient is going to sleep.

ကျေးဇူးပြုပြီး တိတ်တိတ်ဆိတ်ဆိတ် နေနိုင်မလားဗျာ။ လူမမာ အိပ်တော့မှာ ဖို့ပါ။

Exercise No. (97)

Choose the most suitable words given in the brackets;

1. Daw Ni (A. will, B. is going to) probably arrive at about 9 o'clock.
2. I think you (A. will, B. are going to) like the present I bought for you.
3. I have decided to repaint this room. Oh, have you? What colour (A. will you, B. are you going to) paint?
4. Oh dear, it's already 4 o'clock. We (A. will, B. are going to) be late.
5. Look at those black clouds. It (A. will, B. is going to) rain.
6. I am sure they (A. will, B. are going to) buy this house.
7. I am turning on television. I (A. will, B. am going to) watch the news.
8. It is very hot in the room. (A. Will you, B. Are you going to) open the windows?
9. Please don't tell anyone. All right, I (A. will not, B. am not going to) tell anyone.
10. Where are you going? Are you going shopping? Yes. I (A. will, B. am going to) buy something for dinner.

11. What would you like to drink tea or coffee? I (A. will, B. am going to) have coffee.

12. What (A. will you, B. are you going to) give Nilar for her birthday?

13. There (A. will, B. is going to) be a party here next Sunday night.

14. I think Nyo Nyo (A. will, B. is going to) take her vacation in April.

15. The president (A. will, B. is going to) make an important announcement over the radio.

Tense တွေ အကုန်လုံးကို လေ့လာပြီးပြီဆိုရင် လေ့ကျင့်ခန်းကလေးတွေကို ဖြေကြည့်ပါဦး။

Exercise No. (98)

Fill the blanks with the most suitable form of the verb given in brackets.

- | | |
|------------------------|---|
| 1. (flee) | The thieves when the police arrived. |
| 2. (rain) | We can't go out now because it |
| 3. (already, do) | I all my house work when my father came back. |
| 4. (water) | The boy the flowers when I saw him. |
| 5. (already, cook) | Mother the meal when we reached home. |
| 6. (dig) | The villagers a well near the village last month. |
| 7. (finish) | They studying when the lights went out. |
| 8. (still, cook) | Mother the dinner when the children came home from school. |
| 9. (lie) | The old woman was tired and so she down under the tree. |
| 10. (strike) | He asked me to wake him up when the clock 4 o'clock.) |
| 11. (already, explain) | I this problem but they do not seem to understand. |
| 12. (sing) | Listen! Somebody a song. |
| 13. (take) | She longer to dress than her sister so she has to start dressing earlier. |

- 14. (still, write) He a letter when his friend came to see him.
- 15. (sing) Ni Ni Win Shwe is popular because she very well.
- 16. (already, do) I all my work by the time he came home.
- 17. (read) Look! He the book his father wrote.
- 18. (sell) She can buy a car now, because she her house since last month.
- 19. (leave) When I got to office, I found that I my pen at home.
- 20. (have) Our house many windows.

Exercise No. (99)

Choose the most suitable form of the verb given in the brackets and complete the sentences given below.

- 1. He (A. was going, B. had gone, C. went) to town to find a new job.
- 2. Everybody now (A. is believing, B. believes, C. has believed) that he has told the truth.
- 3. The girl can't see her friends because she (A. has, B. had, C. is having) her piano lesson.
- 4. The farmer could sit down and rest only after he (A. was doing, B. did, C. had done) all the work in the field.
- 5. One day he hopes (A. will become, B. to become, C. has become) a famous doctor.
- 6. Farmers go to work before the sun (A. is rising, B. rises, C. rose).
- 7. We were at the pictures when the fire (A. had broken out, B. broke out, C. is breaking out).
- 8. No one know exactly how the accident (A. happened, B. happens, C. is happening).
- 9. She has given up going to cinema because she (A. is preparing, B. prepares, C. has prepared) for her examination.
- 10. He (A. is waiting, B. waits, C. has been waiting) for the bus since 7 o'clock.

- 11. Our mother told us that we could go out and play after we (A. did, B. had done, C. were doing) our homework.
- 12. I shall never (A. forgot, B. forgotten, C. forget) my parents' kindness to me.
- 13. When she was young, she often (A. plays, B. played, C. had played) with the other children in the neighbourhood.
- 14. I was not sure whether I (A. had read, B. read, C. have read) this book before.
- 15. Milk (A. is containing, B. contains, C. has contained) a lot of vitamins.

VERB FORMS (QUESTIONS)

စာမျက်နှာ (၈၅) မှာ ဖော်ပြခဲ့တဲ့ မေးခွန်းဝါကျပြောင်းနည်းတွေကို သေသေချာချာ ကျက်မှတ်ပါဦး။ ပြီးမှ ဒီလေ့ကျင့်ခန်းကို လုပ်ပါ။

Exercise No. (100)

Fill the blanks with the most suitable form of the verb given in brackets.

- 1. (you, be) interested in English?
- 2. (you, be) going to Mandalay tomorrow?
- 3. (he, be) buying a house next year?
- 4. (they, be) singing a song now?
- 5. (you, be) wearing a red longyi when I saw you?

အပေါ်က ဝါကျ (၅) ကြောင်းမှာ Verb to be တွေကို မေးခွန်းလုပ်ခိုင်းတာ ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။ ဝါကြောင့် ဝါကျရဲ့ရှေ့မှာ Verb to be ကို ထားပြီး ဖြေရပါတယ်။ (အဖြေနဲ့ တိုက်ဆိုင်လေ့လာကြည့်ပါ။)

- Ans. 1. Are you 2. Are you 3. Is he
 4. Are they 5. Were you

ကဲ Verb to have တွေ့ မေးပုံကို လေ့လာပါဦး။

- 1. (you, eat) rice every day?
- 2. (you, watch) television last night?
- 3. (you, sell) your old books tomorrow?
- 4. (you, ever been) to Kyaikhtiyo Pagoda?
- 5. (he, come) to you every day?

- Ans. 1. Do you eat 2. Did you watch
 3. Will you sell 4. Have you ever been
 5. Does he come

ကဲ Verb to do တွေ့ မေးပုံကို လေ့လာပါဦး။

- 1. (you, have) a bad cold yesterday?
- 2. (you, have) your dinner now?
- 3. (he, have) a walk every morning?
- 4. (the girl, have) her lunch yet?
- 5. (they, have) much money?

- Ans. 1. Did you have 2. Are you having
 3. Does he have 4. Has the girl had
 5. Do they have

Exercise No. (101)

Fill in the blanks with the most suitable form of the verb given in brackets.

- 1. (you, know) whose pencil this is?
- 2. (she, do) her shopping yesterday?
- 3. (he, water) the flowers yesterday?
- 4. (you, hear) the bad news yet?
- 5. (the girl, sweep) the room every day?
- 6. (you, ever been) to Ngapali for a holiday?
- 7. (you, cross) the road, when the car knocked you down?
- 8. (you, read) a book when your friends came to you?

- 9. (the boy, study) How many hours every day?
- 10. (you, paint) When the walls, tomorrow or next week?
- 11. (you, paint) When the walls, last week or the week before?
- 12. (you, know) when Bogyoke Aung San was assassinated?
- 13. (you, do) What all the time?
- 14. (you, live) How long in this town?
- 15. (the boys, do) What when the teacher came into the room?
- 16. (she, do) What now?
- 17. (you, study) your lessons daily?
- 18. (she, wash) When her face?
- 19. (the teacher, write) on the blackboard now?
- 20. (he, go) Where last Sunday?
- 21. (he, go) Where on Sundays?
- 22. (you, like) to read detective stories?
- 23. (the wind, blow) hard when you went to bed last night?
- 24. (he, write) a novel for two years now?
- 25. (you, do) What when the bell rang?

VERB FORMS (NEGATIVE)

စာမျက်နှာ (၅၉) မှာ ဖော်ပြခဲ့တဲ့ ငြင်းဆိုဝါကျပြောင်းနည်းတွေကို သေသေချာချာ ကျက်မှတ်ပါဦး။ ပြီးမှ ဒီလေ့ကျင့်ခန်းကို လုပ်ပါ။

Exercise No. (102)

Fill the blanks with the most suitable form of the verb given in brackets.

- 1. (not be) The children sleeping in the room now.
- 2. (not be) He leaving for Mandalay tomorrow.

3. (not be) She studying her lessons when father came back home.
4. (not be) I reading a book while my sister is doing her homework.
5. (not be) She coming to my house next week.
6. (not be) The new lessons studied yesterday.
7. (not be) She a famous actress.
8. (not be) They going to buy a house.
9. (not be) He rich but he is happy.
10. (not be) There many students in this school.

Verb to be တွေကို ငြင်းဆိုလုပ်ခိုင်းတာဖြစ်တယ်။ ဒါကြောင့် (V/be) မှားမှားကပ်ပြီး (not) ထည့်ပြီး ဖြေရပါတယ်။ (အဖြေခွဲ တိုက်ဆိုင်လေ့လာကြည့်ပါ။)

Ans. 1. are not, 2. is not, 3. was not 4. am not, 5. is not, 6. were not, 7. is not, 8. are not, 9. is not, 10. are not.

Verb to do တွေ ငြင်းပုံကို လေ့လာကြည့်ပါ။

11. (not buy) Mother meat every day.
12. (not cook) Daw Lay the dinner yet.
13. (not dig) The villagers the pond yet when it began to rain.
14. (not rise) The sun in the west.
15. (not eat) Lions grass.
16. (not drink) He milk every day.
17. (not drink) He milk yesterday.
18. (not drink) He milk tomorrow.
19. (not drink) He milk now.
20. (not drink) He milk yet.

Ans. 11. does not buy, 12. has not cooked, 13. had not dug, 14. does not rise, 15. do not eat, 16. does not drink, 17. did not drink, 18. will not drink, 19. is not drinking, 20. has not drunk.

Verb to have တွေ ငြင်းပုံကို လေ့လာကြည့်ပါ။

21. (not have) She many friends in her school.
22. (not have) He his breakfast yet.
23. (not have) I my dinner when the visitors arrived.
24. (not have) He a headache last night.
25. (not have) Look! The children their bath well.
26. (not have) He dinner regularly.
27. (not have) He dinner yesterday.
28. (not have) He dinner tomorrow.
29. (not have) He dinner now.
30. (not have) He dinner yet.

Ans. 21. does not have, 22. has not had, 23. was not having (or) had not had, 24. did not have, 25. are not having, 26. does not have, 27. did not have, 28. will not have, 29. is not having, 30. has not had.

Exercise No. (103)

Fill the blanks with the most suitable form of the verb given in brackets.

1. (not eat) I anything since last night.
2. (not understand) At present, Hnin Hnin what is right and what is wrong.
3. (not rain) It hard last night.
4. (not shine) The sun now.
5. (not live) He in this village since last March.
6. (not work) I in that same office ever since you first met me.
7. (not drink) He tea since he was a child.
8. (not go) They to the movie with us tonight.
9. (not write) He a letter to you next week.
10. (not get) He up at six o'clock every morning.
11. (not be) She at home when I went to see her yesterday.

12. (not need) She a new pen as her old one is still good.
 13. (not have) We anything yet.
 14. (not enjoy) I the picture that I saw yesterday.
 15. (not find) I the book I want yet.

Exercise No. (104)

Rewrite each sentence with the correct form of the verb given in brackets.

1. (go) I to Mandalay last week.
2. (study) He his lesson now.
3. (read) I a book when he came in.
4. (understand) I am puzzled by this sum but I it better tomorrow.
5. (visit) I Mandalay many times.
6. (sing) He that song over and over again the whole day, till I am tired of hearing him.
7. (study) He says he his lessons next week.
8. (rise) He said the sun in the east.
9. (cry) Listen! the baby for its mother.
10. (grow) He planted the branch and let it for five years.
11. (come) Our father usually at 9 o'clock.
12. (draw) Day by day our examination near.
13. (love) Now my aunt my sister very much.
14. (have) Daw Nu her dinner now.
15. (have) Daw Nu much money now.

Exercise No. (105)

Rewrite each sentence with the correct form of the verb given in brackets.

1. Khin Than Nu (be) an actress.
2. We (be) students.
3. Our father (be) an officer.
4. He (be) dead last year.
5. I (be) a tenth standard student this year.
6. I (be) a ninth standard student last year.
7. I (be) a university student next year.
8. Now she (be) a doctor.
9. My mother (be) a nurse in a hospital when she was young.
10. He as well as his friends (be) going to do something wrong.
11. The teacher with her pupils (be) cleaning the school compound.
12. The dacoit leader together with his followers (be) arrested by the police.
13. Fire (be) hot but ice (be) cold.
14. Man (be) mortal.
15. If you (be) honest, you will be successful.
16. If you do not do your homework, your teacher (be) angry.
17. If she (be) Kyaw Hein, she would kill Aung Kyaw.
18. If I had much money, I (be) very happy.
19. He (be) a doctor since 1980.
20. They (be) studying English for three years.
21. Bridges (be) very useful.
22. I (be) in this tuition since June.
23. Cows (be) common animals in our country.
24. If I (be) a bird, I would fly to my lover.
25. Although I (be) angry, I did not scold my children.
26. She (have) black hair when she was young.
27. She (have) white hair now.
28. I (have) my dinner now.
29. I (have) a car now.
30. I (have) a better car next year.
31. She (have) a bad dream last night.
32. They (have) good cars when they were rich.
33. They (have) enough money if they try hard.

34. The dog (have) four legs.
35. Snakes (have) no legs.
36. They (have) their dinner at present.
37. They (have) many good friends now.
38. The boy (have) his breakfast since 8 o'clock.
39. Win Lwin (have) studied his lessons.
40. The pupils (have) not done their homework.
41. If he tried, he (have) much money.
42. You (have) your lunch if you had come back early.
43. The boys (have) courage if their parents trained them.
44. The boys (have) courage if their parents train them.
45. How long (have) you been in this school.?
46. She (have) been studying English since 1979.
47. He dose not (have) much knowledge now.
48. He (have) much knowledge if he passes the tenth standard.
49. This book (have) a red cover.
50. Man (have) two legs.

Exercise No. (106)

Rewrite each sentence with the correct form of the verb given in brackets.

1. I (do) my work and they (do) their work.
2. She usually (do) her homework at night.
3. The girl did not (do) her homework yesterday.
4. (do) you do your work every day?
5. (do) they study the lessons last week?
6. Our father (do) his work when we saw him.
7. I (do) my homework when I went to bed.
8. The exercises (do) daily.
9. Does she (do) her duty well?
10. (do) the police watch the thieves every night?
11. (do) every student want holidays?
12. (do) you read the newspaper every morning?
13. Ko Ko (do) not go to school on Sunday.
14. Why (do) they capture the poor boy last month?
15. (do) they build a new bridge last year?

16. Where (do) the thief hide the gold that he stole last year?
17. When will they (do) their duty well?
18. If they (do) not do their work, they will be jobless.
19. How (do) they print this book although they had no printing press?
20. (do) she bathe every evening?
21. Ni Ni as well as her friends (do) the homework.
22. Ni Ni and her friends (do) the homework.
23. Both the boy and the girl (do) the work.
24. Not only the boy but also the girl (do) the work.
25. Either Abdul or Latiff (do) not like pork.
26. People (do) not love others like them.
27. Beautiful girls (do) not attract the blind boy.
28. Please (do) your homework daily.
29. Bandoola was ordered to (do) what he was ordered.
30. He (do) his work when the lights went out.
31. Mg Mg (be) a good swimmer.
32. His parents (be) simple farmers.
33. A week (have) seven days.
34. I (have) many friends.
35. Hla Hla usually (write) in black ink.
36. Every morning I (get) up early.
37. I always (tell) you to comb your hair every evening.
38. Did you (sweep) the floor this morning?
39. She will (sing) a song.
40. U Aye (teach) English and Mathematics.
41. The little girl is able to (carry) the heavy basket.
42. Ko Ko sometimes (play) football.
43. Please (explain) this exercise to me.
44. He (study) in the same class as I now.
45. It (rain) at this moment.
46. She (wash) her hands now.
47. He often (spend) his hoildays at his uncle's home.
48. We must (drink) water daily.
49. They do not (speak) English well.
50. She (help) her mother with the cooking every day.

Exercise No. (107)

Rewrite each sentence with the correct form of the verb given in brackets.

1. (you, eat) rice every day?
2. (you, eat) rice yesterday?
3. (you, eat) rice tomorrow?
4. (you, eat) rice now?
5. (he, know) how to write essays?
6. (he, know) your address last week?
7. (they, plough) the fields every year?
8. (they, plough) the fields last year?
9. (they, plough) the fields next year?
10. (they, plough) the fields now?
11. (they, plough) the fields yet?
12. (they, read) the newspaper every day?
13. (you, read) the newspaper now?
14. (you, read) the newspaper yet?
15. (you, read) the newspaper tomorrow?
16. (you, read) the newspaper yesterday?
17. (you, do) your homework every night?
18. (you, do) your homework now?
19. (you, do) your homework yet?
20. (you, do) your homework yesterday?
21. She (not tell) the truth.
22. They (not tell) the truth.
23. I (not drink) tea every morning.
24. He (not write) a letter to me since July.
25. He (not read) the books yesterday.
26. She (not cook) rice now.
27. The boys (not play) football yesterday.
28. My mother (not like) tea or coffee.
29. Aung Aung (not go) to school today.
30. He (not do) the work well.
31. He (not do) the work yesterday.
32. He (not do) the work yet.
33. He (not do) the work now.
34. They (not wash) the clothes yesterday.
35. Win Win (not do) the mistake next time.

Exercise No. (108)

Rewrite each sentence with the correct form of the verb given in brackets.

1. The class (teach) by Saya Saw yesterday.
2. A letter (write) by Win Win every week.
3. The work (finish) by the carpenter tomorrow.
4. The books (keep) in the box last year.
5. The grass (cut) by the farmer now.
6. The pencils (sell) in the market.
7. All the letters (write) by the clerk tomorrow.
8. The money (take) by the servant last night.
9. The accident (see) by the police.
10. America (discover) by Columbus in 1492.
11. The whole town (destroy) by fire yesterday.
12. This room (use) for our lesson since 1970.
13. This book (read) three times.
14. The car (repair) by the mechanic since yesterday.
15. The books (can borrow) from the library.
16. If he (try) hard, he will pass the examination.
17. If he (invite) me, I will go to her.
18. If I (know) how to play the piano, I will play for my friend every day.
19. If he works hard, he (get) much money.
20. If it does not rain tomorrow, we (go) on a picnic.
21. If we (have) a good teacher, we would make more progress.
22. If Aung Aung (study) hard, he would pass his examination.
23. If he knew how to drive, he (buy) a car.
24. If she had much money, she (lend) it to me.
25. If I had known his telephone number, I (call) him up.
26. If he had gone to bed earlier, he (be) less tired.
27. If they (invite) me, I would have gone with them.
28. If he (leave) in time, he would have caught the train.
29. If she (be) a bird, she would fly to me.
30. If I (be) you, I would try my best to pass the examination.
31. I saw a girl (dance) on the stage.
32. Yesterday I saw a man (beat) his son.
33. Our teacher let us (talk) in the class yesterday.
34. Our father made our mother (cook) the chicken curry.
35. I heard Cho Pyone (sing) a song yesterday.

B Thoughts, feelings and states

We normally use the present simple with verbs of thinking and feeling:

I think you're right. *Julia likes her job.* *He wants a new bike.*

We also use it to talk about states and permanent facts (see Unit 3):

I know Jane quite well. *Paris lies on the River Seine.*

D The present continuous with **always**

In this special pattern **always** means 'very often' or 'too often':

Peter is always inviting friends here. (= He very often invites them.)
I'm always making silly mistakes. (= I make silly mistakes too often.)

Always with the present simple means 'every time':

Peter always invites his parents to stay at Christmas.
I always make silly mistakes when I'm taking an exam.

C State verbs in the continuous

But we can use some state verbs in the continuous when we talk about a short period of time.

Compare:

SIMPLE (a permanent state)

I love/enjoy parties.
I like school.
Holidays cost a lot of money.

CONTINUOUS (a short period of time)

I'm loving/enjoying this party.
I'm liking school a lot better now.
This trip is costing me a lot of money.

But in these examples we can use either the simple or continuous with little difference in meaning:

You look well. OR *You're looking well.* *We feel a bit sad.* OR *We're feeling a bit sad.*
This tooth hurts/aches. OR *This tooth is hurting/aching.*

B We often use **just**, **already** and **yet** with the present perfect:

I've just remembered something.
The bus has already left.
Has Tom replied to your letter yet?
 For these adverbs see Unit 90.

But Americans sometimes use the past simple:

I just remembered something.
The bus already left.
Did Tom reply to your letter yet?
 For more examples see p 288.

E today, this week etc.

We use **today** and phrases with **this** for a period up to the present:

PRESENT PERFECT

It hasn't rained today.
Have you seen this week's magazine?

PAST SIMPLE

It rained yesterday.
Did you see last week's magazine?

But note these examples:

I haven't seen Jody today.
 (It's still day time.)
Has the post come this morning?
 (It is still morning.)

I didn't see Jody at school today.
 (The school day is over.)
Did the post come this morning?
 (!: is later in the day.)

C Past simple and past perfect

To talk about one action in the past, we use the past simple:

I posted the letter yesterday. NOT *I had posted the letter yesterday.*

When one action comes straight after another, we use the past simple for both:

When Jack saw the bomb, he shouted a warning.

To say that one thing finished and then something else happened, we use either **when ... had done** or **after ... did/had done**:

When Carol had taken the photos, she developed the film.
After Carol had taken (OR *After Carol took*) *the photos, she developed the film.*

Note the different meanings:

When we arrived, the others all left. (We arrived and then they left.)
When we arrived, the others had all left. (They left before we arrived.)

We sometimes use the past perfect with **before** or **until**:

The ball hit the back of the net before the goalkeeper had moved.
The chairman didn't speak until he had heard all the arguments.

ACTIVE VOICE AND PASSIVE VOICE

ACTIVE VOICE AND PASSIVE VOICE

အကြောင်းအရာ၊ အဖြစ်အပျက်၊ တစ်စုံတစ်ခု ဖြစ်ပျက်ပြုလုပ်ကြတဲ့အခါမှာ "ပြုလုပ်သူ" ရှိသလို၊ "ခံရသူ" လဲ ရှိတတ်ပါတယ်။

အဲဒီအဖြစ်အပျက်၊ အကြောင်းအရာကို မိမိရဲ့သန္ဓေအရ ဖော်ပြပြောဆိုတဲ့အခါ ကိုယ်ပြော ချင်တဲ့ ဦးစားပေး ဖော်ပြချင်တဲ့အကြောင်းအရာကို ဝါကျရဲ့ရှေ့မှာထားပြီး ဖော်ပြရေးသားပြောဆိုလေ့ ရှိပါတယ်။ အဲဒီလို ဖော်ပြတဲ့အခါမှာ...

- ပြုလုပ်သူကို ဦးစားပေးချင်လို့ ဝါကျရဲ့ရှေ့ဆုံးမှာထားပြီး ဖော်ပြရေးသားတဲ့အကြောင်းဟာ Active Voice ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

- ခံရသူကို ဦးစားပေးချင်လို့ ဝါကျရဲ့ ရှေ့ဆုံးမှာထားပြီး ဖော်ပြရေးသားတဲ့ အကြောင်းဟာ Passive Voice ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ ဦးဘဆိုတဲ့လူက လှလှဆိုတဲ့ ကလေးငယ်တစ်ယောက်ကို ရိုက်တယ်ဆိုပါတော့။
ရိုက်သူက = ဦးဘ
အရိုက်ခံရသူက = လှလှ
U Ba beats Hla Hla.
ဦးဘသည် လှလှကိုရိုက်သည်။

လို့ ဝါကျကိုရေးဖွဲ့ရင် ရိုက်သူ (Subject) ဦးဘကို ဝါကျရဲ့ရှေ့မှာထားပြီး ဦးစားပေး ရေးသားထားတဲ့အတွက် (Active Voice) နဲ့ ရေးထားတယ်လို့ ခေါ်ပါတယ်။ နောက်တစ်နည်း ရေးနိုင် ပါသေးတယ်။

Hla Hla is beaten by U Ba.
လှလှသည် ဦးဘ၏ရိုက်ခြင်းကို ခံရသည်။ (သို့) လှလှကို ဦးဘရိုက်သည်။

လို့ ဝါကျကိုရေးဖွဲ့ရင်တော့ အရိုက်ခံရသူ (Object) လှလှကို ဝါကျရဲ့ရှေ့မှာထားပြီး ဦးစားပေး ရေးသားထားတဲ့အတွက် (Passive Voice) နဲ့ ရေးထားတယ်လို့ ခေါ်ပါတယ်။

သတိပြုရန်

- Passive Voice နဲ့ ရေးထားတဲ့ ဝါကျတွေကို မြန်မာဘာသာပြန်တဲ့အခါ ...
- ၁။ ကြိယာကို "ခံရသည်" ဆိုတဲ့ စကားလုံးနဲ့တွဲပြီး ဘာသာပြန်ရပါမယ်။
 - ၂။ ဒါမှမဟုတ် ဝါကျရဲ့ရှေ့မှာထား ရေးသားထားတဲ့ Subject ကို "ကို" နဲ့ တွဲပြီး ဘာသာပြန်ရပါမယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. The dog is killed by Zaw Zaw.
ခွေးသည် ဇော်ဇော်၏ သတ်ခြင်းခံရသည်။ (သို့) ခွေးကို ဇော်ဇော်သတ်သည်။
 2. Rice is cooked by Daw Htay.
ထမင်းသည် ဒေါ်ဌေး၏ ချက်ခြင်းခံရသည်။ (သို့) ထမင်းကို ဒေါ်ဌေးချက်သည်။
 3. The thief was caught by the police.
သူနိုးသည် ရဲ၏ဖမ်းဆီးခြင်း ခံခဲ့ရသည်။ (သို့) သူနိုးကို ရဲကဖမ်းခဲ့သည်။

ခါးကြောင့်

- ပြုလုပ်သူကို ဦးစားပေးပြီး ဝါကျကို ရှေးရှင် အင်္ဂါဝါကျကို (Active Voice) နဲ့ ရေးထားတဲ့ ဝါကျလို့ ခေါ်ပါတယ်။
- ခံရသူကို ဦးစားပေးပြီး ဝါကျကို ရှေးရှင် အင်္ဂါဝါကျကို (Passive Voice) နဲ့ ရေးထားတဲ့ ဝါကျလို့ ခေါ်ပါတယ်။

When the subject or doer is to be made prominent, Active Voice is used, and when the object (the person or thing acted upon) is to be made prominent, Passive Voice is used.

GOOD ENGLISH (PAGE. 195)

Voice is the form that a verb takes to show whether the subject of the sentence stands for the doer or the receiver of the action expressed by the verb.

A SHORT COURSE IN ENGLISH GRAMMAR (PAGE. 83)
L. OLIPHANT

We talk not of the passive tense, but the passive voice. Passive really means "suffering", because the subject of the verb "suffers" the action instead of performing it. The opposite of "passive" is "active".

PRACTICAL ENGLISH USAGE (PAGE. 65)

"We talk not of the passive tense, but the passive voice. Passive really means "suffering", because the subject of the verb "suffers" the action instead of performing it. The opposite of "passive" is active.

Practical English Usage (P. 65)



PASSIVE VOICE ။

1. ပြုလုပ်သူနဲ့ ခံရသူ နှစ်ဦးရှိတဲ့အနက် ခံရသူကို အထူးဦးစားပေးပြီး ဖော်ပြချင်တဲ့အခါ
2. ပြုလုပ်သူနဲ့ ခံရသူနှစ်ဦးအနက် ခံရသူက ပြုလုပ်သူထက် ပိုမို ကျော်ကြားလှသိများတဲ့အခါ

ဥပမာ - အမေရိကန်သမ္မတ Lincoln ကို John ဆိုတဲ့လူက လုပ်ကြံတယ် ဆိုပါတော့

- သမ္မတ Lincoln က တစ်ကမ္ဘာလုံးက သိတဲ့လူ၊ John က သာမန်လူ တစ်ယောက်သာဖြစ်တယ်။ ဒီလိုအဖြစ်အပျက်မျိုးကို ဖော်ပြရေးသားမယ်ဆို ရင်.....

The President, Mr. Lincoln, was assassinated.
သမ္မတကြီး လင်ကွန်းလုပ်ကြံခံရတယ်....လို့ Passive Voice နဲ့သာ ရေးသားရမှာ ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။ ပြုလုပ်သူ John ကို ဦးစားပေးပြီး Active Voice နဲ့ မရေးရပါဘူး။

3. ပြုလုပ်တဲ့လူဟာ မထင်မရှား၊ မရေမရာနဲ့ ဘယ်သူမှန်းမသိတဲ့အခါ (သို့) ဖော်ပြရန် မလိုတဲ့ အခါ

ဥပမာ မနေ့ညက ကိုယ့်အိမ်ထဲဝင်ပြီး သူနိုးခိုးသွားတယ်၊ အဝတ်စားတွေ အနိုးခံလိုက်ရ တယ်၊ မနက်ကျမှ အနိုးခံရကြောင်း သိရတယ်၊ ဒါပေမယ့် ဘယ်သူခိုးသွားမှန်း တော့ မသိဘူး...ဆိုပါတော့...

The clothes were stolen last night.
အဝတ်အစားတွေ မနေ့ညက အနိုးခံခဲ့ရတယ်။
လို့ Passive Voice နဲ့သာ ရေးရမှာဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

We use the Passive Voice when the agent who performs the action is not known or is not important.

e.g.

- His car has been stolen.
- English is spoken in many countries today.

GRADED EXERCISES (PAGE. 106)

The Passive Voice may be used when the agent is unknown, or when we do not care to name the agent.

e.g. The ship was wrecked.

H. S. E. C. (PAGE. 318)

Passive Voice နဲ့ ရေးမယ်ဆိုရင် သူရဲ့ကြိယာတဲ့ ပုံစံဟာ Verb to be တစ်မျိုးမျိုးနဲ့
 Past Participle (V3) ကြိယာနဲ့ ပေါင်းစပ်တွဲဖက် ရေးသားရမှာ ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။
 အကျဉ်းချုပ်လေ့လာနိုင်ဖို့ ဧယားကွက်ချပြီး ပြလိုက်ပါတယ်။

| Tense | Active Voice | Passive Voice |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| 1. Present Simple | U Win teaches this class. | This class is taught by U Win. |
| 2. Present Continuous | U Win is teaching this class. | This class is being taught by U Win. |
| 3. Present Perfect | U Win has taught this class. | This class has been taught by U Win. |
| 4. Present Perfect Continuous | U Win has been teaching this class. | - |
| 1. Past Simple | U Win taught this class. | This class was taught by U Win. |
| 2. Past Continuous | U Win was teaching this class. | This class was being taught by U Win. |
| 3. Past Perfect | U Win had taught this class. | This class had been taught by U Win. |
| 4. Past Perfect Continuous | U Win had been teaching this class. | - |
| 1. Future Simple | U Win will teach this class. | This class will be taught by U Win. |
| 2. Future Continuous | U Win will be teaching this class. | - |
| 3. Future Perfect | U Win will have taught this class | This class will have been taught by U Win. |
| 4. Future Perfect Continuous | U Win will have been teaching this class. | - |

Note :

1. The Perfect Continuous Tenses are not used Passively.
2. The Future Continuous Tense is not used Passively.
3. It will be seen that there are twelve tenses in the Active Voice, and eight in the Passive.

1. **Perfect Continuous** နဲ့ ရေးထားတဲ့ ဝါကျ (၃) မျိုးလုံး (Present / Past / Future) ကို Passive Voice နဲ့ သုံးလေ့မရှိပါဘူး။
2. **Future Continuous** ကိုလဲ Passive Voice နဲ့ သုံးလေ့မရှိပါဘူး။
3. ဝါကြောင့် **Active Voice** နဲ့ ရေးနိုင်တဲ့ ကာလ(၁၂)မျိုး၊ **Passive Voice** နဲ့ရေးနိုင်တဲ့ ကာလ(၈)မျိုးရှိတယ်ဆိုတာ မှတ်ထားရပါမယ်။

Exercise No. (109)

State whether the following are active or passive.

*Active လား၊ Passive လား၊ ဖြေဆိုပါ။

1. He killed.
2. He was killed.
3. She has caught.
4. She has been caught.
5. The hunter has killed.
6. The hunter has been killed.
7. He invited.
8. He was invited.
9. The bird caught.
10. The bird was caught.
11. The cat chased.
12. The cat was chased.
13. The girl is laughing.
14. The girl is being laughed at.
15. He had saved.
16. He had been saved.
17. We have known.
18. We have been known.
19. I have offered.

- 20. I have been offered.
- 21. The bird will eat insects.
- 22. The bird will be eaten.
- 23. Good books must be read.
- 24. Good books give knowledge.
- 25. Hunters killed the deer.
- 26. Hunters were killed in the jungle.
- 27. We called him Nga Pu.
- 28. We were called Nga Pyins.
- 29. They told me the truth.
- 30. They were told the truth.

Exercise No. (110)

Name the verbs in the following sentences, and tell whether they are in the Active or in the Passive Voice.

အောက်တွင်ဖော်ပြထားသော ဝါကျများသည် Active Voice ဖြစ်သည်။ (သို့) Passive Voice ဖြစ်သည်ကို ဖြေဆိုပါ။

- 1. Rome was not built in a day.
- 2. A burnt child dreads the fire.
- 3. A good husband makes a good wife.
- 4. A man is known by his friends.
- 5. A rolling stone gathers no moss.
- 6. A stitch in time saves nine.
- 7. All truth is not always to be told.
- 8. Actions speak louder than words.
- 9. Birds of a feather flock together.
- 10. Children and fools tell the truth.
- 11. Dead men tell no tales.
- 12. Health is not valued till sickness comes.
- 13. He that is down needs fear no fall.
- 14. Gold will not buy everything.
- 15. Silence gives consents.
- 16. True love never grows old.
- 17. Death pays all debt.
- 18. Fortune favours the brave.
- 19. The early bird catches the worm.
- 20. Empty vessels make the most noise.

ACTIVE VOICE မှ PASSIVE VOICE သို့ ပြောင်းခြင်း

Active Voice ကနေ Passive Voice ကို ပြောင်းတော့မယ်ဆိုရင် အဲဒီဝါကျထဲမှာ ရေးထားတဲ့ ကြိယာဟာ...

Transitive Verb = ကံလိုသောကြိယာ (ခံရသူရှိတဲ့ကြိယာ) ဖြစ်ရပါမယ်။

ဥပမာ The cat kills the mouse. The mouse is killed by the cat.

Intransitive Verb = ကံမလိုသော ကြိယာများနဲ့ ရေးထားတဲ့ဝါကျဆိုရင် Passive Voice ပြောင်းလို့ မရပါဘူး။

ဥပမာ He became a king. ဆိုတဲ့ ဝါကျကို... A king was become by him ဆိုပြီး passive voice အပြန် ပြန်ရေးလို့ မရပါဘူး။

(A) PRESENT SIMPLE နဲ့ ရေးထားတဲ့ ဝါကျတွေကို PASSIVE VOICE သို့ ပြောင်းခြင်း

- 1. (A.V) နဲ့ ရေးထားတဲ့ ဝါကျရဲ့ Object (ကံ)ကို (P.V) ဝါကျရဲ့ (Subject) ကတ္တား အဖြစ် အသုံးပြုပါ။ (ဝါ) (A.V) ဝါကျရဲ့ Object ကို (P.V) ပြောင်းရမယ့် ဝါကျရဲ့ရှေ့သို့ပို့ပါ။
- 2. ရှေ့ကိုရောက်လာတဲ့ Subject ဟာအနည်းကိန်းလား၊ အများကိန်းလားကြည့်ပြီး သင့်တော်ရာ Verb to be (am, is, are) တစ်လုံးလုံးထည့်ပါ။
- 3. (A.V) ဝါကျရဲ့ ကြိယာကို Past Participle (V3) ပုံစံသို့ ပြောင်းပါ။
- 4. (A.V) ဝါကျရဲ့ Subject ဟာ The boy, The girl, Soe Thu, Thida, Kya Thu, Nilar စတဲ့ Noun တွေဆိုရင် by နဲ့တွဲပြီး (V3) ရဲ့နောက်က ပြန်ထည့်ပါ။

ဥပမာ 1. The girl eats a mango. A mango is eaten by the girl. 2. The girl eats mangoes. Mangoes are eaten by the girl. 3. Nilar writes a letter. A letter is written by Nilar. 4. Nilar writes many letters. Many letters are written by Nilar.

Exercise No. (111)

Change the following sentences from active to passive voice.

1. U Thu Kha writes this book.
2. The boy eats the cake.
3. Than Than brings the coffee.
4. Zaw Zaw returns the books.
5. Ko Ko drinks a cup of tea.
6. The teacher helps the pupils.
7. The girl opens the door.
8. The girl shuts the windows.
9. The boy makes a kite.
10. Daw Su buys the apples.
11. Daw Nu sells the house.
12. Our father reads the newspaper.
13. The dog chases the cat.
14. The cat kills the mouse.
15. Thazin watches television.

Subject က Zaw Zaw, Nilar စတဲ့ Noun တွေမဟုတ်ဘဲ၊ he, she စတဲ့ Pro-noun နာမ်စားတွေဆိုရင် V3 နောက်က by he, by she ဆိုပြီး ပြန်မထည့်ရပါဘူး။ by him, by her လို့ ပြောင်းပြီးမှ ထည့်ရပါတယ်။ by နဲ့ တွဲတဲ့အခါ...

| | | | |
|------|-----|------|---------|
| I | ကို | me | ပြောင်း |
| We | ကို | us | ပြောင်း |
| You | ကို | you | ပြောင်း |
| He | ကို | him | ပြောင်း |
| She | ကို | her | ပြောင်း |
| It | ကို | it | ပြောင်း |
| They | ကို | them | ပြောင်း |

(We နဲ့ They ကိုတော့ ပြန်မထည့်သင့်ပါဘူး)

- ဥပမာ 1. **She** likes tea.
Tea is liked **by her**.

2. **He** speaks English.
English is spoken **by him**.
3. **I** see the old man.
The old man is seen **by me**.

ရေးသားနည်းပုံစံကို တတ်အောင် လေ့ကျင့်ခြင်းသာ ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။ တကယ်တမ်း passive voice ပြောင်းရင်တော့ (by me, by him) ဆိုတာတွေကို ပြန်မထည့်ရင် ရပါတယ်။ သိပ်လို အပ်မှ ထည့်ရပါတယ်။

Exercise No. (112)

Change the following sentences from active to passive voice.

1. He buys a doll.
2. She sees the accident.
3. He waters the flowers.
4. He kills the birds.
5. We write essays.
6. They climb the mountain.
7. You kick the ball.
8. I cook the meal.
9. She draws a picture.
10. He milks the cows.
11. It chases the mice.
12. We repair the bridge.
13. They dig a well.
14. She sells the old books.
15. He steals the money.

(A. V.) ဝါကျရဲ့ (object) ကံတွေဟာ Noun (နာမ်) တွေဆိုရင်တော့ ဘာမှ အပြောင်းအလဲ မလုပ်ဘဲ၊ (P. V.) ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါ ဝါကျရဲ့ရှေ့ကို ပို့လိုက်ရပါမိ။

- ဥပမာ 1. The boy loves **the girl**.
The girl is loved by the boy.
2. Thein Thein buys **the magazines**.
The magazines are bought by Thein Thein.

ဒါပေမယ့် A. V. ဝါကျရဲ့ (Object) ကံတွေဟာ pronoun (နာမ်စား) တွေဆိုရင်တော့ (P. V. ပြောင်းလို့) ဝါကျရဲ့ရှေ့ကို ရိုတဲ့အခါ အပြောင်းအလဲ ပြုလုပ်ပေးရပါတယ်။

| | | | |
|------|-----|------|---------|
| me | ကို | I | ပြောင်း |
| us | ကို | we | ပြောင်း |
| you | ကို | you | ပြောင်း |
| him | ကို | he | ပြောင်း |
| her | ကို | she | ပြောင်း |
| it | ကို | it | ပြောင်း |
| them | ကို | they | ပြောင်း |

- ဥပမာ
- The girl hates **them**.
They are hated by the girl.
 - The dacoits beat **me**.
I am beaten by the dacoits.
 - U Sein invites **us**.
We are invited by U Sein.

Exercise No. (113)

Change the following sentences from active to passive voice.

- My parents love me.
- The boys tease her.
- The old woman beats him.
- The dogs bite us.
- U Myint teaches them.
- The police watch her.
- The teachers see you.
- The boys hate him.
- The headmaster praises us.
- The girls forget her.
- Parents love the children.
- The boy teases the girls.
- The old woman beat the child.
- The dog bites the girl.
- The police watch the thief.

အချိန်ပြုပုံ၊ ရေရာပြုပုံ၊ အကြောင်းပြုပုံတွေ ဝါရေရင် အိတ်ပုဒ်တွေကို ဝါကျရဲ့ရှေ့ကို မပို့ဘဲ၊ သူ့ရေရာနဲ့သူ ပြန်ရေရာတာကို သတိပြုပါ။

- ဥပမာ
- The boy reads the newspaper **every day**.
The newspaper is read by the boy **every day**.
 - The farmers plough the fields **in the rainy season**.
The fields are ploughed by the farmers **in the rainy season**.
 - The boy eats rice **because he is hungry**.
Rice is eaten by the boy **because he is hungry**.

(A. V) ဝါကျရဲ့ Subject တွေဟာ မရေရာ မတိကျတဲ့ နာမ်တွေ၊ နာမ်စားတွေ (indefinite or vague noun or pronoun) ဖြစ်နေရင်.....

ဥပမာ Somebody, Everybody, Someone, People, They, We စသည့်တို့ဖြစ်နေရင် -
Passive Voice ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါ "by" နဲ့တွဲပြီး V3 ရဲ့နောက်က ပြန်မထည့်ရပါဘူး။ (by somebody, by someone, by people, by them) စသည်ဖြင့် ဖော်ပြဖို့မလိုပါဘူး။

- ဥပမာ
- Somebody steals my books.
My books are stolen.
 - Someone invites me.
I am invited.
 - They drink tea in the morning.
Tea is drunk in the morning.

(A. V.) ဝါကျရဲ့ Subject ဟာ No one, Nobody စတဲ့ ငြင်းဆိုစကားလုံးတွေဖြစ်နေရင် (P. V.) ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါ not ထည့်ပေးရပါတယ်။ (No one, Nobody ကိုတော့ ပြန်မထည့်ရပါဘူး။)

- ဥပမာ
- (A. V.) No one likes death.
(P. V.) Death is not liked.
 - (A. V.) Nobody tells the truth.
(P. V.) The truth is not told.
 - (A. V.) No one saw the accident.
(P. V.) The accident was not seen.

- 4. (A. V.) Nobody repaired the bridge.
(P. V.) The bridge was not repaired.
- 5. (A. V.) No one reads this book.
(P. V.) This book is not read.



(A. V.) ဝါကျရဲ့ Subject ဟာ ပြုလုပ်သူ ဘယ်သူဖြစ်တယ်လို့ ပြောစရာမလိုလောက် အောင် အဓိပ္ပါယ်သွားအရ ထင်ရှားသိသာလွန်းနေရင်ဖြစ်စေ -

ပြုလုပ်သူဟာ ဘယ်သူဖြစ်တယ်လို့ ဖော်ပြဖို့ရန် မလိုအပ်ရင် ဖြစ်စေ Passive Voice ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါ by နဲ့တွဲပြီး V3 ရဲ့နောက်က ပြန်မထည့်ရပါဘူး။

- ဥပမာ**
- 1. (A. V.) The photographers photograph the footballers.
ဓာတ်ပုံရိုက်သူများက ဘောလုံးသမားများကို ဓာတ်ပုံရိုက်ကြသည်။
(P. V.) The footballers are photographed.
ဘောလုံးသမားများကို ဓာတ်ပုံရိုက်ကြသည်။ (ဓာတ်ပုံကို ရိုက်တယ်ဆို ကတည်းကဓာတ်ပုံရိုက်သူက ရိုက်တယ်လို့ ပြောစရာမလိုတော့ဘူးပေါ့)
 - 2. (A. V.) People speak English all over the world.
ကမ္ဘာတစ်ဝှမ်းတွင် လူတို့သည် အင်္ဂလိပ်စကား ပြောကြသည်။
(P. V.) English is spoken all over the world.
အင်္ဂလိပ်စကားကို ကမ္ဘာတစ်ဝှမ်းတွင် ပြောကြသည်။ (စကားကိုပြောတယ် ဆိုကတည်းက (people) လူကပြောတယ်ဆိုတာ ရှင်းပြီးသားပဲ၊ ခွေးဆိုရင်ဟောင်မယ်၊ ကြက်ဆိုရင် တွန်မယ်ပေါ့)

The construction "by + agent" would be unnatural and unnecessary in sentences like these, where the "doer" is either clear from the meaning of the sentence, or is not of interest to us.
A COMPREHENSIVE ENGLISH GRAMMAR. (PAGE. 223)

In this important class of passive voice sentences we have an unknown or vague active subject; it remains unexpressed in the passive voice. The agent with "by" is not needed.
LIVING ENGLISH STRUCTURE (PAGE. 275)

Exercise No. (114)

Turn the following sentences from the Active Voice to the Passive Voice.

- 1. They dig a well near the village.
- 2. We finish all the work.
- 3. The inventors invent the new things.
- 4. The builders build a house in the village.
- 5. Someone waters the flowers every day.
- 6. They hold the meeting in the hall.
- 7. Somebody steals our new television set.
- 8. They see the teacher in front of the school.
- 9. We prepare the exercises before we go to school.
- 10. They spend much time on their homework.
- 11. We learn English every day.
- 12. People eat rice to live every day.
- 13. We study our lessons before we go out to play.
- 14. They telephone me from the market.
- 15. People catch the thief after a long search.

(B) PAST SIMPLE နဲ့ ရေးထားတဲ့ ဝါကျတွေကို PASSIVE VOICE ဘို့ ပြောင်းနည်း။

- 1. (A.V.) ဝါကျရဲ့ Object ကို (P.V.) ပြောင်းရမယ့် ဝါကျရဲ့ Subject အဖြစ် ရှေ့ကိုပို့ပါ။
- 2. နောက်ကနေ ရှေ့ရောက်လာတဲ့ Subject အနည်းကိန်း၊ အများကိန်းကြည့်ပြီး Verb to be (was, were) တစ်လုံးလုံးထည့်ပါ။
- 3. (A.V.) ဝါကျရဲ့ ကြိယာကို Past Participle (V3) ပုံစံသို့ပြောင်းပါ။
- 4. (A.V.) ဝါကျရဲ့ Subject ဟာ
 - (A) The boy, The dog, The cat, Kyaw Thu, Cho Pyone စတဲ့ (noun) များဆိုရင် (by) နဲ့တွဲပြီး (V3) ရဲ့ နောက်ကပြန်ထည့်ပါ။
 - (B) People, They, We, Someone တို့ ဆိုရင်တော့ (P.V.) ဝါကျမှာ ပြန်မဖော်ပြရ။
 - (C) တခြားစည်းကမ်းတွေကတော့ Present Simple တုန်းက ဖော်ပြခဲ့တဲ့အတိုင်းပါပဲ။

၂၀၀၈

1. U Win **solved** these problems.
These problems **were solved** by U Win.
2. People **grew** paddy.
Paddy **was grown**.
3. They **caught** the thief last night.
The thief **was caught** last night.
4. The elephant **carried** the logs.
The logs **were carried** by the elephant.

●

Exercise No. (115)

Turn the following sentences from the Active Voice to the Passive Voice.

1. They accepted his proposals.
 2. Somebody built the house in 1980.
 3. Someone saw me in the market.
 4. We held a meeting last week.
 5. Daw Htar Htar taught the children.
 6. They sent the letter by airmail.
 7. The teacher corrected our essays at home.
 8. U Thu Kha wrote many books.
 9. Our mother prepared the dinner yesterday.
 10. Someone stole my bicycle last week.
 11. They painted the wall last week.
 12. We repaired the old bridge two days ago.
 13. They invited the singers to their wedding.
 14. We printed the books in Mandalay.
 15. Somebody cleaned the windows last month.
 16. Yesterday, we cut the grass to feed the cows.
 17. Columbus discovered America in 1492.
 18. They found the lost child at last.
 19. They published the book in Mandalay.
 20. A policeman shot a dacoit.
-

Exercise No. (116)

Change the following sentences from the Active to the Passive Voice without altering the tense or meaning.

1. He prepares his lessons every day.
 2. She prepared her lessons last night.
 3. They sold their house last week.
 4. They sell their house because they have no money.
 5. They want some money to buy rice.
 6. We wanted a worker to clean the compound.
 7. Somebody telephoned me at two o'clock.
 8. Someone telephones him every day.
 9. He always does his homework in time.
 10. He did his homework yesterday.
 11. We did all the exercises because we wanted to pass the examination.
 12. We do all the exercises to pass the examination.
 13. She usually tells the truth.
 14. They told us the truth.
 15. The servant took the money.
 16. We buy tickets to go to Mandalay.
 17. We bought a present for her birthday.
 18. We study our exercises daily.
 19. They studied English three years ago.
 20. He takes the snuff as he has a bad headache.
 21. The teacher corrects our compositions.
 22. The teacher corrected my essay in the class.
 23. I buy my new suit from this shop.
 24. They bought the new dresses yesterday.
 25. They finished the work at about three o'clock.
-

(C) CONTINUOUS TENSE နဲ့ ရေးထားတဲ့ ပါတျူဇွေကို PASSIVE VOICE ချို့ ပြောင်းနည်း။

- 1. (A.V) ဝါကျရဲ့ Object ကို (P.V) ဝါကျရဲ့ Subject အဖြစ် ဝါကျရှေ့သို့ ပို့ပါ။
- 2. ရှေ့ရောက်လာတဲ့ Subject အနည်းအများကိုကြည့်ပြီး သင့်တော်ရာ Verb to be တစ်လုံးလုံးထည့်ပါ။
- 3. V/be ရဲ့ နောက်က "being" ကို ထည့်ပါ။
- 4. (A.V) ဝါကျရဲ့ကြိယာကို V3 ပုံစံပြောင်းပြီး being နောက်က ပြန်ထည့်ပါ။
- 5. (A.V) ဝါကျရဲ့ Subject ကို by နဲ့တွဲပြီး V3 ရဲ့ နောက်က ပြန်ထည့်သင့်ရင် ထည့်ပါ။ မထည့်သင့်ရင် ဖြုတ်ပါ။

ဥပမာ

- 1. *Ko Ko is reading* the newspaper.
The newspaper **is being read** by Ko Ko.
- 2. *Ko Ko is eating* mangoes.
Mangoes **are being eaten** by Ko Ko.
- 3. *They are holding* a meeting.
A meeting **is being held**.
- 4. *Someone is singing* a song.
A song **is being sung**.



Exercise No. (117)

Turn the following sentences into the Passive Voice.

- 1. The maid is cleaning the room.
- 2. The teacher is drawing a map on the blackboard.
- 3. They are repairing the bridge.
- 4. Someone is washing the clothes near the well.
- 5. They are watering the flowers in the garden.
- 6. People are growing rice all over the country.
- 7. The villagers are building a new road.
- 8. They are painting the old building.
- 9. Mother is cooking the food in the kitchen.
- 10. Daw Moe Moe is writing an article.

- 11. They were feeding the pigs when the lights went out.
- 12. We were eating rice when the visitors arrived.
- 13. Someone was watering the plants when it began to rain.
- 14. Mother was preparing dinner when I got home.
- 15. They were watching television when we arrived.
- 16. Thida was doing the homework when I went to see her last night.
- 17. When we got there, U Tun was reading a newspaper.
- 18. I was writing a letter when you called me.
- 19. We were playing football when it began to rain.
- 20. Mother was beating the children when father came home.

(D) PERFECT TENSE နဲ့ ရေးထားတဲ့ ပါတျူဇွေကို PASSIVE VOICE ချို့ ပြောင်းနည်း။

- 1. (A.V) ဝါကျရဲ့ Object ကို (P.V) ဝါကျရဲ့ Subject အဖြစ် ဝါကျရှေ့သို့ ပို့ပါ။
- 2. သင့်တော်ရာ Verb to have တစ်လုံးထည့်ပါ။
အဲဒီလိုထည့်တဲ့အခါ နောက်ကနေ ရှေ့ဘက်ကိုရောက်လာတဲ့ (A.V.ဝါကျရဲ့ Object) = (P.V.ဝါကျရဲ့ Subject) အနည်းကိန်း၊ အများကိန်းကိုကြည့်ပြီး has နဲ့ have သင့်တော်သလို ထည့်ရပါတယ်။
Past Perfect Tense ဆိုရင်တော့ (A.V.) ဝါကျမှာလဲ had (P.V) ဝါကျပြောင်းတော့လည်း had ကိုပဲ သုံးရပါတယ်။
- 3. V/have ရဲ့ နောက်က "been" ကို ထည့်ပါ။
- 4. been ရဲ့နောက်က V3 ထည့်ပါ။
(V3 ပြောင်းရန် မလိုပါ။ (A.V) ဝါကျမှာပါတဲ့ မူလကြိယာဟာ V3 ပုံစံပြောင်းပြီးဖြစ်နေတာကို သတိပြုပါ။)
- 5. (A.V) ရဲ့ Subject ကိုလိုအပ်ရင် by နဲ့တွဲပြီး V3 ရဲ့ နောက်က ပြန်ထည့်ပါ။ မလိုအပ်ရင် ဖြုတ်ပစ်ပါ။

ဥပမာ

- 1. *Someone has stolen* my pen.
My pen **has been stolen**.
- 2. *They have sold* plenty of food.
Plenty of food **has been sold**.
- 3. *The mad dog has bitten* the little girl.
The little girl **has been bitten** by the mad dog.

- 4. The teacher **has bought** the books.
The books **have been bought** by the teacher.
- 5. They **had done** the homework when they went to bed.
The homework **had been done** when they went to bed.

Exercise No. (118)

Turn the following sentences into the Passive Voice.

- 1. The workers have repainted the school.
- 2. The mechanic has repaired the engine.
- 3. We have seen the accident.
- 4. They have published the book.
- 5. Mother has wrapped the package.
- 6. One of the boys has stolen the book.
- 7. We have done our housework.
- 8. He has studied English for many years.
- 9. She has done very little work.
- 10. Someone has delivered the letters.
- 11. They have left the book on the table.
- 12. We have chosen U San for president.
- 13. We have just finished the report.
- 14. The police have held two men for further questioning.
- 15. They have signed the contract.
- 16. The waiter has served the dinner.
- 17. Fire has destroyed the whole building.
- 18. All the workers have attended the meeting.
- 19. The police have arrested many boys.
- 20. They have invited us to attend the meeting.
- 21. We had done our homework when we went to bed.
- 22. Mother had prepared the dinner when father came back home.
- 23. He said that the boys had stolen the mangoes.
- 24. He seemed to think that he had met the girl somewhere before.
- 25. I was sure that Ni Ni had done the same mistake.
- 26. They said that they had seen the movie.
- 27. The teacher said that she had taught that lesson.
- 28. When we arrived home, we saw that someone had broken into the house.
- 29. When the police got there, the robbers had killed the rich lady.
- 30. He knew that he had made a serious mistake.

(E) WILL, SHALL CAN COULD ၏ အကျဉ်းချုပ်များနှင့် ရေးစာပုံ ပါတိပစ္စည်းကို PASSIVE VOICE ဝါ ပြောင်းနည်း

- 1. (A.V) ဝါကျရဲ့ Object ကို (P.V) ဝါကျရဲ့ Subject အဖြစ် ဝါကျရဲ့ရှေ့သို့ ပို့ပါ။
- 2. သင့်တော်ရာ အကူကြီးယာကို ပြန်ထည့်ပါ။
- 3. အကူကြီးယာရဲ့နောက်က be ထည့်ပါ။
- 4. (A.V) ဝါကျရဲ့ မူလကြီးယာကို V3 ပုံစံပြောင်းပြီး be ရဲ့နောက်က ပြန်ထည့်ပါ။
- 5. (A.V) ဝါကျရဲ့ Subject ကို လိုအပ်ရင် by နဲ့တွဲပြီး V3 ရဲ့ နောက်က ပြန်ထည့်ပါ။ မလိုအပ်ရင် ဖြုတ်ပစ်ပါ။

ဥပမာ

- 1. We **must study** our lessons.
Our lessons **must be studied**.
- 2. They **will capture** the thief.
The thief **will be captured**.
- 3. Fire **will destroy** the whole city.
The whole city **will be destroyed** by fire.
- 4. Everybody **should see** this film.
This film **should be seen**.
- 5. They **can buy** a car.
A car **can be bought**.
- 6. We **shall buy** a house.
A house **will be bought**.

(နံပါတ် (၆) မှာ A.V ဝါကျရဲ့ Subject ဟာ We ဖြစ်နေလို့ shall နဲ့ တွဲပေးမယ့် (P.V) ပြောင်းလိုက်တဲ့အခါ (P.V) ဝါကျရဲ့ Subject ဟာ A house ဖြစ်လာတဲ့အတွက် (shall ကနေ) will ပြောင်းသွားတာကို သတိပြုပါ။)

- 7. We **shall sing** a song.
A song **will be sung**.
(shall အစား will ပြောင်းသွားတာ သတိထား။)

- 8. They **will blame** me for their failure.
I **will be** blamed for their failure. (OR)
I **shall be** blamed for their failure.

(P.V) ဝါကျရဲ့ subject ဟာ I (သို့) We ဆိုရင်တော့ (P.V) ဝါကျမှာ will, shall ကြိုက်ရာနဲ့ ရေးနိုင်ပါတယ်။

Exercise No. (119)

Turn the following sentences into the Passive Voice.

1. They will start a dancing class next month.
2. The enemy will capture the camp.
3. The police will arrest these men.
4. The little boy will tear the book.
5. We may buy a house next month.
6. You must return the money tomorrow.
7. Many people will attend the lecture.
8. They should choose a representative.
9. The doctor will advise me to take a rest.
10. Someone would take the book from the table.
11. She will meet us tomorrow.
12. They will leave a message on the table for him.
13. They will write to us on Friday.
14. We must tell our father about it.
15. He will do the exercises before Sunday.
16. We will eat lunch in the same restaurant.
17. They will finish the work in April.
18. They can see us in the morning.
19. She will help me with that work.
20. He will send several letters to her.

REVIEW EXERCISES*Exercise No. (120)*

Change the following sentences from the Active to the Passive Voice without altering the tense or meaning.

1. They fight the good fight.
2. They fought the good fight.
3. They are fighting the good fight.
4. They will fight the good fight.
5. They have fought the good fight.

6. The boy kills the snake.
7. The boy killed the snake.
8. The boy will kill the snake.
9. The boy is killing the snake.
10. The boy has killed the snake.
11. The boy will have killed the snake.
12. My grandfather builds this house.
13. My grandfather built this house.
14. My grandfather is building this house.
15. My grandfather has built this house.
16. My grandfather will build this house.
17. People send the complaints to the head office.
18. People sent the complaints to the head office.
19. People will send the complaints to the head office.
20. People are sending the complaints to the head office.
21. People have sent the complaints to the head office.
22. People will have sent the complaints to the head office.
23. A cruel boy catches the bird.
24. A cruel boy caught the bird.
25. A cruel boy will catch the bird.
26. A cruel boy has caught the bird.
27. A cruel boy is catching the bird.
28. A cruel boy will have caught the bird.
29. The clerk writes the letter.
30. The clerk wrote the letter.
31. The clerk was writing the letter.
32. The clerk is writing the letter.
33. The clerk has written the letter.
34. The clerk will write the letter.
35. They have signed the agreement.
36. They will sign the agreement.
37. They sign the agreement.
38. They signed the agreement.
39. They will have signed the agreement.
40. The clerk will have written the letter.
41. They open the new hotel.
42. They opened the new hotel last year.
43. They will open the new hotel next year.
44. They have opened the new hotel since 1990.

- 45. They are going to open the new hotel.
- 46. Somebody cleaned the room yesterday.
- 47. No one cleans the room.
- 48. Someone should clean the room.
- 49. Nobody has cleaned the room.
- 50. They have to clean the room.

(F) IMPERATIVE MOOD

“အမိန့်ပေး၊ ညွှန်ကြား၊ စေခိုင်း” တဲ့ ဝါကျတွေနဲ့ “ပန်ကြား၊ တောင်းဆို၊ တောင်းပန်” တဲ့ ဝါကျတွေကို တည်ဆောက်တဲ့အခါ -

(A) ပြုပါ၊ လုပ်ပါ၊ ပေးပါလို့ အမိန့်ပေးတဲ့ဝါကျတွေကို Verb နဲ့ စပြီး ရေးလေ့ရှိပါတယ်။ (Subject ကို မြှုပ်ထားတတ်ပါတယ်။)

- ဥပမာ**
- 1. Read the newspaper.
သတင်းစာကို ဖတ်ပါ။
 - 2. Shut the window.
ပြတင်းပေါက်ကို ပိတ်လိုက်။ (အမိန့်ပေး)
ပြတင်းပေါက် ပိတ်ပေးပါ (နော်)။ (ပန်ကြား)
(လေသံနဲ့ ခွဲခြားရတယ်)
 - 3. Tell the truth.
အမှန်ကို ပြောပါ။

(B) ပန်ကြားတဲ့၊ တောင်းပန်တဲ့ ဝါကျတွေကိုတော့ Let နဲ့စပြီး ရေးတဲ့အခါလဲ ရှိသလို Please ကိုထည့်သွင်းရေးသားတဲ့အခါလဲ ရှိပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ**
- 1. Please lend me some money.
ကျေးဇူးပြုပြီး ကျွန်တော့်ကို ပိုက်ဆံနည်းနည်း ချေးပါဗျာ။
 - 2. Open the door, please.
ကျေးဇူးပြုပြီး တံခါးလေး ဖွင့်ပေးပါ။
 - 3. Please shut the door.
ကျေးဇူးပြုပြီး တံခါးလေး ပိတ်ပေးပါ။

- 4. Let me eat rice.
ထမင်းလေး စားပါရစေဗျာ။
- 5. Let me read the newspaper.
သတင်းစာလေး ဖတ်ပါရစေဗျာ။

(C) မပြုလုပ်ဖို့ အမိန့်ပေးတဲ့၊ ညွှန်ကြားတဲ့၊ တောင်းပန်တဲ့ ဝါကျတွေကိုတော့ Don't နဲ့ စပြီး ရေးသားလေ့ရှိပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ**
- 1. Don't wash the clothes.
အဝတ်တွေကို မလျှော်နဲ့။
 - 2. Don't play with fire.
မီးနဲ့ မကစားနဲ့။
 - 3. Do not buy the old car.
ကားဆို (ကားဟောင်း) ကို မဝယ်နဲ့။

အမိန့်ပေး ဝါကျများကို PASSIVE VOICE ချီ ပြောင်းနည်း

(A) ပြုလုပ်ရန် ပေးသောအမိန့်

- ၁။ (P.V) ဝါကျကို Let ဖြင့် စရေးပါ။
- ၂။ Let ရဲ့နောက်မှာ (A.V) ဝါကျရဲ့ Object ကို တပ်ထည့်ပါ။
- ၃။ Object ရဲ့နောက်မှာ be ထည့်ပါ။
- ၄။ (A.V) ဝါကျရဲ့ ကြိယာကို V3 ပုံစံပြောင်းပြီး be ရဲ့ နောက်က ပြန်ထည့်ပါ။

- ဥပမာ**
- 1. (A.V) Open the window.
(P.V) Let the window be opened.
 - 2. (A.V) Shut the door.
(P.V) Let the door be shut.
 - 3. (A.V) Wash the clothes.
(P.V) Let the clothes be washed.
 - 4. (A.V) Water the flowers.
(P.V) Let the flowers be watered.
 - 5. (A.V) Kill the mad dog.
(P.V) Let the mad dog be killed.

(B) ယန်ကြားသည်၊ တောင်းယန်သည်ဝါကျ

ယန်ကြား၊ တောင်းယန်တဲ့ဝါကျတွေနဲ့ ပတ်သက်ပြီး Passive Voice ပြောင်းပုံကိုလဲ လေ့လာကြည့်ပါဦး။

Please တို့ Verb to do တို့ Let တို့နဲ့စပြီးရေးတဲ့ ယန်ကြား၊ တောင်းယန်တဲ့ဝါကျတွေဖြစ်တဲ့အတွက် You are requested နဲ့ ဝါကျကို ရေးပုံ၊ Please ဝါရင် ဖြတ်ပစ်ပြီး ကြိယာရှေ့က to ခံပေးပုံတွေကို သတိပြုပြီး လေ့လာပါ။

- ၂၀၈၁ 1. (A.V.) Please drink a cup of tea.
(P. V.) You are requested to drink a cup of tea.
- 2. (A.V.) Please lend me some money.
(P. V.) You are requested to lend me some money.
- 3. (A.V.) Open the window, please.
(P. V.) You are requested to open the window.
- 4. (A.V.) Study the lessons regularly.
(P. V.) You are requested to study the lessons regularly.
- 5. (A.V.) Please give me a receipt.
(P. V.) You are requested to give me a receipt.
- 6. (A.V.) Let me drink water.
(P. V.) Let water be drunk by me.
- 7. (A.V.) Let the boy eat rice.
(P. V.) Let rice be eaten by the boy.
- 8. (A.V.) Let me shut the window.
(P. V.) Let the window be shut by me.

(C) မပြုလုပ်ရန် ပေးသောအမိန့်

- ၁။ (A.V.) ဝါကျရဲ့ Object ကို (P.V. ဝါကျရဲ့) ရှေ့သို့ ပို့ပါ။
- ၂။ must not be ထည့်ပါ။
- ၃။ (A.V.) ဝါကျမှာရှိတဲ့ မူလကြိယာကို (V3) ပုံစံပြောင်းပြီး must not be ရဲ့ နောက်က ဖြန့်ထည့်ပါ။

- ၂၀၈၁ 1. (A.V.) Don't buy the house.
(P. V.) The house must not be bought.

- 2. (A.V.) Don't read these books.
(P. V.) These books must not be read.
- 3. (A.V.) Don't make a loud noise.
(P. V.) A loud noise must not be made.
- 4. (A.V.) Don't tease the girls.
(P. V.) The girls must not be teased.
- 5. (A.V.) Don't kill the little bird.
(P. V.) The little bird must not be killed.

နောက်တစ်မျိုးပြောင်းမည်။

- ၁။ (A.V.) ဝါကျ ရဲ့ Object ကို (P.V. ဝါကျ)ရဲ့ ရှေ့သို့ ပို့ပါ။
- ၂။ သင့်တော်ရာ Verb to be တစ်လုံးထည့်ပါ။
- ၃။ (V/be) ရဲ့နောက်က not to be ထည့်ပါ။
- ၄။ (A.V.) ဝါကျရှိမူလကြိယာကို (V3) ပုံစံပြောင်းပြီး (not to be) ရဲ့ နောက်ကထည့်ပါ။

- ၂၀၈၁ 1. (A.V.) Don't sell the old books.
(P. V.) The old books are not to be sold.
- 2. (A.V.) Don't open the gate.
(P. V.) The gate is not to be opened.
- 3. (A.V.) Don't sing a song.
(P. V.) A song is not to be sung.
- 4. (A.V.) Don't beat the children.
(P. V.) The children are not to be beaten.
- 5. (A.V.) Don't give the order.
(P. V.) The order is not to be given.

နောက်တစ်မျိုးပြောင်းမည်။

- ၁။ (P.V) ဝါကျ ကို Let နဲ့ စပါ။
- ၂။ Let ရဲ့နောက်မှာ (A.V) ဝါကျ ရဲ့ Object ကို တပ်ပါ။
- ၃။ Object ရဲ့နောက်မှာ "not be" ထည့်ပါ။
- ၄။ (A.V) ဝါကျ ရဲ့ မူလကြိယာကို (V3) ပုံစံပြောင်းပါ။

- ၂၀၈၁ 1. (A.V.) Don't iron the clothes.
(P. V.) Let the clothes not be ironed.

- 2. (A.V) Don't read the newspaper..
(P. V.) Let the newspaper not be read.
- 3. (A.V) Don't watch television.
(P. V.) Let television not be watched.

Exercise No. (121)

Turn the following sentences into the passive voice.

- 1. Tell the truth.
- 2. Send him to England.
- 3. Do the work.
- 4. Keep the bird in the cage.
- 5. Take the medicine.
- 6. Please tell the truth.
- 7. Don't tell lies.
- 8. Please lend your camera.
- 9. Don't study these exercises.
- 10. Don't sign it on the bottom line.
- 11. Don't wrap the package.
- 12. Let me eat rice and curry.
- 13. Let me buy a new shirt.
- 14. Don't tell him about it.
- 15. Don't spend much money on the clothes.
- 16. Please forgive me this time.
- 17. Take this letter to the post.
- 18. Order my dinner.
- 19. Do not insult the poor.
- 20. Let her drink a cup of milk.

**(G) INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES မေးခွန်း ဝါကျများကို
PASSIVE VOICE ခံစားစေခြင်း**

မေးခွန်းဝါကျ (၂)မျိုး ရှိတယ်။

(A) Yes, No နဲ့ မြေလို့ရတဲ့ မေးခွန်း

(Verb to be, Verb to have, Verb to do, Helping Verb များနဲ့ မေးတဲ့မေးခွန်း)
(မြန်မာဘာသာမှာ "လား" နဲ့ အဆုံးသတ်မေးခွန်း ဝါကျ)

- ဥပမာ
- 1. Are they listening to the radio?
သူတို့ ရေဒီယို နားထောင်နေသလား။
 - 2. Have they done the homework?
သူတို့ အိမ်စာလုပ်ပြီးပြီလား။
 - 3. Do you tell the truth?
မင်းက အမှန်ကို ပြောတာလား။
 - 4. Will you buy this car?
မင်းက ဒီကားကို ဝယ်မှာလား။

(B) Yes, No နဲ့ မြေလို့ မရတဲ့ မေးခွန်း

(Where, When, How, Why စတဲ့ Question Words တွေနဲ့ မေးတဲ့မေးခွန်း)
(မြန်မာဘာသာမှာ "လဲ" နဲ့ အဆုံးသတ်မေးခွန်းဝါကျ)

- ဥပမာ
- 1. Where do they dig the well?
ရေတွင်းကို သူတို့ ဘယ်နေရာမှာ တူးတာလဲ။
 - 2. When do they build the house?
အိမ်ကို သူတို့ ဘယ်အချိန်မှာ ဆောက်တာလဲ။
 - 3. How do they repair the car?
ကားကို သူတို့ ဘယ်လိုပြင်တာလဲ။
 - 4. Why do you like the little bird?
ငှက်ကလေးကို မင်း ဘာဖြစ်လို့ သတ်တာလဲ။
 - 5. Who buys the books?
စာအုပ်တွေကို ဘယ်သူဝယ်တာလဲ။
 - 6. Whom do you love?
ဘယ်သူကို မင်း ချစ်သလဲ။

(A) YES, NO နဲ့ ပြစ်ဂျီဂျစ် မေးခွန်းတွေကို PASSIVE VOICE ဘို့ ပြောင်းနည်း

အဲဒီလို မေးခွန်းဝါကျ (၂) မျိုးအနက် နံပါတ် (၁) အမျိုးအစားဖြစ်တဲ့ "လား" မေးခွန်းဝါကျ လေးတွေကို Active Voice ကနေ Passive Voice ပြောင်းနည်းနဲ့ ပတ်သက်ပြီး အရင်ဆုံး ဆွေးနွေးကြရအောင်။

1. VERB TO BE နဲ့ မေးတဲ့ မေးခွန်း ဝါကျကို PASSIVE VOICE ပြောင်းနည်း

- ၁။ (P. V) ဝါကျကို သင့်တော်ရာ Verb to be နဲ့ စပါ။
- ၂။ (A.V) ဝါကျ ရဲ့ Object ကို V/be ရဲ့နောက်မှာ ကပ်ပြီးထည့်ပါ။
- ၃။ (V/be) ရဲ့နောက်က "being" ကို ထည့်ပါ။
- ၄။ (A.V) ဝါကျရဲ့ မူလကြိယာကို V3 ပုံပုံပြောင်းပြီး being ရဲ့နောက်က ဖြန့်ထည့်ပါ။
- ၅။ (A.V) ဝါကျရဲ့ Subject ကို by နဲ့ တွဲပြီး V3 ရဲ့နောက်က ဖြန့်ထည့်သင့်ရင် ထည့်ပါ။ မလိုအပ်ရင် မထည့်ပါနဲ့။

- ဥပမာ
1. Are they writing a book?
Is a book being written?
 2. Is Nu Nu reading a book?
Is a book being read by Nu Nu?
 3. Were they digging a well?
Was a well being dug?
 4. Was anyone knocking at the door?
Was the door being knocked at?
 5. Is no one watching television?
Is television not being watched?

Exercise No. (122)

Turn the following sentences into the Passive Voice.

1. Are they printing the books in Mandalay?
2. Were they catching the thief?

3. Is U Lwin teaching the class?
4. Was the dog biting the child?
5. Was the dog barking at the strangers?
6. Are the boys kicking the ball?
7. Are they eating all the sweets?
8. Is anybody watching me?
9. Is the tailor making a new suit?
10. Is the mason building a wall?
11. Are they milking the cow?
12. Were they feeding the pigs?
13. Is the teacher correcting our compositions?
14. Is the dog chasing the cat?
15. Are the boys playing games?

2. VERB TO HAVE နဲ့ မေးတဲ့ မေးခွန်း ဝါကျကို PASSIVE VOICE ပြောင်းနည်း

- ၁။ (P. V) ဝါကျကို သင့်တော်ရာ Verb to have နဲ့ စပါ။
- ၂။ (A.V) ဝါကျ ရဲ့ Object ကို V/have ရဲ့နောက်မှာ ကပ်ထည့်ပါ။
- ၃။ (V/have) ရဲ့နောက်က "been" ကို ထည့်ပါ။
- ၄။ (A.V) ဝါကျရဲ့ မူလကြိယာကို V3 ပုံပုံပြောင်းပြီး ဖြစ်နေတာကို သတိပြုပါ။ အဲဒီ V3 ကို been ရဲ့နောက်က ဖြန့်ထည့်ပါ။
- ၅။ (A.V) ဝါကျရဲ့ Subject ကို by နဲ့ တွဲပြီး V3 ရဲ့နောက်က ဖြန့်ထည့်သင့်ရင် ထည့်ပါ။ မလိုအပ်ရင် မထည့်ပါနဲ့။

- ဥပမာ
1. (A.V.) Have they ploughed the field?
(P. V.) Has the field been ploughed?
 2. (A.V.) Has anyone stolen the books?
(P. V.) Have the books been stolen?
 3. (A.V.) Have the police caught the thief?
(P. V.) Has the thief been caught by the police?
 4. (A.V.) Has no one seen the accident?
(P. V.) Has the accident not been seen?
 5. (A.V.) Have you studied English?
(P. V.) Has English been studied?

Exercise No. (123)

Turn the following sentences into the Passive Voice.

1. Has the teacher scolded all the boys?
2. Has no one opened that box?
3. Has a car run over a little girl?
4. Have they built a bridge?
5. Has anyone stolen the books?
6. Has the cat caught the bird?
7. Have you sent the telegram?
8. Has anyone swept the room?
9. Has our army driven the enemy back?
10. Has the rain ruined the crops?
11. Has anyone stolen two of my books?
12. Has the servant broken one of the plates?
13. Has anyone taken these books away?
14. Has anybody answered the questions?
15. Has no one heard a sound?

3. VERB TO DO နဲ့ မေးတဲ့ မေးခွန်းဝါကျတွေကို PASSIVE VOICE ပြောင်းနည်း

- ၁။ (P. V) ဝါကျကို သင့်တော်ရာ Verb to be နဲ့ စပါ။
- ၂။ (A.V) ဝါကျရဲ့ Object ကို V/be ရဲ့နောက်မှာ ကပ်ထည့်ပါ။
- ၃။ (A.V) ဝါကျရဲ့ မူလကြိယာကို V3 ပုံစံပြောင်းပြီး Object ရဲ့နောက်မှာ ကပ်ထည့်ပါ။
- ၄။ (A.V) ဝါကျရဲ့ Subject ကို by နဲ့ တွဲပြီး V3 ရဲ့နောက်က ပြန်ထည့်သင့်ရင် ထည့်ပါ။ မလိုအပ်ရင် မထည့်ပါနဲ့။

- ဥပမာ
1. (A.V) Does the cat kill the mouse?
(P. V) Is the mouse killed by the cat?
 2. (A.V) Did Moe Zaw write a letter?
(P. V) Was a letter written by Moe Zaw?
 3. (A.V) Do they cut down the tree?
(P. V) Is the tree cut down?
 4. (A.V) Do they paint the walls?
(P. V) Are the walls painted?
 5. (A.V) Does everyone see the accident?
(P. V) Is the accident seen?

Exercise No. (124)

Turn the following sentences into the Passive Voice.

1. Did a car knock a child down?
2. Do they pluck flowers in the garden?
3. Does anyone prepare the dinner?
4. Did you love all your neighbours?
5. Do they break the school windows?
6. Did the judge decide the case?
7. Did the wind blow down the trees?
8. Do you write this article?
9. Do they cut telegraph wires?
10. Does anyone write an angry letter?
11. Did the police catch the thief?
12. Did the heavy rain spoil the harvest?
13. Do you study English regularly?
14. Does everybody read the newspaper?
15. Did no one see the accident?

4. HELPING VERB(အကူကြိယာ)နဲ့ မေးတဲ့ ဝါကျတွေကို PASSIVE VOICE ပြောင်းနည်း

- ၁။ (P. V) ဝါကျကို သင့်တော်ရာ အကူကြိယာနဲ့ စပါ။
- ၂။ (A.V) ဝါကျရဲ့ Object ကို အကူကြိယာရဲ့နောက်မှာ ကပ်ထည့်ပါ။
- ၃။ (Object)ရဲ့ နောက်က "be" ထည့်ပါ။
- ၄။ (A.V) ဝါကျရဲ့ မူလကြိယာကို V3 ပုံစံပြောင်းပြီး "be" ရဲ့နောက်မှာ ပြန်ထည့်ပါ။
- ၅။ (A.V) ဝါကျရဲ့ Subject ကို by နဲ့ တွဲပြီး V3 ရဲ့နောက်က ပြန်ထည့်သင့်ရင် ထည့်ပါ။ မလိုအပ်ရင် မထည့်ပါနဲ့။

- ဥပမာ
1. (A.V) Must you study the lessons?
(P. V) Must the lessons be studied?
 2. (A.V) Can they buy a new car?
(P. V) Can a new car be bought?

3. (A.V.) Will they scold us?
 (P. V.) Shall we be scolded?
 (us ကို we ပြောင်းပြီး ဝါကျရဲ့ရှေ့သို့ဖို့တဲ့အတွက် will
 အစား shall ပြောင်းသွားတာကို သတိပြုပါ။)
4. (A.V.) Shall we sell the old books?
 (P. V.) Will the old books be sold?
 (Shall အစား Will ပြောင်းသွားပုံကို ဂရုစိုက်)
5. (A.V.) Should everybody look after the old
 parents?
 (P. V.) Should the old parents be looked after?
6. (A.V.) Will they build a fine house?
 (P. V.) Will a fine house be built?

Exercise No. (125)

Turn the following sentences into the Passive Voice.

1. Will you finish the work today?
2. Should they pack it more carefully?
3. Will U Sein teach the class?
4. Can they pay the bill later?
5. Will the police hold him for several days?
6. Will they give her a present?
7. Will they ask me many questions?
8. Will they hold a reception?
9. Must you use milk for making butter?
10. Should the patient eat much rice?
11. Can they speak English well?
12. Will you spend much money on clothes?
13. Will they tell you about it?
14. Will they sell the house?
15. Shall we need any warm clothes?

အကျဉ်းချုပ်မှတ်တမ်း

1. **V/be နဲ့မေးရင် -**
 - V/be နဲ့စ၊ being ထည့် V3 ပြောင်း
 e.g. Are they eating rice?
 Is rice being eaten?
2. **အကူကြိုယာနဲ့မေးရင် -**
 - အကူကြိုယာနဲ့စ၊ be ထည့် V3 ပြောင်း
 e.g. Will they eat rice?
 Will rice be eaten?
3. **V/have နဲ့မေးရင် -**
 - V/have နဲ့စ၊ been ထည့် V3 ပြောင်း
 e.g. Have they eaten rice?
 Has rice been eaten?
4. **V/do နဲ့ မေးရင် -**
 - V/be နဲ့စ၊ V3 ပြောင်း
 e.g. Do they eat rice?
 Is rice eaten?

1. Be နဲ့မေးရင် be နဲ့စ၊ being ထည့်
2. အကူကြိုယာနဲ့ မေးရင် အကူနဲ့စ၊ be ထည့်
3. Have နဲ့မေးရင် Have နဲ့စ၊ been ထည့်
4. Do နဲ့ မေးရင် "Be" နဲ့စ၊ (ဘာမှ မထည့်ရ)

Exercise No. (126)

Change the following sentences from the Active Voice to the Passive Voice.

1. Did Su Su return the money?
2. Does Su Su return the money?
3. Will Su Su return the money?
4. Has Su Su returned the money?

5. Did fire destroy that village?
6. Will fire destroy that village?
7. Does fire destroy that village?
8. Has fire destroyed that village?
9. Do they repair the old bridge?
10. Are they repairing the old bridge?
11. Have they repaired the old bridge?
12. Will they repair the old bridge?
13. Did they repair the old bradge?
14. Has no one done the homework?
15. Does no one do the homework?
16. Did no one do the homework?
17. Will no one do the homework?
18. Is no one doing the homework?
19. Are they making a new road?
20. Do they make a new road?
21. Did they make a new road?
22. Will they make a new road?
23. Have they **made** a new road?
24. Do the villagers dig a canal?
25. Did the villagers dig a canal?
26. Will the villagers dig a canal?
27. Have the villagers dug a canal?
28. Are the villagers digging a canal?
29. Does Ni Ni drink tea?
30. Did Ni Ni drink tea?
31. Is Ni Ni drinking tea?
32. Has Ni Ni drunk tea?
33. Will Ni Ni drink tea?
34. Was Ni Ni drinking tea?
35. Had Ni Ni drunk tea?

(B) YES, NO နဲ့ ပြောရန် မရပဲ မေးခွန်းထွက်
 PASSIVE VOICE ဘို့ ပြောင်းနည်း

1. INTERROGATIVE ADVERS

Interrogative Adverbs (Where, When, How, Why) နဲ့ မေးတဲ့ မေးခွန်းဝါကျတွေကို **PASSIVE VOICE** ပြောင်းနည်း

အထက်မှာ ဖော်ပြရှင်းလင်း လေ့ကျင့်ခဲ့ကြပြီးဖြစ်တဲ့ V/be, V/have, V/do, Helping Verb တွေနဲ့ မေးတဲ့ မေးခွန်းဝါကျတွေကို **Passive Voice** ပြောင်းတတ်အောင် ကျွမ်းကျင်အောင် လေ့ကျင့်ဖို့ လိုပါတယ်။

ပြောင်းတတ်သွားပြီဆိုရင် Where, When, How, Why စတဲ့ မေးတဲ့ အမေးစကားလုံး နဲ့ (P. V.) ဝါကျတွေကိုလဲ လွယ်လွယ်နဲ့ ပြောင်းတတ်သွားပါပြီ။

ပြောင်းနည်း

1. Where, When, How, Why စတဲ့ မေးတဲ့ အမေးစကားလုံးနဲ့ (P. V.) ဝါကျတွေကို ပြန်စပါ။

အမေးစကားလုံးရဲ့ နောက်ဘက် ကပ်လျက်မှာရှိတဲ့ မေးခွန်းဝါကျ အမျိုးအစားကိုကြည့်ပြီး အထက်မှာ ဖော်ပြခဲ့တဲ့ နည်းလမ်းအတိုင်း ပြောင်းပါ။

ဥပမာ

- A.**
1. (A.V.) Where **are** they **digging** a well?
 (P. V.) Where **is** a well **being dug**?
 2. (A.V.) When **are** they **selling** the car?
 (P. V.) When **is** the car **being sold**?
 3. (A.V.) How **are** they **making** the new road?
 (P. V.) How **is** the new road **being made**?
 4. (A.V.) Why **are** they **watching** television?
 (P. V.) Why **is** television **being watched** ?
- B.**
1. (A.V.) Where **do** you **print** the books?
 (P. V.) Where **are** the books **printed**?
 2. (A.V.) When **do** they **catch** the thief?
 (P. V.) When **is** the thief **caught**?

- 3. (A.V) How **do** they **build** the house?
(P. V) How **is** the house **built**?
- 4. (A.V) Why **do** we **study** English?
(P. V) Why **is** English **studied**?

- C.
- 1. (A.V) Where **will** they **build** the bridge?
(P. V) Where **will** the bridge **be built**?
 - 2. (A.V) When **will** they **send** the telegram?
(P. V) When **will** the telegram **be sent**?
 - 3. (A.V) How **will** they **cook** the meal?
(P. V) How **will** the meal **be cooked**?
 - 4. (A.V) Why **will** they **sell** the house?
(P. V) Why **will** the house **be sold**?

- D.
- 1. (A.V) Where **have** they **hidden** the gold?
(P. V) Where **has** the gold **been hidden**?
 - 2. (A.V) When **have** they **done** the homework?
(P. V) When **has** the homework **been done**?
 - 3. (A.V) How **have** they **killed** the rich man?
(P. V) How **has** the rich man **been killed**?
 - 4. (A.V) Why **have** they **arrested** five workers?
(P. V) Why **have** five workers **been arrested**?

Exercise No. (127)

Change the following sentences from the Active Voice to Passive Voice.

- 1. When will the waitress bring the coffee?
- 2. Why must we answer all the questions on the paper?
- 3. Where does she cook the meal?
- 4. How do they break the window?
- 5. Why do you suspect me?
- 6. When do you finish the work?
- 7. Where do you use these books?

- 8. Where do people speak English?
- 9. How must you plan your work?
- 10. When do they give you a pair of gloves?
- 11. How did the carpenters build that house?
- 12. Why don't they finish the work?
- 13. Why have they offered him a post in this office?
- 14. When did anybody steal my watch?
- 15. When did people make him President?
- 16. How has anyone picked my pocket?
- 17. Why have you never heard that name?
- 18. Where did the cat kill the mice?
- 19. Why are they singing a song?
- 20. How are the farmers ploughing the fields?
- 21. Why will everybody blame us?
- 22. How is the waitress preparing the dinner?
- 23. Where has a car run over the little dog?
- 24. How are they publishing the newspaper?
- 25. When will people forget the whole incident?

2. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

Interrogative Pronouns (Who, Whom, What, Whose)

တို့နှင့် မေးတံ

မေးခွန်း၊ ဝါကျတို့ကို PASSIVE VOICE သို့ပြောင်းမည်။

(A) WHO နှင့် မေးတံ မေးခွန်းဝါကျ

- 1. By whom နှင့် (P. V) ကို ပြန်ရေးပါ။
- 2. သင့်တော်ရာ ကြိယာတစ်လုံး ထည့်ပါ။
- 3. (A.V) ဝါကျ ရဲ့ Object ကို ကြိယာရဲ့အောက်က ပြန်ထည့်ပါ။
- 4. (A.V) ဝါကျရှိ မူလကြိယာကို V3 ပုံဖြောင်းပြီး (Object) ရဲ့ အောက်က တစ်ထည့်ပါ။

- ဥပမာ
- 1. (A.V) **Who** opened the window?
(P.V) **By Whom** was the window opened?
 - 2. (A.V) **Who** opened the windows?
(P.V) **By whom** were the windows opened?

- 3. (A. V.) **Who** has opened the window?
(P. V.) **By whom** has the window been opened?
- 4. (A.V.) **Who** has opened the windows?
(P. V.) **By whom** have the windows been opened?
- 5. (A.V.) **Who** is opening the window?
(P. V.) **By whom** is the window being opened?
- 6. (A.V.) **Who** is opening the windows?
(P. V.) **By whom** are the windows being opened?
- 7. (A.V.) **Who** will open the window?
(P. V.) **By whom** will the window be opened?



(B) WHOM နဲ့ မေးတဲ့ မေးခွန်းဝါကျ

- 1. Who နဲ့ စပြီး (P. V.) ဝါကျကို ပြန်ရေးပါ။
- 2. သင့်တော်ရာ ကြိယာတစ်လုံးကို ထည့်ပါ။
- 3. (A.V) ဝါကျ ရဲ့ ကြိယာကို V3 ပုံစံပြောင်းပြီး ပြန်ထည့်ပါ။

ဥပမာ

- 1. (A.V.) **Whom** do they beat?
(P. V.) **Who** is beaten?
- 2. (A.V.) **Whom** did they beat?
(P. V.) **Who** was beaten?
- 3. (A.V.) **Whom** will they beat?
(P. V.) **Who** will be beaten?
- 4. (A.V.) **Whom** are they beating?
(P. V.) **Who** is being beaten?
- 5. (A.V.) **Whom** have they beaten?
(P. V.) **Who** has been beaten?



(C) WHAT နဲ့ မေးတဲ့ မေးခွန်းဝါကျ

(1) Subject ကို သိချင်လို့ မေးရင်

- 1. By what နဲ့ စပါ။
- 2. သင့်တော်ရာ ကြိယာကို ထည့်ပါ။
- 3. (A.V) ဝါကျရဲ့ Object ကို ကြိယာနောက်က ပြန်ထည့်ပါ။
- 4. (A.V) ဝါကျရဲ့ မူလကြိယာကို V3 ပုံစံပြောင်းပါ။

ဥပမာ

- 1. (A.V.) What kills the chickens?
(P. V.) By what are the chickens killed?
- 2. (A.V.) What kills the chicken?
(P. V.) By what is the chicken killed?
- 3. (A.V.) What is killing the chickens?
(P. V.) By what are the chickens being killed?
- 4. (A.V.) What has killed the chickens?
(P. V.) By what have the chickens been killed?

(2) Object ကို သိချင်လို့ မေးရင်

- 1. What နဲ့ စပါ။
- 2. သင့်တော်ရာ ကြိယာထည့်ပြီး V3 နဲ့ တွဲပါ။
- 3. A.V. ဝါကျရဲ့ Subject ကို (လိုအပ်ရင်) by နဲ့ တွဲပြီး V3 ရဲ့နောက်က ပြန်ထည့်ပါ။ မလိုအပ်ရင် မထည့်ရပါဘူး။

ဥပမာ

- 1. (A.V.) What did the boy eat?
(P. V.) What was eaten by the boy?
- 2. (A.V.) What is the boy eating?
(P. V.) What is being eaten by the boy?
- 3. (A.V.) What will the boy eat?
(P. V.) What will be eaten by the boy?
- 4. (A.V.) What has the boy eaten?
(P. V.) What has been eaten by the boy?



(D) WHOSE နဲ့ မေးတဲ့ မေးခွန်းဝါကျ

(1) Subject နေရာမှာရှိတဲ့ Whose ကို သိချင်လို့မေးရင်

- 1. By whose နဲ့ စပါ။
- 2. သင့်တော်ရာ ကြိယာထည့်ပါ။
- 3. ကြိယာရဲ့နောက်က (A.V.) ဝါကျရဲ့ Object ကို ထည့်ပါ။
- 4. (A.V) ဝါကျရဲ့ မူလကြိယာကို V3 ပုံစံပြောင်းပါ။

- ဥပမာ
- 1. (A.V.) Whose son has stolen the money?
(P. V.) By whose son has the money been stolen?
 - 2. (A.V.) Whose son will read the book?
(P. V.) By whose son will the book be read?
 - 3. (A.V.) Whose son is reading the book?
(P. V.) By whose son is the book being read?

(2) Object နေရာမှာရှိတဲ့ Whose ကို သိချင်လို့မေးရင်

- 1. Whose နဲ့ စပါ။
- 2. သင့်တော်ရာ ကြိယာထည့်ပြီး V3 နဲ့ တွဲပါ။
- 3. A.V. ဝါကျရဲ့ Subject ကို (လိုအပ်ရင်) by နဲ့တွဲပြီး V3 ရဲ့နောက်က ပြန်ထည့်ပါ။
မလိုအပ်ရင် မထည့်ရပါဘူး။

- ဥပမာ
- 1. (A.V.) Whose book does Ni Ni borrow?
(P. V.) Whose book is borrowed by Ni Ni?
 - 2. (A.V.) Whose book will Ni Ni borrow?
(P. V.) Whose book will be borrowed by Ni Ni?
 - 3. (A.V.) Whose book has Ni Ni borrowed?
(P. V.) Whose book has been borrowed by Ni Ni?
 - 4. (A.V.) Whose book is Ni Ni borrowing?
(P. V.) Whose book is being borrowed by Ni Ni?

HOW MUCH, HOW MANY

How much, How many တို့နဲ့ မေးတဲ့ မေးခွန်းဝါကျ

- 1. (A.V.) How much sugar does Daw Phyu buy?
(P. V.) How much sugar is bought by Daw Phyu?
- 2. (A.V.) How much money did U Nyo borrow?
(P. V.) How much money was borrowed by U Nyo?
- 3. (A.V.) How much salt has she put in the curry?
(P. V.) How much salt has been put in the curry?
- 4. (A.V.) How much money will they lend?
(P. V.) How much money will be lent?
- 5. (A.V.) How many boys does Ni Ni see?
(P. V.) How many boys are seen by Ni Ni?
- 6. (A.V.) How many oranges did War War eat?
(P. V.) How many oranges were eaten by War War?
- 7. (A.V.) How many books has Phyu Phyu read?
(P. V.) How many books have been read by Phyu Phyu?

Exercise No. (128)

Change the following sentences from the Active Voice to the Passive Voice.

- 1. Whom do you love?
- 2. Whose daughter do you hate?
- 3. Who brings the coffee?
- 4. Who opened the boxes?
- 5. What will the waitress bring?
- 6. Who laughed at her?
- 7. What do they eat for the breakfast?
- 8. What did the teacher say?
- 9. What has the thief stolen?
- 10. What did the soldiers find in the jungle?
- 11. Whom do they make prisoner?

12. Whose father has told this story?
13. Whose father will they see tomorrow?
14. What caught the little bird?
15. What did the cat catch?
16. What did Daw Lay buy yesterday?
17. What is the tailor making?
18. Who has taken all my books?
19. Who is investigating the crime?
20. How much money do you need?
21. How many boys did the teacher cane?
22. How many trees will they cut down?
23. How many mangoes have the naughty boys stolen?
24. How much milk can this cow give?
25. How much rice does the patient eat?

FOR STUDY

သတိပြုရန်အချက်များ

(A) Subject က No one, Nobody စတဲ့ ငြင်းဆိုကားလုံးတွေ ဖြစ်နေရင် Passive Voice ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါ "not" ထည့်ပေးရပါတယ်။ (by no one, by nobody) လို့ ပြန်ထည့်ဖို့ မလိုလိုဖြစ်တယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. No one tells the truth.
The truth is not told.
 2. Nobody can avoid death.
Death cannot be avoided.
 3. Nobody knows the truth.
The truth is not known.

(B) အင်္ဂလိပ်စာမှာ များသောအားဖြင့် "ly" နဲ့ ဆုံးပြီး မြန်မာစာမှာ "စွာ" နဲ့ ဘာသာပြန်ရတဲ့ ကားလုံးတွေကို (Manner Adverb) နည်းဟန်ဖြု ကြိုယာဝိသေသနလို ခေါ်ပါတယ်။ (-ly နဲ့ မဆုံးပေမယ့်လည်း -well = ကောင်းစွာ၊ fast = လျင်မြန်စွာ စတဲ့ "စွာ" နဲ့ ဘာသာပြန်ရတဲ့ စာလုံးတွေ ဟာလည်း (Manner Adverb)ပဲ ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

| | | | |
|------|-------------|---|-------------|
| ဥပမာ | quickly | = | လျင်မြန်စွာ |
| | beautifully | = | လှပစွာ |
| | cruelly | = | ရက်စက်စွာ |
| | kindly | = | ကြင်နာစွာ |
| | well | = | ကောင်းစွာ |

ဆီလို (Manner Adverb) ကားလုံးလေးတွေပါတဲ့ပါကူကို Passive Voice ပြောင်းမယ်ဆိုရင် သူတို့ကို (V3) ရဲ့ ရှေ့ကထားပြီး ရေးသင့်ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. They kill the girl cruelly.
The girl is cruelly ki'ed.
 2. We sing a song happily.
A song is happily sung.
 3. They did the work well.
The work was well done.

In the passive voice it is more usual to put an adverb of manner immediately in front of the past participle it qualifies.

- They make this chair *very well*.
This chair is *very well* made.
- Somebody has cooked this fish *very well*.
This fish has been *very well* cooked.
- He wrote the book *beautifully*.
The book was *beautifully* written.
- Some people dress their children *very badly*.
Some children are *very badly* dressed.

LIVING ENGLISH STRUCTURE (PAGE. 276)

(၄) တစ်ခုကြိယာလေးတွေဟာ (Object) နှစ်ခုနဲ့ ယှဉ်တွဲပြီး ရေးသားလေ့ရှိပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ give, tell, show, lend, get, write, pay, sell, buy, make, fetch, promise, teach, send, hand, offer, cave, award, grant, allow, feed, leave (in a will) ... စတဲ့ ကြိယာတွေ ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ I teach you English. (OR)
I teach English to you.

အဲဒီလို (Object) နှစ်ခုရှိရင် တစ်ခုက သက်ရှိဖြစ်ပြီး၊ တစ်ခုက သက်မဲ့အရာဝတ္ထုဖြစ်တတ်ပါတယ်။

- သက်ရှိကကို Personal Object (or) Indirect Object
- သက်မဲ့ကကို Impersonal Object (or) Direct Object လို့ ခေါ်ပါတယ်။

အဲဒီလို (Object) နှစ်ခုရှိတဲ့ ဝါကျတွေမှာ ရေးထုံး (၂) မျိုး ရှိပါတယ်။

၁။ သက်ရှိ Object (Indirect Object) နဲ့ Verb ကို ကပ်ပြီးရေးရင် Object နှစ်ခုနဲ့ ကြားမှာ ဘာ preposition စကားလုံးမှ မရှိပါဘူး။

၂။ သက်မဲ့ Object (Direct Object) နဲ့ Verb ကို ကပ်ပြီးရေးရင်တော့ Object နှစ်ခုကြားမှာ "to" (သို့) "for" ထည့်ပေးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. I give him a book. (OR)
I give a book to him.
 2. They show me a picture. (OR)
They show a picture to me.
 3. I buy Nu Nu a new longyi. (OR)
I buy a new longyi for Nu Nu.

အဲဒီလို (Object) နှစ်ခုပါတဲ့ ဝါကျတွေကို Passive Voice ပြောင်းမယ်ဆိုရင် သက်ရှိ Indirect Object ကို ဝါကျရဲ့ရှေ့မှာထားပြီး ရေးသင့်ပါတယ်။ ကျန်တဲ့ Direct Object ကို V3 ရဲ့ နောက်က ကပ်ထည့် ရပါမယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. (A.V.) She gave the money to Ko Ko. (OR)
She gave Ko Ko the money.
(P. V.) Ko Ko was given the money.
 2. (A.V.) He sent a post-card to her. (OR)
He sent her a post-card.
(P. V.) She was sent a post-card.

3. (A.V.) He bought a hat for his son. (OR)
He bought his son a hat.
(P. V.) His son was bought a hat.

အခုလို သက်ရှိ Object ကို ဝါကျရဲ့ရှေ့ပိုင်း Passive Voice ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါ (A.V.) မှာ "to" တို့ "for" တို့ ပါလာရင် ဖြတ်ပစ်ရတာကို သတိပြုပါ။

သက်မဲ့ (Direct Object) ကို ဝါကျရဲ့ရှေ့ပိုင်း Passive Voice ပြောင်းမယ်ဆိုရင်တော့ အဲဒီ "to" တို့ "for" တို့ကို ပြန်ထည့်ပေးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. (A.V.) She gave the money to Ko Ko.
(P. V.) The money was given to Ko Ko.
 2. (A.V.) He sent a post-card to her.
(P. V.) A post-card was sent to her.
 3. (A.V.) He bought a hat for his son.
(P. V.) A hat was bought for his son.

များသောအားဖြင့်ကတော့ သက်ရှိက (Indirect Object) ကို ဝါကျရဲ့ရှေ့သို့ ပိုပြီး ရေးလေ့ရှိပါတယ်။

When the verb in the active voice takes two objects, it is more usual in English to make the personal object the subject of the passive voice.

Example:
Someone gave me a book.
I was given a book.
The form "A book was given (to) me" would be used when we need to stress this new subject.

LIVING ENGLISH STRUCTURE (PAGE. 276)

Exercise No. (129)

Turn the following sentences into the Passive Voice.

1. We pay the money to the landlord.
2. She bought a red longyi for me.
3. I told Ni Ni the whole story.
4. They send U Phyu some flowers.
5. No one tells me the truth.
6. Nobody can lend a book to me.
7. They will bring a present for me from Pyin-Oo-Lwin
8. We bought a new suit for our father.
9. We buy our mother a new dress.
10. I took the flowers to her.
11. He will show this letter to his friend.
12. Nobody sent him the money.
13. No one will write a letter to you.
14. Nobody has lent a large sum of money to Daw Pu.
15. They pay some money to the girl.

(D) (A.V) ဝါကျတွေမှာ in, on, at, down, after, off, ... စတဲ့ preposition တွေပါနေရင် (P. V) သို့ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါ သူတို့ကို (V3) ရဲ့နောက်က ကပ်ပြီး ပြန်ထည့်ရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. (A.V.) We should look *after* the children.
(P. V.) The children should **be** looked *after*.
 2. (A.V.) They will cut *down* the trees.
(P. V.) The trees will **be** cut *down*.
 3. (A.V.) The wind blew *down* the trees.
(P. V.) The trees were blown *down* by the wind.
 4. (A.V.) They are looking *at* the girls.
(P. V.) The girls are **being** looked *at*.

Prepositions - Preposition or adverb particles must not be left out with verbs requiring them; there is tendency to forget them.

Example - They will look after you well.
You will be well looked after.

(NOTE POSITIONS OF ADVERB OF MANNER)
L. E. S. (PAGE. 27B)

(E) “to” ဝါတဲ့ ဝါကျတွေကို Passive Voice သို့ပြောင်းရင်တော့ “to be + V3” ပုံစံနဲ့ ပြောင်းရပါတယ်။

1. Verb to be + to = ရန်ရှိသည်၊ တာဝန်ရှိသည်။
We *are to* study our lessons.
သင်ခန်းစာတွေကို ကျွန်ုပ်တို့တို့မှာ တာဝန်ရှိတယ်။
2. be + about to = ဆဲဆဲ၊ တော့မလို့။
They *are about to* buy a house.
သူတို့ အိမ်တစ်လုံး ဝယ်တော့မယ့်ဆဲဆဲပဲ။ (ဝယ်တော့မလို့)
3. be + going to = တော့မည်၊ လိမ့်မည်။
They *are going to* make a new road.
သူတို့ လမ်းအသစ်တစ်ခု ဖောက်တော့မယ်။
4. Ought to = သင့်သည်။
We *ought to* look after the old parents.
တို့တွေဟာ မိအိုဖအိုတွေကို ကြည့်ရှုစောင့်ရှောက်သင့်တယ်။
5. have to = (လုပ်) ရသည်။
We *have to* study our lessons for our examination.
(ကျွန်ုပ်) တို့ဟာ စာမေးပွဲအတွက် စာကျက်ရတယ်။ (မကျက်ရင် မဖြစ်လို့)

ဆဲဒီလို “to” ဝါတဲ့ ဝါကျတွေကို Passive Voice သို့ပြောင်းရင် “to be + V3” ပုံစံနဲ့ ပြောင်းရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
- (A.V.) We are to study our lessons.
(P.V.) Our lessons are to be studied.
 - (A.V.) They are about to buy a house.
(P.V.) A house is about to be bought.
 - (A.V.) They are going to make a new road.
(P.V.) A new road is going to be made.
 - (A.V.) We ought to look after the old parents.
(P.V.) The old parents ought to be looked after.
 - (A.V.) We have to study our lessons for our examination.
(P.V.) Our lessons have to be studied for our examination.

(F) တချို့ ကြိယာ (Verb) တွေမှာ ပုံသေလိုက်ရတဲ့ ဝိဘတ်ဦးစီးပုဒ် (preposition) တွေ ရှိပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
- interested (in) = စိတ်ဝင်စားစေသည်။
 - covered (with) = ဖုံးလွှမ်းသည်။
 - pleased (with) = ကျေနပ်စေသည်။
 - satisfied (with) = ကျေနပ်စေသည်။

စတဲ့ ကြိယာတွေနဲ့ ရေးဖွဲ့ထားတဲ့ (A.V.) ဝါကျတွေကို Passive Voice ပြောင်းရင် ..

- V3 ရဲ့နောက်က "by" ကို မထည့်ရပါဘူး။
- သက်ဆိုင်ရာ ကြိယာရဲ့နောက်က ပုံသေလိုက်တဲ့ preposition ကိုပဲ ပြန်ထည့်ပေးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
- (A.V.) This book interests me.
(P.V.) I am interested in this book.
(by this book လို့ မရေးရ။)
 - (A.V.) The water covered the road.
(P.V.) The road was covered with water.
(by water လို့ မသုံးရ။)
 - (A.V.) His speech pleases me.
(P.V.) I am pleased with his speech.

- (A.V.) His satisfied everybody.
(P.V.) Everybody was satisfied with him.
- (A.V.) Her singing delighted everybody.
(P.V.) Everybody was delighted with her singing.
- (A.V.) His words amazed us.
(P.V.) We were amazed with his words.
- (A.V.) The long lecture tired us.
(P.V.) We were tired of the long lecture.
- (A.V.) His behaviour vexes me sometimes.
(P.V.) I am sometimes vexed at his behaviour.
- (A.V.) I know his innocence.
(P.V.) His innocence is known to me.
- (A.V.) The smoke filled the room.
(P.V.) The room was filled with the smoke.

(G) (P.V.) ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါ object က စကားလုံးတစ်လုံးတည်း မဟုတ်ဘဲ စကားစု (phrase) တွေ၊ ဝါကျပိုင်း (Clause) တွေ ဖြစ်နေရင် သတိပြုရပါမယ်။

- ဥပမာ
- (A.V.) They dislike going to school.
S V O. (ph
(P.V.) Going to school is disliked.
 - (A.V.) We hate telling an untruth.
S V Obj(ph
(P.V.) Telling an untruth is hated.
 - (A.V.) We do not know where he has gone.
S V Obj(clause)
(P.V.) Where he has gone is not known.

(P.V.) ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါ Phrase/ Clause တွေကို တစ်ခုလုံး ဝါကျရဲ့ရှေ့ပိုင်းသို့ ပို့ပုံနဲ့ ကြိယာအနည်းကိန်းသုံးပုံတွေကို ဂရုစိုက်ပါ။
ခါစပယ် (Object) ဖြစ်နေတဲ့ clause ကို သတိပြုပါ။ အဲဒီ object (clause) အတွင်းမှာပဲ Passive Voice တစ်ခုပြောင်းစရာ ရှိနေသေးရင် ဝါကျရဲ့ရှေ့ကို မပို့ခင် (P.V.) ပြောင်း လိုက်ပါ။ ပြောင်းပြီးမှ ဝါကျရဲ့ရှေ့သို့ပို့ပါ။

ဥပမာ 1. (A.V) The police asked where we had hidden the gold.
 S V Obj. (Clause)
 (Where we had hidden the gold) -

ဆိုတဲ့ clause အတွင်းမှာ Passive Voice သို့ ဖြောင်းစရာရှိနေတယ်။
 ဖြောင်းလိုက်မယ် ဆိုရင်

(Where the gold had been hidden) - ဖြစ်သွားမယ်၊ ဒီတော့မှ အဲဒီ Object
 (clause) ကို ဝါကျရှေ့ကို ပို့လိုက်ရင် ...

1. (P.V) Where the gold had been hidden was asked
 S V
 by the police.
 ဆိုပြီးဖြစ်သွားပါတယ်။

2. (A.V) We must endure what we cannot cure.
 S V O
 (P.V) What cannot be cured must be endured.
 S V

3. (A.V) They asked why we had stolen the money.
 S V O
 (P.V) Why the money had been stolen was asked.
 S V

4. (A.V) We asked how the girl had deceived us.
 S V O
 (P.V) How we had been deceived by the girl was asked.
 S V

(H) (A.V) မှာ not anybody ဝါရင်
 (P.V) မှာ nobody သို့ ဖြောင်းရမယ်။

- ဥပမာ
- (A.V) We do not see anybody on the road.
(P.V) Nobody is seen on the road.
 - (A.V) They did not invite anybody to the party.
(P.V) Nobody was invited to the party.
 - (A.V) We cannot trust anybody with our affairs.
(P.V) Nobody can be trusted with our affairs.

(U) (A.V) မှာ Nobody/ No one နဲ့ ever တွဲလျက်ပါလာရင် (P.V) မှာ သူတို့ကိုဖြတ်
 ပြီး never နဲ့ အစားထိုးရေးရမယ်။

- ဥပမာ
- (A.V) Nobody has ever seen this picture before.
(P.V) This picture has never been seen before.
 - (A.V) Nobody has ever heard this story before.
(P.V) This story has never been heard before.
 - (A.V) No one has ever seen such an animal.
(P.V) Such an animal has never been seen.

(II) (A.V) ဝါကျရဲ့ object ကို (P.V) ဝါကျရဲ့ Subject အဖြစ် ဝါကျရဲ့ ရှေ့ကို ပို့တဲ့ အခါ
 သတိထားပါ။
 အဲဒီ Object ရဲ့နောက်မှာ (Post noun modifier) အထူးပြုပုဒ်တွေ ရှိနေရင်၊ သူတို့ကိုလဲ
 Object နဲ့တွဲပြီး ဝါကျရဲ့ရှေ့ကို တစ်ပါတည်း ပို့ပေးရပါမယ်။

- ဥပမာ
- (A.V) We saw the boy in the blue shirt.
 S V O P.N.M.
 (P.V) The boy in the blue shirt was seen.
 - (A.V) The thief has stolen the money in the purse.
 S V O P.N.M.
 (P.V) The money in the purse has been stolen by the thief.
 - (A.V) They are looking at the girl near the window.
 S V O P.N.M.
 (P.V) The girl near the window is being looked at.

(K) (A.V.) ကနေ (P.V.) ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါ ပြောင်းခိုင်းတဲ့ ဝါကျအတွင်းမှာ ကံလိုတဲ့ ကြိယာ Transitive Verb (j) ခု ပါနေတယ်။ (j) ခုလုံးကိုလဲ ပြောင်းပို့လိုတယ်ဆိုရင် အဲဒီ Verb နှစ်ခုလုံးကို (P.V.) အဖြစ် ပြောင်းပေးရပါမယ်။

- ဥပမာ
- (A.V.) They have bought a piece of land but cannot build a house yet.
(P.V.) A piece of land has been bought but a house cannot be built yet.
 - (A.V.) Someone broke into the house and stole the valuable things.
(P.V.) The house was broken into and the valuable things were stolen.
 - (A.V.) Someone killed the rich man but did not take away the money.
(P.V.) The rich man was killed but the money was not taken away.

(L) (A.V.) ဝါကျရဲ့ **object** ဟာ **that** နဲ့စတဲ့ **noun clause** ဖြစ်နေရင်

- (P.V.) ရဲ့ subject အဖြစ် It ကို သုံးပါတယ်။ အဲဒီ "that" နဲ့ အစပြုထားတဲ့ (object clause) ကိုတော့ ဝါကျရဲ့ နောက်ဆုံးမှာ ထားရပါတယ်။
- (A.V.) က present tense ဆိုရင် (P.V.) မှာ It is နဲ့ စပါ။
- (A.V.) က past tense ဆိုရင် (P.V.) မှာ It was နဲ့ စပါ။

- ဥပမာ
- (A.V.) People say that everybody likes money.
(P.V.) It is said that everybody likes money.
 - (A.V.) People said that Bogyoke Aung San was very brave.
(P.V.) It was said that Bogyoke Aung San was very brave.
 - (A.V.) People know that the sun rises in the east.
(P.V.) It is known that the sun rises in the east.

အဲဒီလို ဝါကျပုံနမူနာ ရေးတဲ့အခါ ...

| | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| thought = ထင်သည် | believed = ယုံကြည်သည်။ |
| reported = သတင်းပို့သည်။ | understood = နားလည်သည်။ |
| known = သိသည်။ | expected = မျှော်လင့်သည်။ |
| alleged = ဟုတ်မှန်သည်ဟု ဆိုသည်။ | considered = ထင်မြင်ယူဆသည်။ |

စတဲ့ စကားလုံးကလေးတွေကို သုံးတာများပါတယ်။

ပါပေမယ့် " " It is / It was နဲ့ပဲ အစပြုပြီး ရေးရမယ်လို့ ပုံသေ မမှတ်ပါနဲ့။ အခြားနည်းနဲ့လဲ ပြောင်းလို့ရပါတယ်။ အောက်မှာ ဖော်ပြထားတဲ့ နမူနာဝါကျတွေ၊ ရေးထုံးတွေကို သေသေချာချာ လေ့လာပါ။

- (A.V.) People say that he is 100 years old.
(P.V.) It is said that he is 100 years old. (OR) He is said to be 100 years old.
- (A.V.) People expect that the strike will begin tomorrow.
(P.V.) It is expected that the strike will begin tomorrow. (OR) The strike is expected to begin tomorrow.
- (A.V.) They report that many people were killed in the explosion.
(P.V.) It is reported that many people were killed in the explosion. (OR) Many people are reported to have been killed in the explosion.

(M) V- ing ပါဝင်တဲ့ ဝါကျတွေကို (P.V) ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါ **being + V3** ပုံနံကို ပြောင်းရပါတယ်။

(V/be + V -ing) နဲ့ ယှဉ်တွဲရေးသားတဲ့ Continuous Tense ဝါကျတွေကို ဖိုလိုတာ မမှတ်ပါဘူး။ V/be မပါတဲ့ V-ing တွေကိုသာ ဆိုလိုတာပါ။

- ဥပမာ
- (A.V.) I don't like people *telling* me lies.
(P.V.) I don't like *being told* lies.
 - (A.V.) He doesn't like people *telling* him what to do.
(P.V.) He doesn't like *being told* what to do.

- 3. (A.V.) I remember someone giving me a watch.
(P. V.) I remember being given a watch.
- 4. (A.V.) She hates people keeping her waiting.
(P. V.) She hates being kept waiting.
- 5. (A.V.) He took away the books without anyone seeing him.
(P. V.) He took away the books without being seen.

(N) see = မြင်သည်။ hear = ကြားသည်။ make = (တစ်ခုခုကို ပြုလုပ်) စေသည်။
watch = စောင့်ကြည့်သည် ဆိုတဲ့ စကားလုံးတွေကို အခြားကြိယာတွေနဲ့ တွဲဖက်ပြီး ဝါကျရေးရင်
see, hear, make စသည့် တို့ရဲ့ နောက်က လိုက်တဲ့ တခြား ကြိယာကို (Active Voice မှာ
ဆိုရင်) s, es မပါဘဲ Present Tense ဝဲ သုံးရပါတယ်။ သူ့ရှေ့မှာ to လဲ မထည့်ရပါဘူး။

- ဥပမာ**
- 1. I make him repair the watch.
ကျွန်တော်က သူ့ကို နာရီ ပြင်စေတယ် (ပြင်ခိုင်းတယ်)
 - 2. I made her sing a song.
ကျွန်တော်က သူမကို သီချင်း တစ်ပုဒ် ဆိုစေတယ်
 - 3. We saw the boy go to school.
လူကလေး ကျောင်းသွားတာကို ကျွန်တော်တို့ မြင်တယ်
 - 4. I hear them talk each other.
သူတို့ တစ်ယောက်ကို တစ်ယောက် စကားပြောနေတာ ကျွန်တော်ကြားတယ်။

အဲဒီလို ဝါကျတွေကို Passive Voice ပြောင်းမယ်ဆိုရင်တော့ (to) မပါဘဲ Verbကို
(to) ပါတဲ့ Verb အဖြစ်ပြောင်းပြီး ရေးသား ရပါတယ်။ Verb ရဲ့ ရှေ့က to ထည့်ပေးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ**
- 1. (A.V.) I saw him read the book.
(P. V.) He was seen to read the book.
 - 2. (A.V.) I heard them talk each other.
(P. V.) They were heard to talk each other.
 - 3. (A.V.) I made her wash the clothes.
(P. V.) She was made to wash the clothes.

- 4. (A.V.) She watches the girl iron the clothes.
(P. V.) The girl is watched to iron the clothes.



(O) Active Voice ကနေ Passive Voice ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါ ကံလိုတဲ့ ကြိယာ (Transitive Verb) တွေ မြန်မာမှာ ပြောင်းလို့ရတယ်။ Intransitive Verb တွေဆိုရင် ပြောင်းလို့မရဘူး ဆိုတာကို စာမျက်နှာ (၄၃၇) မှာ ဖော်ပြခဲ့ပါတယ်။

He became a king. ဆိုတဲ့ ဝါကျကို
A king was become by him. လို့ ပြောင်းလို့ မရပါဘူး။

ပါဝေမယ်
တစ်ခု ကြိယာတွေဟာ Transitive Verb အနေနဲ့ရော Intransitive Verb အနေနဲ့ပါ နှစ်မျိုးသုံးနိုင်တာတွေ ရှိနေပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ Laugh (intransitive) = ရယ်မောသည်။
She laughs happily. ဆိုတဲ့ဝါကျကို Passive Voice ပြောင်းလို့ မရပေမယ့် ...

Laugh at (transitive) = ပြက်ရယ်ပြုသည်။ လှောင်ပြောင်သည်။
They laugh at the girls. ဆိုတဲ့ ဝါကျကိုတော့ ..
The girls are laughed at ဆိုပြီး Passive Voice ပြောင်းလို့ ရပါတယ်။

အဲဒီလို ကြိယာလေးတွေရဲ့နောက်က (များသောအားဖြင့်) Preposition ပါနေတာကို
ခတ်ပြီး မှတ်သားပါ။

- ဥပမာ**
- (be) laughed at = (ridiculed) = လှောင်ပြောင်ရယ်မောသည်။
 - (be) listened to = (heard) = နားထောင်သည်။
 - (be) cared for = (tended) = ပြုစုသည်။ ထိန်းကျောင်းသည်။
 - (be) relied on = (trusted) = ယုံကြည်ကိုးစားသည်။ ယုံကြည်ပုံသည်။
 - (be) sent for = (called) = ဆင့်ခေါ်သည်။ အခေါ်လွှတ်သည်။
 - (be) talked of = (discussed) = ဆွေးနွေးသည်။

စတဲ့ အခြားအခြား ကြိယာလေးတွေကိုလဲ ဂရုစိုက်ပြီး မှတ်သားထားဖို့ လိုပါတယ်။



Exercise No. (130)

Turn the following sentences into the Passive Voice.

1. They gave me two hours to make my decision.
2. Someone paid ten thousand kyats to Nu Nu.
3. They have shown us the new machine.
4. They ought to have done the work long ago.
5. He will need a lot of money if he goes abroad.
6. All desire wealth and some acquire it.
7. No one has used that door for twnty years.
8. We use pure butter in these cakes.
9. Readers must not take away books in the Reference Library.
10. People in Brazil speak Portuguese.
11. They awarded him the Nobel Peace Prize in 1990.
12. People said that he will be the next Prime Minister.
13. We should not laugh at the unfortunate.
14. The bird was building the nest in a tree.
15. Nobody can tell you what time the train leaves.
16. This is the second time they have written to us about this.
17. Our grandfather told some very interesting stories.
18. Everyone desires happiness but no one gets it.
19. They are sending U Nyo abroad on business.
20. It is time to shut up the shop.
21. One should keep one's promises.
22. Do not insult the weak.
23. A thief entered our house last night and stole some money.
24. They did not tell me all the details of the case.
25. It is time someone should tell him what is wrong.
26. The council have approved the plans for the building but we haven't raised the money.
27. They had only lived in that house for three weeks when fire destroyed it.
28. He promised you that they would meet you at the station.
29. It astonished us to hear that you had not received our letter.
30. His failure bitterly disappointed his parents, especially as they had been counting on his success.

PASSIVE VOICE (VERB FORM) [တကယ့်အချက်အလက်]

A. Simple Present/Simple Past ကို (P.V)ပြောင်းရင် be+V3

1. They eat rice.
Rice is eaten.
2. They ate rice.
Rice was eaten.

B. Continuous Tense ကို (P.V) ပြောင်းရင် be+being+V3

1. They are eating rice.
Rice is being eaten.
2. They were eating rice.
Rice was being eaten.

C. Perfect Tense ကို (P.V) ပြောင်းရင် have+been+V3

1. They have eaten rice.
Rice has been eaten.
2. They have eaten mangoes.
Mangoes have been eaten.

D. Helping Verbs ကို (P.V) ပြောင်းရင် အကူကြိယာ+ be+V3

1. They will eat rice.
Rice will be eaten.
2. We must study English.
English must be studied.

ဝါကျတစ်ကြောင်းကို ရေးတော့မယ်ဆိုရင် အဲဒီဝါကျရဲ့ Subject ဟာ ပြုလုပ်သူလား၊ ခံရသူလားဆိုတာ သတိထားပြီးတော့ ရေးသားရပါတယ်။

ပုံစံ Rice is eaten.
S V

ဆိုတဲ့ဝါကျမှာ Subject ဖြစ်တဲ့ (Rice) ထမင်းဟာ စားသောက်ခြင်းခံရတယ်။ ဒါကြောင့် (P.V) ဖြစ်တယ်။ P.V မှုန်းသိပြီဆိုရင် အပေါ်မှာ ဖော်ပြထားတဲ့ ပုံစံ(၄)မျိုးအနက်က ဘယ်ပုံစံလဲဆိုတာ သတိပြုပြီး ရေးသားရပါမယ်။

- ၂၀၆၇
1. (eat) 1. Rice.....every day.
 2. Rice.....yesterday.
 3. Rice.....tomorrow.
 4. Rice.....now.
 5. Rice.....already.

Ans: 1. is eaten, 2. was eaten, 3. will be eaten,
4. is being eaten, 5. has been eaten

2. (drink) 1. Water.....every day.
2. Water.....yesterday.
3. Water.....tomorrow.
4. Water.....now.
5. Water.....already.

Ans: 1. is drunk, 2. was drunk, 3. will be drunk,
4. is being drunk, 5. has been drunk.

Exercise No. (131)

Fill the blank in each sentence with the correct form of the verb given in bracket.

1. (must finish) Those letters by two o'clock.
2. (kill) The girl in the car accident yesterday.
3. (publish) This book in 1990.
4. (correct) Our exercises every night by the teacher.
5. (will, send) The letters by airmail.
6. (hear) The cries of the child by the neighbours last night.
7. (attend) The lecture by many people last week.
8. (catch) The thief by the police last night.
9. (study) English every night before I go to bed.
10. (already, eat) Rice before we go to school.
11. (dig) Look! A well by the villagers near the school compound.
12. (already, feed) The pigs when I went back home.
13. (iron) The clothes by the maid at present.

14. (read) The newspaper by our father every morning.
15. (prepare) The contracts by the lawyer yesterday.
16. (cane) The naughty boy by the teacher yesterday.
17. (sing) A song by Cho Pyone last night.
18. (boil) Water to make tea and coffee.
19. (repair) The old bridge by the workers now.
20. (take) The sick boy to the doctor yesterday.
21. (print) This book next year.
22. (teach) This class by Saya Saw every day.
23. (forget) When she is reading a novel, everything else
24. (bite) The child by a mad dog on his way home from school.
25. (beat) Yesterday the child by the mother for not listening to her.
26. (invent) The telephone by Graham Bell in 1876.
27. (can, make) Many things from bamboo.
28. (teach) English in the Primary Schools now.
29. (can solve) This problem because it is not too difficult.
30. (dig) This canal ten years ago.
31. (must do) Something for those poor people.

Exercise No. (132)

(Choice): Choose the correct verb form or verb phrase to complete each sentence.

1. He (A. gave, B. was given, C. had given) a prize because he had tried very hard.
2. All the work (A. has done, B. has been done, C. done) by the workers.
3. She (A. is given, B. was giving, C. has given) a box of chocolates for her birthday.
4. The naughty boys (A. were punished, B. had punished, C. are punished) by the teacher yesterday.

5. Rice (A. is cooked, B. has cooked, C. has been cooked) every day.
6. The clothes (A. were washed, B. are washed, C. have washed) once a week.
7. When the police arrived, the rich lady (A. had killed, B. had been killed, C. was killed) in her bed room.
8. The mad dog (A. was caught, B. was catching, C. has been caught) by the boys yesterday.
9. The old road (A. was repaired, B. was being repaired, C. had repaired) by the workers last month.
10. The car (A. is polished, B. has been polished, C. is being polished) once every three months.
11. The library (A. doesn't close, B. isn't closed, C. wasn't closed) at five o'clock every evening.
12. The dogs (A. fed, B. are fed, C. have fed) twice a day.
13. Are the doors (A. be, B. being, C. been) painted?
14. The walls (A. will paint, B. would paint, C. will be painted) again next year.
15. The meeting (A. is held, B. will hold, C. will be held) next Sunday evening.
16. The talkative girl (A. beat, B. was beaten, C. had beaten) by the teacher yesterday.
17. A new road (A. is making, B. is made, C. is being made) between the two towns at present.
18. The meat (A. has been cooked, B. has cooked, C. cooked) for the dinner.
19. The dancers (A. photographed, B. were photographed, C. had photographed) by the reporters last night.
20. The whole town (A. destroyed, B. was destroyed, C. had destroyed) by the fire.

* * *

PASSIVE VOICE TO ACTIVE VOICE

PASSIVE VOICE TO ACTIVE VOICE

SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE, SIMPLE PAST TENSE

နိရောဏတေ ဝါကျဗေဒတို့
PASSIVE VOICE မှ ACTIVE VOICE ပြောင်းနည်း

1. Passive Voice ဝါကျရဲ့ နောက်ဘက်မှာ by + agent ပါရင်ဖြစ်ပြီး by နောက်က စကားလုံး တွေကို ဝါကျရဲ့ ရှေ့သို့ပို့ပါ။
2. "by" + agent မပါရင် People, They, We, Someone, Everyone စတဲ့ သင့်တော်ရာ တစ်လုံးလုံးကို ဖော်ပေးပါ။
3. "V/be + V3" ကြိယာတွဲကိုဖြုတ်ပြီး "Present Tense (သို့) Past Tense ပုံစံကိုပြောင်းပါ။ (အဲဒီလို ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါ A.V ဝါကျမှာရှိတဲ့ V/be ကိုသတ်ဖြုတ်ပါ။ V/be က Present Tense(am, is, are) ဆိုရင် Present Tense ကိုပြောင်းပါ။ Past Tense(was, were) ဆိုရင် Past Tense ကို ပြောင်းပါ။)
4. P.V ဝါကျရဲ့ Subject ကို Verb ရဲ့ နောက်သို့ပို့ပါ။

- ပုံစံ
1. (Passive) The cat **is chased** by the dog.
(Active) The dog **chases** the cat.
 2. (Passive) The cat **was chased** by the dog.
(Active) The dog **chased** the cat.
 3. (Passive) The thief **was caught** by the police.
(Active) The police **caught** the thief.
 4. (Passive) The thief **is caught** by the police.
(Active) The police **catch** the thief.
 5. (Passive) The clothes **are washed** by the girl.
(Active) The girl **washes** the clothes.
 6. (Passive) The clothes **were washed** by the girl.
(Active) The girl **washed** the clothes.
 7. (Passive) The car **was stolen** .
(Active) Someone **stole** the car.
 8. (Passive) English **is spoken** in this country.
(Active) People **speak** English in this country.
 9. (Passive) The beggar **was given** some money.
(Active) They **gave** the beggar some money. (OR)
They **gave** some money to the beggar.

Verb ရဲ့အနားမှာ သက်မဲ (object)ကို ကပ်ပြီးရေးရင် to (သို့) forတည်ပေးရတာကို သတိပြုပါ။

Exercise No. (133)

Turn the following sentences into the Active Voice.

1. This house is built by U Aye.
2. That house was built by U Aye.
3. Those houses were built by U Aye.
4. The machine was checked by the inspector.
5. Our homework is corrected by our teacher.
6. The room was cleaned by the maid yesterday.
7. All her valuable jewellery was stolen by a thief last night.
8. All of the reports were written by the secretary.
9. English is spoken by a large number of people.
10. The repair work was done by the mechanic.
11. The teacher is respected by the students.
12. The news was announced by the President.
13. The newspaper is read every day.
14. English is taught in the schools.
15. The walls were repainted.
16. Many courses in English are given during the summer.
17. U Hlaing was transferred to another department.
18. A second coat of paint is spread over that surface.
19. The truck is loaded by workers.
20. All of us were surprised by his frank attitude.

CONTINUOUS TENSE နဲ့ ရေထားတဲ့ ဝါကျတွေကို
 PASSIVE VOICE မှ ACTIVE VOICE ချိ ပြောင်းနည်း

1. Passive Voice ဝါကျရဲ့ နောက်ဘက်မှာ by+agent ပါရင်ဖြတ်ပြီး "by" နောက်က စကားလုံးတွေကို ဝါကျရဲ့ရှေ့သို့ပို့ပါ။
2. "by" + agent မပါရင် People, They, We, Someone, Everyone စတဲ့ သင့်တော်ရာ စကားလုံးတစ်ခုခု ဖော်ပေးပါ။
3. "be + being + V3" ကြိယာတွဲပုံစံကို ဖြုတ်ပြီး "be + V-ing" ပုံစံကို ပြောင်းပါ။ (P.V ဝါကျမှာရှိတဲ့ V/be ဟာ Present-Tense လား၊ Past Tense လား၊ သတိဖြုတ်ပြီး ပြောင်းပါ။)
4. P.V ဝါကျရဲ့ Subject ကို Verb ရဲ့ နောက်သို့ပို့ပါ။

- | | | |
|------|--------------|---|
| ပုဂံ | 1. (Passive) | A song <i>is being sung</i> by Cho Pyone. |
| | (Active) | Cho Pyone <i>is singing</i> a song. |
| | 2. (Passive) | The piano <i>was being played</i> by U Ko Ko. |
| | (Active) | U Ko Ko <i>was playing</i> the piano. |
| | 3. (Passive) | The little bird <i>was being killed</i> by the boy. |
| | (Active) | The boy <i>was killing</i> the little bird. |
| | 4. (Passive) | A glass of milk <i>is being drunk</i> by the patient. |
| | (Active) | The patient <i>is drinking</i> a glass of milk. |
| | 5. (Passive) | A loud noise <i>is being made</i> . |
| | (Active) | They <i>are making</i> a loud noise. |
| | 6. (Passive) | Television <i>was being watched</i> . |
| | (Active) | We <i>were watching</i> television. |

Exercise No. (134)

Turn the following sentences into the Active Voice.

1. The articles are being written by U Sein.
2. The books were being read by the girl.
3. The logs are being carried by the bullocks.
4. The letters were being delivered by the postman.
5. The roof is being repaired by the workers.
6. The old building was being pulled down.
7. My shoes are being cleaned by the maid.
8. More money is being spent on food.
9. The mouse is being caught by the cat.
10. A song was being sung by a girl.
11. Many different things are being sold in that store.
12. The answers to the exercises are being told by the teacher.
13. Many interesting stories are being written by U Sein Ohn.
14. The newspapers are being sold there.
15. Many new words are being learnt every day.
16. All the books are being sold at the school bookstore.
17. The copybooks were being brought to the lesson by the students.
18. The whole house is being swept.
19. The dinner is being prepared for the whole family by mother.
20. Listen! The door is being knocked at.
21. The compositions are being written in the class.

PERFECT TENSE နဲ့ ရေးထားတဲ့ ပါကျတွေကို
PASSIVE VOICE မှ ACTIVE VOICE အဖြစ် ပြောင်းရန်

1. "by" ပါရင်ဖြတ်ပြီး "by" ရဲ့နောက်က စကားလုံးတွေကို ဝါကျရဲ့ရှေ့သို့ပို့ပါ။
2. "by" မပါရင် People, They, We, Someone, Everyone... သင့်တော်ရာ တစ်လုံးလုံး ဖော်ပေးပါ။
3. "have + been + V3" ကြိယာတွဲပုံစံကို ဖြုတ်ပြီး have + V3 ပုံစံကိုပြောင်းပါ။
4. P.V ဝါကျရဲ့ Subject ကို Verb ရဲ့ နောက်သို့ပို့ပါ။

- ဥပမာ
1. (Passive) An article **has been written** by U Thu Kha.
(Active) U Thu Kha **has written** an article.
 2. (Passive) The car **has been repaired** by the mechanic.
(Active) The mechanic **has repaired** the car.
 3. (Passive) Our compositions **have been corrected** by the teacher.
(Active) The teacher **has corrected** our compositions.
 4. (Passive) The books **have been printed**.
(Active) They **have printed** the books.
 5. (Passive) Mangoes **have been bought**.
(Active) Someone **has bought** mangoes.

Exercise No. (135)

Turn the following sentences into the Active Voice.

1. The troops have been called out by the government.
2. She has been given a clock by her father.
3. The boy has been shown the easiest way to do it.
4. A special edition for children has been written by the author.
5. A light has been switched on and the door has been opened.
6. An enormous hole has been cut in the door.
7. The house has been broken into by the burglars.
8. English has been studied for many years.
9. I have been spoken about it many times.
10. Many students have been taught to speak English by Mr. Brown.
11. The house has been cleaned from top to bottom.
12. That novel has been read many times.
13. This movie has been seen three times.

14. The same exercise has been studied three or four times.
15. The thief has been captured by the police at last.
16. Many letters have been written to her brother by Htar Htar.
17. All the books have been put on the teacher's table.
18. The meeting has been held three times.
19. Ko Tun has been lent some money by U Aung.
20. Some flowers have been brought to her.

HELPING VERB (Will, Shall, Can, Could)
စတဲ့ ပြုစုပေးတဲ့ ရေးထားတဲ့ ပါကျတွေကို
PASSIVE VOICE မှ ACTIVE VOICE အဖြစ် ပြောင်းရန်

1. "by" ပါရင်ဖြတ်ပြီး "by" ရဲ့နောက်က စကားလုံးကို ဝါကျရဲ့ရှေ့သို့ပို့ပါ။
2. "by" မပါရင် People, They, We, Someone... သင့်တော်ရာ တစ်လုံးလုံး ဖော်ပေးပါ။
3. "အကူကြိယာ + be + V3" ကြိယာတွဲပုံစံကို ဖြုတ်ပြီး "အကူကြိယာ + VI" ပုံစံကိုပြောင်းပါ။
4. P.V ဝါကျရဲ့ Subject ကို Verb ရဲ့ နောက်သို့ပို့ပါ။

- ဥပမာ
1. (Passive) The walls **will be painted** by the workers.
(Active) The workers **will paint** the walls.
 2. (Passive) The homework **must be done** by the students.
(Active) The students **must do** the homework.
 3. (Passive) The children **should be looked after** by the nurse.
(Active) The nurse **should look after** the children.
 4. (Passive) The rooms **will be swept**.
(Active) Someone **will sweep** the rooms.
 5. (Passive) The students **will be given** homework by the teacher.
(Active) The teacher **will give** homework to the students. (OR)
The teacher **will give** the students homework.

Verb ရဲ့အနားမှာ သက်မဲ့ (object)ကို တပ်ပြီးရေးရင် to (သို့) forထည့်ပေးရတာကို သတိပြုပါ။

Exercise No. (136)

Turn the following sentences into the Active Voice.

1. A new suit should be bought for his son.
2. Nyo Nyo will be brought many presents by Ko Myo.
3. We will be given some homework by the teacher.
4. She will be sent some post-cards by her lover.
5. Some money must be given to the poor.
6. The young girl should not be laughed at.
7. The patient will be given some medicine by the doctor.
8. A silver cup will be given to the champion.
9. The house may be destroyed by fire.
10. The money should be hidden in the safe.
11. We will be shown the interesting places by the guide.
12. Our written work will be returned by the teacher.
13. The report will be finished by him soon.
14. The smoke will be blown away by the wind.
15. A dancing class will be started next week.
16. This film will be seen soon.
17. She must be helped in every possible way.
18. A new group may be organized next week.
19. That work must be done today.
20. The letter should be sent to the police immediately.



ပေးခွင့်ပါလျှင်ကို ACTIVE VOICE သို့ ပြောင်းရန်

VERB TO BE နှင့် ဆက်လက်ပြီး ကာလ (CONTINUOUS TENSE) ပါလျှင်ကို ပြောင်းရန်

1. သင့်တော်ရာ Verb to be နဲ့ပေါ။
2. "by"ပါရင်ဖြတ်ပြီး "by" နောက်က စကားလုံးတွေကို V/be နဲ့ကပ်ပြီး ထည့်ပါ။
3. "by" မပါရင် People, They, We, Someone စတဲ့ သင့်တော်ရာ တစ်လုံးလုံး ဖော်ပေးပါ။
4. being + V3 ကြီးယာတွဲကို ဖြတ်ပြီး Verb ကို V-ing ပုံနဲ့ ပြောင်းပါ။
5. P.V ပါကျရဲ့ Subject ကို Verb ရဲ့နောက်သို့ ဝှံ့ပါ။

- ဥပမာ
1. (Passive) **Is** a book **being read** by War War?
(Active) **Is** War War **reading** a book?
 2. (Passive) **Are** the clothes **being washed** by Ni Ni?
(Active) **Is** Ni Ni **washing** the clothes?
 3. (Passive) **Was** the house **being built** by U Phyu?
(Active) **Was** U Phyu **building** the house?
 4. (Passive) **Were** the flowers **being watered** by Ko Ko?
(Active) **Was** Ko Ko **watering** the flowers?
 5. (Passive) **Is** the wall **being painted**?
(Active) **Are** they **painting** the wall?



Exercise No. (137)

Turn the following sentences into the Active Voice.

1. Are the questions being answered by the pupils?
2. Is the bridge being repaired by the villagers?
3. Was the class being taught by the teacher?
4. Is a train being pulled by a powerful engine?
5. Are the exercises being learnt by the girl?
6. Was the poem being learnt by the boy?
7. Were these gloves being knitted by Hnin Hnin?
8. Is the big wagon being pulled by the horses?
9. Is the breakfast being cooked by our mother?

10. Are the letters being written by the secretary?
11. Were the fields being ploughed by the farmer?
12. Are the troops being moved to the battle area?
13. Were the letters being delivered by the postman?
14. Is the city being defended by the soldiers?
15. Are the clouds being blown away by the wind?

**VERB TO BE နဲ့ အပြုပြု မေးတဲ့
(SIMPLE PRESENT AND SIMPLE PAST TENSE)
ဝါကျတွေကို ပြောင်းနည်း**

1. သင့်တော်ရာ Verb to do နဲ့ပေါ၊ P.V မှာရှိတဲ့ V/be အနည်း၊ အများ (Present Tense/ Past Tense) တွေကိုကြည့်ပြီး သင့်တော်သလို (Do/ Does/ Did) ကို ဖော်ရပါ။
2. "by" ပါရင် ဖြုတ်ပြီး "by" နောက်က စကားလုံးတွေကို V/Do နဲ့ကပ်ပြီး ထည့်ပါ။
3. "by" မပါရင် People, They, We, Someone စတဲ့ သင့်တော်ရာ တစ်လုံးလုံး ဖော်ပေးပါ။
4. be + V3 ကြိယာတွေကို ဖြုတ်ပြီး Verb ကို (V1) Present Tense ပြောင်းပါ။
5. P.V ဝါကျရဲ့ Subject ကို Verb ရဲ့နောက်သို့ ပို့ပါ။

- ဥပမာ**
1. (Passive) **Is** the old pagoda **repaired** by the government?
(Active) **Does** the government **repair** the old pagoda?
 2. (Passive) **Is** rice **cooked** every day?
(Active) **Do** they **cook** rice every day?
 3. (Passive) **Was** rice **cooked** yesterday?
(Active) **Did** they **cook** rice yesterday?
 4. (Passive) **Were** the clothes **stolen** by the thief?
(Active) **Did** the thief **steal** the clothes?
 5. (Passive) **Are** the newspapers **read** daily?
(Active) **Do** people **read** the newspapers daily?

Exercise No. (138)

Turn the following sentences into the Active Voice.

1. Is a kite made by Tun Tun?
2. Was the door opened by the girl?

3. Were the birds caught by the hunters?
4. Are the mice killed by the cat?
5. Was America discovered by Columbus?
6. Was the clever girl praised by the teacher?
7. Is good news expected by the villagers?
8. Are good books sold in that shop?
9. Is English grammar taught by the teacher?
10. Is Nu Nu given a ticket by the manager?
11. Are the boys refused admission by the gate keeper?
12. Were the walls painted red?
13. Was the baby frightened by the loud noise?
14. Was the patient taken to the hospital?
15. Were the boys knocked down by a car?

သတိပြုရန်

Simple Present Tense/ Simple Past Tense နဲ့ မေးတဲ့ဝါကျတွေမှာ

Are the books *read* every day? လို့ V/be နဲ့ပဲ မေးပါတယ်။

Continuous Tense နဲ့ မေးတဲ့ဝါကျတွေမှာလဲ

Are the books *being read*? လို့ V/be နဲ့ပဲ မေးပါတယ်။

ဒါပေမယ့် Simple Present Tense တို့ Simple Past Tense တို့မှာ being

မပါဘဲ၊ Continuous Tense မှာ being ပါတာကို သတိပြုပါ။ (ဖြေတဲ့အခါမှာ being မပါရင် V/do နဲ့စပြီး၊ being ပါရင် V/be နဲ့တော့ကို သတိပြုပါ။)

- ဥပမာ**
1. **Are** the books **read** every day?
Do they **read** the books every day?
 2. **Are** the books **being read**?
Are they **reading** the books?

**3. WILL, SHALL စတဲ့ အပြုပြုကားတွေနဲ့
အပြုပြု မေးတဲ့ ဝါကျတွေကို ပြောင်းနည်း**

- ၁။ သင့်တော်ရာ အကူကြိယာနဲ့ပေါ။
- ၂။ "by" ပါရင်ဖြုတ်ပြီး by နောက်က စကားလုံးတွေကို အကူကြိယာနဲ့ကပ်ပြီးထည့်ပါ။
- ၃။ "by" မပါရင် People, They, We, Someone စတဲ့ သင့်တော်ရာစကားလုံး တစ်လုံးဖော်ပေးပါ။
- ၄။ အကူ + be + V3 ကြိယာတွေကိုဖြုတ်ပြီး၊ အကူ + V1 (Present Tense) ပုံစံကို ပြောင်းပါ။
- ၅။ P.V ဝါကျရဲ့ subject ကို Verb ရဲ့နောက်သို့ပို့ပါ။

- ဥပမာ 1. (Passive) **Can** the piano **be played** by U Ko Ko?
 (Active) **Can** U Ko Ko **play** the piano?
2. (Passive) **Will** the car **be repaired** by the mechanic?
 (Active) **Will** the mechanic **repair** the car?
3. (Passive) **Must** this lesson **be studied** regularly?
 (Active) **Must** they **study** this lesson regularly?
4. (Passive) **Should** the little children **be looked after**?
 (Active) **Should** we **look after** the little children?
5. (Passive) **Will** the books **be printed** in Mandalay?
 (Active) **Will** they **print** the books in Mandalay?

Exercise No. (139)

Turn the following sentences into the Active Voice.

1. Will the concert be enjoyed by the audience?
2. Can this department be managed by U Kyaw?
3. Should the naughty boy be punished by the teacher?
4. Can the cries of the wolves be heard?
5. Will the event be reported?
6. Should he be distrusted by us?
7. Will the shoes be made by the shoemaker?
8. Will the bell be rung by the teacher?
9. Must the answer papers be kept on the table?
10. Will the smoke be blown away by the wind?
11. Can this task be finished by her today?
12. Will the meeting be held in the hall?
13. Can the class room be used as a meeting place?
14. Will the soldiers be welcomed by the people?
15. Must his words be listened to by us?

4. VERB TO HAVE နဲ့ အစပြုပြီးမေးတဲ့
 PERFECT TENSE ဝါကျတွေကို ပြောင်းနည်း

- ၁။ သင့်တော်ရာ Verb to have ဖြင့်ပေါ။
- ၂။ "by" ဝါရင်ဖြတ်ပြီး by နောက်က စကားလုံးတွေကို V/have နဲ့ကပ်ပြီးထည့်ပါ။
- ၃။ "by" မပါရင် People, They, We, Someone စတဲ့ သင့်တော်ရာ တစ်လုံးလုံးကို ဖော်ပြီးထည့်ပါ။
- ၄။ been + V3 ကြိယာတွဲကိုဖြတ်ပြီး V3 တစ်ခုတည်းကို ပြန်ထည့်ပါ။
- ၅။ P.V. ဝါကျရဲ့ subject ကို Verb ရဲ့နောက်သို့ပို့ပါ။

- ဥပမာ 1. (Passive) **Has** a car **been bought** by Nyo Nyo?
 (Active) **Has** Nyo Nyo **bought** a car?
2. (Passive) **Have** the clothes **been washed** by the maid?
 (Active) **Has** the maid **washed** the clothes?
3. (Passive) **Has** the homework **been done** by Ni Ni?
 (Active) **Has** Ni Ni **done** the homework?
4. (Passive) **Has** the thief **been caught** by the police?
 (Active) **Have** the police **caught** the thief?
5. (Passive) **Has** a car **been stolen**?
 (Active) **Has** someone **stolen** the car? (OR)
Have they **stolen** the ca.?

Exercise No. (140)

Turn the following sentences into the Active Voice.

1. Has the town been destroyed by the earthquake?
2. Has the dinner been cooked by the maid?
3. Has the noise of the explosion been heard?
4. Has the match been won by our team?
5. Has Thet Thet been appointed monitor by the class teacher?
6. Has U Sein been elected President by the members?
7. Has the exhibition been opened by the Prime Minister?
8. Have the singers been invited to your party?
9. Has that name been heard before by you?

- 10. Has the old bridge been pulled down?
- 11. Have the policemen been ordered to pursue the thief by the officer?
- 12. Have many new highways been built by the government?
- 13. Have the telegraph wires been cut?
- 14. Have these trees been blown down by the wind?
- 15. Has a nest been built by the bird?

5. INTERROGATIVE ADVERBS (WHERE, WHEN, HOW, WHY) မေးတဲ့ မေးခွန်းပုံမျိုး ACTIVE VOICE ပြောင်းနည်း

အထက်မှာ ဖော်ပြရှင်းလင်းလေ့ကျင့်ခဲ့ကြပြီးဖြစ်တဲ့ V/be, V/have, Helping Verb တွေနဲ့ မေးတဲ့မေးခွန်းဝါကျတွေကို Active Voice ပြောင်းတတ်အောင်၊ ကျွမ်းကျင်အောင် လေ့ကျင့်ဖို့ လိုပါတယ်။

ပြောင်းတတ်သွားပြီဆိုရင် Where, When, How, Why နဲ့ မေးတဲ့မေးခွန်းတွေကိုလဲ ပြောင်းတတ်သွားပါပြီ။

ပြောင်းနည်း

- ၁။ Where, When, How, Why စတဲ့ မေးတဲ့ အမေးစကားလုံးနဲ့ (A.V) ဝါကျကို ပြန်စပါ။
- ၂။ အမေးစကားလုံးရဲ့နောက်ဘက် ကပ်လျက်မှာရှိတဲ့ မေးခွန်းဝါကျ အမျိုးအစားကိုကြည့်ပြီး၊ အထက်မှာ ဖော်ပြခဲ့တဲ့နည်းလမ်းတွေအတိုင်း ပြောင်းပါ။

- ပေးစာ
- 1. (Passive) **When is** this letter **written** by Phyu Phyu?
 - (Active) **When does** Phyu Phyu **write** this letter?
 - 2. (Passive) **When is** this letter **being written** by Phyu Phyu?
 - (Active) **When is** Phyu Phyu **writing** this letter?
 - 3. (Passive) **Where was** the well **dug** by the villagers?
 - (Active) **Where did** the villagers **dig** the well?
 - 4. (Passive) **Where was** the well **being dug** by the villagers?
 - (Active) **Where were** the villagers **digging** the well?
 - 5. (Passive) **When was** this house **destroyed** by fire?
 - (Active) **When did** fire **destroy** this house?
 - 6. (Passive) **When was** this house **being destroyed** by fire?
 - (Active) **When was** fire **destroying** this house?

- 7. (Passive) **How was** the thief **captured** by the police?
- (Active) **How did** the police **capture** the thief?
- 8. (Passive) **How was** the thief being **captured** by the police?
- (Active) **How were** the police **capturing** the thief?
- 9. (Passive) **Where has** my book **been taken**?
- (Active) **Where have** they **taken** my book?
- 10. (Passive) **Why is** the letter **torn** by the girl?
- (Active) **Why does** the girl **tear** the letter?
- 11. (Passive) **Why is** the letter **being torn** by the girl?
- (Active) **Why is** the girl **tearing** the letter?
- 12. (Passive) **When has** the breakfast **been prepared**?
- (Active) **When have** they **prepared** the breakfast?
- 13. (Passive) **How have** the cars **been repainted**?
- (Active) **How have** they **repainted** the cars?
- 14. (Passive) **When will** our exercise books **be returned** by the teacher?
- (Active) **When will** the teacher **return** our exercise books?
- 15. (Passive) **Why can't** the report **be done** by U Sein?
- (Active) **Why can't** U Sein **do** the report?
- 16. (Passive) **How will** the little girl **be adopted** by our grandmother?
- (Active) **How will** our grandmother **adopt** the little girl?

6. BY WHOM မေးတဲ့ ဝါကျတွေကို ပြောင်းနည်း

- ၁။ Who နဲ့ ဝါကျတို့စပါ။
- ၂။ PV ကြိယာပုံ ပုံစံတွေကိုကြည့်ပြီး A.V. ကြိယာပုံစံတွေဖြစ်အောင် ပြောင်းပါ။
 - (A) **be + V3** ဆိုရင် **Present Tense** (သို့) **Past Tense** သင့်တော်ရာ ကိုပြောင်းပါ။
 - (B) **be + being + V3** ဆိုရင် **be + ing** ပုံစံကိုပြောင်းပါ။
 - (C) **have been + V3** ဆိုရင် **have + V3** ပုံစံကိုပြောင်းပါ။
 - (D) **အကူကြိယာ + be + V3** ဆိုရင် **အကူကြိယာ + V1** ပုံစံကိုပြောင်းပါ။

- ၂၀၀၈
- (Passive) **By whom were** the walls **painted**?
(Active) **Who painted** the walls?
 - (Passive) **By whom were** the walls **being painted**?
(Active) **Who was painting** the walls?
 - (Passive) **By whom have** the walls **been painted**?
(Active) **Who has painted** the walls?
 - (Passive) **By whom will** the walls **be painted**?
(Active) **Who will paint** the walls?

7. WHO နဲ့ မေးတဲ့ ဝါကျတွေကို ပြောင်းနည်း

- ၁။ Whom နဲ့ ဝါကျကိုစပါ။
- ၂။ P.V. ကြိယာတွဲပုံစံတွေကိုဖြတ်ပြီး A.V. ကြိယာပုံစံတွေဖြစ်အောင် ပြောင်းပါ။ (အထက်မှာ ဖော်ပြခဲ့ပြီး။)

- ၂၀၀၈
- (Passive) Who **is killed**?
(Active) Whom **do** they **kill**?
 - (Passive) Who **was killed**?
(Active) Whom **did** they **kill**?
 - (Passive) Who **will be killed**?
(Active) Whom **will** they **kill**?
 - (Passive) Who **has been killed**?
(Active) Whom **have** they **killed**?
 - (Passive) Who **is being killed**?
(Active) Whom **are** they **killing**?
 - (Passive) Who **was being killed**?
(Active) Whom **were** they **killing**?

8. WHAT, WHOSE ဝေဟန့်ကိုနဲ့ မေးတဲ့ ဝါကျတွေကို ပြောင်းနည်း

- ၁။ By what, By whose တို့နဲ့ မေးရင် What, Whose နဲ့ ပြန်စပါ။
- ၂။ What, Whose တို့နဲ့ မေးရင်လည်း What, Whose တို့နဲ့ ပြန်စပါ။
- ၃။ P.V. ကြိယာတွဲပုံစံတွေကိုဖြတ်ပြီး A.V. ကြိယာပုံစံဖြစ်အောင် ပြောင်းပါ။

- ၂၀၀၈
- (Passive) By what **are** the mice **caught**?
(Active) What **catches** the mice?
 - (Passive) By what **are** the mice **being caught**?
(Active) What **is catching** the mice?
 - (Passive) By whose daughter **have** the clothes **been washed**?
(Active) Whose daughter **has washed** the clothes?
 - (Passive) By whose daughter **will** the clothes **be washed**?
(Active) Whose daughter **will wash** the clothes?
 - (Passive) What **was bought** by the rich man?
(Active) What **did** the rich man **buy**?
 - (Passive) What **is being bought** by the rich man?
(Active) What **is** the rich man **buying**?
 - (Passive) Whose house **will be bought** by U Nyo?
(Active) Whose house **will** U Nyo **buy**?
 - (Passive) Whose house **is being painted**?
(Active) Whose house **are** they **painting**?

Exercise No. (141)

Turn the following sentences into the Active Voice.

- Why is Physics studied by the students?
- How is the information given to the teacher?
- When are the windows opened every day?
- Why is television watched by the children every day?
- Why are some important papers being studied by the manager?
- Where are the books being read by the boys?
- How is the teacher liked by the children?
- How will the table be washed by the waitress?
- When will the English assignment be printed?
- When has the assignment been copied by the students?
- How should the lesson be explained to the children?
- Where has the money been counted by the clerk?
- When has that radio programme been listened to?

14. Where has a different class been taught by the teacher?
15. Where have the students been told the answer to the question by the teacher?
16. Why will the house be sold at a low price?
17. Why must the instructions be read very carefully?
18. Where are the names copied from the list?
19. How was the report being prepared for the officer by the clerk?
20. Why is a new silk dress worn by your wife?
21. By whom was a camera bought?
22. By whom were all of the instructions given?
23. What was kept in a case by the photographer?
24. What were brought to the class by the girl?
25. Who is sent the photographs by Ko Ko?
26. Who is being beaten by the teacher?
27. By what is the cat being chased?
28. Whose mother will be shown the photographs by the boy?
29. By whose friend will a guitar be brought?
30. By whom was the car being repainted?

Exercise No. (142)

Put the following sentences into the Active Voice.

1. Such things should not be spoken about in public.
2. Was she told to be quick?
3. Has this child been brought up very badly?
4. Will the patient be taken to hospital tomorrow?
5. The gate has been left open and the oxen run away.
6. The officer was not told the truth about the situation.
7. I was promised a watch by my father if I passed the examination.
8. She has been told not to come here again.
9. He has been told the news.
10. When was the window opened by an unseen hand?
11. The tourists were pointed out the interesting places by the guide.
12. When will the mother be shown the new baby by the nurse?
13. The reporter was given one thousand kyats as a reward by the police?
14. Must the lessons be made more interesting by the teachers?

15. When will the paddy be reaped by the farmers?
16. Why can't it be done properly?
17. How was she pushed into the water?
18. When will the children be sent to school?
19. Where were you asked a difficult question?
20. Why was the drunkard requested to leave the restaurant by the manager?

Exercise No. (143)

In the following sentences, change the voice:

1. The work should be planned carefully.
2. The clerks gave the officer a pretty present when he retired.
3. Do people speak English all over the world?
4. We opened the cupboard and took out the clothes.
5. This building was built in 1962.
6. People will forget the whole incident after a few months.
7. We must read the instructions before we answer all the questions.
8. You should not blame her for something that she had not done.
9. The girl will be taken for a drive in the new car.
10. People are talking about the accident everywhere.
11. They told me that U Soe had gone abroad.
12. He was shown my new car.
13. I have given her some good advice.
14. Are you promised a bicycle for your birthday?
15. They didn't tell the lawyer all the details of the case.
16. The government gave the poor girl a scholarship to the university.
17. She should not be treated as if she were a baby.
18. They had only lived in that house for one month when fire destroyed it.
19. No one has repaired this pagoda for many years.
20. The reference books must not be taken away from the library.
21. No one told me that you liked music.
22. May I borrow your dictionary?
23. Every question must be answered on the paper.
24. You shouldn't leave my book out in the rain.
25. The teacher ought to tell the pupils about this.

DIRECT AND INDIRECT SPEECH (REPORTED SPEECH)

2 Use

a We often use the passive when we do not know who or what does something.
My car was stolen last night. (I do not know who stole the car.)

b We also use the passive when we are not interested in who or what does something.

The factory was painted during the war.
Sarah has been invited to the party.

In these sentences we are interested in the factory and Sarah, not who painted the factory, or who invited Sarah.

c We also use the passive when we do not want to say who or what does something. Compare:

Active: *I made a mistake.*
Passive: *A mistake was made.*

61 Using *get* instead of *be* in the passive

We sometimes use *get* (+ past participle) instead of *be* (+ past participle) to make passive verbs. We do this, for example, when we talk about things that happen by accident or unexpectedly.

My flat got burgled when I was on holiday.
I was surprised that I didn't get invited to the party.
My parents' fence got blown down in the storm.
We use *get* mostly in an informal style.

63 The passive with *by* and *with*

1 *By* + agent

Compare:

Active: *Marconi* invented the radio.Passive: *The radio was invented by Marconi.*Active: *The strong winds* blew down a number of trees.Passive: *A number of trees were blown down by the strong winds.*

We sometimes use the subject of an active sentence (eg *Marconi*, *the strong winds*) as 'the agent' in a passive sentence. When this happens, we use *by* to introduce the agent in the passive.

We only use *by* + agent when it is important to say who or what is responsible for something.

2 *With*+ instrument

We use *with* to talk about an instrument which is used by the agent to do something. Compare:

I was hit with an umbrella. *I was hit by an old lady.*

3 *With* + material

We also use *with* to talk about materials or ingredients.

The room was filled with smoke.
Irish coffee is made with whiskey.

DIRECT AND INDIRECT SPEECH (Reported Speech)

လူတစ်ယောက်ပြောတဲ့ စကားကို အဲဒီလူ ပြောတဲ့အတိုင်း (မူရင်း စကားလုံးများအတိုင်း) အတိအကျ ဖော်ပြပြောဆိုရင် (Direct Speech) တိုက်ရိုက်ပြောစကား လို့ ခေါ်ပါတယ်။

အဲဒီလူရဲ့စကားကို မူရင်းအတိုင်းမဟုတ်ဘဲ (အဓိပ္ပာယ်မပြောင်းလဲစေဘဲ) လိုရင်းအချက်ကို တစ်ဆင့်ပြန်ပြီး ပြောကြားမယ်ဆိုရင်တော့ (Indirect Speech) တစ်ဆင့်ပြောစကားလို့ ခေါ်ပါတယ်။

Direct Speech တိုက်ရိုက်ပြောစကားမှာ ပြောဆိုသူရဲ့ မူရင်းစကားလုံးတွေကို Inverted commas "....." အတွင်းမှာထားပြီး ဖော်ပြရပါတယ်။

Indirect Speech မှာတော့ "....." Inverted commas ကို မသုံးရပါဘူး။

ဥပမာ (Direct Speech) U Nyunt said, "I am writing a book now."

ဦးညွန့်ကပြောသည်။ "ကျွန်တော် ယခုစာအုပ်တစ်အုပ် ရေးနေတယ်။"

(Indirect Speech) U Nyunt said that he was writing a book then.

ဦးညွန့်က သူဟာ (ထိုစဉ်က) အဲဒီတုန်းက စာအုပ်တစ်အုပ် ရေးနေတယ်လို့ပြောတယ်။

တိုက်ရိုက်ပြောစကား (Direct Speech) ကို ဖော်ပြတဲ့အခါ အပိုင်းနှစ်ပိုင်း ရှိပါတယ်။

U Nyunt said , "I am writing a book now."

| | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| Reporting Verb | Reported Speech |
| ပြောကြိယာ | ပြောစကား |

၁။ ဦးညွန့်ကပြောတယ်၊ ဆိုတယ်၊ မေးတယ် စတဲ့အပိုင်းကို "ပြောကြိယာ" (Reporting Verb) လို့ ခေါ်ပါတယ်။

၂။ ဦးညွန့်ပြောတဲ့စကား၊ သူ့မူရင်းစကားလုံးအတိအကျအတိုင်းဖော်ပြတဲ့အပိုင်းကိုတော့ "ပြောစကား" (Reported Speech) လို့ ခေါ်ပါတယ်။

တိုက်ရိုက်ပြောစကားကို ဖော်ပြတဲ့အခါ ပုံစံအမျိုးမျိုးရှိပါတယ်။

ပုံစံ (၁) ပြောကြိယာကို ရှေ့ဘက်မှာထားပြီး ပြောသူရဲ့ မူရင်းစကားကို နောက်ဘက်ကထားရေးတဲ့ နည်းဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

| | |
|------|--|
| ဥပမာ | Ni Ni said, "I always tell the truth." |
| | R.V. R.S. |

ပုံစံ (၂) ပြောသူရဲ့ မူရင်းစကားကို ရှေ့ဘက်ကထားပြီး ပြောကြိယာကိုတော့ နောက်ဘက်ကထား ရေးတဲ့နည်း ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ "I always tell the truth," said Ni Ni. (OR)
R.S. R.V.

"I always tell the truth," Ni Ni said.
R.S. R.V.

Ni Ni said ကို said Ni Ni လို့ ရှေ့နောက်ပြောင်းလဲ ရေးသားနိုင်တာကိုလဲ သတိပြုပါ။

ပုံစံ (၃) ပြောသူရဲ့ မူရင်းစကားကို နှစ်ပိုင်းခွဲပြီး ဖော်ပြမယ်။ ပြောကြိယာကိုတော့ အဲဒီပြောစကား နှစ်ခုရဲ့ အလယ်မှာထားပြီး ရေးသားတဲ့နည်း ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ "You should believe me," said Ni Ni "as I always tell
R.S. R.V. R.S.
the truth."
R.S.

DIRECT SPEECH မှ INDIRECT SPEECH သို့ ပြောင်းလဲခြင်း

(Direct Speech) ကနေ (Indirect Speech) ကို ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါ ပြောဆိုတဲ့ စကားရဲ့ ပုံစံ၊ (ရိုးရိုးဖော်ပြပြောဆိုတဲ့ ဝါကျလား၊ မေးခွန်းဝါကျလား၊ အမိန့်ပေး ဝါကျလား၊ တအံ့တဩပြောတဲ့ အာမေဒိုတ်ဝါကျလား စသည်ဖြင့်) ဝါကျရဲ့ ပုံစံအမျိုးအစားကိုလိုက်ပြီး ပြောင်းနည်း စည်းကမ်းတွေလဲ ကွဲပြားပါတယ်။

(A) REPORTED SPEECH (STATEMENT)

(A) STATEMENT ရိုးရိုး၊ ပါတိကျများကို INDIRECT SPEECH သို့ ပြောင်းနည်း

Statement ရိုးရိုး ဖော်ပြပြောဆိုတဲ့ ဝါကျတွေကို Direct Speech ကနေ Indirect Speech သို့ ပြောင်းနည်း အကျဉ်းချုပ်ကို အရင်ဆုံး တင်ပြပါမယ်။

စည်းကမ်းချက် များ

- ၁။ အပြောခံရသူ ပါမပါ သတိပြုပါ။
 - ပြောခံရသူ မပါရင် say, said
 - ပြောခံရသူပါရင် tell, told ကို သုံးပါ။ (say to ကို tell, said to ကို told ပြောင်းပါ။)
- ၂။ , " " ဖြတ်ပြီး say, said, tell, told စသည်တို့ရဲ့ နောက်က that ထည့်ပေးပါ။
- ၃။ ပြောစကားအတွင်းမှာရှိတဲ့ (Pronoun) နာမ်စားတွေကို ပြောင်းပါ။
 - I, my, me, we, our, us စတဲ့ First Person နာမ်စားတွေဟာ ပြောသူကို ရည်ညွှန်းပါတယ်။
 - You, your, you စတဲ့ Second Person နာမ်စားတွေဟာ ပြောခံရသူကို ရည်ညွှန်းပါတယ်။
 - * အဲဒီ First Person နဲ့ Second Person နာမ်စားတွေကို Third Person နာမ်စားတွေအဖြစ် ပြောင်းပေးရပါတယ်။
 - * Third Person နာမ်စားတွေ ပါလာရင်တော့ (မပြောင်းဘဲ) မူလအတိုင်း ပြန်ရေးရပါတယ်။
- ၄။ ပြောစကားအတွင်းမှာရှိတဲ့ ကြိယာတွေကို ပြောင်းပါ။
 - (A) Reporting Verb (ပြောကြိယာ) ဟာ Present Tense ဖြစ်နေရင်
 - * Reported Speech (ပြောစကား) ထဲက ကြိယာကို ပြောင်းဖို့ မလိုပါဘူး။

ဥပမာ (D.S) The girl says, "My brother is lazy."
(I.S) The girl says that her brother is lazy.

- (B) Reporting Verb (ပြောကြိယာ) ဟာ Past Tense ဖြစ်နေပြီး
 - * Reported Speech (ပြောစကား) ထဲက ကြိယာက Present Tense ဖြစ်နေရင်

အဲဒီ Present Tense ကြိယာကို Past Tense ပြောင်းပါ။

ဥပမာ (D.S.) Aye Aye said, "I am very sorry."
(I.S.) Aye Aye said that she was very sorry.

(C) Reporting Verb (ပြောကြိယာ) ဟာ Past Tense ဖြစ်နေပြီး

- * Reported Speech (ပြောစကား) ထဲက ကြိယာက Past Tense ဖြစ်နေရင် အဲဒီ Past Tense ကြိယာကို
 - Past Tense အတိုင်း ထားချင်လဲ ထားလို့ရပါတယ်။
 - Past Perfect Tense ကြိယာပုံစံပြောင်းရင်လဲ ရပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ (D.S.) Hnin Hnin said, "I went to school."
(I.S.) Hnin Hnin said that she went to school. (or)
Hnin Hnin said that she had gone to school.

(D) Reporting Verb (ပြောကြိယာ) ဟာ Past Tense ဖြစ်နေပြီး

- * Reported Speech (ပြောစကား) ထဲက ကြိယာက Past Continuous Tense ဖြစ်နေရင် အဲဒီ Past Continuous Tense ကြိယာကို Past Perfect Continuous Tense ကြိယာပုံစံသို့ ပြောင်းရပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ (D.S.) She said, "I was listening to the radio."
(I.S.) She said that she had been listening to the radio.

(E) Reporting Verb (ပြောကြိယာ) ဟာ Past Tense ဖြစ်နေပေမယ့်

- * Reported Speech (ပြောစကား) ထဲမှာ ဖော်ပြပြောဆိုတဲ့ အကြောင်းအရာက အမှန်တရားတို့၊ အကျင့်စရိုက်တို့ဖြစ်နေလို့ Present Tense နဲ့ ရေးထားတာဆိုရင် အဲဒီ Present Tense ကို (မပြောင်းလဲဘဲ) Present Tense အတိုင်းပဲ ပြန်ရေးရပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ (D.S.) He said, "The earth is round."
(I.S.) He said that the earth is round.

| Reporting Verb | Reported Speech | ပြောင်းရန် |
|----------------|-----------------|---------------------------------------|
| (A) Present | Any Tense | No Change |
| (B) Past Tense | Present Tense | Past Tense |
| (C) Past Tense | Past Tense | Past Tense (or) Past Perfect Tense |
| (D) Past Tense | Past Continuous | Past Perfect Continuous |
| (E) Past Tense | Universal Truth | No Change |

၅။ ပြောစကားအတွင်းမှာရှိတဲ့ အချို့စကားလုံးတွေကို ပြောင်းရပါတယ်။

| ဥပမာ | ကို | that |
|------|-----------|---|
| | these | those |
| | here | there |
| | now | then |
| | thus | so |
| | ago | before |
| | today | that day |
| | yesterday | the day before (or) the previous day |
| | tomorrow | the next day (or) the following day |

စသည်ဖြင့်ပြောင်းပေးပါ။

ခုဖော်ပြခဲ့တဲ့ Indirect Speech ပြောင်းနည်း အနှစ်ချုပ်ကို သေသေချာချာ (အလွတ်) ကျွန်ုပ်တို့ပြီးမှ အသေးစိတ် အချက်အလက်တွေကို ဆက်လက်လေ့လာ စေချင်ပါတယ်။

ကဲ ... ထပ်မံပြီး အသေးစိတ် လေ့လာကြည့်ပါဦး

စည်းကမ်းချက် (၁)

ပြောခံရတဲ့သူပါရင် say, said စတဲ့ ပြောကြိယာတွေကို tell (သို့) told သင့်တော်ရာနဲ့ ပြောင်းလဲရေးသားရပါတယ်။ ပြောခံရသူ မပါရင်တော့ say (သို့) said ကို မပြောင်းလဲဘဲ မူလအတိုင်း ရေးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. Nyo Nyo said to Ko Ni, "I am very happy."
Nyo Nyo told Ko Ni that she was very happy.
 2. Nyo Nyo said, "I am very happy, Ko Ni."
Nyo Nyo told Ko Ni that she was very happy.

နပါတ် (၁) ဝါကျမှာ ပြောခံရသူ ကိုနီဟာ ရှေ့ဘက် (ပြောကြိယာ) အတွင်းမှာရှိတယ်။

နပါတ် (၂) ဝါကျမှာတော့ ပြောခံရသူ ကိုနီဟာ နောက်ဘက် (ပြောစကားအတွင်း) မှာရှိတယ်။ ဒါပေမယ့် Indirect Speech ကို ပြောင်းတဲ့ အခါ ရှေ့ဘက် ပို့ပေးရတာကို သတိပြု။

3. Nyo Nyo said, "I am very happy."
Nyo Nyo said that she was very happy.

- နံပါတ် (၁) မှာ said to ကို told ပြောင်းပုံ
- နံပါတ် (၂) မှာ ပြောခံရသူကို ရှေ့သို့ထုတ်ပြီး၊ said အစား told နဲ့ ပြောင်းလဲပြီးရေးပုံ
- နံပါတ် (၃) မှာ ပြောခံရသူ မပါတဲ့အတွက် said ကို said အတိုင်း မပြောင်းလဲဘဲ ပြန်ရေးပုံတို့ကို သတိပြုပါ။

စည်းကမ်းချက် (၂)

" "ဖြတ်ပြီး၊ say, said, tell, told စသည်တို့ရဲ့နောက်က that ထည့်ပေးရပါတယ်။

The "that" is often omitted, especially in spoken English.
H. S. E. GRAMMAR (PAGE. 380)

စည်းကမ်းချက် (၃)

ပြောစကား: Reported Speech အတွင်းမှာ ဖော်ပြရေးသားထားတဲ့ "1st person" နဲ့ "2nd person" နာမ်စားတွေကို "3rd person" နာမ်စားတွေအဖြစ် ပြောင်းရပါတယ်။

- ◆ I, my, me, we, our, us စတဲ့ 1st person နာမ်စားတွေဟာ၊ ပြောတဲ့သူကို ရည်ညွှန်းပါတယ်။
- ◆ you, your, you စတဲ့ 2nd person နာမ်စားတွေဟာ အပြောခံရသူကို ရည်ညွှန်းပါတယ်။
- (က) ယောက်ျားအနည်းကိန်း
ပြောသူ I, my, me
ပြောခံရသူ you, your, you ကို he, his, him ပြောင်းပါ။
- (ခ) မိန်းမအနည်းကိန်း
ပြောသူ I, my, me
ပြောခံရသူ you, your, you ကို she, her, her ပြောင်းပါ။
- (ဂ) ကျား (သို့) မ အများကိန်း
ပြောသူ We, our, us
ပြောခံရသူ you, your, you ကို they, their, them ပြောင်းပါ။

မှတ်ချက် ။ ။ (ပြောစကား အတွင်းမှာ) Third person တွေဖြစ်တဲ့ he, his, him, she, her, her, they, their, them စသည်တို့ပါလာရင်တော့ မပြောင်းလဲရပါဘူး။

(A) I, My, Me ပါရင် ပြောတဲ့သူ (Subject) ကို ကြည့်ပြီး ပြောင်းပါ။

(၁) ပြောသူဟာ ယောက်ျား အနည်းကိန်းဖြစ်နေရင်

| | | | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|----|-----|-----|---------|
| Subject | အဖြစ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ | I | ကို | he | ပြောင်း |
| Object | အဖြစ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ | me | ကို | him | ပြောင်း |
| ပိုင်ဆိုင်မှုပြ | အဖြစ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ | my | ကို | his | ပြောင်း |

- ဥပမာ
- (D.S) Ko Ko said, "I do my work."
(I.S) Ko Ko said that he did his work.
 - (D.S) Ko Ko said, "My father is kind to me."
(I.S) Ko Ko said that his father was kind to him.
 - (D.S) He said, "I am very busy."
(I.S) He said that he was very busy.

(၂) ပြောသူဟာ မိန်းမ အနည်းကိန်းဖြစ်နေရင်

| | | | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|----|-----|-----|---------|
| Subject | အဖြစ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ | I | ကို | she | ပြောင်း |
| Object | အဖြစ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ | me | ကို | her | ပြောင်း |
| ပိုင်ဆိုင်မှုပြ | အဖြစ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ | my | ကို | her | ပြောင်း |

- ဥပမာ
- (D.S) Sandar said, "I wash my clothes."
(I.S) Sandar said that she washed her clothes.
 - (D.S) Sandar said, "My brother loves me."
(I.S) Sandar said that her brother loved her.
 - (D.S) She said, "I go to school."
(I.S) She said that she went to school.

(၃) ပြောသူဟာ (I) ဖြစ်နေရင်

| | | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|----|-----|----|
| Subject | အဖြစ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ | I | ကို | I |
| Object | အဖြစ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ | me | ကို | me |
| ပိုင်ဆိုင်မှုပြ | အဖြစ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ | my | ကို | my |

- ဥပမာ
- (D.S) I said, "I like tea."
(I.S) I said that I liked tea.

- 2. (D.S) *I said, "Daw Mya is my mother."*
(I.S) *I said that Daw Mya was my mother.*
- 3. (D.S) *I said, "My father beats me."*
(I.S) *I said that my father beat me.*

(၄) ပြောသူဟာ "You" ဖြစ်နေရင်

Subject - အဖြစ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ I ကို you ပြောင်း
Object - အဖြစ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ me ကို you ပြောင်း
ပိုင်ဆိုင်မှုပြု - အဖြစ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ my ကို your ပြောင်း

- ဥပမာ
1. (D.S) *You said, "I love Cho Cho."*
(I.S) *You said that you loved Cho Cho.*
 2. (D.S) *You said, "I will look after my children."*
(I.S) *You said that you would look after your children.*
 3. (D.S) *You said, "Cho Cho loves me."*
(I.S) *You said that Cho Cho loved you.*

(B) We, Our, Us စတုရင် ပြောတဲ့သူ (Subject) ကို ကြည့်ပြီး ပြောင်းပါ။

(၁) ပြောသူဟာ ကျား (သို့) မ အများကိန်း (သို့) They တို့ဖြစ်နေရင်

Subject - အဖြစ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ we ကို they ပြောင်း
Object - အဖြစ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ us ကို them ပြောင်း
ပိုင်ဆိုင်မှုပြု - အဖြစ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ our ကို their ပြောင်း

- ဥပမာ
1. (D.S) *The boys said, "We are very lazy."*
(I.S) *The boys said that they were very lazy.*
 2. (D.S) *The girls said, "We can do our house-work."*
(I.S) *The girls said that they could do their house-work.*
 3. (D.S) *Thida and Nilar said, "Our teacher beats us."*
(I.S) *Thida and Nilar said that their teacher beat them.*
 4. (D.S) *They said, "We see with our eyes."*
(I.S) *They said that they saw with their eyes.*

(၂) ပြောသူဟာ We ဖြစ်နေရင်

Subject - အဖြစ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ we ကို we
Object - အဖြစ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ us ကို us
ပိုင်ဆိုင်မှုပြု - အဖြစ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ our ကို our အတိုင်းပြန်ရေးပါ။

- ဥပမာ
1. (D.S) *We said, "We love each other."*
(I.S) *We said that we loved each other.*
 2. (D.S) *We said, "Our mother cooks rice for us."*
(I.S) *We said that our mother cooked rice for us.*

(၃) ပြောသူဟာ "You" ဖြစ်နေရင်

Subject - အဖြစ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ we ကို you ပြောင်း
Object - အဖြစ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ us ကို you ပြောင်း
ပိုင်ဆိုင်မှုပြု - အဖြစ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ our ကို your ပြောင်းရေးပါ။

- ဥပမာ
1. (D.S) *You said, "We will try our best."*
(I.S) *You said you would try your best.*
 2. (D.S) *You said, "They will blame us."*
(I.S) *You said that they would blame you.*

(C) ပြောစကားစာရပ် You, Your, You စသည်တို့ပါလာရင်စော့၊ ပြောခံရသူကို ကြည့်ပြီး ပြောင်းရပါ။

(၁) ပြောခံရသူဟာ သူ့ကိုယ်သူ့ အချစ်လိုက်ဖြစ်နေရင်

Subject - အဖြစ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ you ကို he ပြောင်း
Object - အဖြစ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ you ကို him ပြောင်း
ပိုင်ဆိုင်မှုပြု - အဖြစ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ your ကို his ပြောင်း

- ဥပမာ
1. (D.S) *The teacher said to the boy, "You are clever."*
(I.S) *The teacher told the boy that he was clever.*
 2. (D.S) *U Saw said to U Su, "The girls see you."*
(I.S) *U Saw told U Su that the girls saw him.*
 3. (D.S) *Daw May said to Thura, "They like your book."*
(I.S) *Daw May told Thura that they liked his book.*
 4. (D.S) *Nwe Nwe said to him, "You and your brother are lazy."*
(I.S) *Nwe Nwe told him that he and his brother were lazy.*

(၂) ပြောခံရသူဟာ မိန်းမ အနည်းကိန်းဖြစ်နေရင်

| | | | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|------|-----|-----|---------|
| Subject | အဖြစ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ | you | ကို | she | ပြောင်း |
| Object | အဖြစ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ | you | ကို | her | ပြောင်း |
| ပိုင်ဆိုင်မှုပြ | အဖြစ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ | your | ကို | her | ပြောင်း |

- ဥပမာ**
- (D.S) U Aye said to Moe Moe, "You are pretty."
(I.S) U Aye told Moe Moe that she was pretty.
 - (D.S) U Win said to Htar Htar, "They hate you."
(I.S) U Win told Htar Htar that they hated her.
 - (D.S) U Than said to War War, "The boys see you and your brother."
(I.S) U Than told War War that the boys saw her and her brother.
 - (D.S) U Tun said to her, "You are curious."
(I.S) U Tun told her that she was curious.

(၃) ပြောခံရသူဟာ "me" ဖြစ်နေရင်

| | | | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|------|-----|----|---------|
| Subject | အဖြစ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ | you | ကို | I | ပြောင်း |
| Object | အဖြစ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ | you | ကို | me | ပြောင်း |
| ပိုင်ဆိုင်မှုပြ | အဖြစ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ | your | ကို | my | ပြောင်း |

- ဥပမာ**
- (D.S) Hay Mar said to me, "You are right."
(I.S) Hay Mar told me that I was right.
 - (D.S) Ko Tu said to me, "They put the blame on you."
(I.S) Ko Tu told me that they put the blame on me.
 - (D.S) Daisy said to me, "Ni Ni likes your book."
(I.S) Daisy told me that Ni Ni liked my book.

(၄) ပြောခံရသူဟာ "you" ဖြစ်နေရင်

| | | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|------|-----|-------------------------|
| Subject | အဖြစ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ | you | ကို | you |
| Object | အဖြစ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ | you | ကို | you |
| ပိုင်ဆိုင်မှုပြ | အဖြစ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ | your | ကို | your အတိုင်း ပြန်ရေးပါ။ |

- ဥပမာ**
- (D.S) Win Lwin said to you, "You are very patient."
(I.S) Win Lwin told you that you were very patient.
 - (D.S) Hnin Hnin said to you, "They will look after you."
(I.S) Hnin Hnin told you that they would look after you.

- (D.S) Wai Mar said to you "They will buy your house."
(I.S) Wai Mar told you that they would buy your house.

စည်းကမ်းချက် (၄)

ပြောစကား: Reported Speech အတွင်းမှာရှိတဲ့ ကြိယာတွေကို သင့်တော်သလို ပြောင်းပါ။

၉ ပြောကြိယာ Verb က Past Tense ဖြစ်နေရင်၊ ပြောစကားအတွင်းမှာရှိတဲ့ Verb တွေ အားလုံး ကိုလဲ (များသောအားဖြင့်) Past Tense ပုံစံ ပြောင်းပေးရပါတယ်။

| | | | |
|---------------------------------|-----|---------------------------------------|------------|
| - Present Simple | ကို | Past Simple | ပြောင်းပါ။ |
| - Present Continuous | ကို | Past Continuous | ပြောင်းပါ။ |
| - Present Perfect | ကို | Past Perfect | ပြောင်းပါ။ |
| - Past Continuous | ကို | Past Perfect Continuous | ပြောင်းပါ။ |
| - Past Simple | ကို | Past Perfect (or) Past Tense | ပြောင်းပါ။ |
| - Future Tense (shall and will) | ကို | Future in the Past (should and would) | ပြောင်းပါ။ |
| - Conditional | ကို | Perfect Conditional | ပြောင်းပါ။ |

- ဥပမာ**
- (D.S) He said, "I go to bed early."
(I.S) He said that he went to bed early.
 - (D.S) May Lwin said, "I am washing my face."
(I.S) May Lwin said that she was washing her face.
 - (D.S) Thiha said, "I have opened the door."
(I.S) Thiha said that he had opened the door.
 - (D.S) She said, "I bought a car."
(I.S) She said that she had bought a car.
 - (D.S) He said, "I will go to school."
(I.S) He said that he would go to school.
 - (D.S) He said, "I can speak English."
(I.S) He said that he could speak English.

- 7. (D.S) He said, "I may be able to go."
(I.S) He said that he might be able to go.
- 8. (D.S) He said, "If I tried hard, I would pass the examination."
(I.S) He said that if he had tried hard, he would have passed the examination.

ခြင်းချက် (၁)

ပြောကြိယာ Verb က Past Tense ဖြစ်နေပေမယ့် ပြောစကားအတွင်းက အကြောင်းအရာဟာ အမှန်တရား Universal Truth ဖြစ်နေရင်တော့ ... ပြောစကားထဲက ကြိယာကို Present Tense နဲ့ပဲ ရေးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
- 1. (D.S) He said, "The sun rises in the east."
(I.S) He said that the sun rises in the east.
 - 2. (D.S) He said, "Fire is hot."
(I.S) He said that fire is hot.
 - 3. (D.S) He said, "The sun is 92 million miles away."
(I.S) He said that the sun is 92 million miles away.

ခြင်းချက် (၂)

ပြောကြိယာ Verb က Past Tense ဖြစ်နေပေမယ့် ပြောစကားအတွင်းက အကြောင်းအရာဟာ ထပ်တလဲလဲ လုပ်လေ့လုပ်ထရှိတဲ့ (အကျင့်စရိုက်ကိုဖော်ပြတဲ့) အကြောင်းအရာ ဆိုရင်တော့ ပြောစကားအတွင်းက ကြိယာကို Present Tense နဲ့ပဲ ရေးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
- 1. (D.S) He said, "I get up at five o' clock every day."
(I.S) He said that he gets up at five o' clock every day.
 - 2. (D.S) He said, "I always drink coffee before I go to bed."
(I.S) He said that he always drinks coffee before he goes to bed.

- ပြောကြိယာ Verb က
- (1) Present Tense
 - (2) Present Continuous Tense
 - (3) Present Perfect Tense
 - (4) Future Tense တွေဖြစ်နေရင်တော့ ...

ပြောစကားအတွင်းမှာရှိတဲ့ ကြိယာ Verb ရဲ့ ကာလ Tense ကို မပြောင်းလဲဘဲ ပြန်ရေးနိုင်ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
- 1. (D.S) She says,
She is saying,
She has said,
She will say, } "My father is honest."
(I.S) She says
She is saying
She has said
She will say } that her father is honest.
 - 2. (D.S) She says, "I bought a new hat."
(I.S) She says that she bought a new hat.
 - 3. (D.S) She says, "I have read the newspaper."
(I.S) She says that she has read the newspaper.
 - 4. (D.S) She says, "I will tell the truth."
(I.S) She says that she will tell the truth.
 - 5. (D.S) He will say, "Failure teaches success."
(I.S) He will say that failure teaches success.
 - 6. (D.S) Our teacher has said, "If wishes were horses, beggars might ride."
(I.S) Our teacher has said that if wishes were horses, beggars might ride.
 - 7. (D.S) He will say, "Hope is the last thing that we lose."
(I.S) He will say that hope is the last thing that they lose.

Direct Speech တိုက်ရိုက်ပြောစကားအတွင်းမှာပါတဲ့ "နီးကပ်ခြင်း" ကို ဖော်ပြတဲ့ Adjective, Adverb တွေအစား "ဝေးကွာခြင်း" ကို ဖော်ပြတဲ့ Adjective, Adverb တွေအဖြစ် ပြောင်းပေးရပါတယ်။

- 1. this = ဤ (ကို) that = ထို ပြောင်းပါ။
- 2. these = ဤ...များ (ကို) those = ထို...များ
- 3. here = သည်မှာ (ကို) there = ဟိုမှာ
- 4. now = ယခု (ကို) then = ထိုအခါက
- 5. thus = ဤသို့ (ကို) so = ထိုသို့
- 6. ago = အထက်က/ (ကို) before = ရှေ့က/အလျင်/ လွန်ခဲ့သည့်အခါက မတိုင်မီက
- 7. today = ယနေ့ (ကို) that day = ထိုနေ့
- 8. tonight = ယနေ့ည (ကို) that night = ထိုနေ့ည
- 9. tomorrow = မနက်ဖြန် (ကို) the next day (or) the following day (or) the day after = နောက်နေ့
- 10. yesterday = မနေ့က (ကို) the day before = လွန်ခဲ့သောနေ့က (or) the previous day
- 11. the day before } (ကို) before } အလျင်(၂)ရက် မတိုင်မီက
yesterday } တဖြန်နေ့က
- 12. last night = လွန်ခဲ့တဲ့ညက (ကို) the night before (or) the previous night = အလျင်ညက
- 13. tomorrow (ကို) the next night (or) the following night = နောက်ည
- 14. last week = လွန်ခဲ့တဲ့ (ကို) the previous week } အလျင်သီတင်း: သီတင်းပတ် (or) the week before } ပတ်က
- 15. next week = လာမည့် (ကို) the following = နောက်သီတင်း:ပတ် သီတင်းပတ် week
- 16. next year = လာမည့်နှစ် (ကို) the following year = နောက်နှစ်
- 17. hither = ဤသို့ (ကို) thither = ထိုသို့
- 7. hence = ဤမှ (ကို) thence = ထိုမှ

- 1. (D.S) Ko Ko said, "I am busy **today**."
(I.S) Ko Ko said that he was busy **that day**.
- 2. (D.S) Nwe Nwe said, "I like **this** longyi."
(I.S) Nwe Nwe said that she liked **that** longyi.
- 3. (D.S) Mya Mya said, "**These** mangoes are ripe."
(I.S) Mya Mya said that **those** mangoes were ripe.
- 4. (D.S) War War said, "I will buy **this** book **tomorrow**."
(I.S) War War said that she would buy **that** book **the next day**.
- 5. (D.S) Win Win said, "I did my work **yesterday**."
(I.S) Win Win said that she had done her work **the day before**.

Exercise No. (144)

Change the following from Direct Speech to Indirect Speech.

- 1. The girl said, "I am in the tenth standard."
- 2. The boy said, "I am only ten years old."
- 3. Mi Mi said to Ko Ko, "I will refuse your offer."
- 4. Soe Thu said to Thida, "I love you more than I can say."
- 5. Thida said to Soe Thu, "I don't believe you."
- 6. The woman said to her husband, "The telephone is out of order."
- 7. Sandar said to Thuzar, "I have often told you not to tell lies."
- 8. Kyaw Kyaw said to Maw Maw, "I want you to pass the examination."
- 9. Wai Mar said to Naing Win, "I have read this book?"
- 10. Kyaw Swa said to Thanda, "You can have my book if you like."
- 11. Yu Yu said, "I hate you, Ko Kyaw."
- 12. Ma Ei said, "You are a liar, Ko Naing."
- 13. Myo Myint said, "I will write a letter to you tomorrow, Nyo Nyo."
- 14. Tun Tun said, "You must tell me the truth, Kyi Kyi."
- 15. Swe Swe said, "Our father tells us a strange story, Ko Win."
- 16. The teacher said, "Shwe Zin, you should do your homework."
- 17. Lwin Lwin said, "Ko Moe, I will show you my photograph."
- 18. Mon Yi Win said, "Phyo Win, this interesting book is for you."

19. "I'll come to bed when I finish these letters," said U Tin Win.
20. "Mary, you are very talkative," said Mr. Brown.
21. "Ma Su, I can't help you as I am busy now," said U Htay.
22. "Kyaw Min, Your mother is kind to you," said U Pe Tin.
23. "I shall go home tomorrow," said Daw Win to her son.
24. "This is the key I lost," said Aung Lwin.
25. The teacher taught us two years ago, "The earth is round."
26. U Khin said, "I always go to bed at nine o' clock every day."
27. Win Lwin said, "My father always goes to the Shwedagon Pagoda every Friday."
28. He said, "Blood is thicker than water."
29. He said, "Fire is a good servant but a bad master."
30. Our grandfather said, "Lost time is never found."

Exercise No. (145)

Put the following into Indirect Speech.

1. Khin Hnin says, "One Today is worth two Tomorrows."
2. Wai Wai says, "I don't know what time it is."
3. Kay Thwe has said, "I get up before five o' clock every day."
4. Nyunt Nyunt says to Ne Win, "My watch is fast and your watch is slow."
5. Win Win says to Nyunt Nyunt, "Your watch is correct and so is mine."
6. Moe Moe says, "I will go with my brother."
7. "This is not what I mean," says Htar Htar.
8. "I don't know what you mean," says War War to Htar Htar.
9. Tun Myint says, "A thief was caught last night."
10. Thiha will say, "Liars are always ready to take an oath."
11. Aye Tun says, "He lent me some money."
12. Toe Myint says, "He passed the examination last year."
13. "I was born in a little town," says Kyaw Hein.
14. "I am going home now," says Mi Mi.
15. "I went to bed at eleven o' clock last night," says Ko Win.
16. "I have finished my lessons," says Htay Htay.
17. "I thought Moe Kyaw was the best boy in the class," says Thuzar to her friends.

18. "I can see this clearly," says San Maung.
19. "I hear quite well what you say, Soe Soe," says Zaw Zaw.
20. "I was going to school when it rained," says the little boy.
21. Ko Myo says, "My watch is broken."
22. "One of our books has been stolen," says Ko Tu.
23. All my friends come to me and say, "We have come to greet you."
24. After thinking carefully, our father says, "Misfortune proves our friends although wealth makes."
25. Nodding the head, our mother says, "I agree."

(B) REPORTED SPEECH (QUESTIONS)

QUESTION မေးခွန်းဝါကျများကို INDIRECT SPEECH သို့ပြောင်းနည်း

Question မေးခွန်းဝါကျတွေကို Direct Speech ကနေ Indirect Speech ကို ပြောင်းတော့မယ်ဆိုရင်

- ၁။ say, said စတဲ့ ပြောကြိယာတွေကို ask, asked စသဖြင့် (Tense) ကာလကို ကြည့်ပြီး သင့်သလို ပြောင်းပေးရပါတယ်။
မေးမြန်းတဲ့ စကားရဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်ကိုလိုက်ပြီး inquire (enquire), wonder, want to know, ... စတဲ့ ပြောကြိယာတွေကိုလဲ သုံးနိုင်ပါတယ်။
- ၂။ Yes, No နဲ့ ဖြေလိုရတဲ့ (V/be, V/do, V/have) (Helping Verb) တွေနဲ့ မေးတဲ့ မေးခွန်းဝါကျ (မြန်မာဘာသာပြန်ရင် "သိသလား၊ စားသလား" စတဲ့ 'လား' နဲ့ အဆုံးသတ်တဲ့ မေးခွန်းဝါကျတွေ) ဆိုရင် , " " ဖြတ်ပြီး၊ if (သို့မဟုတ်) whether ထည့်ပေးပါ။
ပြောစကားအတွင်းမှာ (or not) ပါနေရင် whether နဲ့ ဆက်သင့်ပါတယ်။ (or not) မပါရင် တော့ if နဲ့ whether သင့်ရာနဲ့ ဆက်နိုင်ပါတယ်။
- ၃။ Where, When, How, Why, Who, What စတဲ့ အမေးစကားလုံးတွေနဲ့မေးတဲ့ မေးခွန်း ဝါကျ (မြန်မာဘာသာပြန်ရင် "ဘာလုပ်တာလဲ၊ ဘယ်သွားတာလဲ" စသည်ဖြင့် 'လဲ' နဲ့ အဆုံးသတ် တဲ့ မေးခွန်းဝါကျ) တွေဆိုရင် , " " ဖြတ်ပြီး၊ where, when စတဲ့ အမေးစကားလုံးတွေ ထည့်ပေးပါ။
- ၄။ ပြောစကားအတွင်းမှာရှိတဲ့ ဝါကျတွေကို မေးခွန်းဝါကျကနေပြီး ရိုးရိုးဝါကျ (statement) အဖြစ် ပြောင်းပေးရပါတယ်။
- ၅။ နာမ်စားပြောင်းတာ၊ ကြိယာပြောင်းတာ၊ စကားလုံးပြောင်းတာစတဲ့ ကျွန်တော့်တွေကိုတော့ (state- ment) ရိုးရိုးဝါကျတွေတုန်းက ပြောင်းခဲ့တဲ့ အတိုင်းပဲပြောင်းရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. (D.S) Phyu Phyu said to Ni Ni, "Are you happy?"
(I.S) Phyu Phyu asked Ni Ni if she was happy.
 2. (D.S) Yi Yi said to Kyi Kyi, "Will you come tomorrow?"
(I.S) Yi Yi asked Kyi Kyi if she would come the next day.
 3. (D.S) U Pu said to Daw Yu, "Have you bought this book?"
(I.S) U Pu asked Daw Yu if she had bought that book.
 4. (D.S) Daw Kyi said to Than Than, "Do you like tea?"
(I.S) Daw Kyi asked Than Than if she liked tea.

5. (D.S) Theingi said to Kyaw Thu, "Will you follow me or not?"
(I.S) Theingyi asked Kyaw Thu whether he would follow her or not.
6. (D.S) He said to me, "Who are you?"
(I.S) He asked me who I was.
7. (D.S) She said to Ni Ni, "Where have you hidden the book?"
(I.S) She asked Ni Ni where he had hidden the book.
8. (D.S) Thet Thet said to Ko Nwe, "When will you come to me?"
(I.S) Thet Thet asked Ko Nwe when he would come to her.
9. (D.S) U Aung asked to Nilar, "Why do you read this book?"
(I.S) U Aung asked Nilar why she read that book.
10. (D.S) U Tun said to Daw Htay, "What are you doing?"
(I.S) U Tun asked Daw Htay what she was doing.

"WHETHER" AND "IF"

- ၁။ မေးချင်တဲ့ အကြောင်းအရာ၊ အဓိပ္ပာယ်ကွဲပြားမှုဟာ သိပ်လဲ အရေးမကြီးဘူးဆိုရင် if နဲ့ whether ကြိုက်ရာကိုသုံးပြီး ရေးနိုင်ပါတယ်။ (များသောအားဖြင့်ကတော့ if ကို သုံးကြပါတယ်။)
ဥပမာ He asked if (whether) I had seen the film.
ခုဝင်ရင်ကို ကျွန်တော်ကြည့်ပြီးပြီလားလို့ သူကမေးခဲ့တယ်။
- ၂။ တစ်ခုမဟုတ်တစ်ခု ရွေးချယ်ခွင့်သဘောရှိတဲ့ဝါကျ၊ ဒါမှမဟုတ် ဒွိဟသံသယသဘောဆောင်တဲ့ ဝါကျတွေဆိုရင်တော့ whether ကိုပဲ သုံးရပါတယ်။ များသောအားဖြင့် "or" နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ပြီး ရေးသားရပါတယ်။
ဥပမာ I don't know whether I should go away or stay here.
ထွက်ပဲသွားရမလား၊ သို့တည်းမဟုတ် ဒီမှာပဲဆက်နေရမလားဆိုတာ ကျွန်တော်မသိဘူးဗျာ။
He asked me whether I would rather have tea or coffee for breakfast.
နံနက်စာအတွက် လက်ဖက်ရည်နဲ့ ကော်ဖီ ဘယ်ဟာကို မင်းသောက်မှာလဲ လို့ သူကကျွန်တော့်ကို မေးတယ်။

၃။ or not ပါရင် whether နဲ့ပဲ တွဲဖက်ပြီး သုံးလေ့ရှိပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ I don't know *whether* it is raining or not.
မိုးရွာမယ်၊ မရွာဘူးဆိုတာကျွန်တော်မသိဘူး။
Ask him *whether* he's coming on Friday or not.
သောကြာနေ့ကျရင် လာမှာလား၊ မလာဘူးလားလို့ သူ့ကိုမေးလိုက်ပါ။

၄။ အောက်မှာဖော်ပြထားတဲ့ နေရာတွေမှာတော့ "if" ကို မသုံးရပါဘူး၊ whether ကိုပဲ သုံးရပါတယ်။

(က) ပမာစုဝါကျရိုင်း (Main clause) ကို Whether နဲ့စပြီး ရေးသားထားရင်

ဥပမာ *Whether* it is true or not, I cannot say.
ဒီကိစ္စ မှန်မယ်၊ မမှန်ဘူးဆိုတာ ကျွန်တော်မပြောနိုင်ဘူးဗျာ။

(ခ) (Infinitive) to ပါတဲ့ ကြိယာရဲ့ရှေ့ကထားပြီး သုံးမယ်ဆိုရင်

ဥပမာ She hasn't decided *whether* to sail or fly to England.
အင်္ဂလန်ကို ရေကြောင်းခရီးနဲ့ သွားရမလား၊ လေကြောင်းခရီးနဲ့ သွားရမလား သူ(မ) ဆုံးဖြတ်လို့ မပြီးသေးဘူး။



သတိပြုရန်

မေးခွန်းဝါကျတွေကို (Direct Speech က Indirect Speech) ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါ ပြောစကားအတွင်းမှာရှိတဲ့ (Question) မေးခွန်းဝါကျကို ရိုးရိုးဝါကျ (Statement) အဖြစ် ပြောင်းတတ်ဖို့ လိုပါတယ်။



မေးခွန်းဝါကျတွေကိုရိုးရိုးဝါကျတွေအဖြစ်ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါ

(A) Verb to be, Verb to have, Helping Verb တွေ့ မေးထားတဲ့ ဝါကျတွေဆိုရင် Subject နဲ့ Verb ကို ရှေ့နဲ့နောက် ပြောင်းပေးလိုက်ရုံနဲ့ ရိုးရိုးဝါကျ (Statement) ဖြစ်သွားပါတယ်။ (?) မေးခွန်း အမှတ်အသားကိုတော့ ဖြတ်ပစ်ရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. *Is he a clever boy?* (Question)
He is a clever boy. (Statement)
 2. *Are they doing the homework?* (Question)
They are doing the homework. (Statement)
 3. *Has she opened the window?* (Question)
She has opened the window. (Statement)
 4. *Have the boys played football?* (Question)
The boys have played football. (Statement)
 5. *Will the girl follow him?* (Question)
The girl will follow him. (Statement)
 6. *Can she play the piano?* (Question)
She can play the piano. (Statement)

(B) Verb to do တွေ့ မေးထားတဲ့ ဝါကျတွေဆိုရင်တော့ Do, Does, Did တွေကို ဖြတ်ပစ်မယ်။ (?) မေးခွန်း အမှတ်အသားကိုလဲ ဖြတ်ပစ်မယ်ဆိုရင် ရိုးရိုးဝါကျ (Statement) ဖြစ်သွားပါတယ်။

- Does ကို ဖြတ်ပစ်ရင် ကြိယာမှာ s, es ထည့်ပေးပါ။
- Did ကို ဖြတ်ရင် Past Tense ပြောင်းပေးပါ။
- Do ကို ဖြတ်ရင် ပြောင်းဖို့မလိုပါ။

- ဥပမာ
1. *Does she like tea?* (Question)
She likes tea. (Statement)
 2. *Does the girl write this letter?* (Question)
The girl writes this letter. (Statement)
 3. *Did they live in Mandalay?* (Question)
They lived in Mandalay. (Statement)
 4. *Do the children like sweets?* (Question)
The children like sweets. (Statement)



Exercise No. (146)

Trun into the Indirect form.

1. U Su said to his son, "Are you living in another house now?"
2. Daw Nu said to her daughter, "Are you working hard enough for your examination?"
3. Tun Zaw said to Thida, "Are you ready to come with me?"

4. Thiha said, "Are you interested in English, Nilar?"
5. "Are you waiting for the bus?" said Moe Moe to War War.
6. Aye Aye said to Nyo Nyo, "Will you go to the pagoda with your mother?"
7. Than Than said to Zaw Zaw, "Will you be here soon?"
8. Ko Gyi said to Ko Lay, "Can you repair my watch?"
9. Aung Aung said to Thanda, "Will you write a few sentences tomorrow?"
10. The patient said to the doctor, "Must I take some medicine tomorrow?"
11. The officer said to Tint Tint, "Have you known how to use the type writer?"
12. Khin Pa Pa said to Yan Aung, "Have you ever ridden in a bullock cart?"
13. Hay Mar said to Ne Win, "Have you visited [Pyin-Oo-Lwin many times?"
14. "Have you completed writing your exercise?" said Ma Khaing to Hlaing Hlaing.
15. Mary said, "Have you washed the clothes, Daisy?"
16. John said, "Do you like tea, Mary?"
17. Ohn Mar said, "Did you come to me yesterday, Soe Thu?"
18. Myo Chit said to Khin Khin, "Do you understand what I say?"
19. U Kyaw said to Ma Win, "Do you lend your friend much money?"
20. He said to his friends, "Do you think we shall be in time if we run?"
21. Zin Mar said to Ma Cho, "Did you go to school yesterday?"
22. She said to Win Maung, "Can you stay for a few minutes here?"
23. "Shall I see you here tomorrow?" said Ko Kyin to Nwe Nwe.
24. Yin Yin said to Mi Mi, "Have you ever heard of the poet Tin Moe?"
25. Sandar said to Kyaw Min, "Is it true that you are getting married?"

●

Exercise No. (147)

Turn the following Question into the Indirect form.

1. Helen said, "What do you want, Dolly?"
2. Richard said, "When have you finished your homework, Margarette?"

3. Sandar said to Thandar, "Where do you live?"
4. Ma Wai said, "Why do you take him to your house, Ko Latt?"
5. The teacher said to his pupil, "Why have you made the same mistake again?"
6. Mar Mar said, "Ko Zaw, why do you leave me alone?"
7. Win Win said to Zaw Zaw, "Where did you sleep last night?"
8. Moe Zaw said to Thida, "How do you know that he is a doctor?"
9. The teacher said to me, "What are you going to do when you leave school?"
10. Nandar said to Wai Wai, "Why do you think you can solve this problem?"
11. "When will you get back from Mandalay?" said Han Tun to his sister.
12. She said to me, "Where are you going?"
13. He said to me, "How will you go to school tomorrow?"
14. Kay Thi said to Win Mar, "Which book are you taking?"
15. Swe Swe said, "How did you do that, Thet Thet?"
16. Tin Win said, "Why was the train very full, Chit Swe?"
17. Chit Swe said to Kyaw Tun, "Have you ever been to Ngapali?"
18. The man said to me, "When were you born?"
19. Win Aung said to Yi Yi, "How much do you pay for this longyi?"
20. Mi Mi said to Thant Thant, "When will you come again?"
21. "Where were you last night, Mg Ni?" said the police.
22. "What is the matter?" said Tom.
23. "Which is the nearest way to the station?" Tun Tun said.
24. "Why didn't you get up earlier?" said Win Lwin to his sister.
25. Nilar said to me, "How do you know someone is coming?"
26. The children said to Daw Lay, "How have you cooked the dinner?"
27. The teacher said to her pupils, "How will you study your lessons?"
28. The boy said to his friend, "How are you today?"
29. "When are you leaving for Mandalay?" said Wai Mar to Kyaw Kyaw.
30. Hay Mar said, "How long does it take to get to Mandalay, Kyaw Kyaw?"

(C) REPORTED SPEECH (IMPERATIVE)

IMPERATIVE အမိန့်ပေး၊ စတောင်းပန်၊ စေခိုင်း၊ ပါတျာများကို
INDIRECT SPEECH သို့ ပြောင်းဆိုရန်

အမိန့်ပေးတဲ့ဝါကျ၊ ပန်ကြားတဲ့ဝါကျ၊ တောင်းပန်တဲ့ဝါကျ၊ စေခိုင်းတဲ့ဝါကျတွေကို Direct Speech ကနေ Indirect Speech သို့ပြောင်းမယ်ဆိုရင်

- ၁။ say, said စတဲ့ ပြောကြိယာတွေအစား
 - တောင်းပန်၊ ပန်ကြားတဲ့ ဝါကျတွေဆိုရင် beg, request
 - အမိန့်ပေး၊ စေခိုင်းတဲ့ ဝါကျတွေဆိုရင် order, command
 - အကြံပေးရင် advise ၊ တိုက်တွန်းရင် urge စသည်ဖြင့် သင့်တော်သလို ပြောင်းပေးရပါတယ်။
 - Please ပါလာရင်တော့ (Please ကိုဖြုတ်ပြီး) beg (သို့) request ကို သုံးရပါတယ်။
 - ဘာမှန်း မသေချာရင်တော့ tell (သို့) told ကို သုံးနိုင်ပါတယ်။
- ၂။ “ ” ဖြုတ်ပြီး
ပြုလုပ်ရန်ပေးတဲ့ အမိန့်၊ စေခိုင်းမှု၊ ပန်ကြားမှု၊ တောင်းပန်မှု ဆိုရင် to ထည့်ပေးပြီး ပြောစကားကို ပြန်ရေးရပါတယ်။
မပြုလုပ်ရန် ပေးတဲ့ အမိန့်၊ စေခိုင်းမှု၊ ပန်ကြားမှု၊ တောင်းပန်မှု ဆိုရင် “not to” ထည့်ပေးပြီး ပြောစကား ကို ပြန်ရေးရပါတယ်။
- ၃။ “to”, “not to” တို့ရဲ့ဇရာကံက အမြဲတမ်း s,es မပါဘဲ Present Tense ကြိယာ (အများကိန်း) လိုက်ရပါတယ်။
- ၄။ နာမ်စားပြောင်းတာ၊ စကားလုံးပြောင်းတာတွေကတော့ (Statement) တုန်းက ပြောင်းခဲ့တဲ့ အတိုင်းပဲ ပြောင်းရပါတယ်။
- ၅။ Direct Speech မှာ အပြောခံရသူ မပါရင်၊ အပြောခံရသူကို (သင့်တော်သလို) ထည့်ပေးရပါတယ်။ များသောအားဖြင့်တော့ me ကို ထည့်ပေးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. (D.S) U Pu said to his son, “Open the window.”
(I.S) U Pu ordered his son to open the window.
 2. (D.S) The teacher said, “Study your lessons, Ni Ni.”
(I.S) The teacher ordered Ni Ni to study her lessons.
 3. (D.S) The captain said to his soldiers, “Fire.”
(I.S) The captain ordered his soldiers to fire.
 4. (D.S) Win Win said to her friend, “Please shut the door.”
(I.S) Win Win requested her friend to shut the door.

5. (D.S) The old man said to me, “Please give me old clothes.”
(I.S) The old man begged me to give him old clothes.
6. (D.S) Our teacher said, “Speak the truth and shame the devil.”
(I.S) Our teacher advised us to speak the truth and shame the devil.
7. (D.S) The teacher said to her pupils, “Do your home-work regularly.”
(I.S) The teacher urged her pupils to do their homework regularly.
8. (D.S) Father said to his son, “Don't look out of the window.”
(I.S) Father ordered his son not to look out of the window.
9. (D.S) She said, “Don't make fun of me.”
(I.S) She requested me (him/her ... etc) not to make fun of her.
10. (D.S) The old man said, “Don't put the blame on me, sons.”
(I.S) The old man requested his sons not to put the blame on him.

Exercise No. (148)

Put the following imperatives into Indirect Speech.

1. He said to her, “Wash your face, please.”
2. The teacher said, “Close your book.”
3. Mr. Brown said, “Come in and sit down.”
4. “Open your book and read, please,” said the patient to the nurse.
5. The doctor said to the visitors, “Don't sit on the bed.”
6. The teacher said, “Don't talk in the class.”
7. Daw Nu said to her pupil, “Write this exercise out carefully.”
8. Thein Zaw said to Aye Aye Myint, “Open the box for me, please.”
9. Maung Maung said, “Please sing at our party, Hay Mar.”
10. The examiner said, “Write your name at the top of your paper and answer six questions.”

11. The officer said to the soldier, "Release the prisoners."
12. The teacher said to me, "Think carefully before you answer."
13. Our father said to me, "Never tell a lie."
14. The old man said to his daughter, "Take care of the pence and the pounds will take care of themselves."
15. "Do not speak evil of others," U Sein said to his daughter.
16. Mother said to her son, "Trust in God and do the right."
17. The eldest brother said to his sister, "Do not run to meet misfortune."
18. The teacher said to his pupils, "Obey me at once, and do not ask questions."
19. "Go to bed and don't get up till you are called", said mother to her son.
20. U Sein said to his daughter, "Do what you like, but do not blame me if you find that you have done wrong."

(D) REPORTED SPEECH (OPTATIVE)

**OPTATIVE ဆုံးဖြတ် ဖော်ပြသော ဝါကျများကို
INDIRECT SPEECH သို့ ပြောင်းနည်း**

- ဆန္ဒကို ဖော်ပြတဲ့ဝါကျ ကျန်းမာပါစေ၊ ကိုယ်စိတ်နှစ်ဖြာ ကျန်းမာချမ်းသာပါစေ၊ ပျော်ရွှင်နိုင်ပါစေ စသဖြင့် မိမိရဲ့ စိတ်ဆန္ဒကို ဖော်ပြတဲ့ဝါကျတွေဆိုရင်
- ၁။ say, said အစား pray, wish သင့်တော်ရာ တစ်လုံးလုံးနဲ့ ရေးပါ။
 - ၂။ , " " ဖြတ်ပြီး that ထည့်ပေးပါ။
 - ၃။ ပြောစကားအတွင်းမှာရှိတဲ့ ဝါကျတွေကို ရိုးရိုးဝါကျ (statement) အဖြစ်ပြောင်းပေးပါ။
 - ၄။ မှန်စားပြောင်းတာ၊ ကြိယာပြောင်းတာ၊ စကားလုံးပြောင်းတာစတဲ့ ကျွန်တော့်တွေကိုတော့ (statement) တုန်းက ပြောင်းခဲ့တဲ့ ပုံစံအတိုင်းပဲ ပြောင်းရပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ 1. (D.S) She said, "May God bless you!"
 ဘုရားသခင်သည် သင့်အား ကောင်းချီးပေးပါစေသော...လို့ သူမက ကျွန်တော်ကို ပြောတယ်။
 (I.S) She prayed that God might bless me.

2. (D.S) He said, "May you be rich!"
(I.S) He wished (prayed) that I might be rich.
3. (D.S) We said to U Lay Myint, "May you have a child!"
(I.S) We prayed (wished) U Lay May that he might have a child.

(E) REPORTED SPEECH (EXCLAMATION)

**EXCLAMATION အာမေဒိုတ်ဝါကျများကို
INDIRECT SPEECH သို့ပြောင်းနည်း**

Exclamation (အာမေဒိုတ်)၊ အံ့ဩလို့ ပြောဆိုတဲ့ ဝါကျတွေကို Direct Speech ကနေ Indirect Speech သို့ ပြောင်းတော့မယ်ဆိုရင်

- ၁။ Oh!, Ugh!, Oh dear! စတဲ့ (Exclamatory words) အာမေဒိုတ် စကားလုံးတွေ၊ How, What စတဲ့ အာမေဒိုတ်ဝါကျရဲ့အစ စကားလုံးတွေကို ဖြတ်ပစ်ရပါမယ်။
- ၂။ say, said စတဲ့ ပြောကြိယာကို exclaim, exclaimed, remark, remarked စသဖြင့် ကာလ (Tense) ကို ကြည့်ပြီး သင့်သလို ပြောင်းပေးရပါတယ်။
ပြောစကားအတွင်းမှာရှိတဲ့ အကြောင်းအရာပေါ်မူတည်ပြီး call, call to, cry, cry out, shout, greet, ask, tell စသည်ဖြင့်လဲ ပြောင်းပေးနိုင်ပါတယ်။ (Tense ကိုတော့ သတိပြုရပါမယ်)
- ၃။ , " " ဖြတ်ပြီး that ထည့်ပေးပါ။
- ၄။ ပြောစကားအတွင်းမှာရှိတဲ့ အာမေဒိုတ်ဝါကျကို ရိုးရိုးဝါကျ (statement) အဖြစ် ပြောင်းလဲပေးရပါတယ်။
- ၅။ အာမေဒိုတ်စကားမှာ တစ်ခါတစ်လေ Verb မပါဘဲ ရှိတတ်ပါတယ်။ Verb မပါရင် မိမိသင့်တော်မယ်ထင်တဲ့ Verb တစ်လုံးလုံးကို ထည့်ပေးရပါတယ်။
- ၆။ What တို့ How တို့ပါရင် ဖြတ်ပစ်ပါ။ (Adjective) ရဲ့ ရှေ့ကနေပြီး very, great စသည်တို့ကို ထည့်ပေးပါ။
- ၇။ အာမေဒိုတ်ဝါကျအတွင်းက ပြောစကားဟာ ဝမ်းသာလို့လား၊ ဝမ်းနည်းလို့လား၊ အံ့ဩလွန်းလို့လား စသည်ဖြင့် အဓိပ္ပာယ်ဆိုလိုချက်ကို သဘောပေါက်အောင်ဖတ်ပြီး (Surprisingly, with great pity, sorrowfully, scornfully, bitterly, etc ...) စတဲ့ သင့်တော်တဲ့ ကြိယာပုံစံသေသန တွေကို ထည့်ပေးသင့်ရင် ထည့်ပေးရပါတယ်။
 ၁) ကြောင့်မို့ အာမေဒိုတ် စကားလုံးတွေရဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ် ဆိုလိုချက်ကို အရင်ဆုံး လေ့လာထားဖို့လိုပါတယ်။

They are not properly words; they are really sounds or noise that people make when they are excited, to express strong feelings.

A SIMPLE COURSE OF GRAMMAR AND COMPOSITION (PAGE. 74)

အာမေဋိတ် စကားလုံးများ၏ အဓိပ္ပာယ်

- (A) အံ့အားသင့်လို့ ရေရွတ်ပြောဆိုတဲ့ အာမေဋိတ် စကားလုံးတွေကတော့
 - O God!, My God!, Good God!, Good Heavens!
 - Wonderful!, Marvellous!
 - Goodness me!
 - Goodness gracious!
 - O-ho! = an exclamation of surprise of triumph.
- (B) စက်ဆုပ်ရွံရှာတဲ့အခါ၊ ရှံ့ချတဲ့အခါ သုံးတဲ့အာမေဋိတ်ကတော့
 - Ugh! = an expression of disgust
 - Fie! = for shame (မသတိစရာ၊ ရှက်စရာ)
- (C) ဝမ်းနည်းတဲ့အခါ၊ သောကရောက်တဲ့အခါ
 - Alas! = a cry of sorrow or anxiety
 - Oh, dear!, Dear me!, Dear, dear! = an expression of sorrow, impatience, wonder, etc.
 - Heigh ho! = weariness
- (D) ဝတ်ပြုချီးကျူး၊ အားပေး၊ ကျေနပ်၊ ကောင်းချီးပေးတဲ့အခါ
 - Bravo!, Bravos!, Bravoes! = a cry meaning Well done!, Excellent!
 - Well done!, Excellent! = cries giving praise.
 - Hurrah! = a shout of cry expressing joy, welcome, applause, etc.
 - Hip, hip, hurrah!
 - Hurray!
 - A-ha! = a sound showing triumph, satisfaction, etc.
 - Hooray!
 - Ha! Ha! = amusement
- (E) နှုတ်ခွန်းဆက်တဲ့သဘော၊ အာရုံပြုစေချင်တဲ့သဘော၊ တအံ့တဩ ပြောဆိုတဲ့ သဘောနဲ့ ပြောတဲ့အခါ
 - Hello!, Hallo!, Hullo! = a cry made to attract attention, or expressing surprise or as a greeting.

- Hey! = Use to call attention or to express joy, surprise, wonder or interrogation.
- bye - bye!
- Good - bye! = farewell (short form of "God be with you!")
သွားခါနီး နှုတ်ဆက်စကား
: I must say good-bye = (it is time for me to leave)
- (F) ဒေါသတကြီး ဖြစ်တဲ့အခါ စိတ်မှာ အနှောင့်အယှက်ဖြစ်တဲ့အခါ
 - Hell! = used in exclamations expressing anger, annoyance, or surprise.
 - Go to hell!
 - Damn! Damn it all! Damn you! = used, to express anger, disappointment or annoyance.
 - Be-gone = Go away!
- (G) ပြောတဲ့လေသံအတိုအရှည်၊ အတန်အမာ၊ အပျော့အပြောင်းပေါ်မူတည်ပြီး အဓိပ္ပာယ်ကောက်ရတဲ့ အာမေဋိတ်စကားလုံးတွေ
 - Ah! = a sound showing sorrow, surprise, pity, pleasure etc. (According to the tone of the voice.)
 - O, Oh! = an exclamation of surprise, fear, pain, etc.
 - Oh, dear!, Oh, yes!, Oh, no!
- (H) အခြားစကားလုံးများ
 - Look out! = Be careful! သတိထား
 - Goodness knows! = I don't know
 - God only knows! = no one knows
 - Fie upon you! = You ought to be ashamed
 - Okay!, O.K! = (Slang for) all right, correct, I agree
 - Aye (e)! = yes
 - Tut, Tut! = an exclamation of contempt, impatience and annoyance.
 - Hush! = Be silent (a warning to be quiet or to listen)
 - Hum! Hum! Hem! = doubt

စိတ်ထဲမှာ အံ့ဩလို့၊ ခံပြင်းလို့၊ ဒေါသထွက်လို့၊ ရွံလို့၊ ဝမ်းသာလို့၊ ဝမ်းနည်းလို့ ပြောဆိုတဲ့ အာမေဒိုတ်စကား exclamation တွေဆိုတော့ အဆင်သင့်သလို ပြောင်းပေးရပါတယ်။ တစ်မျိုးတည်း ပြောင်းရမယ်လို့ ပုံသေမမှတ်ရပါဘူး။ အဓိပ္ပာယ်သာ ရှိမယ်ဆိုရင် ကိုယ့်သဘောနဲ့ကိုယ် ရေးချင်သလို ရေးလို့ရပါတယ်။ ပြီးတော့ အာမေဒိုတ်ဝါကျတွေကို Indirect Speech နဲ့ သုံးခဲပါတယ်။ ဒါကြောင့် အချို့ကုန် သိပ်မခဲစေချင်ပါဘူး။ သဘောပေါက်အောင်သာ လေ့လာသင့်ပါတယ်။

Exclamations are not often reported in spoken English, so too much time should not be wasted in hunting for the best expression. The other forms of Reported Speech are all far more important.
Some exclamatory forms are really questions (rhetorical) or imperative.
LIVING ENGLISH STRUCTURE (PAGE. 270)

ကဲ .. အောက်က နမူနာလေးတွေကို လေ့လာကြည့်ပါ။

1. (D.S) The old man said, "Alas!"
(I. S) The old man uttered a cry of sorrow.
 2. (D.S) They said, "Hurrah! Hurrah!"
(I. S) They shouted for joy.
 3. (D.S) The old woman said, "Thief! Thief!"
(I. S) The old woman shouted that there was a thief.
- (အာမေဒိုတ်စကားမှာ ကြိယာမပါတဲ့အတွက် သင့်တော်ရာကြိယာ ထည့်ပေးထားတာကို သတိပြုပါ။)
4. (D.S) The little girl said, "Help! Help!"
(I. S) The little girl called for help. (or)
The little girl shouted to help her.
 5. (D.S) "Help me! Help! Quick!" she said.
(I. S) She called loudly and urgently for help.
 6. (D.S) The teacher said, "Be quiet!"
(I. S) The teacher shouted them to be quiet.
 7. (D.S) The patient said, "Do be quiet!"
(I. S) The patient begged them to be quiet.

8. (D.S) "Hello! What do you want?" he said.
(I. S) He greeted and asked (me) what I wanted.
9. (D.S) "Hello! Where are you going?" he said.
(I. S) He greeted and asked (me) where I was going.
10. (D.S) He said to her, "Hello! Where are you off to?"
(I. S) He greeted and asked her where she was off to. (OR)
He called out in surprise and asked where she was off to.
11. (D.S) He said to me, "Look out! There's a car coming."
(I. S) He warned me with a cry that a car was coming. (OR)
He cried out loudly and urgently that a car was coming.
12. (D.S) He said, "My God! I am ruined!"
(I. S) He exclaimed sadly that he was ruined.
13. (D.S) She said, "Oh! I've cut myself!"
(I. S) She exclaimed that she had cut herself.
14. (D.S) He said, "Alas! I am undone!"
(I. S) He exclaimed sadly that he was undone.
15. (D.S) He said, "Alas! Our foes are too strong!"
(I. S) He exclaimed sadly that their foes were too strong.
16. (D.S) The girl said, "Oh! I've burned myself!"
(I. S) The girl cried out that she had burned herself.
17. (D.S) "Good gracious! It's impossible." he said.
(I. S) He exclaimed loudly that it was impossible.
18. (D.S) She said, "Oh, dear! I have torn my longyi."
(I. S) She gave an exclamation of annoyance because she had torn her longyi. (OR)
She exclaimed sorrowfully that she had torn her longyi.
19. (D.S) "Oh dear! I have lost my book!" said the girl.
(I. S) The girl exclaimed bitterly that she had lost her book.
(OR) She sighed and said that she had lost her book.
20. (D.S) They said, "The house is on fire!"
(I. S) They shouted that the house was on fire.

21. (D.S) "Tut! Tut! you are a naughty girl!" he said.
(I. S) He remarked with annoyance that she was a naughty girl.
He reproved her gently, telling her what a naughty girl she was.
22. (D.S) She said, "Ugh! How I hate touching sticky things."
(I. S) She cried with disgust that she hated touching sticky things.
23. (D.S) He said, "Bravo! You have done well!"
(I. S) He applauded him, saying that he had done well.
24. (D.S) "Hooray! We're going to have a holiday tomorrow!" they said.
(I. S) They shouted with delight because they were going to have a holiday the next day.
25. (D.S) He said, "For goodness' sake, stop this loud noise!"
(I. S) He shouted angrily to them to stop that loud noise.
26. (D.S) Sandar said, "What a beautiful longyi!" (it is မြင့်ထားလေ့ရှိသည်)
(I.S) Sandar remarked that it was a very beautiful longyi.
27. (D.S) "What a stupid fellow you are!" he angrily remarked.
(I. S) He angrily remarked that I (he/she) was a very stupid fellow.
28. (D.S) He said, "What a good book (it is)!"
(I. S) He remarked that it was a very good-book.
29. (D.S) He said "What a fool I have been!"
(I. S) He exclaimed with sorrow that he had been a fool.
30. (D.S) He said to the girl, "What a lovely face you have!"
(I. S) He remarked with admiration that the girl had a very lovely face. (OR)
He told the girl with admiration what a lovely face she had.
31. (D.S) He said, "What a pity you did not pass the examination!"
(I. S) He remarked that it was a great pity that I had not passed the examination.

32. (D.S) He said, "What a terrible noise!"
(I. S) He remarked angrily that the noise was very terrible.
(OR) He protested strongly about the noise.
33. (D.S) He said, "What a dirty face you have!"
(I. S) He exclaimed at my dirty face. (OR)
He remarked with disappointment that I had a very dirty face.
34. (D.S) He said, "What a fat boy you are!"
(I. S) He remarked that I was a very fat boy."
35. (D.S) He said, "How clever I am!"
(I. S) He exclaimed that he was very clever.
36. (D.S) She said, "How beautiful my hands are!"
(I. S) She exclaimed that her hands were very beautiful.
37. (D.S) The boy said, "How lovely you are!"
(I. S) The boy exclaimed that she was very lovely.
38. (D.S) He said, "How cruel of him!"
(I. S) He exclaimed that it was very cruel of him,
39. (D.S) He said, "How shocking the sight is!"
(I. S) He exclaimed that the sight was very shocking.
40. (D.S) The officer said, "How badly you have done your work!"
(I. S) The officer remarked that I (he/she) had done my (his/her) work very badly.

What ဝို့ How ဝို့ပါရင် မြင့်မြင့်၊ very, greatly ပြောင်းလဲရေးသားရပုံတို့
ဆင်ခြင်ပါ။

In the Indirect form of Exclamatory sentences, introduced by who, how or what denoting excess or absence, these words are replaced by none, great, much, greatly.

(F) REPORTED SPEECH (MIXED TYPE)

ရှေးနှောထားသော ပါဏာနာမျိုးမျိုးကို
INDIRECT SPEECH သို့ ပြောင်းလဲခြင်း

လူတစ်ယောက်ကကားပြောတဲ့အခါ၊ အမျိုးအစားတစ်မျိုးတည်းကိုပဲ ပုံသေပြောရမယ်လို့ သတ်မှတ်ထားလို့ မရပါဘူး။ အကြောင်းအရာတစ်ခုကို ပြောလဲပြော၊ မေးလဲမေး၊ တောင်းပန်ချင်လဲ တောင်းပန် စသဖြင့် နှစ်မျိုးသုံးမျိုးကိုရောပြီး တစ်ခါတည်းပြောတဲ့အခါလည်း ရှိပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ This book is an interesting book.
Have you ever read it?
ဒီစာအုပ်က သိပ်စိတ်ဝင်စားဖို့ကောင်းတဲ့ စာအုပ်တစ်အုပ်ပဲ။ မင်းဖတ်ဖူးသလား။
The thief has stolen the car. What are we to do?
ကားကိုတော့ သူခိုး ခိုးသွားပြီ။ တို့တွေ ဘာလုပ်ကြမလဲ။
စသဖြင့် ရောနှောပြီးပြောကြတဲ့ဝါကျတွေဆိုရင်
say, tell, explain, remark, ask, want to know, စသဖြင့် သင့်တော်ရာ ကြိယာတစ်ခုခုစပြီးရေးပါ။

ဒုတိယ၊ တတိယဝါကျတွေမှာ နောက်ဘက်ကဝါကျတွေရဲ့ အမျိုးအစားကိုကြည့်ပါ။ ရိုးရိုးဝါကျ ဆိုရင် and said၊ မေးခွန်းဝါကျဆိုရင် and asked, ခိုင်းပေးကြားတဲ့ဝါကျဆိုရင် and ordered, and requested စသဖြင့် သင့်တော်ရာ ပြောကြိယာကို ခံပေးပါ။ (သို့မဟုတ် သင့်တော်ရာ အဆက်ပုဒ် conjunction တစ်ခုခုနဲ့ ဆက်ပေးပါ။) ပြီးမှ Indirect Speech သို့ပြောင်းပါ။

Where there is a mixture of statements and questions the introducing verb will vary accordingly.
A COMPREHENSIVE ENGLISH GRAMMAR (PAGE. 367)

- ဥပမာ**
- (D.S) The old man said, "It is very hot. Is the window shut?"
သိပ်အိုက်တာပဲ၊ ပြတင်းပေါက်ကို ပိတ်ထားသလားလို့ အမိုးကြီးက မေးတယ်။
(I.S) The old man **said** that it was very hot **and asked** if the window was shut.
 - (D.S) Maw Maw said to me, "I want to buy a longyi. Please lend me some money."
(I.S) Maw Maw **told** me that she wanted to buy a longyi **and requested** me to lend her some money.

- (D.S) The teacher said, "Do you understand it now? I'll explain it again if you don't."
(I.S) The teacher **asked** if we understood it then **and said** that she would explain it again if we did not.
- (D.S) She said, "Can you tell me the time? I shall have to leave at five."
(I.S) She **asked** me if I could tell her the time **as** she would have to leave at five.
- (D.S) He said, "Have you a light? I've forgotten to bring my matches."
(I.S) He **asked** if I had a light **as** he had forgotten to bring his matches.

Exercise No. (149)

Put the following into Indirect Speech:

- He said "I have left my watch at home. Can you tell me the time?"
- "I have no money," said Nu Nu. "Will you buy me this longyi?"
- He said, "Have you tasted this curry?" It's very salty."
- "Why are you late for school?" "Do you come to school on foot?" said the teacher.
- "Which shirt do you like?" said Ko Tu. "I like the white one."
- "I have something to tell you," he said. "Please promise me not to tell the others."
- "Don't eat sweets," she said. "Do you know that you will have a tooth?"
- He said, "I will be here at noon." "Will you come to me?"
- "This lesson is very difficult. Can you help me?" said Zaw Zaw.
- "How far is it to the station? I hope to get there in time," said the traveller.
- "Have you ever been to Mandalay?" he said. "It is my native town."
- "This ring is very pretty," he said. "How much does it cost?"

- 13. "Is there any water in the pot?" "I am very thirsty," said the traveller.
- 14. "Where is he going?" said U Hla. "Do you know anything about him?"
- 15. "I am leaving for Pyin-Oo-Lwin." "Where are you going?" said Thiha.
- 16. "Why don't you come to class today?" Mar Lar said. "Do you feel sick again?"
- 17. "Where do you live?" said he. "I want to know your address, Nilar."
- 18. "Please lend me a pencil," she said. "I have left mine at home."
- 19. "May I shut the window?" "It's rather cold in here," she said.
- 20. "Your hands are very dirty," said he. "Did you forget to wash them?"



(9) QUESTIONS WITH SOME (YES/NO) ANSWERS

"YES" နဲ့ "NO" ပါတဲ့ ပါတျူစပျူကို
INDIRECT SPEECH သို့ ပြောင်းနည်း

- ၁။ မူကွဲကတိကျကို မေးခွန်းပါကျတွေကို Indirect Speech ပြောင်းနည်း အတိုင်းပြောင်းပါ။
- ၂။ နောက်ဘက်က Yes အစား and he said (and he answered) that စသည်ဖြင့် သင့်တော်သလို ပြန်ရေးပါ။
- ၃။ နောက်ဘက်က "No" အစား but he said (but he answered) that စသည်ဖြင့် သင့်တော်သလို ပြန်ရေးပါ။
- ၄။ သိင်္ဂီနောက်ဘက်ကတိကျရဲ့ Subject ကို သင့်တော်ရာ အကူကြိုယာနဲ့ပေါင်းပြီး ပြန်ရေးပါ။ (မေးခွန်းပါကျမှာ အသုံးပြုတဲ့ ကြိုယာအမျိုးအစားကိုကြည့်ပြီး အကူကြိုယာကို ဖော်ပေးရပါတယ်။)

Yes အစား = replied in the affirmative.

No အစား = replied in the negative လို့ မရေးသင့်ကြောင်း အထူးသတိပြုပါ။

"Yes" answers

- 1. (D.S) He said to the girl, "Do you like it?"
She said, "Yes." (OR)
He said to the girl, "Do you like it?" "Yes."
(I. S) He **asked** the girl if she *liked* it and **she said** that *she did*.
- 2. (D.S) He said to her. "Will you come to me?"
"Yes." (OR)
She said, "Yes."
(I. S) He **asked** her if she *would* come to him **and she said** that *she would*.

3. (D.S) She said to him, "Have you read the newspaper?"
He said, "Yes." (OR) "Yes."
(I. S) She **asked** him if he *had read* the newspaper **and he said** that *he had*.
4. (D.S) She said to him, "Are you interested in English?"
"Yes."
(I. S) She **asked** him if he *was interested* in English **and he said** that *he was*.

Exercise No. (150)

Put the following into Indirect Speech.

- "Would you like to come?" she said.
"Yes," I answered.
- "Must you do the homework?" he said.
"Yes," she answered.
- "Can you help me?" said he.
"Yes," she answered.
- He said, "Have you ever been to Inle Lake?"
"Yes," I answered.
- I said, "Have you spoken to him about it?"
She answered, "Yes."
- "Have you told Ko Ko what I said?" said Yi Yi.
"Yes," I answered.
- He said, "Are you listening to the radio?"
"Yes," she answered.
- She said to him, "Are you very busy today?"
"Yes,"
- He said, "Do you see my father?"
I said, "Yes."
- I said, "Do you want to learn English?"
She said, "Yes."

"No" answers

- (D.S) He said, "Do you like tea?"
She said, "No."
(I. S) He **asked** her if she *liked* tea, **but she said** that she *did not*.
- (D.S) She said, "Will you buy my book?"
"No," I answered.
(I. S) She **asked** me if I *would buy* her book, **but I answered** that I *wouldn't*.
- (D.S) I said, "Have you seen the accident?"
She said, "No."
(I. S) I **asked** her if she *had seen* the accident, **but she answered** that she *hadn't*.
- (D.S) He said, "Are you going to school?"
She said, "No."
(I. S) He **asked** her if she *was going* to school, **but she said** that she *wasn't*.

Exercise No. (151)

Put the following into Indirect Speech.

- "Do you see what I show?" said he. "No," she said.
- "Do you understand what I said?" he said. I answered, "No."
- He said, "Do you hear a loud noise?" She said, "No."
- He said, "Have you put salt in the curry?"
She said, "No."
- I said, "Have you left the banana skin on the platform?"
"No," he said.
- She said, "Have you washed your face?" He said, "No."
- U Nyunt said to Ni Ni, "Are you sorry for what you did?" "No."
- He said, "Are you looking through the keyhole?"
She said, "No."
- Ko Tu said, "Can I lose five pounds in ten days?"
The doctor said, "No."
- She said, "Would you like to see it?" He said, "No."

(H) CONDITIONAL SENTENCES များကို
DIRECT SPEECH ၊ INDIRECT SPEECH သို့ ပြောင်းခြင်း

(ဒီ လေ့ကျင့်ခန်းတွေကို မလုပ်ခင်၊ Conditional Sentences တွေ အကြောင်းကို
လေ့လာ သင့်ပါတယ်။)

- 1. (D.S) He **says to me**, "If you **try** hard, you **will pass** the examination."
- (I. S) He **tells me** that if I **try** hard, I **will pass** the examination.
- 2. (D.S) He **says to her**, "If the weather **is** fine, we **will go** on a picnic."
- (I. S) He **tells her** that if the weather **is** fine, they **will go** on a picnic.
- 3. (D.S) He **said to me**, "If you **try** hard, you **will pass** the examination."
- (I. S) He **told me** that if I **tried** hard, I **would pass** the examination.
- 4. (D.S) He **said to her**, "If the weather **is** fine, we **will go** on a picnic."
- (I. S) He **told her** that if the weather **was** fine, they **would go** on a picnic.
- 5. (D.S) He **said**, "If I **knew** how to drive, I **would buy** a car."
- (I. S) He **said** that if he **had known** how to drive, he **would have bought** a car.
- 6. (D.S) He **said to me**, "If you **tried** hard, you **would pass** the examination."
- (I. S) He **told me** that if I **had tried** hard, I **would have passed** the examination.

အမိန့်ပေးပီတုမျှကို ပြောင်းခြင်း

- 1. (D.S) He **says to me**, "**Try** hard if you **want** to **pass** the examination."
- စာမေးပွဲအောင်ချင်ရင် ကြိုးစားပါ။
- (I. S) He **advises me to try** hard if I **want to** pass the examination.
- 2. (D.S) He **said to me**, "**Try** hard if you **want** to pass the examination."
- (I. S) He **advised me to try** hard if I **wanted** to pass the examination.

သတိ။ "If clause" က ဝါကျရဲ့ရှေ့ဘက်မှာရောက်နေရင် clause နှစ်ခုကို ရှေ့နဲ့နောက် ပြောင်းပြန်ပြောင်းပြီးမှ Indirect Speech သို့ ပြောင်းရပါတယ်။

- ပုံစံ ၁
- 1. (D.S) He **says to me**, "If you **want** to pass the examination, **try** hard."
 - (If you want to pass the examination နဲ့ try hard ကို ရှေ့နောက် ပြောင်းပေးရပါတယ်။)
 - (I. S) He **advises me to try** hard if I **want** to pass the examination.
 - 2. (D.S) He **said to me**, "If you **want** to pass the examination, **try** hard."
 - (I. S) He **advised me to try** hard if I **wanted** to pass the examination.

Exercise No. (152)

Put the following into Indirect Speech.

- 1. The teacher said to Mon Mon, "If you spend more time on your lessons, you will get better marks."
- 2. I said to her, "If I have much money, I will give it to you."
- 3. She says to me, "If you have a good teacher, you will make more progress."

- 4. He said to her, "If you work hard, you will be successful."
- 5. He said to her, "If you left early, you would get there on time."
- 6. I say to him, "If she telephones me, I will let you know."
- 7. He said, "If I have a headache, I will take the medicine."
- 8. The doctor said to me, "Take the medicine if you are ill."
- 9. He said, "If Nwe Ni comes, tell her about our plans."
- 10. She said, "Go to the doctor if you are ill."
- 11. She said to me, "If you are hot, open the windows."

**"IF CLAUSE" နဲ့ ရေးထားတဲ့ အမိန့်ပေးဝါကျတွေကို
INDIRECT ပြောင်းနည်း**

- (D.S) She said, "If it **gets** cold, **give** the baby another blanket."
- (I. S) She told me to **give** the baby another blanket if it gets cold.

အပေါ်မှာ ဖော်ပြထားတဲ့ ပြောင်းနည်းကိုတော့ သိပြီး။ လေ့ကျင့်ပြီး ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။ နောက် တစ်မျိုးလဲ ပြောင်းနိုင်ပါသေးတယ်။

နောက်တစ်မျိုး ပြောင်းနည်း

- 1. ပြောကြိယာကို say, said နဲ့ ပြန်ရေးပါ။
- 2. that ခံဝေးပါ။
- 3. "was to + if clause" ပုံစံနဲ့ ဖြစ်စေ
- 4. should + if clause ပုံစံနဲ့ဖြစ်စေ ပြန်ရေးပါ။

- ၂၀၀၈ 1. (D.S) She said, "If it **gets** cold, **give** the baby another blanket."
- (I. S) She said that if it **got** cold I **was to give** the baby another blanket. (OR)
She said that if it **got** cold, I **should give** the baby another blanket.
- 2. (D.S) He said, "If you **see** Nu Nu, **give** her my letter."
- (I. S) He said that if I **saw** Nu Nu, I **was to give** her his letter. (OR)
He said that if I **saw** Nu Nu, I **should give** her his letter.

(I) CHANGING DIALOGUE INTO THE INDIRECT SPEECH
DIALOGUE အပြန်အလှန် ပြောစကားများကို
INDIRECT SPEECH အဖြစ် ပြောင်းနည်း

တစ်ယောက်နဲ့တစ်ယောက် အပြန်အလှန် အချီအချ ပြောစကားများကို Indirect Speech ပြောင်းနည်း။

- ၁။ ပထမပြောတဲ့လူရဲ့စကားဟာ ရိုးရိုးဝါကျ (Statement) လား၊ မေးခွန်း (Question) ဝါကျလား၊ အမိန့်ပေး၊ တောင်းပန် (order, request) ဝါကျလားကြည့်ပါ။
 - ၂။ ပြောတဲ့စကား အမျိုးအစားကိုကြည့်ပြီး လေ့လာခဲ့ပြီးဖြစ်တဲ့ စည်းကမ်းတွေအတိုင်း ပြောင်းပါ။
 - ၃။ Yes, No တစ်လုံးတည်းပါလာရင်လဲ ဝါကျအပြည့်အစုံနဲ့ ပြန်ရေးပါ။
- U Aung : Where are you going?
Daw Win : I'm looking for my younger sister.
U Aung : I saw her going to the market.
Daw Win : Was she alone?
U Aung : No, she was with her friends.
Daw Win : Thank you, I'll follow her.

Indirect Speech

U Aung asked Daw Win where she was going. Daw Win answered that she was looking for her younger sister. U Aung said that he saw her going to the market. Daw Win asked if she was alone. U Aung answered that she was with her friends. Daw Win thanked U Aung and said that she would follow her.

Exercise No. (153)

Put the following dialogues into the Indirect Speech.

- Win Win : Can I borrow your exercise book?
- Aung Aung : I'm sorry. I lent it to Tun Tun.
- Win Win : Then, will you lend me your text book?
I'll return it tomorrow.
- Aung Aung : Yes.

Exercise No. (154)

Put the following dialogues into the Indirect Speech.

- U Htay : Hello, Su Su. How are you today?
 Su Su : I'm not very well, U Htay.
 U Htay : I'm very sorry. What's the matter?
 Su Su : I have a cold.
 U Htay : Do you have a cough too?
 Su Su : Yes, I do.
 U Htay : What a pity! Drink this medicine.
 Su Su : Thank you, U Htay.

*Exercise No. (155)*

Put the following dialogues into the Indirect Speech.

- Father : How did you do in your test this month?
 Hnin Hnin : I stood first, Father.
 Father : Your mother will be pleased.
 Hnin Hnin : I told her this morning. She was delighted.
 Father : Good. Keep on working hard.
 Hnin Hnin : I will, Father.

*Exercise No. (156)*

Put the following dialogues into the Indirect Speech.

- Mother : What are you looking for?
 Mg Win : I'm looking for my pencil.
 Mother : Isn't it on the table?
 Mg Win : I think I saw it there.
 Mother : No, it isn't there.
 Mg Win : Isn't it in your pocket?
 Mother : No. It isn't.
 Mg Win : What's that in your bag?
 Mother : It's my pencil. Oh! How forgetful I'm !

Exercise No. (157)

Change the following from Direct to Indirect Speech.

1. "When poverty comes, false friends flee," says the old man.
2. "Who never climbs will never fall," says our teacher.
3. "Liars should have good memories," the judge said.
4. "There is no friend like an old friend," says U Yi.
5. The teacher has said, "Indecision and delay are the parents of failure."
6. The girl said, "When there is no danger, all men are equally brave."
7. The poor man said, "A friend in need is a friend indeed."
8. She said, "What a beautiful flower!"
9. The old man said, "How cold it is!"
10. He said, "How stupid I am!"
11. U San said to his son, "Do your homework at once or I'll beat you."
12. Daw Htay said to her daughter, "Sit down quietly for ten minutes and I will give you a doll."
13. U Htay says to me, "Have you been in an aeroplane many times?"
14. Ko Moe said to his friends, "Had the game started when you arrived at the football field?"
15. Sanda said to her friends, "Will you come and see me if you have a holiday?"
16. U Kyaw said to Than Than, "Where are you going for your holidays?"
17. "Did you brush your teeth properly, Thida?" said the dentist.
18. The teacher said to her pupils, "Answer only five questions but you must write your roll number at the top of your paper?"
19. Daw Win said, "Than Than, I cannot find my purse. Can you lend me ten kyats?"
20. Mother said to the nurse, "Is my new baby a boy or a girl? Please show me at once."



Exercise No. (158)

Change the following passage from Direct Speech to Indirect Speech.

- I. U Win said, "My name's U Win. I was born and brought up in a small town. I studied at Yangon University for six years. Then I became a teacher. I've been teaching English for more than twenty years."

- II. Tun Aung said, "Last summer, I went to a village of my friend. When I was in the village, I went fishing with my friend. Early in the morning we sat quietly by the side of a lake. We could smell the sweet fragrance of colourful flowers which were blooming beautifully near the lake. We could also hear the sweet song sung by a cuckoo from a tree near us. At five o'clock in the evening we came back home."

Direct Speech to Indirect Speech
 မြန်မာစကားပြောပုံစံမှ အဓိပ္ပာယ်တူစွာ ပြောင်းလဲရေးရာတွင် အောက်ဖော်ပြပါ အချက်များကို သတိပြုရမည်။

| 1. | 2. | 3. | 4. | 5. |
|--|---------------------------------|---|---|--|
| စကားပြောပုံစံ | D.S. တွင် သုံးသော ပြောကြားမှု | I.S. သို့ ပြောင်းရာတွင် သုံးသော ပြောကြားမှု | အထောက်အကူပြုရာ | အခြားပြောင်းလဲပုံစံများ |
| STATEMENT | say, said say to, said to | say, said tell told | that | 1. Tense မှသာ (လိုအပ်လျှင်) ပြောင်းပါ။ |
| IMPERATIVE | say, said say to, said to | order, beg request | to (သို့) not to | 2. Pronoun မှသာ များကို ပြောင်းပါ။ |
| QUESTION (Yes, No ခုခံသော မေးခွန်း) | say, said say to, said to | ask, enquire want to know | if (သို့) whether | 3. Nearness (နီးကပ်ခြင်း) ကို မော်ပြော့ စကားလုံးတွေအား Distance (ဝေးကွာခြင်း) ကို မော်ပြော့ စကားလုံးတွေ အဖြစ် ပြောင်းပါ။ |
| QUESTION (Wh မေးခွန်း) | say, said say to, said to | ask, enquire want to know | who, wh, who သည် Wh မေးစကားလုံး ဖြစ်သည့် | |
| INTERJECTION (EXCLAMATION) | say, said say to, said to | exclaimed remarked, etc. | that | |

ကဲ Direct Speech ကနေ Indirect Speech ကို ပြောင်းတဲ့ နည်းတွေကို လေ့လာပြီးပြီဆိုရင် အောက်က ဇယားကွက် ကလေးကို အနစ်ချုပ် အနေနဲ့ မှတ်သားလိုက်ပါဦး။

| 1. | 2. | 3. | 4. | 5. |
|--|---------------------------------|--|---|---|
| ဝါကျ အမျိုးအစား | D.S.တွင် သုံးသော ပြောကြိယာ | I.S.သို့ ပြောင်းရာတွင် သုံးသော ပြောကြိယာ | အဆက်ပုဒ် | အခြားပြောင်းလဲမှုများ |
| STATEMENT | say, said say to, said to | say, said tell told | that | 1. Tense ကာလ (လိုအပ်လျှင်) ပြောင်းပါ။ 2. Pronoun နာမ်စား များကို ပြောင်းပါ။ 3. Nearness (နီးကပ်ခြင်း) ကို ဖော်ပြတဲ့ စကားလုံးတွေအစား Distance (ဝေးကွာခြင်း) ကို ဖော်ပြတဲ့ စကားလုံးတွေ အဖြစ် ပြောင်းပါ။ |
| IMPERATIVE | say, said say to, said to | order, beg request | to (သို့) not to | |
| QUESTION (Yes, No လိုသော မေးခွန်း) | say, said say to, said to | ask, enquire want to know | if (သို့) whether | |
| QUESTION (Wh မေးခွန်း) | say, said say to, said to | ask, enquire want to know | who, what စသည့် Wh အမေး စကားလုံး ပြန်သုံး | |
| INTERJECTION (EXCLAMATION) | say, said say to, said to | exclaimed remarked, etc. | that | |

DIRECT SPEECH AND PUNCTUATION

ပုံစံ (၁) ရေးနည်း

ပုံစံ (၁) ရေးနည်းကတော့ ပြောကြိယာကို ရှေ့ဘက်ကထားပြီး ပြောသူရဲ့မူရင်းစကားကို နောက်ဘက်ကထား ရေးတဲ့နည်းဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

He said , "I love you."

R.V. R.S.

၁။ ပြောသူရဲ့ မူရင်းစကား (Direct Speech) ကို Inverted commas (or) Quotation Marks အတွင်းမှာထားပြီး ရေးရပါတယ်။

၂။ တစ်ဆင့်ပြန်ပြောသူရဲ့ ပြောကြိယာ He said, She said စသည်တို့ရဲ့နောက်မှာ comma (,) ခံပေးရပါတယ်။

- တစ်ခါတစ်ရံ ပြောစကားက သိပ်တိုနေရင် comma (,) ကို မထည့်ဘဲ ရေးလိုရပါတယ်။

- ပြောစကားက သိပ်ရှည်နေရင်တော့ comma (,) အစား Colon (:) ကို သုံးရင်လဲ ရပါတယ်။

၃။ ပြောသူရဲ့မူရင်းစကားဖြစ်တဲ့ (" ") Inverted commas ထဲကစ စကားလုံးကို စာလုံးအကြီး Capital Letter နဲ့ ရေးရပါတယ်။ ဘာကြောင့်လဲဆိုတော့ အဲဒီပြောစကားကို သီးခြားဝါကျတစ်ခုအနေနဲ့ သတ်မှတ်လိုပါပဲ။

၄။ တကယ်လို့ ပြောစကားဟာ မေးခွန်းဝါကျ (သို့မဟုတ်) အာမေဒိုတ်ဝါကျတွေဖြစ်နေရင် Question mark (?), Exclamation mark (!) တွေကို ဝါကျရဲ့အဆုံးမှာ ထည့်ပေးရပါတယ်။ သူတို့ရဲ့နောက်မှာမှ "close inverted commas" ကို ထည့်ပေးရပါတယ်။

First, notice the comma after "He said". In some cases, usually when the speech is very short, this comma may be omitted, and in other cases, especially when the speech is long; there may be a colon instead of a comma. PRACTICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR (PAGE. 239)

ပုံစံ

1. He said, "My book is stolen." ကျွန်တော်စာအုပ် အစိုးခံရတယ်လို့ သူကပြောတယ်။
2. He said, "I love you." ငါ မင်းကို ချစ်တယ်ကွာလို့ သူကပြောတယ်။
3. He said to Mar Mar, "What do you want?" မင်း ဘာကိုလိုချင်တာလဲလို့ သူက မာမာကို မေး (ပြော) တယ်။
4. He said, "Where do you live?" မင်း ဘယ်မှာနေသလဲလို့ သူက မေး (ပြော) တယ်။
5. He said, "What a beautiful longyi!" လှလိုက်တဲ့လုံချည်လေးကွာလို့ သူကပြောတယ်။

ပုံစံ (၂) ရေးနည်း

ပုံစံ (၂) ရေးနည်းကတော့ ပြောကြိယာကို ရှေ့ဘက်ကထားပြီး ပြောသူရဲ့မူရင်းစကားကို နောက်ဘက်ကထား ရေးတဲ့နည်းဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

"I love you ,," he said. (OR)

R.S. R.V.

"I love you ,," said he.

R.S. R.V.

- ၁။ ပြောသူရဲ့ မူရင်းစကား (Direct Speech) ကို Inverted commas အတွင်းမှာထားပြီး ရေးရပါတယ်။
- ၂။ တစ်ဆင့်ပြန်ပြောသူရဲ့ ပြောကြိယာ he said (သို့) said he တို့ရဲ့ (ပြောစကား အဆုံးမှာ) ရှေ့မှာ comma (,) ခံပေးရပါတယ်။
- ၃။ ဒါပေမယ့် ပြောစကားဟာ မေးခွန်းဝါကျ (သို့) အာမေဒိုတ်ဝါကျဖြစ်နေရင်တော့ Question mark (?), Exclamation mark (!) တွေရဲ့နောက်မှာ Comma (,) မထည့်ရပါဘူး။
- ၄။ he said (သို့) said he မတိုင်မီ close inverted comma နဲ့ပိတ်ရပါမယ်။
- ၅။ he said က he နဲ့ said he က said တွေကို စာလုံးအသေး (small letter) နဲ့ပဲ ရေးရပါတယ်။

First, notice the *comma* at the end of the speech. This comma is always present in Type 2. *The only exception* is when there is a question or exclamation mark, since these take the place of any other punctuation. (Except occasionally a dash.)

Secondly, the "he said" or similar phrase, begins with a small letter, not a capital.

Lastly, the quotation marks close before "he said".

(P. E. U)

- ဥပမာ**
- "I don't know what you mean," he said.
မင်း ဘာကိုဆိုလိုတယ်ဆိုတာ ငါမသိဘူးလို့ သူကပြောခဲ့တယ်။
 - "When will you come?" said he.
မင်း ဘယ်အချိန် လာမှာလဲလို့ သူကပြော (မေး) တယ်။
 - "How stupid I am!" he said.
ငါ့နှယ်ကွာ မိုက်လိုက်တာလို့ သူက ပြောခဲ့တယ်။

သတိပြုမိ

ပြောစကားမူရင်းဟာ တိုတောင်းတဲ့ဝါကျဖြစ်မှသာ ပုံစံ (၂) နဲ့ ရေးရပါတယ်။ ပြောစကားအတွင်း ဝိ ကျတွေ၊ ပြောစကားတွေ သိပ်များနေရင်တော့ ပုံစံ (၂) ကို မသုံးသင့်ပါဘူး။

ပုံစံ (၃) ရေးနည်း

ပုံစံ (၃) ရေးနည်းကတော့ ပြောသူရဲ့မူရင်းစကားကို နှစ်ပိုင်းခွဲပြီး ဖော်ပြမယ်။ ပြောကြိယာကိုတော့ အဲဒီပြောစကားနှစ်ခုရဲ့ အလယ်မှာထားပြီး၊ ရေးသားတဲ့နည်းဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

1. "If you try hard," the teacher said,
R.S. R.V.
"You will pass the examination."
R.S.
မင်းကြိုးစားရင် စာမေးပွဲအောင်မှာပါလို့ ဆရာကပြောတယ်။
2. "Tint Tint Tun," said Soe Thu, "will you come tomorrow?"
တင့်တင့်ထွန်း မင်းမနက်ဖြန်လာမလားလို့ စိုးသူက မေးတယ်။

3. "If I have time," said Tint Tint Tun,
"I shall come to you."
အချိန်ရရင် ကျွန်မ ရှင့်ဆီကိုလာပါ့မယ်လို့ တင့်တင့်ထွန်းက ပြောတယ်။

*** အပေါ်မှာ ဖော်ပြခဲ့တဲ့ ဝါကျတွေဟာ ဝါကျတစ်ခုတည်းကို နှစ်ပိုင်းခွဲပြီး ရေးထားတာဖြစ်ပါတယ်။ ပါကြောင့် ..

- အလယ်မှာရှိတဲ့ The teacher said, said Soe Thu, said Tint Tint Tun တို့ရဲ့နောက်မှာ Comma (,) ကိုသာ ထည့်ရပါတယ်။
- ဒုတိယ Inverted commas အတွင်းမှာရှိတဲ့ အစစာလုံးကိုလဲ စာလုံးအသေး Small Letter နဲ့ ရေးရပါတယ်။

*** တကယ်လို့ ရှေ့ဝါကျနဲ့နောက်ဝါကျဟာ သီးသန့်တစ်ခုစီ ဖြစ်နေမယ်ဆိုရင် -

- အလယ်မှာရှိတဲ့ he said, Soe Thu said စတဲ့ ပြောကြိယာရဲ့နောက်မှာ Full Stop (.) ကို ထည့်ရပါမယ်။
- ဒုတိယ Inverted commas အတွင်းမှာရှိတဲ့ အစစာလုံးကိုလဲ စာလုံး အကြီး Capital Letter နဲ့ ရေးရပါမယ်။

- ဥပမာ**
1. "Don't talk," the teacher ordered. "Open your book and read."
စကားမပြောနဲ့၊ စာအုပ်ကိုဖွင့်ပြီးဖတ်စမ်းလို့ ဆရာမက ပြော (အမိန့်ပေး) တယ်။
 2. "Good morning, class," said the teacher. "Let's begin the lesson."
ကောင်းသော နံနက်ခင်းပါတယ်ဟဲ့၊ သင်ခန်းစာကို စတင်သင်ကြားကြရအောင်လို့ ဆရာမက ပြောပါတယ်။
 3. "The time is eight o'clock," said the announcer.
"Here is the news."
ရှစ်နာရီထိုးပါပြီ၊ သတင်းများကို ကြေညာပါတော့မယ်လို့ သတင်းကြေညာသူက ပြောပါတယ်။

မှတ်ချက်

အလယ်မှာရှိတဲ့ ပြောကြိယာ he said, said he တို့ရဲ့နောက်မှာ Full Stop (.) ထည့်ရကြောင်း၊ အပေါ်မှာ ဖော်ပြခဲ့ပြီး ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

တစ်ခါတစ်ရံ Full Stop (.) အစား Colon (:), Semi Colon (;) တွေကိုလဲ သုံးနိုင်ပါတယ်။ (:) တို့ (:) တို့ကို သုံးရင်တော့ ...

ဒုတိယ Inverted commas အတွင်းမှာရှိတဲ့ အစစာလုံးကို စာလုံးအသေး (small letter) နဲ့ ရေးရပါမယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. "Good morning, class," said the teacher: "let's begin the lesson."
 2. "The time is eight o'clock," said the announcer: "here is the news."
 3. "Good morning," he said; "how are you?"

"Good morning", "No", "Yes", "Thank you", "Excuse me", "Oh!", "Alas!" စတဲ့ စတဲ့ အလွန်တိုတောင်းတဲ့ဝါကျတွေ၊ အာမေဇိုတ် စကားလုံးတွေဆိုရင် တော့ comma (,) ဝဲ ခံခံ၊ full stop (.) ကိုပဲ သုံးသုံး၊ colon (:), semicolon (;) တို့နဲ့ပဲ ရေးရေး၊ မိမိသဘောကျသလို ဖော်ပြနိုင်ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
- (a) "Oh!" he said, "now I understand."
 - (b) "Oh!" he said; "now I understand."
 - (c) Oh!" he said: "now I understand."
 - (d) "Oh!" he said. "Now I understand."

Full Stop ချရင်၊ နောက်ဝါကျမှာ စာလုံးအကြီးနဲ့ ရေးရပါတယ်။ ကျန်သုံးမျိုးမှာတော့ စာလုံးအသေးနဲ့ ရေးရပါတယ်။ (င) မျိုးလုံး သုံးနိုင်တယ်လို့ဆိုပေမယ့် comma (,) နဲ့ပဲ ရေးကြတာ များပါတယ်။

All these versions are about the same, but (a) is probably the commonest. Notice that it is only in (d) that we need a capital "N" for "Now".

P. E. U (PAGE. 244)

"INVERTED COMMAS"

ပြောသူရဲ့ မူရင်းစကား။ (သူ့စကားလုံးတွေ)ကို Inverted commas (or) Quotation marks အတွင်းမှာထားပြီး ရေးတဲ့အခါ Inverted commas နှစ်ခု "....." ကို သုံးပြီးလဲ ရေးနိုင်ပါတယ်။ တစ်ခုတည်း '.....' ကို သုံးပြီးတော့လဲ ရေးနိုင်ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ He said, "I'm sorry to hear the news." (OR)
He said, 'I'm sorry to hear the news.'

ဒါပေမယ့်

သူပြောတဲ့ သူ့စကားမူရင်းထဲမှာ အခြားကိုးကားပြောဆိုချက်တစ်ခုရှိတယ်ဆိုရင်တော့ ...

- မူရင်း ပြောစကားကြီးကို "....." နှစ်ခုသုံးပြီး ဖော်ပြရပါတယ်။
- အခြား ကိုးကားရည်ညွှန်းချက်ကို '.....' တစ်ခုသုံးပြီး ဖော်ပြရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. (a) The most interesting book is "Thirty Burmese Tales."
(b) He said, "The most interesting book is 'Thirty Burmese Tales'."
 2. (a) "Come here," he said.
(b) "Did you say 'come here'?" I asked.

အပေါ်က 1 (a) နဲ့ 2 (a) ဝါကျတွေမှာ "Thirty Burmese Tales" နဲ့ "Come here" ဆိုတာတွေဟာ သီးခြားကိုးကားချက်တွေဖြစ်တယ်။ ဒါကြောင့် 1 (b) နဲ့ 2 (b) မူရင်း ပြောစကားကြီးအဖြစ် ပြန်ရေးတဲ့အခါမှာ မူရင်းပြောစကားကြီးကို "....." နှစ်ခုနဲ့ ရေးရပါတယ်။ သီးခြားကိုးကား။ ရည်ညွှန်းဖော်ပြမှုတွေကိုတော့ '.....' တစ်ခုနဲ့ ရေးရပါတယ်။

Single quotation marks are used to enclose internal quotations, that is, quotations within quotations.

PRACTICAL ENGLISH HANDBOOK. (PAGE. 142)

We have seen already that double quotation marks (" ") are more usual than single ones (' '). Both kinds, however, occur when there is a quotation within a quotation.

e.g.

14. (a) The greatest of Dickens' novels is "David Copperfield."
(b) He said, "The greatest of Dickens' novels is 'David Copperfield'."
15. (a) "Come here," he said.
(b) "Did you say 'Come here'?" I asked.

In 14 (b) and 15 (b) 'David Copperfield' and 'Come here' are quotations within another quotation, so they are given single quotation marks. If, on the other hand, we had been using singles for the outer quotation, we would have used doubles for the inner one.

PRACTICAL ENGLISH USAGE (PAGE. 246)

FOR STUDY

(A) "MUST" နဲ့ ပတ်သက်ပြီး သတိပြုရန်

Direct Speech ကနေ Indirect Speech ကို ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါ will ကို would/ shall ကို should / can ကို could / may ကို might စသဖြင့် သင့်တော်သလို ပြောင်းရကြောင်း ရှင်းပြခဲ့ပြီးဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

ဒါပေမယ့် must ပါလာရင်တော့ သတိပြုရပါမယ်။ must မှာ အဓိပ္ပာယ် (၂) မျိုးရှိပါတယ်။ ဆိုလိုချင်တဲ့အဓိပ္ပာယ် အနေအထားပေါ်မူတည်ပြီး Indirect Speech ကို ပြောင်းရပါတယ်။

- ၁။ ယခုပြောဆိုနေတဲ့အချိန်ကာလမှာ အလုပ်တစ်ခုကိုလုပ်ဖို့ လိုအပ်တယ်ဆိုတဲ့အဓိပ္ပာယ် အနေနဲ့ ဖော်ပြချင်တာလား။
- ၂။ အနာဂတ်ကာလကမှ အလုပ်တစ်ခုကိုလုပ်ဖို့ လိုအပ်မယ်ဆိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်အနေနဲ့ ဖော်ပြချင်တာလားဆိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်ပေါ်မူတည်ပြီး ပြောင်းရတယ်။

၁။ ယခုပြောဆိုနေတဲ့အချိန်ကာလမှာ ပြုလုပ်ဖို့ လိုအပ်တယ်။ necessary to do ဆိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့သုံးတာဆိုရင် Indirect Speech ကို ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါမှာ must ကို အတိတ်ကြိယာ (had to) အဖြစ် ပြောင်းရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. (D.S) She said, "I **must** wash the clothes."
 - (I. S) She said that she **had to** wash the clothes.
 2. (D.S) He said, "I **must** repair the engine."
 - (I. S) He said that he **had to** repair the engine.

၂။ အနာဂတ်ကာလမှာ အလုပ်တစ်ခုကိုပြုလုပ်ဖို့ လိုအပ်မယ်ဆိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့သုံးတာဆိုရင် Indirect Speech ကို ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါ must ကို Past Future Tense ဖြစ်တဲ့ (would have to) အဖြစ် ပြောင်းပေးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. (D.S) He said, "I **must** go next week."
 - (I. S) He said that he **would have to** go the following week.
 2. (D.S) She said, "I **must** buy a book tomorrow."
 - (I. S) She said that she **would have to** buy a book the next day.

MUST ရဲ့ ပြောင်းဆိုပုံစံ

အလုပ်တစ်ခုကို မလုပ်ရဘူး၊ (ဒါမှမဟုတ်) လုပ်ဖို့မလိုအပ်ဘူးလို့ ဖော်ပြပြောဆိုချင်ရင်တော့ must ကို ပြောင်းဆိုပုံစံနဲ့ သုံးရပါတယ်။

must (ရဲ့ ဆန့်ကျင်ဘက်အဓိပ္ပာယ်) ပြောင်းဆိုပုံစံကတော့ နှစ်မျိုးရှိတယ်။ must not နဲ့ need not တို့ ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

"must not" ကို "မသွားရဘူး၊ မလာရဘူး" လို့ တားမြစ်ချင်တဲ့အခါမှာ သုံးပါတယ်။

"need not" ကို "သွားဖို့၊ လာဖို့၊ မလိုအပ်ဘူး" လို့ (unnecessity) ဖော်ပြချင်တဲ့ အခါမှာ သုံးပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. Must I go to Mandalay?
မန္တလေးကို ကျွန်တော် သွားရမလား။
 2. No, you must not go to Mandalay.
မန္တလေးကို မင်းမသွားရဘူး။
 3. No, you need not to go Mandalay.
မန္တလေးကို မင်းသွားဖို့ မလိုအပ်ပါဘူး။

၁။ ယခုပြောဆိုနေတဲ့ကာလအတွက်ဆိုရင် -

လောလောဆယ် ပြောဆိုနေတဲ့အချိန်ကာလ (at the moment of speaking.) မှာ ပြုလုပ်ဖို့ မလိုအပ်ဘူးဆိုတဲ့သဘောနဲ့ သုံးတဲ့ဝါကျတွေကို Indirect Speech မှာ ...

- needn't ကို didn't have to ပြောင်းပါ။
- mustn't ကို weren't to/ wasn't to ပြောင်းပါ။

- ဥပမာ
1. (D.S) He said, "I **needn't** go to Mandalay."
 - (I. S) He said that he **didn't have to** go to Mandalay.
 2. (D.S) He said, "I **mustn't** go to Mandalay."
 - (I. S) He said that he **wasn't to** go to Mandalay."

၂။ အနာဂတ်ကာလအတွက်ဆိုရင်

- needn't ကို wouldn't have to ပြောင်းပါ။
- mustn't ကို weren't to/ wasn't to ပြောင်းပါ။

- ၃၀၈ 1. (D.S) He said, "I **needn't** go next week."
 (I. S) He said that he **wouldn't have to** go the following week.
2. (D.S) He said, "I **mustn't** go next week."
 (I. S) He said that he **wasn't to** go the following week.

၃၁ "မသွားရဘူး၊ မလာရဘူး၊ မလုပ်ရဘူး" လို့ တားမြစ်တဲ့ (prohibition) အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့ must ကို သုံးတာဆိုရင်တော့ Indirect Speech ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါ must အတိုင်း ဆက်ထားရပါတယ်။

- ၃၀၈ 1. (D.S) The doctor said to me, "You **mustn't** eat over ripe fruits."
 (I. S) The doctor told me that I **must not** eat over-ripe fruits.
2. (D.S) He said to me, "You **mustn't** drink impure milk."
 (I. S) He told me that I **mustn't** drink impure milk.

To express the absence of obligation or necessity to do something (that is, the opposite of "must"), the form "need not" is used.
 e.g. You must go now ... No, you needn't go just yet, you can stay a little longer.
 L. E. S. (PAGE. 37)

MUST. Notice that the negative form *mustn't* is a negative obligation; the opposite of "must" is "needn't".

| | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Obligation</i> | <i>No obligation</i> | <i>Prohibition</i> |
| He must go. | He needn't go. | He mustn't go. |

L. E. S. (PAGE. 49)

| | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Obligation</i> | <i>No obligation</i> | <i>Prohibition</i> |
| He must go | He needn't go | He mustn't go |

L. E. S. (P. 49)

Exercise No. (159)

Put the following into Indirect Speech:

- Our father said, "You must not tell lies."
- The doctor said to the patient, "You must not drink cold water."
- The teacher said, "You needn't read this lesson."
- He said, "I needn't learn this exercise next week."
- Ni Ni said, "You mustn't leave earlier than others."
- She said to me, "You mustn't decide everything quickly."
- He said, "Every man must do his duty."
- He said, "I needn't go to school tomorrow."
- She said, "I mustn't go to school tomorrow."
- The patient said, "I must take the medicine."

(B) "SHALL" နဲ့ ပတ်သက်ပြီး သမီးပြုရန်

မေးခွန်းဝါ ကျအဖြစ်နဲ့ သုံးတဲ့အခါ shall ရဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်ဆိုလိုရင်း (၂) မျိုးရှိတယ်။

၁။ ရိုးရိုးအာဂတကာလကို ဖော်ပြ၊ မှန်းဆပြောဆိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ shall.

- ၃၀၈ 1. Shall I go to school tomorrow?
 မနက်ဖြန် ကျောင်းတက်ရမယ်လား။
2. Shall we see you tomorrow?
 မနက်ဖြန်ကျရင် ဒို့ မင်းကို (လာ) တွေ့ရမယ်လား။

၂။ အာဂတကာလအဓိပ္ပာယ်မဟုတ်ဘဲ၊ အခြားလူ တစ်စုံတစ်ယောက်ရဲ့ သဘောတူညီမှုဆန္ဒကို တောင်းခံတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ (shall).

- ၃၀၈ 1. Shall I open the window?
 (ကျွန်တော်) ပြတင်းပေါက် ဖွင့်လိုက်ရမလား။
2. Shall I wash the clothes?
 အဝတ်တွေ လျှော်လိုက်ရမလား။

မိမိလို အဓိပ္ပာယ် (၂) မျိုးထွက်နေတဲ့ shall နဲ့ မေးတဲ့ မေးခွန်းဝါကျတွေကို Indirect Speech ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါ ဆိုလိုတဲ့အဓိပ္ပာယ်ပေါ်မူတည်ပြီး ပြောင်းနည်း (၂) မျိုး ကွဲပြားသွားပါတယ်။

* * ရိုးရိုးအနာဂတ်ကာလကို မှန်းဆပြောဆိုတဲ့အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့ သုံးတဲ့ဝါကျတွေအတွက်

- 1. Shall I ? ကို if he *would*
- Shall we? ကို if they *would*

စသည်ဖြင့် ပုံစံပြောင်းရပါတယ်။

- 2. say, said အစား wonder ကို သုံးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ**
- 1. (D.S.) She said, "Shall I come tomorrow?"
 - (I. S.) She wondered if she would come the next day.
 - 2. (D.S.) He said, "Shall I require new books?"
 - (I. S.) He wondered if he would require new books

* * အနာဂတ်အဓိပ္ပာယ်မဟုတ်ဘဲ၊ အခြားလူတစ်ယောက်ယောက်ရဲ့ သဘောတူညီမှုဆန္ဒကို တောင်းတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့ သုံးတဲ့ဝါကျတွေအတွက်

- 1. Shall I ? ကို if he *should*
- Shall we? ကို if they *should*

စသည်ဖြင့် ပုံစံပြောင်းရပါတယ်။

- 2. say, said အစား ask ကို သုံးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ**
- 1. (D.S.) She said to him, "Shall I put the light out?"
 - (I. S.) She asked him if she should put the light out.
 - 2. (D.S.) She said to her mother, "Shall I marry him?"
 - (I. S.) She asked her mother if she should marry him.

Exercise No. (160)

Change the following into Indirect Speech.

- 1. He said, "Shall I ever remember my lover?"
 He wondered
- 2. She said, "Shall I take the car?"
 She asked
- 3. "Shall I ever get married?" she said.
 She wondered
- 4. He said, "Shall I put it on the table?"
 He asked
- 5. He said, "Shall we arrive in time?"
 He wondered
- 6. She said, "Shall we read this book?"
 She asked
- 7. He said, "Shall we leave for Europe?"
 He wondered
- 8. She said, "Shall we go to buy rice?"
 She asked
- 9. He said to his father, "Shall we go to the seashore on our vacation?"
 He asked
- 10. She said, "Shall I visit Ni Ni tomorrow?"
 She wondered
- 11. He said, "Shall I be late for my lesson?"
 He wondered

(C) "LET" နဲ့ ပတ်သက်ပြီး သတိပြုရန်

Direct Speech ကနေ Indirect Speech ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါ Let ပါလာရင် သတိပြုရပါတယ်။

၁။

Let ကို အခွင့်တောင်းတဲ့သဘောနဲ့ ရေးထားတဲ့ (ပြောတဲ့) ဝါကျဆိုရင် ...

- (a) , " " ဖြုတ်ပြီး Let ရှေ့က to ခံပေးခြင်းအားဖြင့်ဖြစ်စေ ...
- (b) , " " ဖြုတ်ပြီး that ခံပေးပြီး Let အစား might (or) might be allowed ကို အသုံးပြု၍ဖြစ်စေ၊ ပြောင်းရပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ

1. (D.S) He said, "Let me eat rice."
ထမင်းစားပါရစေလို့ သူကပြောတယ်။
(I. S) He requested me to let him eat rice. (OR)
He told me that he might be allowed to eat rice.
2. (D.S) The girl said to her mother, "Let me sleep now."
(I. S) The girl requested her mother to let her sleep then. (OR)
The girl told her mother that she might be allowed to sleep then.

၂။ Let ကို အကြံပေးတဲ့၊ အရိပ်အမြွက်ပြောတဲ့သဘောနဲ့ ရေးထားတဲ့ (ပြောတဲ့) ဝါကျဆိုရင် ..

- (a) , " " ဖြုတ် that ခံပေးပြီး Let အစား should ကို အသုံးပြုပြီး ပြောင်းရပါတယ်။
- (b) ပြောကြံယာကိုလဲ say, (said) အစား propose, suggest တို့ကို သုံးရပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ

1. (D.S) She said, "Let us study English."
တို့တစ်တွေ အင်္ဂလိပ်စာကို လေ့လာကြည့်ကြပါစို့လို့ သူမက ပြောတယ်။
(I. S) She suggested that they should study English.
2. (D.S) He said, "Let us do the homework regularly."
(I. S) He proposed that they should do the homework regularly.



Exercise No. (161)

Put the following into Indirect Speech.

1. He said, "Let me read your book."
2. The stranger said, "Let me come in."
3. The girl said to her brother, "Please let me know what happens."
4. He said to his father, "Please let me go there."
5. She said to me, "Let me know when you will come again."
6. The soldier said, "Let us do our duty."
7. The said, "Let us build a new bridge."
8. He said to me, "Let us repaint the old car."
9. Cho Cho said, "Let me sing a song at the party."
10. He said, "Let us inspect the machine."

(D) သတိပြုရမယ့် ခြွင်းချက်ကလေးတွေ

ခြွင်းချက် (၁)

Direct Speech ကနေ Indirect Speech (ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါ နီးကပ်ခြင်း (nearness) ကို ဖော်ပြတဲ့စကားလုံးတွေအစား ဝေးကွာခြင်း (distance)ကို ဖော်ပြတဲ့ စကားလုံးတွေအဖြစ် ပြောင်း လဲပေးရကြောင်း ဖော်ပြခဲ့ပြီးဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

Words denoting "nearness" become the corresponding words denoting "remoteness."
A. C. E. GRAMMAR (PAGE. 364)

| | | | | |
|------|-------|-----|-------|---------------------|
| ဥပမာ | This | ကို | That | ပြောင်း |
| | These | ကို | Those | ပြောင်း |
| | Here | ကို | There | ပြောင်း စသဖြင့် ... |

ဒါပေမယ့်

မူရင်းစကား (Direct Speech) ကို ပြောနေသူဟာ (စကား) ပြောနေတဲ့အချိန်မှာ သူ့ရဲ့ရှေ့မှာ ရှိနေတဲ့အရာတွေကို ရည်ညွှန်းပြောဆိုတာဆိုရင်တော့ အဲဒီနီးကပ်ခြင်းပြ စကားလုံးတွေကို (Indirect Speech) တစ်ဆင့်ပြောစကားမှာ အပြောင်းအလဲမလုပ်ဘဲ ဒီအတိုင်း ပြန်ရေးရပါတယ်။

The change do not occur if the speech is reported during the same period or at the same place;

e.g. Direct : He says, "I am glad to be *here this evening*."
 Indirect : He says that he is glad to be *here this evening*.

H. S. E. GRAMMAR (PAGE. 382)
 WREN & MARIN

- ဥပမာ 1. (D.S.) U Hla **pointed** at the book in his hand and said, "I have read **this** book."
 လက်ထဲမှာကိုင်ထားတဲ့ စာအုပ်ကိုညွှန်ပြပြီး၊ ဦးလှက "ငါ ဒီစာအုပ်ကိုဖတ်ပြီးပြီ" လို့ ပြောတယ်။
- (I. S.) U Hla pointed at the book in his hand and said that he had read **this** book.
 လက်ထဲမှာကိုင်ထားတဲ့ စာအုပ်ကိုပြပြီး ဦးလှက သူ ဒီစာအုပ်ကိုဖတ်ပြီးပြီလို့ ပြောတယ်။
2. (D.S.) The girl said to me *five minutes ago*, "I'll wait for you **here** till you come back."
 (I. S.) The girl told me five minutes ago that she would wait for me **here** till I came back.
 (ပြောတာက "၅" မိနစ်ပဲရှိသေးလို့ here ကို there မပြောင်းပါ။)

3. (D.S.) Thein Thein said on Friday, "**Today** is my birthday."
 (I. S.) Thein Thein said on Friday that **today** was her birthday.
 (သောကြာနေ့ဟာ မွေးနေ့ဖြစ်တယ်လို့ ရည်ညွှန်းထားတာမို့ today ကို that day မပြောင်းပါ။)

But if the speech is made and reported on the same day these time changes are not necessary; and if the place is unchanged "here" can be used in the Indirect Speech.

e.g. Direct : On Monday he said, "My son is coming today."
 Indirect : On Monday he said that his son was coming today.
 Direct : Ten minutes ago he said, "My son is coming today."
 Indirect : Ten minutes ago he said that his son was coming today.

A PRACTICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR (PAGE. 206)

Indirect: Ten minutes ago he said that his son was coming today.

A PRACTICAL English GRAMMAR (P. 206)

ရွှင်းချက် (၂)

Direct ကနေ Indirect ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါမှာ We, Our, Us ကို They, Their, Them သို့ ပြောင်းရကြောင်း ဖော်ပြခဲ့ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ 1. (D.S.) He said, "We are very happy."
 (I. S.) He said that **they** were very happy.

ဒါပေမယ့်

We ကို လူသားထု၊ လူသတ္တဝါ (mankind) အားလုံးကို ကိုယ်စားပြုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့သုံးစားတာဆိုရင်တော့ We ကနေ They မပြောင်းရပါဘူး။ We ကို ဒီအတိုင်း ဆက်ထားရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ 1. (D.S) Kyaw Kyaw said, "We are human beings."
 (I. S) Kyaw Kyaw said that **we are** human beings.
 (တကယ်လို့ they သာ ပြောင်းလိုက်မယ်ဆိုရင် သူတို့တွေကတော့ လူဖြစ်တယ်၊ ကျော်ကျော်ကတော့ လူဖြစ်တဲ့အထဲမှာ မပါဘဲဖြစ် သွားမယ်)

ရွှင်းချက် (၃)

Direct ကနေ Indirect ကိုပြောင်းတဲ့အခါမှာ will, ကို would, shall ကို should ပြောင်းရကြောင်း ဖော်ပြခဲ့ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ 1. (D.S) The boy said, "I **will** read this book."
 (I. S) The boy said that **he would** read that book.
 2. (D.S) We said, "We **shall** do our duty."
 (I. S) We said that **we should** do our duty.
 3. (D.S) I said, "I **shall** go to school."
 (I. S) I said that **I should** go to school.

ဒါပေမယ့်

Will နဲ့ shall ရဲ့အသုံးကို သတိပြုရပါမယ်။

- I, We ကို shall နဲ့ တွဲဖက်သုံးရပါမယ်။
- ကျွန်ုပ်တို့မှာမိမိတို့တွေကို will နဲ့ တွဲဖက်သုံးရပါတယ်။

ဒါကြောင့် I တို့ We တို့ကို He, She, They စသည်ဖြင့်ပြောင်းလိုက်ရင် I, We နဲ့တွဲပြီး ရေးထားတဲ့ shall ကိုလဲ will (သို့) would သို့ ပြောင်းရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ 1. (D.S) He says, "I shall be there."
 (I. S) He says that he **will** be there.
 2. (D.S) He said, "I shall be there."
 (I. S) He said that he **would** be there.
 3. (D.S) She said, "I shall try my best."
 (I. S) She said that **she would** try her best.
 4. (D.S) She says, "I shall try my best."
 (I. S) She says that **she will** try her best.

ပြောသူဟာ I တို့ We တို့ ဆိုရင်တော့ မပြောင်းရပါဘူး။

- ဥပမာ 1. (D.S) I say, "I shall be busy."
 (I. S) I say that I shall be busy.
 2. (D.S) We say, "We shall buy a house."
 (I. S) We say that **we shall** buy a house.
 3. (D.S) I said, "I shall study English."
 (I. S) I said that I **should** study English.
 4. (D.S) We said, "We shall eat it all."
 (I. S) We said that **we should** eat it all.

ရွှင်းချက် (၄)

ရိုးရိုးပြောစကား (statements) တွေကို Direct ကနေ Indirect ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါ " " ဖြတ်ပြီး that ထည့်ရကြောင်း ဖော်ပြခဲ့ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ 1. (D.S) He said, "I have sold my old books."
 (I. S) He said **that** he had sold his old books.

ဒါပေမယ့်

ဆီ conjunction (that) ကို မထည့်ဘဲနဲ့ ပြောင်းရင်လဲရပါတယ်။

The "that" is often omitted, especially in spoken English.
 HIGH SCHOOL ENGLISH GRAMMAR (PAGE. 380)
 WREN & MARTIN

In indirect speech the conjunction "that" can be placed after the main verb. It is not, however, necessary, and is often omitted.

1. (D.S) He said, "I have bought a typewriter."
 (I.S) He said *that* he had bought a typewriter. (OR)
 He said he had bought a typewriter.

P. E. G. (PAGE. 205)

ခြင်းချက် (၅)

Direct Speech က indirect Speech ကိုပြောင်းတဲ့အခါ I, my, me, ဆိုတဲ့ (1st person) နာမ်စားတွေကို he, his, him, she, her, her စတဲ့ (3rd person) နာမ်စားတွေအဖြစ် ပြောင်းရကြောင်း ဖော်ပြခဲ့ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
- (D.S) He said, "I love **my** father and **my** father loves **me**."
 (I. S) He said that **he** loved **his** father and **his** father loved **him**.
 - (D.S) She said, "I like **my** friend and **my** friend likes **me**."
 (I. S) She said that **she** liked **her** friend and **her** friend liked **her**.

ဒါဝေဝေ

ပြောသူဟာ "I" ဖြစ်နေရင်တော့ မပြောင်းရပါဘူး။

- ဥပမာ
- (D.S) I said, "I see **my** mother but **my** mother does not see **me**."
 (I. S) I said that I saw **my** mother but **my** mother did not see **me**.

ခြင်းချက် (၆)

ပြောခံရတဲ့ (2nd person) နာမ်စား you, your, you ကိုလဲ he, his, him, she, her, her စသဖြင့် ပြောင်းရကြောင်း ဖော်ပြခဲ့ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
- (D.S) He said to Nwe Ni, "**You** love **your** sister but **your** sister does not love **you**."
 (I. S) He told Nwe Ni that **she** loved **her** sister but **her** sister did not love **her**.
 - (D.S) He said to Thiha, "**You** hate **your** neighbours but **your** neighbours do not hate **you**."
 (I. S) He told Thiha that **he** hated **his** neighbours but **his** neighbours did not hate **him**.

ဒါဝေဝေ

ပြောခံရသူဟာ "you" ဖြစ်နေရင်တော့ မပြောင်းရပါဘူး။

- (D.S) He said to you, "**You** and **your** brother insult them but they forgive **you**."
 (I. S) He told you that **you** and **your** brother insulted them but they forgave **you**.

မှတ်ချက်

ပြောစကားအတွင်းမှာပါတဲ့ (3rd person pronouns) he, his, him, she, her, her, they, their, them စသည်တို့ကိုတော့ အပြောင်းအလဲ မလုပ်ရပါဘူး။

ခြင်းစုကံ (၇)

Direct Speech က Indirect Speech ကိုပြောင်းတဲ့အခါ will ကို would, shall, ကို should, can ကို could စသဖြင့် ပြောင်းရကြောင်း ဖော်ပြခဲ့ပြီးဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ 1. (D.S) She said, "I **can** help him."
(I. S) She said that she **could** help him.

ဒါဝေစသ့်

Direct Speech တွဲကိရိုက် ပြောစကားထဲမှာ would, should, used, might, could စသည်တို့ပါလာပြီး အဓိပ္ပာယ်ကလဲ (was able)ဆိုတဲ့ သဘောနဲ့ ဆိုရင်တော့ Indirect Speech ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါ မပြောင်းလဲဘဲ ဒီအတိုင်း ရေးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ 1. (D.S) He said, "We **should** look after the poor."
(I. S) He said that they **should** look after the poor.
2. (D.S) He said, "I **might** stay a little longer."
(I. S) He said that he **might** stay a little longer.
3. (D.S) She said, "I **could** lift it."
(I. S) She said that she **could** lift it.

(would, should, used, might and could except when it means was able) normally remain unchanged in statements.

A PRACTICAL E. GRAMMAR COMBINED EXERCISES (PAGE. 170)

INDIRECT SPEECH TO DIRECT SPEECH

INDIRECT SPEECH TO DIRECT SPEECH

INDIRECT SPEECH မှ DIRECT SPEECH သို့ ပြောင်းနည်း

Direct Speech ကနေ Indirect Speech ကို ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါ လွယ်ကူပေမယ့် Indirect ကနေ Direct ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါ အခက်အခဲ တွေတတ်ပါတယ်။ ဒါကြောင့် Direct ကနေ Indirect ပြောင်းနည်းတွေကို သေသေချာချာ ကျကျနန လေ့လာပါ။ စာမျက်နှာ ၂၁ မော်ပြထားတဲ့ အနှစ်ချုပ်စာများကို ပိုင်းပြီးဆိုမှ Indirect ကနေ Direct ပြောင်းနည်းကို ဆက်လက် လေ့လာသင့်ပါတယ်။

စာများမှာ လေ့လာရင် Direct ကို ပြောင်းရမယ့် Indirect Speech ဝါကျမှာ

1. "that" ဝါရင် Statement
2. if, whether, where, when, how, why ဝါရင် Question
3. to, not to စသည်တို့ ဝါရင် Imperative (အမိန့်ပေး၊ တောင်းပန်) ဝါကျတွေ ဖြစ်တယ်ဆိုတာ ပထမဦးဆုံး ကွဲကွဲပြားပြား သိထားဖို့လိုပါတယ်။

ဆဲဒီလို ဝါကျအမျိုးအစားကို ခွဲခြားပြီး သိပြီးဆိုမှ တစ်ခုချင်းကို အသေးစိတ် လေ့လာ သင့်ပါတယ်။

STATEMENT ဝါကျများကို DIRECT SPEECH ပြောင်းနည်း

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. say, said | ဆိုလျှင် မပြောင်းဘဲပြန်ရေးပါ။ |
| tell | ဆိုလျှင် say to |
| told | ဆိုလျှင် said to သို့ ပြောင်းပါ။ |
| 2. that | ကို ဖြတ်ပြီး , " " ထည့်ပါ။ |
| 3. that | နောက်ကစားလုံးကို , " " အတွင်း ထည့်ဟဲ့အခါ၊ အစ စာလုံးကို စာလုံးကြီး capital letter သို့ ပြောင်းပေးပါ။ |
| 4. that | နောက်ဘက်မှာရှိတဲ့ နာမ်စားတွေကို သတိပြုပါ။ ပြောသူလား၊ အပြောခံ ရသူလား ကြည့်ပြီး (A) ပြောသူ (ကတ္တား) ကို ရည်ညွှန်းတဲ့ he, his, him, she, her, her (စတဲ့ 3rd person) နာမ်စားတွေကို I, my, me (စတဲ့ 1st person) နာမ်စားတွေအဖြစ် ပြောင်းပါ။ (B) ပြောခံရသူ (ကံ) ကို ရည်ညွှန်းတဲ့ he, his, him, she, her, her (စတဲ့ 3rd person) နာမ်စားတွေကို you, your, you (စတဲ့ 2nd person) နာမ်စားတွေအဖြစ် ပြောင်းပါ။ |
| 5. ပြောစကားအတွင်းမှာရှိတဲ့ ကြိယာတွေကို သင့်သလို ပြန်ပြောင်းပေးပါ။ | |
| 6. ပြောစကားအတွင်းမှာ ရှိတဲ့ စကားလုံး အချို့ကို ပြန်ပြောင်း ပေးပါ။ ဥပမာ those ကို these, that ကို this စသည်ဖြင့် စကားလုံးတွေကို ပြန်ပြောင်းပေးပါ။ | |

- ၂၀၀၈
- (I.S.) Nyi Nyi said that he was busy that day.
(D.S.) Nyi Nyi said, "I am busy today."
 - (I.S.) Nyi Nyi told Ni Ni that he loved her.
(D.S.) Nyi Nyi said to Ni Ni, "I love you."
 - (I.S.) Ko Gyi says that he likes coffee.
(D.S.) Ko Gyi says, "I like coffee."
 - (I.S.) Ko Gyi tells Ni Ni that he will see her the next day.
(D.S.) Ko Gyi says to Ni Ni, "I will see you tomorrow."
 - (I.S.) He says that he was very sad the day before.
(D.S.) He says, "I was very sad yesterday."

Exercise No. (162)

Change the following from Indirect Speech to Direct Speech.

- Htay Htay said that she was going to Pyin-Oo-Lwin with her father.
- The policeman told the little girl that he would take her to her house.
- Aung Aung said that he liked his cat Shwe War.
- U Pwa said that he did not like English food very much.
- Ko Ko told Ni Ni that he did not believe her.
- The boy said that he was very hungry.
- Yi Yi said that she would not do her work.
- U Su said that he hoped it would not rain the next day.
- The teacher told her pupils that she had taught them that lesson.
- John told Mary that he could not go to school with her.
- Aung Aung said that he was very fortunate.
- Kyi Kyi said that she was very ill the day before.
- U Hlaing said that he had never been there before.
- Nyi Nyi told Yi Yi that he would come to her as soon as he could.
- The man said that he would not buy the house.
- He told me that he wanted to speak to me.
- She tells me that she is ready to go with me.
- Nilar said that she had been shopping all the morning.
- Nwe Lay tells Sandi that they should always try their best.
- Shwe Zin tells Win Aung that he has been smoking too much.

Exercise No. (163)

Change the following from Indirect Speech to Direct Speech.

- Ko Tun said that he had read that book.
- Nyo Nyo said that she would go to Mandalay the next day.
- Nyunt Win told his lover that she had deceived him.
- Than Than told Aung Aung that she didn't believe a word he was saying.
- She told me that she could speak English.
- He told me that he went to his class every day.
- Ni Ni told him that they had plenty of time to do their work.
- Nwe Lay told me that she would take me to her house.
- She told Tun Tun that she had written him a long letter.
- Aung Aung said that he loved his father very much.
- He said that that book was difficult for him.
- U Win said that he had to go to the dentist every day.
- The traveller said that he would go to the shop before it closed.
- Ko Kyaw told Sandi that he hoped she could decide what she wanted to do.
- Ko Ko tells Thanda that he can never talk easily with her.
- He tells her that he will examine her on the work she has done.
- I tell Win Win that I want to save her from making the mistake that I made.
- She said that the brothers were so alike and she could not tell one from the other.
- Our father told us that when he advised us to do that, he was speaking from experience.
- The teacher tells me that if she were in my place, she would wait for a time.

QUESTION မေးခွန်းပါစာမျှားကို DIRECT SPEECH ပြောင်းနည်း။

- asked, inquired တို့ကို ဖြတ်ပြီး
 - ပြောခံရသူပါလျှင် say to, said to
 - ပြောခံရသူမပါလျှင် say, said လို့ပြောင်းပါ။
- if, whether, whether ... or not စသည်တို့ပါရင်ဖြတ်ပြီး : " " ထည့်ပါ။

3. ရိုးရိုးဝါကျကို မေးခွန်းဝါကျပုံစံ ပြန်ပြောင်းပါ။
 4. ပြောစကားအတွင်းမှာရှိတဲ့ ကြိယာတွေ၊ နာမ်စားတွေကို လိုအပ်သလို ပြောင်းပါ။
 5. that ကို this, those ကို these ... etc. စသည်ဖြင့် စကားလုံးတွေကို ပြန်ပြောင်းပေးပါ။

- ၁၈၇ 1. (I.S.) He **asked** the girl **if** she was waiting for her friend.
 (D.S.) He **said to** the girl, "Are you waiting for your friend?"
2. (I.S.) He **asked** me **if** I was very busy.
 (D.S.) He **said to** me, "Are you very busy?"
3. (I.S.) She **asked if** that box was made of wood.
 (D.S.) She **said**, "Is this box made of wood?"
4. (I.S.) She **asked** Wai Wai **if** she would come the next day.
 (D.S.) He **said to** Wai Wai, "Will you come tomorrow?"
5. (I.S.) She **asked** me **if** I could play the piano.
 (D.S.) She **said to** me, "Can you play the piano?"
6. (I.S.) I **asked** Than Than **if** she should speak like that.
 (D.S.) I **said to** Than Than, "Should you speak like this?"
7. (I.S.) She **asked** U Ni **if** he would give her what she wanted.
 (D.S.) She **said to** U Ni, "Will you give me what I want?"
8. (I.S.) Daw Mya **asked** Htay Htay **if** she had washed that shirt.
 (D.S.) Daw Mya **said to** Htay Htay, "Have you washed this shirt?"
9. (I.S.) The teacher **asked** us **whether** we had put the books on the table.
 (D.S.) The teacher **said to** us, "Have you put the books on the table?"
10. (I.S.) U Sein **asked** the cook **whether** she had cooked the food or not.
 (D.S.) U Sein **said to** the cook, "Have you cooked the food or not?"
11. (I.S.) Zin Mar **asked** Kyaw Kyaw **if** he liked tea.
 (D.S.) Zin Mar **said to** Kyaw Kyaw, "Do you like tea?"
12. (I.S.) Win Mar **asked** her father **if** he bought a new house.
 (D.S.) Win Mar **said to** her father, "Do you buy a new house?"

13. (I.S.) Kyaw Thu **asks** Nilar *if* she loves him.
 (D.S.) Kyaw Thu **says to** Nilar, "Do you love me?"
14. (I.S.) Ko Lay **asks if** I hate him.
 (D.S.) Ko Lay **says**, "Do you hate me?"
15. (I.S.) Ko Gyi **asked if** I caught the bird.
 (D.S.) Ko Gyi **said**, "Do you catch the bird?"
16. (I.S.) Nu Nu **asked** Su Su why she was crying.
 (D.S.) Nu Nu **said to** Su Su, "Why are you crying?"
17. (I.S.) The officer **asked** me where I was born.
 (D.S.) The officer **said to** me, "Where are you born?"
18. (I.S.) She **asked** him why he had killed her cat.
 (D.S.) She **said to** him, "Why have you killed my cat?"
19. (I.S.) Si Si **asked** what was the cause of my bad temper.
 (D.S.) Si Si **said**, "What is the cause of your bad temper?"
20. (I.S.) U Su **asks** when I will go to the market.
 (D.S.) U Su **says**, "When will you go to the market?"
21. (I.S.) He **asked** how I went to Mandalay.
 (D.S.) He **said**, "How do you go to Mandalay?"
22. (I.S.) She **asks** when I usually go to bed.
 (D.S.) She **says**, "When do you usually go to bed?"
23. (I.S.) She **asked** when I wrote that book.
 (D.S.) She **said**, "When do you write this book?"
24. (I.S.) Nwe Ni **asked** Paw Oo where he had hidden her slippers.
 (D.S.) Nwe Ni **said to** Paw Oo, "Where have you hidden my slippers?"
25. (I.S.) Thida **asked** Nilar how she would solve that problem.
 (D.S.) Thida **said to** Nilar, "How will you solve this problem?"

Exercise No. (164)

Change the following from Indirect to Direct Speech form.

1. Mary asked John if he was going to school.
2. Nwe Nwe asked Sandi if she was very happy.
3. Aung Lwin asked Ni Ni if she was ready to come with him.
4. U Sein asked Phyu Phyu if she was giving a party that week.
5. Daw Lay asked U Saw if he was angry with her.
6. U Nyo asked his wife if his children had gone to school.
7. The teacher asked her pupils if they had done their homework.
8. The traveller asked me if I had heard the news.
9. Wai Wai asked Mar Mar if she had bought a new hat.
10. The officer asked the clerk if he had finished his work.
11. Thein Thein asked Ko Zaw if he could repair the watch.
12. Htar Htar asked Ko Moe if he would help her that day.
13. He asked Moe Moe if she would be there at noon.
14. Ko Naing asked Myint Myint if she would give him a present.
15. Ohn Ohn asked Ko Myo if she would try to please his mother.
16. Mar Mar Aye asked Hla Htut if he could play the piano very well.
17. He asked her if she lived in that house.
18. Than Than asked Ko Nyi if he tried to be in time that day.
19. San San asked Thida if she wrote essays regularly.
20. Win Win asked Tun Tun if he really came from Pyin-Oo-Lwin.



Exercise No. (165)

Change the following from Indirect to Direct Speech form.

1. He asked how the rich should help the poor.
2. He asked me why I could do difficult exercises correctly.
3. He asked Daw Lay why she did all her housework.
4. Tun Tun asks Thida why she always goes about without an umbrella.
5. U Tun asked me how long I could stay with him.
6. Thuzar asked Nyo Maung when he would buy her a diamond ring.
7. She asked me why I had come there.
8. He asked her when she had known the truth.

9. They asked U Chit when he would build a new house.
10. U Zaw asked Daw Nyein where she had bought a piece of land.
11. We ask the villagers where they will dig a well.
12. He asked the girl when she would come.
13. The pupils asked the teacher what they should study for the examination.
14. The passenger inquired what time the train for Mandalay left.
15. He asked the boy what he saw when he peeped through the keyhole.
16. U Phyu asked Ni Ni which of the two girls was her sister.
17. She asked me what I was doing at the station.
18. U Hlaing asked Than Than when she had learnt those exercises.
19. My friends asked me where I had bought that beautiful longyi.
20. Aye Aye asked Yin Yin where she spent her holidays the previous year.

IMPERATIVE (အမိန့်ပေး၊ တောင်းခံမှု၊ တော်ဝင်) ပါတကျပျားကို DIRECT SPEECH ပြောင်းရန်။

1. order, beg, request စသည်တို့ပါရင် ဖြတ်ပြီး - ပြောခံရသူမပါရင် say, said - ပြောခံရသူပါရင် say to, said to ပြောင်းပါ။
2. to, not to တို့ကို ဖြတ်ပြီး , “ ” ထည့်ပါ။
3. to ကို ဖြတ်ပြီးရင် to နောက်က ကြိယာ (verb) နဲ့ ပြန်စပါ။
4. not to ကို ဖြတ်ရင် Don't ထည့်ပေးပါ။
5. ပြောင်းသင့်တဲ့ (နာမ်စား၊ ကြိယာ၊ စကားလုံး) ဆွဲကို ပြန်ပြောင်းပါ။

- ပုံစံ 1. (I.S.) He ordered **to go** to bed.
(D.S.) He said, “**Go** to bed.”
2. (I.S.) He ordered **not to go** to bed.
(D.S.) He said, “**Don't go** to bed.”
3. (I.S.) She ordered me **to look** at her.
(D.S.) She said to me, “**Look** at me.”

4. (I.S.) She ordered me **not to look** at her.
(D.S.) She said to me, "**Don't look** at me."
5. (I.S.) He requested her **to give** him a cup of milk.
(D.S.) He said to her, "**Give** me a cup of milk."
6. (I.S.) He requested her **not to beat** him.
(D.S.) He said to her, "**Don't beat** me."
7. (I.S.) The robber ordered the rich man **to give** him all the money.
(D.S.) The robber said to the rich man, "**Give** me all the money."
8. (I.S.) The rich man begged the robber **not to kill** him.
(D.S.) The rich man said to the robber, "**Don't kill** me."
9. (I.S.) He ordered me **not to look** out of the window.
(D.S.) He said to me, "**Don't look** out of the window."
10. (I.S.) She requests Aung Aung **not to follow** her.
(D.S.) She says to Aung Aung, "**Don't follow** me." (OR)
She says to Aung Aung, "**Please don't** follow me."

Exercise No. (166)

Change the following from Indirect to Direct Speech form.

1. He ordered me to go and get him a packet of cigarettes.
2. Marlar requested Nu Nu to show her the way.
3. The old man begged her to give him some food.
4. She requested me to give her a piece of good advice.
5. He requested her to pack her bag in time.
6. He requested me not to look at her like that.
7. The teacher advises us not to hope to get everything we want from life.
8. She requested me not to switch the light on.
9. They ordered the girl not to run away.
10. The captain ordered the soldiers not to march through the forest.
11. The doctor advised me not to sleep before 10 o' clock.
12. She requested me to come to her on time.

13. She requested me not to come to her every day.
14. She requested me to put the light out.
15. I requested Ni Ni not to laugh at what I said.
16. The boy requested his mother not to prevent him from speaking.
17. She requested him to tell her about his work.
18. The patient requested the nurse to come and see him the next day.
19. Our mother ordered me to go and sit beside my sister.
20. The teacher ordered me to go in [REDACTED]

When we report statements, we often use *that*, but we can sometimes leave it out:

You told me (that) you were working today.
Ben promised (that) he wouldn't be late.

When we leave out *that*, we sound less formal.

OXFORD PRACTICE GRAMMAR (PAGE. 250)

JOHN EASWOOD

Compare:

"I'm here on holiday." She said she was there on holiday.
 "I'll see you tomorrow." He said he would see me the next day.

The way these words change depends on the situation. For example, if someone was speaking yesterday and they said "*I'll see you tomorrow*", we could now say *He said he would see me today*.

THE HEINEMANN ENGLISH GRAMMAR (PAGE. 124)
 DIGBY BEAUMONT & COLIN GRANGER

After *ask*, we often use an object (e.g. *Ken*, *me*) to say who was asked.

I asked *Ken* if he was cold.
 He asked *me* why I'd said that.

THE HEINEMANN ENGLISH GRAMMAR (PAGE. 126)
 DIGBY BEAUMONT & COLIN GRANGER

It is not always necessary to change the verb when you use reported speech. If you are reporting something and you feel that it is still true, you do not need to change the tense of the verb:

Direct : Tom said, "New York is bigger than London."
 Reported : Tom said (that) New York is (or was) bigger than London.
 Direct : Ann said "I want to go to New York next year."
 Reported : Ann said (that) she wants (or wanted) to go to new York next year.

Notice that it is also correct to change the verb into the past. But you must use a past tense when there is a difference between what was said and what is really true. Study this example situation:

You met Ann. She said "Jim is ill". (Direct speech)

Later that day you see Jim playing tennis and looking well. You say:

"I'm surprised to see you playing tennis, Jim. Ann said that you were ill." (not 'that you are ill', because he isn't ill)

ENGLISH GRAMMAR IN USE (PAGE. 96)
 RAYMOND MURPHY

SEQUENCE OF TENSES

SEQUENCE OF TENSES

ကာလများ၏ အစီအစဉ်

Clause (ဝါကျပိုင်း) နှစ်ခုရှိတဲ့၊ ဝါကျအမျိုးအစား နှစ်မျိုးရှိပါတယ်။ Compound sentence နဲ့ Complex sentence တို့ ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

Sequence of Tenses (ရေးသားနည်း) စည်းကမ်းချက်တွေဟာ Complex sentence တွေရဲ့သာ သက်ဆိုင်ပါတယ်။ Compound sentence တွေရဲ့ မသက်ဆိုင်ပါ။

Complex sentence တိုင်းမှာ Clause နှစ်ခုရှိပါတယ်။

1. Principal clause (Main clause) = ပဓာနဝါကျပိုင်းနဲ့
2. Subordinate clause = ခိုခိုဝါကျပိုင်း တို့ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. I eat rice because I am hungry.
(Main clause) (Sub: clause)
 2. He tried hard as he wanted to pass the examination.
(Main clause) (Sub: clause)

ခဲဒီလို clause နှစ်ခုရှိတဲ့ (complex) ဝါကျတစ်ကြောင်းကို ရေးတော့မယ်ဆိုရင် clause နှစ်ခုလုံးမှာရှိတဲ့ ကြိယာတွေရဲ့ ကာလ (tense) ကို သတိပြုပြီး ရေးရပါတယ်။

- * Main clause မှာရှိတဲ့ ကြိယာဟာ Present Tense (သို့) Future Tense လား (သို့မဟုတ်)
- * Main clause မှာရှိတဲ့ ကြိယာဟာ Past Tense လားဆိုတာ အရင်ဆုံး သတိပြုရပါတယ်။ ပြီးတော့မှ Subordinate clause ရဲ့ ကြိယာကို သတိပြုပြီး တွဲဖက် ရေးသားရပါတယ်။
- * Main clause မှာ ရှိတဲ့ ကြိယာဟာ Present Tense (သို့) Future Tense ဆိုရင်
- * Subordinate Clause မှာရှိတဲ့ ကြိယာဟာ ဘယ်ကာလမဆို ဖြစ်နိုင်ပါတယ်။ ဖိုလိုချင်တဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်ပေါ် မူတည်ပြီး ရေးရပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ

| Main clause | Subordinate clause |
|-------------------------|---|
| I eat rice | 1. because I <i>am</i> hungry. 2. because I <i>was</i> hungry. 3. because I <i>shall be</i> hungry. |
| I <i>shall eat</i> rice | 1. because I <i>am</i> hungry. 2. because I <i>was</i> hungry. 3. because I <i>shall be</i> hungry. |

❖ **Main clause** မှာရှိတဲ့ ကြိယာဟာ **Past Tense** ဆိုရင် **Subordinate clause** မှာ ရှိတဲ့ ကြိယာကိုလဲ **Past Tense** နဲ့ ရေးရပါတယ်။ (သို့သော် ခြွင်းချက်တွေတော့ ရှိပါတယ်။)

ဥပမာ

| Main clause | Subordinate clause |
|-------------------|------------------------------|
| I <i>ate</i> rice | because I <i>was</i> hungry. |

ကဲ ... ဧည့်ကမ်းချက်ကလေးတွေကို လေ့လာကြည့်ကြရအောင်

RULE 1
စဉ်းကမ်းချက် [၁]

ဝါကျ (complex sentence) တစ်ခုအတွင်း၊ ပဓာန ဝါကျပိုင်း (Principal clause)က ကြိယာကို (Past Tense) အတိတ်ကာလနဲ့ ရေးရင်၊ မှီခိုဝါကျပိုင်း (Subordinate clause)က ကြိယာကိုလဲ (Past Tense) အတိတ်ကြိယာနဲ့ ရေးသားရပါတယ်။

1. They *knew* that I *was* innocent.
ကျွန်တော် အပြစ်မရှိကြောင်း သူတို့သိပါတယ်။
2. We *drank* water because we *felt* thirsty.
ကျွန်တော်တို့ ရေငတ်သောကြောင့် ရေသောက်ကြတယ်။
3. He *ate* rice as he *felt* hungry.
ဆာလို့ (သောကြောင့်) သူထမင်းစားတယ်။

Exercise No. (167)

Rewrite the following sentences choosing the correct form of the verbs given in parentheses.

ကွင်းထဲမှာပေးထားတဲ့ ကြိယာပုံစံအမှန်ကို ရွေးချယ်ပြီး ဝါကျများကို ပြန်ရေးပါ။

1. U Tun said that she (will/would) be given some books.
2. The poor woman said that she (can/could) not buy the new dress.
3. He asked me what time it (is/was).
4. The girl told me that her name (is/was) Sanda.
5. I didn't know where they (live/lived).
6. The teacher said that we (may/might) go home.
7. U Sein said that he (has/had) seen his old friend.
8. The judge found out that he (is/was) guilty.
9. He thought it (is/was) going to rain.
10. He saw that the clock (has/had) stopped.
11. The students tried hard that they (may/might) succeed.
12. I was so tired that I (can/could) hardly stand.
13. I was sitting when the telephone bell (rings/rang) again.
14. We thought we (will/would) be late for school.
15. She never thought that she (will/would) see her brother again.

Exercise No. (168)

Remembering the rule covering the "Sequence of Tenses", change each of the following sentences to past time.

အောက်ပါဝါကျများကို Past Tense ပြောင်းပါ။

1. Our father says he may be late.
(Our father said he might be late.)
2. She swears she has never loved the other boys before.
3. We hope we will pass the examination.
4. He says he cannot do the homework.
5. U Nyunt says he is very busy.
6. I think she is innocent.
7. I am certain the teacher will punish the naughty boy.
8. The newspaper says the weather today will be hot.

- 9. She says she cannot speak English.
- 10. I think I may finish my work by three o' clock.
- 11. She doesn't think she will succeed.
- 12. He promises that he will not tell lies again.
- 13. She says that she has a bad cold.
- 14. The boy says that he has known the girl.
- 15. I am sure that she will come tomorrow.
- 16. She promises that the error will not occur again.
- 17. I buy the book because it is interesting.
- 18. She weeps because she is sad.
- 19. We are certain that prices will go up soon.
- 20. The merchant says that prices are sure to rise.

Exercise No. (169)

Change the following sentences from the past to the present tense.
အောက်ပါဝါကျများကို Past Tense မှ Present Tense သို့ပြောင်းပါ။

- 1. She said she loved her father.
(She says she loves her father.)
- 2. I did not think he would pass the examination.
- 3. Did she say she would come?
- 4. Did they promise they would tell the truth?
- 5. Did you think it would rain heavily?
- 6. I was sure U Phyu was honest.
- 7. The judge declared that the prisoner was guilty.
- 8. The newspaper said it would rain today.
- 9. She said she could not understand what I meant.
- 10. He said he would leave for Pwin-Oo-Lwin.
- 11. She said her father was U Han.
- 12. We hoped we might reach home in time.
- 13. He said he had done the homework.
- 14. He said he would bring the book tomorrow.
- 15. The girl complained that she had a headache.
- 16. She promised that she would never go with him.
- 17. She said her father was a doctor.
- 18. They thought that she would buy a car.
- 19. He said he was too tired to walk.
- 20. The girl said she was old enough to go to school.

EXCEPTIONS ခြွင်းချက်များ

Exception (1)

ခြွင်းချက် (၁)

မဏနဝါကျပိုင်း: Principal clause ထဲက (main verb) ကို အတိတ်ကြိယာပုံစံ (Past Tense) နဲ့ ရေးထားပေမယ့် Subordinate clause မှီခိုဝါကျမှာ ဖော်ပြချင်တဲ့ အကြောင်းအရာဟာ ...

- "ယောကျာ်းဖြစ်လေ့ရှိတဲ့ အကြောင်းတွေ"
- "အမှန်တရားတွေ"

ဆိုရင်တော့ မှီခို ဝါကျပိုင်းက ကြိယာကို Present Tense နဲ့ပဲ ရေးရပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ

- 1. He *learnt* at school that the earth goes round the sun.
ကျောင်းမှာ သင်ယူခဲ့ရတာက အတိတ်ကဖြစ်ရပ် ခါကြောင့် Past tense ကို သုံးတယ်။
ကမ္ဘာက နေကို ပတ်တယ်ဆိုတဲ့ အကြောင်းအရာကတော့ အမှန်တရား၊ ခါကြောင့် Present Tense နဲ့ ရေးရပါတယ်။
- 2. I *was told* that his grandmother is hard of hearing.
သူ့အဖွား နားလေးတယ်ဆိုတာ ကျွန်တော့်ကိုပြောခဲ့တယ်။
(ပြောခဲ့တာက အတိတ်က၊ ခါကြောင့် Past Tense ၊ သူ့အဖွား နားလေးတာက တော့ အမှန်တရား၊ အမှန်တရား၊ ခါကြောင့် Present Tense)
- 3. The teacher *taught* me that unity is strength.
"ညီညွတ်ခြင်းသည်အင်အား" ဖြစ်သည်လို့ ဆရာကသင်ပေးခဲ့တယ်။
(သင်ပေးခဲ့တာကအတိတ်က၊ ခါပေမယ့် "ညီညွတ်ခြင်းသည် အင်အားဖြစ်သည်" ဆိုတာက အမှန်တရား။)

Exception (2)

ခြွင်းချက် (၂)

မဏနဝါကျပိုင်းက ကြိယာကို Past Tense နဲ့ရေးရင် ကျွန်ကြိယာကို (Past Tense) နဲ့ ရေးလိုက်ပေမယ့် (Subordinate clause) မှီခိုဝါကျပိုင်းကို နှိုင်းယှဉ်မှုပြ စကားလုံးတွေဖြစ်တဲ့ "as, than, as well as" တို့နဲ့ အစပြုပြီး နှိုင်းယှဉ်ရေးသားထားတာဆိုရင်တော့ အဲဒီဝါကျပိုင်း အပိုင်းမှာရှိတဲ့ ကြိယာကို Present Tense, Past Tense, Future Tense သင့်ရာနဲ့ ရေးသား ပြပါမယ်။

ဥပမာ

1. Ko Tu *was* not so fat as he is now.
ကိုတူးဟာ အရင်က ခုလောက် မဝဘူး။
(အရင်က မဝတာက အတိတ်ကဖြစ်ခဲ့တဲ့ ဖြစ်ရပ်၊ ဒါကြောင့် Past Tense နဲ့ ရေးရပါတယ်။ ခုလောလောဆယ် ဝနေတာက ခုဖြစ်နေတဲ့ဖြစ်ရပ်၊ ဒါကြောင့် Present Tense နဲ့ ရေးရပါတယ်။)
2. U Chit *was* not so rich as he is now.
3. I *loved* my lover better than I *love* myself.
ပိုပြီးရှင်းသွားအောင် အောက်ကဇယားလေးကို လေ့လာကြည့်ပါ။

| Main clause | Subordinate clause |
|----------------------------|--|
| He <i>learnt</i> Chemistry | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. better than he <i>learns</i> Physics. 2. better than he <i>learnt</i> Physics. 3. better than he <i>will learn</i> Physics. |
| He <i>learnt</i> Chemistry | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. as well as he <i>learns</i> Physics. 2. as well as he <i>learnt</i> Physics. 3. as well as he <i>will learn</i> Physics. |

Exception (3)

မြှင်းချက် (၃)

- (Subordinate clause) မှီခိုပါကျကို အဆက်ပုဒ် "since" နဲ့ စပြီးရေးထားမယ်ဆိုရင်တော့
- Principal clause ပစာန ဝါကျပိုင်းက ကြိယာကို Present Perfect Tense
 - Subordinate clause မှီခိုပါကျပိုင်းက ကြိယာကို Past Tense နဲ့ ရေးရပါတယ်။

ဘာကိုချုပ်

- Since နောက်က ကြိယာကို Past Tense
- ပစာန ကြိယာကို Present perfect

ဥပမာ

1. We *have been* poor since our father died.
အဖေ သေကတည်းက ကျွန်တော်တို့ ဆင်းရဲသွားတာ။
(အဖေကတော့ အတိတ်တစ်ချိန်က သေခဲ့တာ။ ဒါကြောင့် Past Tense နဲ့ ရေးရတယ်။ ဆင်းရဲတာကတော့ အဖေသေကတည်းက ယခုပြောနေတဲ့ အချိန် အထိ အကျိုးဆက်ရှိနေသေးတယ်။ ဒါကြောင့် Present Perfect Tense သုံးပါတယ်။)
Principal clause = We have been poor.
Subordinate clause = since our father died.

2. I haven't eaten any meat since I was a boy.
ကလေးဘဝကတည်းက အသားမစားဘူး။
(ကလေးဘဝ ဖြစ်ခဲ့တာက အတိတ်က ဖြစ်ရပ်၊ ယခု လူကြီးဖြစ်နေပေမယ့် အသားမစားဘူးဆိုတဲ့ ဖြစ်ရပ်က ဆက်လက်ရှိနေတုန်း၊ အကျိုးဆက်ရှိနေတုန်း။)
3. I haven't had time to read the newspaper since I was ill.
ဖျားကတည်းက သတင်းစာ မဖတ်ရသေးဘူး။
(ဖတ်ဖို့ အချိန်မရဘူး။) (မဖတ်နိုင်ဘူး။)
(ဖျားတာက အတိတ်တစ်ချိန်က သတင်းစာဖတ်ဖို့ အချိန်မရသေးတာက ခုထိ။)

Exercise No. (170)

Insert the correct tense of the verb in the following.

အောက်ပါ ကွက်လပ်များတွင် မှန်ကန်သော ကြိယာပုံစံဖြင့် ဖြည့်ပါ။

1. (discover) Newton that the force of gravitation makes apple fall.
2. (move) Galileo maintained that the earth round the sun.
3. (be) Our father said that honesty always the best policy.
4. (be) Euclid proved that the three angels of a triangle equal to two right angles.
5. (rise) The teacher taught us that the sun in the east.
6. (bathe) The girl said that she twice a day.
7. (be) I was told that your mother a school teacher.

- 8. (be) Mother taught me that character strength.
- 9. (be) The child was taught that fire hot.
- 10. (float) The child knew that ice in water.
- 11. (help) I helped her more than I my own children.
- 12. (value) He valued his friendship more than he mine.
- 13. (see) I then saw him oftener than I him now.
- 14. (love) She loved you better than she me.
- 15. (be) The old man was not so weak as he now.
- 16. (do) They did not do it like as we it now.
- 17. (live) I here since my father died.
- 18. (be) He knew that the road under water.
- 19. (come) He said that I should go when he
- 20. (spend) Her mother asked where she the night.

RULE 2
စဉ်းတမ်းချက် [၂]

Principal clause အတွင်းမှာ ရှိတဲ့ ပမာဏ ကြိယာဟာ Present Tense (သို့) Future Tense ဖြစ်နေရင်တော့ ကျန်ကြိယာတွေကို သင့်သလို (Present, Past, Future) ရေးနိုင်ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ**
- 1. I think she is honest.
(ခုပြောနေတဲ့အချိန်မှာ သူမဟာ ရိုးသားတယ်လို့ထင်ကြောင်း ဖော်ပြတယ်။)
 - 2. I think she was honest.
(အတိတ်တစ်ချိန်က သူမဟာ ရိုးသားခဲ့တယ်လို့ထင်ကြောင်း ဖော်ပြတယ်။)
 - 3. I think she will be honest.
(နောင်အနာဂတ်ကာလမှာလဲ ရိုးသားဦးမှာပဲလို့ ထင်ကြောင်း ဖော်ပြတယ်။ ကြိုတင်ပြီး ယုံကြည်ထင်မြင်ထားတာ။)

| Main clause | Subordinate clause |
|-----------------|--|
| 1. I think | 1. she is honest. 2. she was honest. 3. she will be honest. |
| 2. I will think | 1. she is honest. 2. she was honest. 3. she will be honest. |
| 3. She say | 1. she tells the truth. 2. she told the truth. 3. she will tell the truth. |
| 4. She will say | 1. she tells the truth. 2. she told the truth. 3. she will tell the truth. |

CONJUNCTION OF PURPOSE

အောက်မှာဖော်ပြထားတဲ့ ဝါကျလေးတွေထဲက ကြိယာတွေကို သတိပြုမှတ်သားပါ။

- 1. He tries hard (so) that he may pass the examination.
စာမေးပွဲ အောင်မြင်စေရန် (အတွက်) သူကြိုးစားတယ်။
main verb = present
dependent verb = present
- 2. He will try hard so that he may pass the examination.
စာမေးပွဲ အောင်ဖို့အတွက် သူကြိုးစားလိမ့်မယ်။
main verb = future tense
dependent verb = present
- 3. He tried hard so that he might pass the examination.
စာမေးပွဲ အောင်မြင်စေရန် သူကြိုးစားခဲ့တယ်။
main verb = past tense
dependent verb = past tense

(A) THAT, SO THAT, IN ORDER THAT

Subordinate clause မှီခိုပါကျပိုင်းကို ရည်ရွယ်ချက်ပြ အဆက်ပုဒ်တွေ (conjunction of purpose) ဖြစ်တဲ့ that, so that, in order that တို့နဲ့ အစပြုရေးသားထားတာ ဆိုရင်တော့ ...

- main verb ကို present tense တို့ future tense တို့နဲ့ ရေးထားရင် ကျန်ကြိယာ ကို "may" နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ရေးသားပါ။
- main verb ကို past tense နဲ့ ရေးထားရင် ကျန်ကြိယာကို "might" နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ရေးသားပါ။

1. I give him some money so that he **may** buy new clothes.
2. I will give him some money so that he **may** buy new clothes.
3. I gave him some money so that he **might** buy new clothes.

(B) LEST

lest = (ဖြစ်မည်) စိုးရွံ့ - စိုးရိမ်ရွံ့၊ မ(ဖြစ်) စေရန် subordinate clause မှီခိုပါကျပိုင်းကို "lest" နဲ့ အစပြု ရေးသားထားတယ်ဆိုရင်တော့ ...

- Main clause မှာ ဘာ Tense နဲ့ပဲရေးရေး
- ကျန်ပါကျပိုင်းက (lest နောက်က) ကြိယာကို should နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ရေးသားရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. I try hard lest I should fail in the examination.
စာမေးပွဲကျမှာစိုးရွံ့ (မကျစေရန်) ကျွန်တော် ကြိုးစားပါသည်။
 2. I tried hard lest I should fail in the examination.
စာမေးပွဲကျမှာစိုးရွံ့ (မကျစေရန်) ကျွန်တော် ကြိုးစားခဲ့ပါသည်။
 3. I will try hard lest I should fail in the examination.
စာမေးပွဲကျမှာစိုးရွံ့ (မကျစေရန်) ကျွန်တော် ကြိုးစားပါမည်။
 4. He runs quickly lest he should miss the train.
ရထားမမီမှာစိုးရွံ့ သူ လျင်မြန်စွာ ပြေးသည်။
 5. He ran quickly lest he should miss the train.
ရထားမမီမှာစိုးရွံ့ သူ လျင်မြန်စွာ ပြေးခဲ့သည်။
 6. He will run quickly lest he should miss the train.
ရထားမမီမှာစိုးရွံ့ သူ လျင်မြန်စွာ ပြေးလိမ့်မည်။

(C) ADJECTIVE CLAUSE

- Main clause မှာရှိတဲ့ ကြိယာကို Present Tense (သို့) Past Tense ဘယ်ကာလနဲ့ပဲ ရေးထား၊ ရေးထား ...
- Subordinate clause ဟာ Adjective clause ဖြစ်နေမယ်ဆိုရင်တော့
- Adjective clause ထဲက ကြိယာဟာ ဆိုလိုချင်တဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်ပေါ်မူတည်ပြီး၊ ဘယ်ကာလနဲ့မဆို ရေးသားနိုင်ပါတယ်။

| Main clause | Subordinate clause |
|---|--|
| 1. I love the girl | 1. who tells the truth. 2. who told the truth. 3. who will tell the truth. |
| 2. I loved the girl | 1. who tells the truth. 2. who told the truth. 3. who will tell the truth. |
| ကျွန်ုပ်တို့သည် အမှန်ကိုပြောသော (ပြောခဲ့သော၊ ပြောမည်ဖြစ်သော) မိန်းကလေးကို ရှာဖွေသည် (ချစ်ခဲ့သည်)။ | |
| 1. I go to the place | 1. where he lives. 2. where he lived. 3. where he will live. |
| 2. I went to the place | 1. where he lives. 2. where he lived. 3. where he will live. |
| ကျွန်ုပ်တို့သည် သူ့နေသော (နေခဲ့သော၊ နေမည့်) နေရာသို့ သွားသည်။ (သွားခဲ့သည်)။ | |

Exercise No. (171)

Insert the correct tense of the verb in the following.

1. (may) I gave him the book so that he study the subject at home.
2. (may) I will explain the matter in order that he understand my wishes.
3. (get) I hope I better by tomorrow.
4. (try) If he, he will succeed.

5. (ask) He me where I go.
6. (sleep) When he, he usually dreams.
7. (visit) When they go to town, they their mother.
8. (hear) When children loud noises, they are frightened.
9. (shout) When the teacher is angry, he at the pupils.
10. (stay) Whenever they go to town, they in that hotel.
11. (bark) The dog as soon as it hears a noise.
12. (wash) Before he eats, he his hands.
13. (say) Before she goes to bed, she her prayers.
14. (finish) If she her work, she will go to town.
15. (try) Unless you you will lose.
16. (get) If you you will lose.
17. (visit) Three years have passed, since I your town.
18. (say) He there will be no trouble.
19. (be) You will think that we not interested in our lessons.

Exercise No. (172)

Insert the correct tense of the verb in the following.

1. (think) I that he is here.
2. (be) I sorry that you can't come.
3. (say) He that he would come.
4. (be) There can be no doubt that he wrong.
5. (can) The box was so heavy that I not move it.
6. (feel) He was so tired that he asleep.
7. (can) It was such a heavy one that I not move it.
8. (run) He with such a speed that I could not catch him.
9. (believe) He that his father is right.
10. (meet) They talked about old times whenever they each other.
11. (see) The robbers felt worried when they the policeman.
12. (arrive) They reached the station just as the train
13. (tell) He them about the accident after he recovered.
14. (feel) After she had taken her medicine, she much better.

15. (like) You may eat whatever you
16. (ride) He as swiftly as he could.
17. (run) They because they were in a hurry.
18. (come) She to see me as often as she can.
19. (die) My mother was sixty seven years old when she
20. (fail) He did his best and yet he

Exercise No. (173)

Insert the correct tense of the verb in the following.

1. (think) I that he would come out first.
2. (reach) The train left before I the station.
3. (do) He used to do better than he now.
4. (know) I did what I was right.
5. (talk) He was such a brilliant student that the teachers still about him.
6. (be) Life is short but love long.
7. (want) That is not what they
8. (say) They laughed at what I
9. (expect) I that she will come.
10. (have) The more you, the more you want.
11. (dislike) He who likes borrowing paying.
12. (wait) Everything comes to those who
13. (buy) Fools build houses and wise men them.
14. (help) God helps those who themselves.
15. (can) Lend only what you afford to lose.

CONDITIONS

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

IF အကယ်၍ ... လျှင်

အကယ်၍ ငါ့မှာသာ ပိုက်ဆံတွေ အများကြီးရှိရင်၊ စိန်လည်ဆွဲကြီး ဝယ်ပစ်လိုက်မယ်။
အကယ်၍ ငါသာ ငှက်ကလေးတစ်ကောင်ဖြစ်ခဲ့ရင် ငါ့ချစ်သူဆီ ပျံသွားမှာပဲ။
အကယ်၍ မင်းသာ ခေါက်ဆွဲကြော်ဝယ်လာမယ်မှန်းသိရင် ငါထမင်းစားမထားပါဘူးကွာ။

။သည်ဖြင့် အခြေအနေ အကြောင်းအရာတစ်ရပ်ပေါ်မူတည်ပြီး အခြားအခြေအနေတစ်ရပ် ကို လုပ်မယ်၊ မလုပ်ဘူး (သို့မဟုတ်) အခြား အခြေအနေတစ်ရပ် ဖြစ်ပျက်မယ်၊ မဖြစ်ပျက်ဘူးလို့ ဖော် ပြတဲ့ ဝါကျကလေးတွေကို (Conditional Sentences) လို့ ခေါ်ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. If you try hard, you will pass the examination.
အကယ်၍ မင်းသာ ပြင်းပြင်းထန်ထန် ကြိုးစားရင် စာမေးပွဲအောင်လိမ့်မယ်။
 2. If he were a tiger, he would kill me.
သူသာ ကျားကြီးတစ်ကောင်ဖြစ်ခဲ့ရင် သူ့ငါ့ကို သတ်လိမ့်မယ်။
 3. If you had telephoned me, I would have waited for you.
မင်းသာ ငါ့ကို တယ်လီဖုန်းဆက်ခဲ့ရင် မင်းကိုငါ စောင့်နေမှာပေါ့။
(မင်းဖုန်းမဆက်လို့ ငါမစောင့်)

ဆီလို အခြေအနေပြ (Conditional Sentence) တိုင်းမှာ နှစ်ပိုင်းရှိပါတယ်။

1. If နဲ့ အစပြုပြီးရေးတဲ့ ဝါကျပိုင်းကို If-clause (Dependent clause) လို့ ခေါ်ပါတယ်။
2. ကျန်တဲ့ ဝါကျပိုင်းကိုတော့ Main clause လို့ ခေါ်ပါတယ်။
If you try hard } = If-clause
You will pass the }
examination } = Main clause

If-clause နဲ့ Main clause ကို ရှေ့နဲ့နောက် နေရာပြောင်းပြီး ရေးဖွဲ့လို့လဲရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
- If you try hard, you will pass the examination. (OR)
You will pass the examination, if you try hard.

Conditional Sentence တွေကို အမျိုးအစားအားဖြင့် (၃) မျိုး ခွဲခြားထားပါတယ်။

1. Future Possible Conditions.
အနာဂတ်ကာလမှာ တကယ်ဖြစ်ပျက်နိုင်မယ့်အခြေအနေ။
2. Present Unreal Conditions.
ယခု (ပစ္စုပ္ပန်) ကာလမှာ အမှန်တကယ်မဟုတ်တဲ့ အမှန်တကယ် မဖြစ်ပျက်တဲ့ အခြေအနေ
3. Past Unreal Conditions
ပြီးခဲ့တဲ့ (အတိတ်) ကာလမှာ အမှန်တကယ်မဟုတ်ခဲ့တဲ့ အမှန်တကယ် မဖြစ်ပျက်ခဲ့တဲ့ အခြေအနေတို့ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

FUTURE POSSIBLE CONDITIONS (TYPE - 1)

အခြေအနေ အဖြစ်အပျက်တစ်ခုပေါ်မူတည်ပြီး၊ အခြားအခြေအနေ အဖြစ်အပျက်တစ်ခုဟာ အနာဂတ်ကာလမှာ ဖြစ်ပျက်မယ်၊ မဖြစ်ပျက်ဘူးလို့ ဖော်ပြတဲ့ ဝါကျတွေကို (Future Possible Condition) လို့ ခေါ်ပါတယ်။

အဲဒီဝါကျမျိုးမှာ

If-clause ဝါကျပိုင်းမှာရှိတဲ့ ကြိယာကို **Present Tense** နဲ့ ရေးသားရပါတယ်။
Main Clause ဝါကျပိုင်းမှာရှိတဲ့ ကြိယာကို **will (သို့) shall (သို့) can** နဲ့တွဲဖက် ရေးသားရပါတယ်။

အောက်မှာဖော်ပြထားတဲ့ ဝါကျလေးတွေကို လေ့လာကြည့်ပါ။

1. If it rains, we will not go to the park.
အကယ်၍ မိုးရွာရင်တော့ တို့ ပန်းခြံကိုသွားမယ်မဟုတ်ဘူး။
2. If the weather is fine, we will go to the park..
အကယ်၍ မိုးလေဝသ သာယာရင် တို့ ပန်းခြံကို သွားကြမယ်။
3. If it does not rain, we will go on a picnic.
အကယ်၍ မိုးသာမရွာရင် တို့ ပျော်ပွဲစားထွက်ကြမယ်။
4. If I have time tomorrow, I will visit you.
မနက်ဖြန်မှာ အချိန်သာရရင် ငါ မင်းဆီကို လာလည်မယ်။

5. If he has enough money, he will buy a car.
အကယ်၍ သူ့မှာသာ လုံလောက်တဲ့ပိုက်ဆံရှိရင် ကားတစ်စီးဝယ်မှာပဲ။
6. If you attend class regularly, you will learn much English.
မင်းသာ အတန်းမှန်မှန်တက်ရင် အင်္ဂလိပ်စာ အများကြီးတတ်လိမ့်မယ်။
7. If they leave early, they will get there in time.
အကယ်၍ သူတို့သာ စောစောလေး ထွက်သွားရင် အဲဒီနေရာကိုအချိန်မီရောက်လိမ့်မယ်။

PRESENT UNREAL CONDITIONS (TYPE - 2)

ယခု (ပစ္စုပ္ပန်) ကာလမှာ၊ အခြေအနေ အဖြစ်အပျက်တစ်ခုဟာ တကယ်မဖြစ်ပျက်ဘူး။ ဒါပေမယ့် အကယ်၍များ ဖြစ်ပျက်ရင် ... လို့ မှန်းဆတင်စားပြောဆိုတဲ့ ဝါကျတွေဖြစ်ပါတယ်။ အဲဒီ (Present Unreal Condition) ဝါကျမှာ ...

If clause ဝါကျပိုင်းမှာရှိတဲ့ ကြိယာကို **Past Tense** နဲ့ ရေးသားရပါတယ်။
Main clause ဝါကျပိုင်းမှာရှိတဲ့ကြိယာကို **would (သို့) should (သို့) could** နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ရေးသားရပါတယ်။

အောက်မှာ ဖော်ပြထားတဲ့ ဝါကျလေးတွေကို လေ့လာကြည့်နို့။

1. If I had the money, I would buy a new car.
ငါ့မှာသာ ပိုက်ဆံရှိရင် ကားအသစ်တစ်စီးဝယ်မှာပဲ။
ငါ့မှာ (တကယ်က) ပိုက်ဆံမရှိဘူး။ ဒါကြောင့် ကားအသစ်လဲ မဝယ်နိုင်ဘူးလို့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်ရတယ်။
2. If he studied harder, he would pass the examination easily.
သူသာ ပိုပြီးကြိုးစားလေ့လာရင် စာမေးပွဲကို လွယ်လွယ်ကူကူအောင်မှာပဲ။
(ဒါပေမယ့် တကယ်တမ်းကျတော့ မကြိုးစားဘူးလို့ ဆိုလိုတယ်။)
3. If I were King, you would be Queen.
ငါသာ ဘုရင်ဖြစ်ရင် မင်းလဲမိဖုရားဖြစ်မယ်။
(အခုတော့ ငါကလဲ ဘုရင်မဟုတ်တော့ မင်းလဲ မိဖုရားမဟုတ်တော့ဘူးပေါ့... လို့ ဆိုလိုတယ်။)
4. If he knew how to drive, he would buy a car.
သူသာ ကားမောင်းတတ်ခဲ့ရင် ကားတစ်စီး ဝယ်မှာပဲ။
(တကယ်တမ်းကျတော့ ကားမောင်းတတ်လို့ မဝယ်ဘူး... လို့ ဆိုလိုတယ်။)

- 5. If I didn't live so far away, I would walk to school every day.
 ငါသာ အဝေးကြီးမှာ နေနေတာ မဟုတ်ဘူးဆိုရင် ကျောင်းကို နေ့တိုင်းလမ်းလျှောက်ပြီးသွားမှာပဲ။
 (တကယ်တမ်းကျတော့ ကျောင်းနဲ့အဝေးကြီးမှာ နေနေရတဲ့အတွက် လမ်းလျှောက်ပြီး သွားလို့မရဘူးလို့ ဆိုလိုတယ်)

သတိပြုမိ

ဒီဝါကျတွေမှာ ကြိယာကို Past Tense နဲ့ ရေးထားပေမယ့်၊ အမှန်တကယ်အားဖြင့် အတိတ်က အကျိုးဆက်ပြတ်တဲ့ (Past Tense) ဖြစ်ရပ်တွေကို ရည်ညွှန်းဖော်ပြတာ မဟုတ်ပါဘူး။ ယခုလောလောဆယ်ကာလမှာ ရှိနေ၊ ဖြစ်နေတဲ့ အခြေအနေတစ်ရပ်ပေါ်မူတည်ပြီး မှန်းဆတင်စားပြောဆိုတဲ့ ဖြစ်ရပ်ကိုသာ ရည်ညွှန်းဖော်ပြတာ ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

PAST UNREAL CONDITIONS (TYPE - 3)

အတိတ်ကာလတုန်းက အခြေအနေ အဖြစ်အပျက်တစ်ခုဟာ တကယ်မဖြစ်ပျက်ခဲ့ဘူး၊ ဒါပေမယ့် အကယ်၍များ ဖြစ်ပျက်ခဲ့ရင်လို့ မှန်းဆတင်စားပြောဆိုတဲ့ဝါကျတွေ ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။ အဲဒီ (Past Unreal Condition) ဝါကျမှာ ...

- **If-clause** ဝါကျပိုင်းမှာရှိတဲ့ ကြိယာကို **Past Perfect Tense** နဲ့ ရေးသားရပါတယ်။
- **Main clause** ဝါကျပိုင်းမှာရှိတဲ့ကြိယာကို **would have (သို့) should have (သို့) could have + V3** နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ရေးသားရပါတယ်။

အောက်မှာ ဖော်ပြထားတဲ့ ဝါကျလေးတွေကို လေ့လာကြည့်စို့။

- 1. If I had known about this yesterday, I would have bought the books.
 အကယ်၍ ဒီကိစ္စကို မနေ့ကသာ သိခဲ့ရင် စာအုပ်တွေကို ဝယ်ပြီးပြီပေါ့။
 (မသိခဲ့လို့၊ မဝယ်ခဲ့မိတာလို့ ဆိုလိုပါတယ်။)
- 2. If it had not rained so hard, we would have been able to make a trip.
 အကယ်၍ မိုးသာ သံသံမဲမဲ မရွာခဲ့ရင် တို့တစ်တွေ ခရီးထွက်နိုင်ခဲ့မှာ။
 (မိုးသည်းလို့ ခရီးမထွက်နိုင်ခဲ့ဘူးလို့ ဆိုလိုတယ်)

- 3. If I had received an invitation, I would have gone with you to the wedding.
 အကယ်၍ ငါသာ ဖိတ်စာတစ်စောင်လောက် ရခဲ့ပြီးရင်၊ မင်းနဲ့အတူ မင်္ဂလာဆောင်ကို သွားပြီးပြီပေါ့။
 (ဖိတ်စာ မရလို့၊ မသွားခဲ့ရဘူးလို့ဆိုလိုတယ်)
- 4. If I had had enough money, I would have bought new clothes.
 အကယ်၍ ငါမှာသာ ပိုက်ဆံလုံလုံလောက်လောက် ရှိခဲ့ရင် အင်္ကျီအစားသစ်တွေ ဝယ်ပြီးပြီပေါ့။
 (ပိုက်ဆံမရှိလို့၊ မဝယ်ခဲ့ရဘူးလို့ ဆိုလိုတယ်)
- 5. If the weather yesterday had been fine, we would have gone on a picnic.
 အကယ်၍ မနေ့က မိုးလေဝသဟာ သာယာခဲ့ရင် တို့တွေ ဖျော်ပွဲစားထွက်ပြီးပြီပေါ့။
 (မိုးလေဝသ မသာယာလို့ မထွက်ခဲ့ရဘူးလို့ ဆိုလိုတယ်)
- 6. If yesterday had been a holiday, we would have gone to the pagoda.
 အကယ်၍ မနေ့ကသာ အားလပ်ရက်ဖြစ်ခဲ့ရင် တို့တွေ ဘုရားကိုသွားပြီးပြီပေါ့။
 (မနေ့က အားလပ်ရက် ရုံပိတ်ရက်မဟုတ်၍ မသွားခဲ့နိုင်လို့ ဆိုလိုပါတယ်။)
- 7. If I had known you were waiting for me, I would have hurried to get here.
 အကယ်၍ မင်းစောင့်ဆိုင်းနေတယ်ဆိုတာကို ငါသာသိခဲ့ရင် ဒီနေရာကို ငါအမြန်လာ ပြီးပြီပေါ့။
 (စောင့်နေမှန်း မသိလို့ မလာခဲ့ရဘူးလို့ ဆိုလိုပါတယ်)

သတိပြုမိ

ဒီဝါကျတွေမှာဆိုလိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်သွားကို ဆန့်ကျင်ဘက်သဘော ကောက်ယူရမယ့် (implied negative) သဘောရှိကြောင်း သတိပြုရပါမယ်။

A conditional sentence consists of two parts - the condition (or If clause) and the answer to it. Most conditions fall into three forms. These three forms are:
 1. Future - Possible (Present Tense - answered by future tense)
 If you study hard, you will learn English quickly.

A conditional sentence consists of two parts - the condition (or if clause) and the answer to it.

Most conditions fall into three forms. These three forms are:

1. Future - Possible (Present Tense - answered by future tense)
If you study hard, you will learn English quickly.
2. Present - Unreal (Past Tense - answered by conditional)
If you studied hard (but you do not), you would learn English quickly.
3. Past - Unreal (Past Perfect - answered by past conditional)
If you had studied hard (but you did not), you would have learned English quickly.

GRADED EXERCISES IN ENGLISH (PAGE. 62)
(FOR THE FOREIGN BORN)

အထက်မှာ ဖော်ပြခဲ့တဲ့ Conditional Sentences ပုံစံ (၃) မျိုးကို အလွတ်ရနေအောင် လေ့လာပါ။ အလွတ်မရရင် ရောနှောစွာ ပဲထွေးဘတ်ပါတယ်။

Exercise No. (174)

Give the three conditional forms of each of the sentences below.

အောက်ပါ ဝါကျများကို Conditional ပုံစံ (၃) မျိုးလုံးနဲ့ ပြန်ရေးပြပါ။

E.g.

1. If he (study) hard, he certainly (succeed).
(a) If he studies hard, he will certainly succeed.
(b) If he studied hard, he would certainly succeed.
(c) If he had studied hard, he would have certainly succeeded.
2. If the rain (stop), I (go) to school.
3. If I (make) a mistake, I (try) to remedy it.
4. If I (find) the lost pen, I (give) it to you.
5. If he (study) his lessons well, he (pass) the examination.
6. If you (do) the same mistake again, the teacher (be) very angry.
7. If they (work) hard today, they (have) much money.
8. If the rich man (like) the house, he (buy) it.
9. If I (have) enough money, I (buy) a new car.
10. If I (am) hungry, I (eat) these fruits.
11. If you (sign) the agreement, I (let) you have the money.
12. If Hnin Hnin (be) here, she (know) the answer.

13. If the hat (suit) me, I (buy) it.
14. If the grass (need) cutting, I (cut) it.
15. If I (have) a typewriter, I (type) it myself.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (TYPE 1)

(If + present) + Future

Exercise No. (175)

Rewrite each sentence with the correct form of the verb given in brackets.

ဣဉ်အထွဉ်ရီ ကြိယာအရပ်အရပ် ပြောင်းပြီး အောက်ပါ ဝါကျများကို ပြန်လည်ရေးသားပါ။

- (Q) If the weather (get) colder, we will buy warm clothes.
- (A) If the weather gets colder, we will buy warm clothes.
- (Q) If I have enough money, I (buy) a diamond ring.
- (A) If I have enough money, I will buy a diamond ring.

1. If Aye Aye (call) me on the telephone, I will speak to her.
2. If you save your money, you (be) able to buy a house.
3. If you ask the teacher, she (tell) you the answer.
4. If you are kind to me, I (be) good to you.
5. I (pay) him well, if he does the work properly.
6. I (go) if you want me to.
7. If it (rain), we shan't have the picnic.
8. If I (receive) the news, I shall let you know.
9. You (see) the Shwedagon pagoda, if you go to Yangon.
10. If she (drink) that, it will kill her.
11. If they leave now, they (catch) the train.
12. If the dog (be) hungry, I will give it some food.
13. You (be) very cold if you, don't wear the thick coat.
14. If you are not more careful in the future, you (have) an accident.
15. If the weather (be) bad tomorrow, we will not go to the park.

Future Possible Condition (Type 1) ကို သေသေချာချာ လေ့လာပြီးပြီဆိုရင် အောက်မှာဖော်ပြထားတဲ့ လေ့ကျင့်ခန်းကလေးတွေကို ဖြေဆိုလေ့ကျင့်ကြည့်ပါဦး။

Exercise No. (176)

Fill the blanks with the most suitable form of the verb given in brackets.

- 1. (stop) If the rain , I shall go for a walk.
- 2. (be) If you lazy, you will not succeed.
- 3. (work) If she hard, she will pass her examination.
- 4. (call) If you him, he will come.
- 5. (eat) If you all these mangoes, you will be ill.
- 6. (go) If he into the garden, the dog will chase him.
- 7. (see) If I him, I will give him the books.
- 8. (have) If she the money, she will buy the diamond ring.
- 9. (find) If I your lost book, I shall telephone you at once.
- 10. (read) If you in bad light, you will ruin your eyes.
- 11. (buy) If she has much money, she new dresses.
- 12. (pass) If they study their lessons well, they the examination.
- 13. (be) If the war comes, the nation ready.
- 14. (try) If I am feeling tomorrow, I to eat some food.
- 15. (give) If I see her, I her your message.
- 16. (arrest) If the police catch the thief, they him.
- 17. (go) If you are late, I without you.
- 18. (be) If you turn out the lights, we in the dark.
- 19. (have) If you save your money, you much money.
- 20. (see) If i come, I you.
- 21. (not be) If you careful, you will break the glasses.
- 22. (not be) If she angry, she will not beat her children.
- 23. (not be) If I healthy, I will not go to Mandalay.
- 24. (not have) If I enough money, I will not buy a car.
- 25. (not eat) If you green mangoes, you will not be ill.
- 26. (not ask) If they the teacher, she will not explain it to them.
- 27. (not invite) If they me, I will not go to the party.
- 28. (not rise) If the river any higher, we will not have to move upstairs.
- 29. (not work) If you very hard, you will not be successful.
- 30. (not hear) If he about this, he will not be very furious.
- 31. (not make) If I do not have hot water, I the tea.
- 32. (not bite) If you do not beat the dog, it you.
- 33. (not be) If you start at once, you late for the train.

- 34. (not let) If the students come late, the teacher them in.
- 35. (not believe) If you tell more lies, I what you say.
- 36. (not be) If I don't have enough money, I able to buy a house.
- 37. (not work) If you don't pay her regularly, she for me at all.
- 38. (not get) If he takes his umbrella, he wet.
- 39. (not go) If the weather is bad, we on a picnic.
- 40. (not have) If the driver is careful, he an accident.
- 41. (not like) If you this longyi, I'll bring you another.
- 42. (you, buy) If you like this longyi, it?
- 43. (you, give) If you see him, him my message?
- 44. (you, eat) If I give you sweet mangoes, them at once?
- 45. (you, repay) If I lend you some money, when me?
- 46. (you, go) If it does not rain, on a picnic tomorrow?
- 47. (he, have) If the dog bites him, to go to the hospital?
- 48. (you, let) If she writes to you, me know?
- 49. (you, call) If you have time, me tomorrow?
- 50. (she, pass) If Aye Aye tries hard, the examination?

မှတ်ရန် (၁)

- * "If-clause" မှာရှိတဲ့ ကြိယာဟာ Present Tense ဆိုရင် ...
- * Main Cluase မှာရှိတဲ့ကြိယာကို will (သို့) shall နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ရေးသားရကြောင်း အပေါ်မှာ ရှင်းပြခဲ့ပြီးဖြစ်ပါတယ်။
- * တစ်ခါတစ်ရံ will ရဲ့အစား can တို့၊ may တို့နဲ့လဲ တွဲဖက်ရေးသားနိုင်ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
- 1. If my father comes, he can help us.
အဖေသာလာရင် တို့ကို ကူညီနိုင်မှာပဲ။
 - 2. If he has enough money, he may buy this car.
သူ့မှာသာ ပိုက်ဆံလုံလုံလောက်လောက်ရှိရင် ဒီကားကို သူ ဝယ် (ကောင်း) ဝယ်နိုင် တယ်။

- 3. If they leave early, they can get there on time.
သူတို့သာ အစောကြီး ထွက်(ခွာ) မယ်ဆိုရင် အဲဒီနေရာကို အချိန်မှန် ရောက်နိုင်တယ်။
- 4. If he knows the truth, he may be angry.
သူသာ အမှန်ကိုသိသွားရင် စိတ်ဆိုး(ချင်) စိတ်ဆိုးနိုင်တယ်။
- 5. If you do not waste your money, you can be rich.
မင်းသာ ပိုက်ဆံကို ဖြန်းမပစ်ရင် ချမ်းသာနိုင်တယ်။

Since both *can* and *may* often have a future significance they are frequently used in the "main" or "answer clause" of conditional statements instead of *will*.

REGENTS ENGLISH WORK BOOK II (PAGE. 112)

Present Tense with *may* or *can*

The future Tense (*shall/will*) when used in conditional sentences expresses a certain result. If instead of certainty we wish to express possibility, we must use *may* instead of *shall/will*.

e.g. If he starts now, he *will be* in time. (certain result)
If he starts now, he *may be* in time. (possible result)

"*may*" or "*can*" can also express permission ("*can*" is the most usual):

e.g. If you are in a hurry, you *can take* my car. (permission)

A PRACTICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR (PAGE. 164)

မှတ်စု (၂)

- * "If - clause" မှာ ရှိတဲ့ ကြိယာ Present Tense သာဆိုရင်
- * "Main clause" မှာ ရှိတဲ့ ကြိယာကို "will, shall, can, may တို့နဲ့ တွဲဖက် ရေးသား ရတယ်လို့ ဆိုပေမယ့်
- * "Main clause" အတွင်းမှာ ဖော်ပြရေးသားထားတဲ့ အကြောင်းအရာဟာ အမိန့်ပေး ဝါကျ၊ အမိန့်ပေး စေခိုင်း၊ ယန်ကြားတဲ့ ပုဒ်တွေ ဖြစ်နေရင် Main clause မှာ ရှိတဲ့ ကြိယာကို Present Tense နဲ့ပဲ ရေးသားရပါတယ်။

- ပုံစံ 1. If you want to pass the examination, study your lessons regularly.
စာပေးပွဲ တောင်ချင်ရင် စာမှန်မှန် ကျက်ပါ။
2. If you do not believe what they say, ask your father.
သူတို့ပြောတာကို မယုံရင်၊ မင်းအဖေကို မေးကြည့်ပါ။
3. If you want to be healthy, don't eat over - ripe fruits.
ကျန်းမာချင်ရင်၊ အမှည့်လွန်တဲ့ အသီးတွေ မစားနဲ့။
4. If you have much money, please lend me some.
မိလ္လာ ပိုက်ဆံအများကြီးရှိရင်၊ ငါ့ကို နည်းနည်းလောက် ချေးပါတာ။
5. If Aye Aye comes here, don't say anything to her about it
အေးအေးလာရင်၊ သူ(မ)ကို ဒါနဲ့ ပတ်သက်ပြီး ဘာမှ မပြောပါနဲ့။
6. If you find any mistakes on the paper, show them to the teacher.
စာရွက်ပေါ်မှာ အမှားတွေ တွေ့ရင်၊ ဆရာ့ကို သွားပြပါ။
7. If you do not understand, please ask the teacher.
မင်းမှားမလည်ရင် ဆရာ့ကို မေးပါ။

မှတ်စု (၃)

- * "If-Clause" အတွင်းမှာရှိတဲ့ ကြိယာဟာ Present Tense ဖြစ်နေပေမယ့်
- * Main Clause အတွင်းမှာ ဖော်ပြထားတဲ့ အကြောင်းအရာဟာ
 - အမှန်တရားတွေ
 - လုပ်လေ့လုပ်ထရှိတဲ့ အကျင့်စရိုက်ကို ဖော်ပြတာတွေ
 - သဘာဝ နိယာမတရား (natural laws) တွေ ဖြစ်မယ်ဆိုရင်တော့
- * Main Clause ထဲက ကြိယာကို Present Tense နဲ့ပဲ ရေးသားရပါတယ်။

ပုံစံ 1. My dog always barks if it hears strange sounds.
ထူးဆန်းတဲ့ (ထူးခြားတဲ့) အသံတွေကြားရင်၊ ကျွန်တော့်ခွေးက အပြတမ်းဟောင်တယ်။
(အကျင့်စရိုက်)

2. If I *am* free, I usually go to the pagoda.
ကျွန်တော်အားရင် ဘုရားကိုသွားလေ့ရှိတယ်။ (အကျင့်)
3. A mother is always happy, if her children are *clever*.
သားသမီးတွေ လိမ္မာရင် မိခင်ဟာ စိတ်ချမ်းသာတယ်။ (အမှန်တရား)
4. A teacher is always happy if his students study hard.
တပည့်တွေ ကြိုးစားရင် ဆရာက ကျေနပ်ဝမ်းသာတယ်။ (အမှန်တရား)
5. If water is heated, evaporation takes place.
ရေကို အပူပေးရင် အငွေ့ပျံ့မှုဖြစ်တယ်။ (သဘာဝ နိယာမတရား)

(a) Two present tenses instead of Present - (and) Future
Two present tenses are used to express natural laws and automatic results.
e.g. If you *heat* ice, it *turns* to water.
If we *are* cold, we *shiver*.

(b) Present tense with imperative.
In the first type of conditional sentence the main clause may contain an imperative instead of a future tense.
e.g. If you see him, tell him to *write* to me.
Don't go outside the harbour if the wind *is* very strong.

A PRACTICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR (PAGE. 164)

Exercise No. (177)

Fill the blanks with the most suitable form of the verb given in brackets.

1. (get) If you add 2 to 2, you 4.
2. (add) If the tea is too strong, some more water.
3. (make) If I a mistake, the teacher always finds it.
4. (ask) If you have any trouble with this lesson, it to the teacher.
5. (report) If a policeman sees anything unusual, he usually it.

6. (get) If the train gets to my station late, I to my office late.
7. (be) If he hungry, he is short tempered. It's his habit.
8. (say) Lay Lay usually gets angry if we anything about his weakness.
9. (be) If a person rich and healthy, he is happy.
10. (complain) If there is not enough rain in the rainy season, farmers always
11. (take) If you are ill, the medicine.
12. (lend) If you have some money, please me ten kyats.
13. (beat) If we do not do our homework, the teacher always us.
14. (telephone) If you find my lost purse, please me.
15. (look) If you don't understand this sentence, up the words in your dictionary.

In other cases, the present tense after "if" may indicate present time, not future. If so, various tense patterns are possible, but one is especially common.
Type 1 (a) : (if + present) + present
If anyone has ability, he is promoted.
This type indicates a regular occurrence.

PRACTICAL ENGLISH USAGE. (PAGE. 105)

မှတ်ချက် (၄)

"If-clause" အတွင်းမှာရှိတဲ့ ကြိယာကို will, shall နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ပြီးတော့
If you will have much money, you will buy a car.
If you will try hard, you will pass the examination. စသည်ဖြင့်
မရေးရပါဘူး။

In English, the Future Tense *must never be used* in the "if" clause.
PRACTICAL ENGLISH USAGE (PAGE. 105)

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (TYPE 2)

(If + Past) + Conditional

Exercise No. (178)

Rewrite each sentence with the correct form of the verb given in brackets.

ကွင်းအတွင်းရှိ ကြိယာကို ပုံစံအမှန်သို့ပြောင်းပြီး အောက်ပါဝါကျများကို ပြန်လည်ရေးသားပါ။

E.g

- 1. (Q) If I (have) much money, I would lend you.
- (A) If I *had* much money, I would lend you.
- 2. (Q) If she (know) all of the details, she would tell me.
- (A) If she *knew* all of the details, she would tell me.
- 3. (Q) If she (be) a boy, she would play football.
- (A) If she *were* a boy, she would play football.
- 4. (Q) If I were a tiger, I (kill) you.
- (A) If I were a tiger, I *would kill* you.
- 5. (Q) If she had more free time, she (go) to Ngapali.
- (A) If she had more free time, she *would go* to Ngapali.

- 1. If I (know) how to drive, I would buy a car.
- 2. If we (have) a good teacher, we would make more progress.
- 3. If Aye Mar (study) well, she would get better marks.
- 4. If they (invite) me, I would go to beach with them.
- 5. If she (have) more practice in conversation, she would speak English much better.
- 6. If he had a day off tomorrow, he (go) to the movies.
- 7. If they studied together, they (make) more progress.
- 8. If I had a good book, I (stay) at home and read.
- 9. Almost everyone (be) frightened, if they announced the news.
- 10. The world (be) a better place if there were no war and hatred.
- 11. If I (be) in your place, I would accept Aung Aung's offer.
- 12. The students (get) higher marks if they studied harder.
- 13. If I were you, I (be) very careful with my work.
- 14. If I had a car, I (drive) to Mandalay on my vacation.
- 15. If you asked me, I (help) you.

Exercise No. (179)

Fill the blanks with the most suitable form of the verb given in brackets.

- 1. If he (ask) me, I would help him.
- 2. If I (know) your address, I would write a letter to you.
- 3. If you (work) more slowly, you would not make so many mistakes.
- 4. If she (know) that it was wrong, she would not do it.
- 5. If they (sleep) under a mosquito net, they would not be stung so often.
- 6. I would take a trip to Mandalay if I (have) a car.
- 7. I would write one book after another if I (had) more time.
- 8. She would get better marks if she (work) harder.
- 9. He would take a trip to England, if he (speak) English well.
- 10. The students would pass the examination if they (spend) more time on their lessons.
- 11. If I had much money, I (buy) a house.
- 12. If you asked him, he (consider) it.
- 13. If I made a mistake, the teacher (punish) me.
- 14. If we do not understand him, U Kyaw Win (speak) more slowly.
- 15. If you studied these lessons carefully, you (understand) them clearly.
- 16. Your hens (lay) eggs for you if you fed them properly.
- 17. We (earn) more money if we worked harder.
- 18. The pupils (understand) their teacher if she spoke more carefully.
- 19. U Lwin (give) up teaching if he did not enjoy it so much.
- 20. I (ask) my teacher if I did not understand it.

Conditional Sentences (Type 2) လေ့ကျင့်ခန်းတွေမှာ If-clause အတွင်းရှိ ကြိယာကို Past Tense အတိတ်ကြိယာတွေဖြစ်ကြောင်း ရှင်းပြခဲ့ပြီးဖြစ်ပါတယ်။ Verb to be နဲ့ရေးမယ်ဆိုရင်တော့ V/be နဲ့ အတိတ်ကြိယာ "were" နဲ့ ရေးသားရပါတယ်။

In the case of the Verb to be, however, we must use a special (subjunctive) form in all "If-clause" of this type.

This form is as follows:

| | | |
|------|--------------------|-----------|
| (If) | I were | We were |
| | You were | You were |
| | (He, She, It) were | They were |

REGENTS ENGLISH WORK BOOK II (PAGE. 106)

Exercise No. (180)

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tenses.

1. If I (be) you, I would not go with her.
2. If she (be) not very busy, she would come with me.
3. If he (be) my father, I would ask him about it.
4. If today (be) Sunday, I would go to church.
5. If he (be) an actor, all the girls would admire him.
6. We would not have to work if today (be) a holiday.
7. If Tint Tint (be) my wife, I would slap her.
8. If she were my mother, I (tell) her the truth.
9. If I were a millionaire, I (buy) this house and car.
10. If he were a rich man, all of his friends (come) to him.
11. If she were more beautiful, she (be) very proud.
12. If I (be) not so tired tonight, I would not go to bed early.
13. If she (be) clever, she would never say such a thing.
14. If you were a fish, the cat (eat) you.
15. If she were a bird, she (fly) in the air.

သတိပြုရမည့်အချက်

If-clause ကြိယာထဲမှာ verb to be ကိုအမြဲတမ်း(were) နဲ့ပဲ ရေးရမယ်လို့လဲ တရားသေ၊ ပုံသေမှတ်မထားရပါဘူး။

စာရေးသူအနေနဲ့ လုံးဝမဖြစ်နိုင်တဲ့ အကြောင်းအရာကို တင်စားပြီး ပြောဆိုချင်တဲ့အခါ မဖြစ်တာကို ဖြစ်ခဲ့ရင်လို့ စိတ်ကူးယဉ်ပြီး ပြောဆိုချင်တဲ့အခါမှာတော့ "were" ကို သုံးရပါတယ်။

အဲဒီရည်ရွယ်ချက်နဲ့မှ မဟုတ်ဘဲ၊ အခြားအကြောင်းအရာ ကိစ္စတွေအတွက်ဆိုရင်တော့ were အစား was နဲ့လဲ တွဲဖက်ရေးသားနိုင်ပါတယ်။

အတိတ်က ပြီးခဲ့တဲ့ဖြစ်ရပ်တွေကို ဖော်ပြမယ်၊ ပြီးခဲ့တဲ့ အတိတ်ကာလကို တမ်းတမှန်းဆ ပြောဆိုမယ် (when you look back on the past and remember things that often happened) ဆိုရင်တော့ (genuine past tense) အတိတ်ကြိယာ was ကို သုံးရပါ တယ်။

ဥပမာ

When we were children, we lived by the sea. In summer, if the weather was fine, we would all get up early and go for a swim.

ENGLISH GRAMMAR IN USE (PAGE. 78)
RAYMOND MURPHY
CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

If an escaped slave was captured, he was immediately shot.

PRACTICAL ENGLISH USAGE (PAGE. 107)
(FOR OVERSEAS STUDENTS)
P. S. TREGIDGO

အခြားရည်ရွယ်ချက်တွေနဲ့ သုံးတဲ့အခါမှာလဲ If-clause ရဲ့နောက်က were မလိုက်ဘဲ was နဲ့ တွဲဖက် ရေးသားပုံလေးတွေကို သတိပြုလေ့လာကြည့်ပါဦး။

If the weather was fine (Past), I should go out. (Conditional)

AN INTERMEDIATE ENGLISH COURSE (PAGE. 48)
D. H. SPENCER AND A. S. HORNBY

I should not mind so much, if I was so busy.

A HANDBOOK OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR (PAGE. 218)
R. W. ZANDVOORT

ဆိုတဲ့ ဝါကျတွေမှာတော့ စိတ်ကူးယဉ်တင်စားတဲ့သဘော ရည်ရွယ်ချက်နဲ့ ရေးထားတာ မဟုတ်ပါဘူး။ ဒါကြောင့် was နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ရေးသားထားတာကို တွေ့ရပါလိမ့်မယ်။

"... We must remember that we very often use 'if' in a sentence without using a conditional tense."
"... When we use such conditional sentences to talk about things that may well happen or have happened the verbs behave just as freely with 'if' as with other common conjunctions, such as 'when' or 'because'."
IMPROVE YOUR ENGLISH (PAGE. 93)
D. Y. MORGAN

ဒါကြောင့် If- clause ရဲ့နောက်မှာ "were" နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ပြီး ရေးသားရမလား။ "was" နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ပြီး ရေးသားရမလားဆိုတာ စာရေးသူရဲ့ရည်ရွယ်ချက်နဲ့ ရေးသားတဲ့ အကြောင်းအရာ၊ ဖြစ်အပျက်ပေါ်မူတည်ပြီးတော့ပဲ ဆုံးဖြတ်ရပါတယ်။

ကဲ ... အောက်က ဝါကျလေး (၂) ကြောင်းကို ယှဉ်တွဲပြီး လေ့လာကြည့်ပါဦး။

1. If the children broke my pen, I should be very annoyed.
(IMPROVE YOUR ENGLISH)

ကလေးတွေသာ ငါ့မင်တံကို ချိုးပစ်ခဲ့ရင် ငါတော့ တော်တော်စိတ်အနှောင့်အယှက်ဖြစ်မှာပဲ ဆိုတဲ့ဝါကျမှာ ကလေးတွေက မင်တံကို တကယ်မချိုးသေးဘူး။ အကယ်၍ ချိုးခဲ့ရင်ဆိုတဲ့ ရည်ရွယ်ချက်နဲ့ broke ကို (Unreal Past) အနေနဲ့ ရေးထားတာ ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

2. If the children broke your pen, it was your fault for leaving it where they could play with it.
(IMPROVE YOUR ENGLISH)

ကလေးတွေက မင်းရဲ့မင်တံကို ချိုးပစ်ခဲ့ရင်လဲ ကလေးတွေ ကစားနိုင်လောက်တဲ့နေရာမှာ ထားခဲ့တာ မင်းရဲ့အပြစ်ပဲ။

ဆိုတဲ့ဝါကျမှာတော့ broke ကို (genuine past) အနေနဲ့ ရေးထားတာဖြစ်တယ်။ (imaginary event in the future) အနေနဲ့ ရေးထားတာ မဟုတ်ပါဘူး။

"If" နဲ့ ရေးတဲ့အခါ Conditional Tense နဲ့ သာမက အကြောင်းအရာ အဖြစ်အပျက်ပေါ်မူတည်ပြီး when, because စတဲ့ အခြား conjunction တွေလိုပဲ (လွတ်လွတ်လပ်လပ်) သင့်သလို ရေးနိုင်ပါတယ်။

ကဲ ... အောက်က ဥပမာလေးကိုလဲ လေ့လာကြည့်ပါဦး။

If Tom were there, he would help her.
(By using were instead of was the speaker implies that Tom isn't there.)
If Tom was at the party, he would help her.
(Implies that it is quite possible that he may have been there.)
There is practically no difference between "If I was" and "If I were" but the latter is preferred in imaginary suppositions.
A PRACTICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR (PAGE. 165)
(FOR FOREIGN STUDENTS)

ဒါကြောင့် If clause မှာ were ပဲ လိုက်ရမယ်ဆိုပြီး ပုံသေမမှတ်ရပါဘူး။ အကြောင်းအရာ အမျက်အလက်ပေါ်မူတည်ပြီး ကြိယာကို သင့်သလို တွဲဖက်ရေးသားရပါတယ်။

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (TYPE 3)
(If + Past Perfect) + Conditional Perfect

Exercise No. (181)

Rewrite each sentence with the correct form of the verb given in bracket.

ဣင်းအတွင်းရှိ ကြိယာကို ပုံစံအမှန်သို့ပြောင်းပြီး အောက်ပါဝါကျများကို ပြန်လည်ရေးသားပါ။
E.g

- 1. (Q) If you (go) there, you would have seen what I meant.
(A) If you *had gone* there, you would have seen what I meant.
- 2. (Q) If he (help) me, I would have done this work.
(A) If he *had helped* me, I would have done this work.
- 3. (Q) If she had studied more, she (pass) her examination,
(A) If she had studied more, she *would have passed* her examination.

- 1. If I (know) your telephone number, I would have called you.
- 2. If she had had time, she (go) with us.

3. We would have gone to the park if the weather (be) fine yesterday.
4. If yesterday (be) a holiday, all the offices would have been closed.
5. If you (do) as I told you, you would have succeeded.
6. If I (eat) too much, I would have been ill.
7. He would have come if you (call) him.
8. If she (leave) earlier, she would have caught the bus.
9. If you (wait), she would have come.
10. If I (see) you, I would have spoken to you.
11. If the travellers had been thirsty, they (drink) some water.
12. If you had taken a taxi, you (catch) the train.
13. We (go) to Ngapali if we had had the time.
14. If I had been in your place, I (tell) the truth.
15. If she had called me, I (be) glad to meet her.
16. The teacher wouldn't have punished the boy if he (tell) the truth.
17. You wouldn't have caught cold, if you (wear) the overcoat.
18. If I had known it was going to rain, I (bring) the umbrella.
19. If he (be) able to swim, he wouldn't have been drowned.
20. If you had come to me, I (give) it to you.

●

Exercise No. (182)

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tenses.

1. If you (tell) me the truth, I would not have punished you.
2. If I (know) your address, I would have come to you.
3. If he (study) at Yangon University, I should have met him there.
4. If they (pass) the tenth standard examination, they would have gone to University.
5. He would have bought a car if he (know) how to drive.
6. I would have believed it if I (see) it with my own eyes.
7. They would not have made so many mistakes if they (discuss) the plan in detail.
8. He would have been less angry if his daughter (tell) him the truth.
9. He would have become a famous writer if he (had) more luck.
10. I could have solved the problem if I (know) about this yesterday.

11. If I had known you were waiting for me, I (hurry) to get there.
12. If you had come along with them, you (see) a good show.
13. If I had received an invitation, I (go) to the party.
14. If she had thought that it was right, she (decide) to do it.
15. If your message had come, I (buy) this car.
16. All the passengers would have been killed if the driver (be) careless.
17. I (know) what to do if you had telephoned me.
18. She (be) a poor woman if she had married for love.
19. We (be) able to go on a picnic if it had not rained so hard.
20. If she had had the money, she (lend) it to me.

●

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (MIXED TYPES)

Exercise No. (183)

Put the verb in brackets into the correct tenses.

1. If taxes were reduced, people (be) very happy.
2. If you are cruel to your wife, she (leave) you.
3. If she had not done the homework, she (be) beaten by the teacher.
4. He would have come if he (be) free.
5. The whole world (be) in danger if an atomic war broke out.
6. If you do not give me back my diamond ring, I (call) the police.
7. The crops (fail) next year if we had no rain.
8. If you (stop) smoking, you will feel healthier.
9. What would you do if you (be) bitten by a snake?
10. If she sells her car, she (get) much money for it.
11. If we caught the 8:30 train, we (arrive) very early.
12. If I (be) you, I would not buy this book.
13. If he (be) angry, he will beat his children.
14. If she (have) much knowledge, she can solve the problem.
15. If he (have) good friends, he would not be in trouble.
16. If he doesn't work harder, he (fail) in the examination.
17. We (get) wet if it rains.
18. If he invites me, I (be) glad to go.
19. If the children don't come home early, their mother (get) angry.

20. If you (eat) these green mangoes, you would be sick.
21. If we had a big garden, we (grow) roses.
22. If she had a sewing machine, she (sew) her own clothes.
23. I would have gone to many places, if I (have) a car.
24. I would rule my people if I (be) a king.
25. If I had a magic carpet, I (fly) to the moon.
26. If she were an artist, she (paint) my picture.
27. If he were rich, he (go) round the world.
28. I would have lent you the money if I (know) you wanted it.
29. If I (have) an extra pen, I would have lent it to you.
30. She (stop) to talk to me if she had not been in such a hurry.

MODAL VERBS

MODAL VERBS

can, could, may, might, must, shall, should, will, would ဆိုတဲ့ စကားလုံးတွေကို Modal Verbs လို့ ခေါ်ပါတယ်။ သူတို့ကို Modal Auxiliaries လို့လဲ ခေါ်ပါတယ်။ Modal Verb တစ်လုံးချင်းကို အသေးစိတ် သေချာလာကြည့်ကြပါစို့။

CAN = နိုင်သည်။

၁။ တစ်စုံတစ်ခု ပြစ်ပျက်နိုင်သည်။ တစ်စုံတစ်ယောက်က တစ်စုံတစ်ရာကို ပြုလုပ်နိုင်စွမ်းရှိတယ် ဆိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့ သုံးပါတယ်။

Can is used to express possibility as well as ability.
ELEMENTARY EXERCISES (PAGE. 26)
A. - . HORNBY

- ဥပမာ 1. I can eat fish every day if I want to.
ငါသာ စားချင်ရင်၊ နေ့တိုင်း ငါးဟင်းစားနိုင်တယ်။
- 2. We can see the pagoda from our window.
ကျွန်တော်တို့ ပြတင်းပေါက်ကနေပြီး ဘုရားကို (ဖူး) တွေ့မြင်နိုင်တယ်။

၂။ can ဟာ Present Tense ဖြစ်ပေမယ့် အနာဂတ်ကာလ (Future Tense) ကို ရည်ညွှန်းပြီး တော့လဲ အသုံးပြုနိုင်ပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ We can hold another meeting tomorrow.
မနက်ဖြန်မှာ အစည်းအဝေးတစ်ခုကို ကျင်းပပြုလုပ်နိုင်ပါတယ်။

I'm afraid I can't come to your party next week.
နောက်အပတ်မှာ ကျင်းပမယ့် မင်းရဲ့ပါတီပွဲကို မလာနိုင်မှာစိုးတယ်။

ဒါပေမယ့် ပြုလုပ်နိုင်လိမ့်မယ်၊ ဆောင်ရွက်နိုင်လိမ့်မယ်လို့ အနာဂတ်ကာလရဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်ကို ပိုပြီးတိကျပေါ်လွင်အောင် ရေးချင်ရင်တော့ will (shall) be able to နဲ့ ရေးရပါတယ်။

e.g. I will be able to come to your party tomorrow.
The form can is only used in the future to express permission.
To express ability, therefore, we have only one form shall/will be able.

၃။ can ကို ခွင့်ပြုတဲ့သဘော (to express permission) နဲ့လဲ သုံးကြပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ

You can go home early today.

(i.e, you have my permission.)

ဒီနေ့ မင်းအိမ်ကို စောစောပြန်နိုင်တယ်။ (မင်းကိုငါ ပြန်ခွင့်ပြုတယ်။)

အဲဒီလို ခွင့်ပြုတဲ့သဘောနဲ့ဆိုရင် may နဲ့ သုံးသင့်တယ်လို့ ရှေးရိုးသဒ္ဒါဆရာတွေက ဖွင့်ဆိုပေမယ့် လက်တွေ့တကယ်အသုံးမှာတော့ ... can ကိုလဲ

အင်္ဂလိပ်လူမျိုးတွေ သုံးလေ့ရှိပါတယ်။ အထူးသဖြင့် အင်္ဂလိပ်စကားပြောမှာ သုံးကြပါတယ်။

In cases like this, "can" takes over the work of "may", English people, especially grammarians, object to this and say it is wrong, but it is often done that it must be accepted as idiomatic and correct, at least in the spoken English.
P. E. U (PAGE. 124)

"Can" has two main uses.
1. To express permission or possibility (= may)
e.g. You can go now.
2. To express ability or capacity (= know how to)
e.g. I can swim very well.
Future: 1. can
2. shall (will) be able to
Past: 1. could
2. could or was (were) able to
L. E. S. (PAGE. 45)

၄။ can ကို လက်ရှိလောလောဆယ် (in reference to ability which is limited to the present moment) အချိန်ကာလမှာ အလုပ်တစ်ခုကို လုပ်နိုင်တယ်လို့ ဖော်ပြချင်တဲ့ အခါမှာလဲ သုံးပါတယ်။

You can read this book right now.

ခုချက်ချင်းပဲ ဒီစာအုပ်ကို မင်းဖတ်နိုင်တယ်။

၅။ can ကို အတိတ်ကာလအတွက် ရည်ညွှန်းချက်သဘောနဲ့ ဘယ်တော့မှ မသုံးရပါဘူး။

၆။ can't help ကတော့ idiom ဖြစ်တယ်။ သူ့နောက်က ကြိယာကို -ing ပုံနဲ့ ရေးသားရပါ တယ်။ သူ့ရဲ့အတိတ်ကြိယာပုံစံက couldn't help ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ

I can't help laughing.

မရယ်ဘဲ မနေနိုင်ဘူး။

I can't help sleeping.

မအိပ်ဘဲ မနေနိုင်ဘူး။

They couldn't help watching television.

ရုပ်မြင်သံကြား မကြည့်ဘဲ မနေနိုင်ဘူး။

COULD = နိုင်ခဲ့သည်။

၇။ can ရဲ့ (Past Tense) အတိတ်ကြိယာ (လုပ်) နိုင်ခဲ့သည်ဆိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့ သုံးပါတယ်။

- see = မြင်သည်။
- hear = ကြားသည်။
- smell = အနံ့ရသည်။
- taste = အရသာခံစားသည်။
- feel = ထိတွေ့ခံစားသည်။
- understand = နားလည်သည်။
- remember = သတိရသည်။

ဆိုတဲ့ ကြိယာစကားလုံးတွေနဲ့ များသောအားဖြင့် တွဲဖက်ရေးသား သုံးနှုန်းလေ့ရှိပါတယ်။

1. When we went into the kitchen, we could smell burning.
မီးဖိုချောင်ထဲ ကျွန်တော်တို့ဝင်သွားတော့ ညော်နံ့ရတယ်။

- 2. When we woke up, we could hear a loud noise.
အိပ်ရာကနိုးတော့ ကျယ်လောင်တဲ့အသံကို ကျွန်တော်တို့ ကြားတယ်။
- 3. U Kyaw Win spoke very quickly but his wife could understand what he was saying.
ဦးကျော်ဝင်း စကားပြောတာ သိပ်မြန်တယ်။ ဒါပေမယ့် သူ့မိန်းမကတော့ သူ့ဘာပြောနေတယ်ဆိုတာ နားလည်တယ်။
- 4. I didn't know you could play the piano. (= you were able to)
မင်းစန္ဒရားတီးတတ်မှန်း ငါမသိခဲ့ဘူး။
- 5. I told him I could swim. (= I was able to)
ငါ ရေကူးတတ်တယ်လို့ သူ့ကို ပြောခဲ့တယ်။

၂။ could ကို can ရဲ့ အတိတ်ကြိယာအဖြစ်သုံးတာမျိုး Direct Speech ကနေ indirect Speech ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါ can ကို could သို့ ပြောင်းရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ 1. (D.S) She said, "I can buy this car."
(I. S) She said that she could buy that car.

၃။ could ကို Conditional Sentences ပုံစံ(၂)နဲ့ (၃) ရဲ့ Main Clause (Result Clause) အတွင်းမှာ ထားပြီးတော့လဲ သုံးပါတယ်။ စာမျက်နှာ (၆၁၃) မှာ အသေးစိတ် ဖြန့်ကြည့်ပါ။

- ဥပမာ 1. If he won a scholarship next year, he could be able to study abroad.
သူသာ ပညာသင် ဆောက်ပံ့ကြေးရခဲ့ရင် နိုင်ငံခြားကို ပညာသင်သွားနိုင်ခဲ့မှာ။
2. If he had left in time, he could have caught the train.
သူသာ အချိန်မီ ထွက်(ခွာ) ခဲ့ရင် ရထားမိမှာ။

၅။ could ဆိုတာ can ရဲ့ အတိတ်ကြိယာအဖြစ်နဲ့ သုံးဝယ်သုံးပြီး ပုံဆွဲမမှတ်ထားရပါဘူး။
can မှာ could ရော နှစ်မျိုးလုံးကို Present Tense ပစ္စုပ္ပန်ကာလအဖြစ်နဲ့ သုံးနိုင်ပါတယ်။

- (က) can နဲ့ သုံးရင် အလုပ်တစ်ခုကို လုပ်နိုင်တယ်။ တကယ်လဲ လုပ်တယ်လို့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်ရပါတယ်။
- (ခ) could နဲ့ သုံးရင် အလုပ်တစ်ခုကို လုပ်မယ်ဆိုရင်တော့ လုပ်နိုင်တယ်။ ဒါပေမယ့် အကြောင်းတစ်ခုခုကြောင့် မလုပ်ဘူးလို့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်ရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ 1. (a) I can buy vegetables at a shop near our house.
အိမ်နားကဆိုင်မှာ ဝယ်နိုင်တယ်။ (တကယ်လဲ ဝယ် နယ်)
- (b) I could buy vegetables at a shop near our house.
အိမ်နားကဆိုင်မှာ ဝယ်နိုင်တယ်။ (ဒါပေမယ့် မဝယ်ဘူး)

2. (a) I can take Mary to school by car every day.
မေရီကို ကားနဲ့ နေ့တိုင်း ခေါ်သွားနိုင်တယ် (တကယ်လဲခေါ်တယ်)
- (b) I could take Mary to school by car every day, but it is better for her to walk.
မေရီကို ကားနဲ့ခေါ်သွားနိုင်တယ်။ ဒါပေမယ့် လမ်းလျှောက်ပြီး သွားရင် ပိုကောင်းတာမို့ (ကားနဲ့မခေါ်ဘူး)လို့ဆိုလိုတယ်။

IMPROVE YOUR ENGLISH (P. 83-84)

၅။ can, could နှစ်လုံးလုံးကို အနာဂတ်အဓိပ္ပာယ် (Future Tense) နဲ့လဲသုံးနိုင်ပါတယ်။ အဓိပ္ပာယ်ကွာခြားမှုကတော့ အပေါ်နိပါတ် (၄) မှာ ဖော်ပြထားတဲ့ (Present Tense) တုန်းက အတိုင်းပါပဲ။

When we use "can" and "could" with Present Infinitive to speak about the Future, there is a similar difference in meaning.

When "can" is used, what can be done is possible and likely, when "could" is used, what can be done is possible but unlikely. Here are two more examples:

When we go to Mandalay we can go by air.
We could go to Mandalay by train but it will be quicker to fly.

IMPROVE YOUR ENGLISH (PAGE. 84)

၆။ could ကို အတိတ်တစ်ချိန်က အလုပ်တစ်ခုကို လုပ်နိုင်စွမ်းရှိတယ်။ ယခုပြောဆိုနေချိန်မှာတော့ မရှိတော့ဘူးဆိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့လဲ သုံးနိုင်ပါတယ်။

1. Until a short time ago, U Kyaw could read for a long time without getting a headache.

မကြာမီလေးအချိန်ထိ ဦးကျော်ဟာ စာကိုဆက်တိုက်ဖတ်နိုင်ခဲ့တယ်။ ဖတ်လို့ ခေါင်းတွေတာတွေ မကိုက်ဘူး။

(အခုတော့ မဖတ်နိုင်၊ ဖတ်ရင် ခေါင်းကိုက်လာတယ်လို့ ဆိုလိုတယ်။)

2. He can't play tennis very well now but he could play when he was younger.

အခုတော့ တင်းနစ်ကောင်းကောင်း မကစားနိုင်တော့ဘူး။ ဒါပေမယ့် ဒီထက် အသက်ငယ် တုန်းကတော့ ကစားနိုင်ခဲ့တယ်။

၇။ Could do ၊ Could have done

could (do) ကို can (do) ရဲ့ အတိတ်ကြိယာအဖြစ်နဲ့ သုံးတဲ့အကြောင်း အထက်မှာ ဖော်ပြခဲ့ပြီးဖြစ်ပါတယ်။ (သို့သော်) တစ်ခါတစ်ရံ ပစ္စုပ္ပန်ကာလ (Present) အနာဂတ်ကာလ (Future) အဓိပ္ပာယ်တွေနဲ့လဲ သုံးနိုင်ပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ - "What shall we do this evening?"

"We could go to the cinema."

ဒီနေ့ညနေ ဘာလုပ်ကြမလဲ။

ရုပ်ရှင်သွားနိုင်တာပေါ့။

- When you go to Mandalay, you could stay with your uncle.

မင်း မန္တလေးကိုရောက်တဲ့အခါ မင်းရဲ့ဦးလေး (ဆီမှာ) တည်းခိုနိုင်တာပေါ့။

ဒီဝါကျတွေကို can နဲ့လဲ အစားထိုးပြီး ရေးသားနိုင်ပါတယ်။

"Can" is also possible in these sentences.

"Could" is more unsure than "can".

E. G. IN USE (PAGE. 54)

၈။ could (do) ကို အနာဂတ်ကာလမှာ ဖြစ်နိုင်တဲ့ဖြစ်ရပ် (about possible future happenings) တွေ အတွက်လဲ သုံးကြပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ There could be another rise in the price of oil. (It is possible that there will be.)

နောက်ထပ် ဆီဈေးတက်နိုင်တယ်။

၉။ could ကို would be able to (ပြုလုပ်နိုင်လိမ့်မယ်) ဆိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့လဲ သုံးပါတယ်။

Sometimes "could" means "would be able to".

• Why doesn't Tom apply for the job?

He could get it.

• I don't know how she works 14 hours a day. I couldn't do it.

E. G. IN USE (PAGE. 54)

Could do ရဲ့ အတိတ်ကြိယာပုံစံဟာ Could have done ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။ အတိတ်က အလုပ်တစ်ခုကို လုပ်မယ်ဆိုရင် လုပ်နိုင်တယ်၊ အခွင့်အရေးရခဲ့တယ်။ ဒါပေမယ့် မလုပ်ဖြစ်ခဲ့ဘူးဆိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့ သုံးပါတယ်။

Why didn't Ko Tu apply for the job? He could have got it. (He had the ability to get it)

ဘာဖြစ်လို့ ကိုတွေးက ဒီအလုပ်ကို မလျှောက်တာလဲ၊ သူ ရနိုင်သားနဲ့။

(ရနိုင်တဲ့ အရည်အချင်း စွမ်းရည်ရှိတယ်)

Could (do) ၊ Could have (done)ရဲ့ ကွာခြားတဲ့ အသုံးအနှုန်းလေးတွေကို ယှဉ်းတွဲပြီး လေ့လာကြည့်ပါ။

1. (a) She *doesn't* want to stay with Linda. But she *could* stay with Linda.
 (b) She *didn't* want to stay with Linda. But she *could have stayed* with Linda.
2. (a) He *doesn't* want to help us. But he *could* help us.
 (b) He *didn't* want to help us. But he *could have helped* us.
3. (a) They *don't* want to lend us any money. But they *could* lend us some (money).
 (b) They *didn't* want to lend us any money. But they *could have lent* us some (money).

E. G. IN USE (PAGE. 55)

But if you mean that someone managed to do something in one particular situation, you have to use *was/were able* to. (not *could*).

The fire spread through the building very quickly but everyone *was able* (= managed) to escape. (not *could* escape)

They *didn't* want to come with us at first but in the end we *were able* (= managed) to persuade them. (not *could* persuade)

E. G. IN USE (PAGE. 52)

COULD နှင့် ABLE TO

အလုပ်တစ်ခုကို လုပ်နိုင်တဲ့အရည်အချင်း ရှိခဲ့တယ်။ ဒါပေမယ့် တကယ်လက်တွေ့မှာ မလုပ်ခဲ့ဘူးဆိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့ဆိုရင် *could* ကို သုံးရတယ်။

ဥပမာ They could build a house last year.
မနှစ်က သူတို့ အိမ်တစ်လုံးဆောက်နိုင်ခဲ့တယ်။ (ဒါပေမယ့် မဆောက် ခဲ့ဘူးလို့ ဆိုလိုတယ်။)

အလုပ်တစ်ခုကို လုပ်နိုင်တဲ့ အရည်အချင်းလဲရှိတယ်။ တကယ်ဖြစ်မြောက်အောင်လဲ လုပ်ခဲ့တယ်ဆိုရင် *was/ were able to* ကို သုံးရပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ They were able to build a house last year.
မနှစ်က သူတို့ အိမ်တစ်လုံးဆောက်နိုင်ခဲ့တယ်။ (တကယ်လဲ ဆောက်ခဲ့တယ် လို့ ဆိုလိုတယ်။)

MAY = နိုင်ချည်

၁။ တစ်စုံတစ်ခုကို ပြုလုပ်နိုင်ကြောင်း၊ ပြုလုပ်ခွင့်ရှိကြောင်း (ပြန်နိုင်ပြီ၊ သွားနိုင်ပြီ စသည်ဖြင့်) အခွင့် ပြုတဲ့သဘော။
(ပြန်နိုင်ပါပြီလား၊ သွားနိုင်ပါပြီလား စသည်ဖြင့်) အခွင့်တောင်းတဲ့သဘောအဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့ သုံးပါ တယ်။
ရေးသားပြောဆိုတဲ့ပါက အတွင်း အချိန်ပြပုဒ်ကို ဖော်ပြမထားရင်တော့ ယခုလောလောဆယ် ပြောဆို ရေးသားနေချိန်ကို ရည်ညွှန်းပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ May I go home?
ကျွန်တော် အိမ်ကိုပြန်ခွင့်ရှိပါပြီလား။ (ကျွန်တော့်ကို အိမ်ပြန်ခွင့်ပြုပါ)
You may go home.
မင်း အိမ်ကိုပြန်နိုင်ပါပြီ။ (ယခုပြောချိန်မှာ ပြန်ခွင့်ပေးတဲ့သဘော)

၂။ *May* ၏ အနာဂတ် ကာလ အသုံး
မရောက်ရှိသေးတဲ့ကာလ (Future) ကို ညွှန်ထားတဲ့ အချိန်ပြပုဒ်တွေနဲ့ ယှဉ်တွဲပြီး ရေးသားပြောဆို ရင်တော့ အနာဂတ်ကာလကို ရည်ညွှန်းပါတယ်။

You may go home at 4:30 this evening.
ညနေ လေးနာရီခွဲရောက်ရင် မင်းအိမ်ကိုပြန်နိုင်ပါပြီ။ (ကြိုပြီးခွင့်ပေးတာ)

၃။ အတိတ်ကာလမှာ ရရှိခဲ့တဲ့ ခွင့်ပြုမှု၊ ခွင့်တောင်းမှုတွေကို ဘယ်တော့မှ may နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ပြီး မသုံးရပါဘူး။ အတိတ်ကာလက ခွင့်ပြုမှုအကြောင်း ဖော်ပြချင်ရင် ...

- Nu Nu 'had permission to leave at 4:30 yesterday.
- Nu Nu was allowed to leave at 4:30 yesterday.

နုနုကို မနေ့က လေးနာရီခွဲမှာ အိမ်ပြန်ခွင့်ပြုခဲ့တယ်။ - စသည်ဖြင့် ရေးသားရပါမယ်။



၄။ အနာဂတ်ကာလမှာ တစ်ခုခုဖြစ်ချင်ဖြစ်လာနိုင်တယ်ဆိုတဲ့ ကြိုတင်မှန်းဆပြောဆိုတဲ့သဘောနဲ့လဲ may ကို သုံးနိုင်ပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ It may rain tomorrow.
မနက်ဖြန်မှာ မိုးရွာချင်ရွာနိုင်တယ်။



၅။ ပစ္စုပ္ပန်ကာလ (ယခုပြောဆိုနေချိန်) မှာ တစ်ခုခုဖြစ်ချင်ဖြစ်နိုင်တယ်၊ ဖြစ်ကောင်းဖြစ်နိုင်တယ်လို့ မှန်းဆပြောဆိုချင်ရင်လဲ may ကို သုံးနိုင်ပါတယ်။
အဲဒီလို သုံးချင်ရင် ကြိယာကို (- ing ပါတဲ့) Verb Phrase နဲ့တွဲဖက်ရေးသားရပါတယ်။ ဘယ်နေရာမှာ ဖြစ်ပျက်နိုင်တယ်ဆိုတဲ့ နေရာပြပုဒ်ကိုလဲ ဖော်ပြရေးသားရပါမယ်။

ဥပမာ It may be raining in Yangon right now.
ခုအချိန်ဆို ရန်ကုန်မှာ မိုးရွာချင်ရွာနေမှာ ...



၆။ အတိတ်ကာလမှာ တစ်ခုခုဖြစ်ကောင်းဖြစ်ခဲ့မှာပဲလို့ မှန်းဆပြောဆိုချင်ရင်တော့ may have + V3 ပုံစံနဲ့ ရေးရပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ It may have rained in Yangon yesterday.
ရန်ကုန်မှာ မနေ့က မိုးရွာကောင်း ရွာနိုင်ခဲ့တယ်။



MIGHT = နိုင်ခဲ့ပါပြီ

၀။ အဖြစ်အပျက် တစ်စုံတစ်ရာ၊ ဖြစ်ကောင်းဖြစ်လာနိုင်တယ်လို့ မှန်းဆပြောဆိုတဲ့သဘောနဲ့ might ကို သုံးပါတယ်။
ဘယ်အချိန်မှာ ဖြစ်ပျက်တယ်ဆိုတဲ့အချိန်ပြပုဒ်ကို ဖော်ပြမထားရင်၊ အနာဂတ်ကာလကို ရည်ညွှန်းပါတယ်။ တစ်ခါတစ်ရံ အလွန်နီးကပ်တဲ့ အနာဂတ်ကာလကို ရည်ညွှန်းပါတယ်။ တစ်ခါတစ်ရံ ကြုံတော့ လက်ရှိ လောလောဆယ် ပြောဆိုနေတဲ့ ကာလကို ရည်ညွှန်းပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ It might rain. (very near future)
မိုးရွာနိုင်တယ်(မကြာခင်တွင်ရွာတော့မယ်ထင်တယ်ဆိုပြီး မှန်းဆပြောဆိုတာ။)
Our grandfather, U Lay Myint, might need glasses. (right now)
ကျွန်တော်တို့အဘိုး ဦးလေးမြင့်အနေနဲ့ မျက်မှန်တော့ လိုမယ်ထင်တယ်။
(ယခုပြောဆိုနေတဲ့အချိန်မှာ လိုမယ်ထင်တယ်လို့ပြောတာ။)



၂။ ပစ္စုပ္ပန်ကာလ (ယခုပြောဆိုနေချိန်) မှာ တစ်ခုခုဖြစ်ချင်ဖြစ်နိုင်တယ်၊ ဖြစ်ကောင်းဖြစ်နိုင်တယ်လို့ မှန်းဆပြောဆိုချင်ရင်လဲ might ကို သုံးနိုင်ပါတယ်။ may နဲ့ သုံးပုံခြင်း အတူတူပဲဖြစ်တယ်။

ဥပမာ It might be raining in Yangon now.
ခုချိန်ဆို ရန်ကုန်မှာ မိုးရွာချင်ရွာနေမှာ။

အနာဂတ်အချိန်ပြပုဒ်တစ်ခုခုနဲ့တွဲဖက်ပြီး ရေးသားမယ်ဆိုရင်တော့ အနာဂတ်ကာလကို တိတိကျကျ ရည်ညွှန်းပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ It might rain tomorrow.
မနက်ဖြန်မှာ မိုးရွာနိုင်တယ်။ (ရွာချင်ရွာမယ်။)



၃။ အတိတ်ကာလမှာ တစ်ခုခုဖြစ်ကောင်းဖြစ်ခဲ့မှာပဲလို့ မှန်းဆပြောဆိုချင်ရင်တော့ might have + V3 ပုံစံနဲ့ ရေးရပါတယ်။ may နဲ့ သုံးပုံခြင်း အတူတူပဲဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ It might have rained in Yangon yesterday.
ရန်ကုန်မှာ မနေ့က မိုးရွာကောင်းရွာခဲ့နိုင်တယ်။

၄။ Direct Speech ကနေ Indirect Speech ကို ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါမှာတော့ might ကို may ရဲ့ အတိတ်ကြိယာအဖြစ် ပြောင်းလဲရေးသားရပါတယ်။

1. (D.S.) The teacher said to Thidar, "You may go home."
(I. S.) The teacher told Thidar that she might go home.
2. (D.S.) Yan Aung said to his wife, "I may be late."
(I. S.) Yan Aung told his wife that he might be late.

၅။ Clause (ဝါကျပိုင်း) ၂ ခုနဲ့ ဆက်စပ်ပြီး ရေးတဲ့ဝါကျတွေမှာ အဓိကဝါကျပိုင်းက ကြိယာ (Main Verb) က Past Tense ဖြစ်နေရင် ကျန်ဝါကျပိုင်းမှာ ရှိတဲ့ကြိယာကို might နဲ့ ယှဉ်တွဲ ပြီး သုံးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. I thought that she might come.
သူလာချင်လာမယ်လို့ ကျွန်တော်ထင်ခဲ့တယ်။
 2. They said that the colour might fade when it was washed.
ရေလျှော်လိုက်ရင် အရောင်ကျွတ်နိုင်တယ်လို့ ပြောတယ်။

MAY နဲ့ MIGHT

ယေဘုယျသဘောနဲ့ ပြောရင်တော့

- Might ဟာ May ရဲ့အတိတ်ကြိယာဖြစ်တယ်။
- May နဲ့ Might နှစ်လုံးစလုံးကို

- (a) permission = ခွင့်ပြုခြင်း
- (b) possibility = ဖြစ်နိုင်ချေရှိခြင်း (မသေချာမှု)
သဘောနဲ့ အသုံးပြုပါတယ်။

- ဒါပေမယ့် Might ကို May ရဲ့ အတိတ်ကြိယာသာဖြစ်တယ်လို့ တရားသေမှတ်မထားရပါဘူး။ Might ရဲ့ ပစ္စုပ္ပန်၊ အတိတ်၊ အနာဂတ်ကာလသုံးမျိုးလုံးရဲ့ အသုံးအနှုန်းကို အထက်မှာ ဆွေးနွေးခဲ့ပြီး ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

အောက်မှာဖော်ပြထားတဲ့ အသုံးအနှုန်းလေးတွေကို ထပ်မံပြီး လေ့လာကြည့်ပါဦး။
- May I use your phone?
- Might I use your phone?

ခင်ဗျားရဲ့တယ်လီဖုန်းကို သုံးခွင့်ပြုပါဗျာ ...လို့ ခွင့်တောင်းတဲ့သဘောနဲ့ သုံးတာချင်အတူတူပါပဲ။
သို့သော်လည်း Might နဲ့ သုံးတာက ပိုပြီး ယဉ်ကျေးတဲ့သဘောကို ဆောင်ပါတယ်။

"Might I?" can be used instead of "May I?" when asking permission and is a more polite form. -
A. P. E. G. (PAGE. 92)

MAY နဲ့ MIGHT ရဲ့ ပစ္စုပ္ပန်နဲ့ အနာဂတ်

ပစ္စုပ္ပန်နဲ့ အနာဂတ်ကာလ (၂) မျိုးလုံးမှာ အကြောင်းအရာ အဖြစ်အပျက်တစ်ခု ဖြစ်ချင်ဖြစ်မယ်၊ (ဖြစ်ချင်မှလဲဖြစ်မယ်) ၊ ဖြစ်နိုင်တဲ့အလားအလာ (Possibility) တော့ ရှိတယ်ဆိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့ မရသေးချင်ရင်တော့ May ရော Might ပါ နှစ်မျိုးစလုံးနဲ့ သုံးနိုင်ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. (a) He may come today. (perhaps he will come, perhaps not.)
(b) He might come today. (perhaps he will come, perhaps not.)
သူ ဒီနေ့လာနိုင်တယ်။ (ရောက်လာချင်လဲ ရောက်လာမယ်၊ ရောက်ချင်မှလဲ ရောက်မယ်။)
 2. (a) He may come tomorrow.
(b) He might come tomorrow.
သူမနက်ဖြန် လာနိုင်တယ်။ (လာချင်လဲ လာလိမ့်မယ်၊ လာချင်မှလဲ လာလိမ့်မယ်)

ဖြစ်နိုင်မှုအလားအလာနဲ့ မသေချာမှုသဘောနဲ့ သုံးတာချင်အတူတူဖြစ်ပေမယ့် might နဲ့ သုံးတဲ့အခါမှာ may နဲ့ သုံးတာထက် ပိုပြီးမသေချာမှုသဘောကို ဆောင်ပါတယ်။

He may come = ဆိုတာက လာချင်လာမယ်၊ လာချင်မှလဲ လာမယ်၊
ဒါပေမယ့် လာဖို့ဘက်ကများတယ်လို့ ဆိုလိုတယ်။

He might come = ဆိုတာက လာချင်လာမယ်၊ လာချင်မှလဲ လာမယ်၊
ဒါပေမယ့် မလာဖို့ဘက်က များတယ်လို့ ဆိုလိုတယ်။

"Might" used with a present or future meaning expresses greater doubt than "May".

A. P. E. G. (PAGE. 93)

ဖြစ်ချင်ဖြစ်မယ်၊ မဖြစ်ချင်မဖြစ်ဘူးဆိုတဲ့ (uncertainty) မသေချာမှုသဘော မရှိရင်တော့ may တို့ might တို့ကို မသုံးရပါဘူး။

ဥပမာ We may have a storm tonight.
ဒီနေ့ည မုန်တိုင်းတိုက်ချင် တိုက်လိမ့်မယ်။ (မသေချာ)

We will have a storm tonight.
ဒီနေ့ည မုန်တိုင်းတိုက်လိမ့်မယ်။ (သေချာတယ်)

The fish may be dead.
ငါးက သေနေတာဖြစ်နိုင်တယ်။ (မသေချာ)

The fish is dead.
ငါးက အသေကြီး။ (သေချာတယ်)

If there is no uncertainty, we use the Future or Present Tense of the verb without "may".

PRACTICAL ENGLISH USAGE (PAGE. 129)

MAY နဲ့ MIGHT နဲ့ အတိတ်ကာလ

အတိတ်ကာလမှာ ဖြစ်ပျက်ခဲ့တဲ့ အဖြစ်အပျက်တစ်ခုကို ဆင်ခြင်တွေးဆပြီး ဒီလိုဖြစ်နိုင်တယ်၊ မဖြစ်နိုင်ဘူးစသည်ဖြင့် ဖြစ်နိုင်ချေအလားအလာ မသေချာမှုကို ဖော်ပြချင်ရင်တော့ may have + V3, might have + V3 ကြိယာတွဲပုံစံနဲ့ ရေးသားပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ He may have gone.
He might have gone. } It is possible that he went.
သူ့သွားပြီ (ထင်တယ်)
may/ might + perfect infinitive is used in speculations about past actions.

"Might" can be used instead of "may" to emphasize the doubt and must be used when the main verb is in the Past Tense.

P. E. G. (PAGE. 93)

May နဲ့ Might နဲ့ Continuous Form

အနာဂတ်ရဲ့ တိကျတဲ့အချိန်တစ်ချိန်မှာ အလုပ်တစ်ခုကို လုပ်နေကောင်းလုပ်နေလိမ့်မယ်ဆိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့သုံးချင်ရင် may/ might + be + V-ing ကြိယာတွဲပုံစံနဲ့ ရေးသားရပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ Don't phone at 8:30. I may (or might) be watching the football match on television.
၈ နာရီခွဲမှာ ငါ့ဆီကို ဖုန်းမဆက်နဲ့ T.V. မှာ ဘောလုံးပွဲကြည့်ချင်ကြည့်နေမှာ (မသေချာ။)
I will be watching လို့ ရေးမယ်၊ ပြောမယ်ဆိုရင်တော့ သေချာတဲ့ သဘောအဓိပ္ပာယ်ကို ဆောင်ပါတယ်။

အနာဂတ်ကာလမှာ အစီအစဉ်တစ်ခုရှိကောင်းရှိမယ်ဆိုတဲ့ သဘောကို ဖော်ပြချင်ရင်လည်း may/ might + be + V-ing ကြိယာတွဲပုံစံနဲ့ ရေးရပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ I may (or) might be going to Ngapali in April.
 ဧပြီလမှာ ငပလီကို ငါသွားမလို့၊ (သွားဖြစ်ချင် သွားဖြစ်မယ်။) တိတိကျကျ သေသေချာချာ သွားဖြစ်မယ်ဆိုရင်တော့ ...
 I am going to Ngapali in April.
 ဧပြီလမှာ ငပလီကို ငါသွားမလို့။

ဆုတောင်းတဲ့ သဘောနဲ့ သုံးတဲ့ MAY

ဝါကျရဲ့ရှေ့ဆုံးမှာ May ကို ထားပြီး ဆန္ဒပြုတဲ့ ဆုတောင်းတဲ့သဘောနဲ့ သုံးနိုင်ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ**
- May they live long!
သက်တော်ရာကျော်ရှည်ပါစေ။
 - May you both be happy!
မင်းတို့နှစ်ယောက် ပြုံးပျော်နိုင်ကြပါစေကွာ။
 - May you always be happy!
မင်း ထာဝရ စိတ်ရွှင်လန်း ချမ်းမြေ့ပါစေ။
 - May you all pass the examination!
မင်းတို့အားလုံး စာမေးပွဲအောင်ကြပါစေသော်လ် စသည်ဖြင့် ...
- ဒါပေမယ့် ဒီလိုအရေးအသား အသုံးအနှုန်းကို Modern English မှာ အသုံးမရှိသေးပါ။
 ဖြစ်။ May အစား "I hope ... will" ပုံစံနဲ့ ရေးကြပြောကြားပါတယ်။

"May" is used to express "wishes" and "hopes".
 A. S. HORNBY'S LEARNER'S D. OF CURRENT ENGLISH (PAGE. 534)

"May you always be happy!"
 This use sounds a little solemn nowadays, and in normal speech we prefer "I hope".
 e.g. "I hope you will always be happy."

Note that the word "hope" always implies "a wish". The things we hope are the things we desire. If you do not realize this, you will make some very bad mistakes with this word.

Moreover do not confuse this use of "May you" (a statement expressing a wish) with "Will you" (a question seeking permission).

e.g. Do not say "May you allow me to go" when you mean, "Will you allow me to go?"

P. E. U (PAGE. 129)

အကြံပေးတဲ့သဘောနဲ့ သုံးတဲ့ MIGHT

1. You might be more careful with your work.
အလုပ်ကိုပိုပြီး မင်းဂရုစိုက်ပါ။
2. You might be more careful about what you say.
မင်းပြောတာဆိုတာ ပိုပြီး ဂရုစိုက် (ဆင်ခြင်) စသည်ဖြင့် might ကို အကြံပေးတဲ့ သဘောအဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့လည်း သုံးနှုန်းရေးသားနိုင်ပါတယ်။

One special use of "might" only is to make suggestions.
 "You might be more careful with your cigarettes. You've burnt a hole in your new suit."
 IMPROVE YOUR ENGLISH (PAGE. 83)

MUST = ရမည်

must ကို လိုအပ်သည်၊ (necessity) ဆိုတဲ့ သဘောနဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့သုံးနှုန်းရေးသားပါတယ်။

•• အချိန်ပြဖွင့် (Time expression) ကို ဖော်ပြထားရင် ယောဂျယုအမှန်တရားကို ဖော်ပြပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ One must eat to live.
 အသက်ရှင်ရန်အတွက် အစားအသောက် စားရမည်။ (စားရန်လိုအပ်သည်)

၂။ ပစ္စုပ္ပန်ကာလနဲ့ အနာဂတ်ကာလမှာ အလုပ်တစ်ခုကိုလုပ်ဖို့ လိုအပ်တယ်ဆိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့လဲ must ကို အသုံးပြုရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. We must send the patient to hospital right now.
ခုပဲ .. လူမမာကို ဆေးရုံပို့ရမယ်။
 2. We must send the patient to hospital tomorrow.
မနက်ဖြန်ကျရင် လူမမာကို ဆေးရုံပို့ရမယ်။

၃။ (Present) ပစ္စုပ္ပန်ကာလနဲ့ (Future) အနာဂတ်ကာလ အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ must ဆိုရင်

(a) အမိန့်ပေးတဲ့ (command) သဘောနဲ့ သုံးပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. You must come immediately.
မင်း ချက်ချင်းလာရမယ်။
 2. The taxi must be ready tomorrow morning at 6:00.
မနက်ဖြန် မနက် (၆) နာရီမှာ အငှားကားအဆင်သင့် ဖြစ်နေရမယ်။

(b) မရှောင်လွှဲနိုင်တဲ့ (unavoidable) သဘောနဲ့လည်း သုံးပါတယ်။

All men must die.
လူသားအားလုံး သေကြရမယ်။

(c) ပြုလုပ်ရန်လိုအပ်တဲ့ (necessary to do) သဘောနဲ့လဲ သုံးပါတယ်။
(အမိန့်ပေးတဲ့သဘော တာဝန်ရှိတဲ့သဘော အဓိပ္ပာယ်သက်ရောက်ပါတယ်)

1. Soldiers must obey orders.
စစ်သားတွေဟာ အမိန့်နာခံရမယ်။
2. You must do as you are told.
မင်းကို ပြောထားတဲ့အတိုင်း လုပ်ရမယ်။

(d) ဖြစ်ပျက်ပြုလုပ်မှာ သေချာတဲ့ (certain to be) သဘောနဲ့လဲ သုံးပါတယ်။

This man is always talking to himself and doing strange things. I have reasons to believe that he is mad.

He must be mad

ဒီလူက သူ့ဟာသူ တစ်ယောက်တည်း စကားတွေပြော၊ ထူးထူးဆန်းဆန်းတွေလုပ်နေဆိုတာ ဒီလူ ချွံ့နေတာဖြစ်ရမယ်။ (ခွဲနေတာ သေချာတယ်)

When we use "must" of present and future, with a Present Infinitive, we can use it to say that something has to be done or to say that something is certain.

IMPROVE YOUR ENGLISH (PAGE. 79)

211. A rather different use "must" is illustrated in the following:

92. I must be dreaming!
93. He must have gone away: the house is deserted.
94. They are so alike that they must be related.
95. He is always hoeing: he must like doing it.
Here it indicates "certainty".

e.g. "I am certainly dreaming."
"It is certain that he has gone away."

The idea is that we are forced to come to this conclusion, since no other is possible. "Have to" is impossible in these cases.

P. E. U (PAGE. 148)

MUST နှင့် HAVE TO

must = ရမည်

have to = ရသင့်

တာဝန်ရှိတဲ့သဘော၊ မလုပ်မဖြစ် လုပ်ရတဲ့ သဘောတွေကို ဖော်ပြပြောဆိုချင်တဲ့အခါ must & have to ကို သုံးရပါတယ်။

ပြောဆိုရေးသားသူ ကိုယ်တိုင်ရဲ့ စိတ်ဆန္ဒအရ မလုပ်မဖြစ်လုပ်ရမယ်ဆိုတဲ့ သဘောနဲ့ဆိုရင် must ကို သုံးရပါတယ်။

ပြင်ပ ဝတ်စုံကျင့် အခြေအနေတစ်ရပ်ရပ်ကြောင့် မလုပ်မဖြစ်လို့ လုပ်ရတယ်ဆိုတဲ့ သဘော နဲ့ဆိုရင် have to ကို သုံးရပါတယ်။

There is usually a difference of meaning between the Present Tense forms "must" and "have to" in affirmative statements.

"Must" expresses obligation or compulsion from the speaker's viewpoint.

"Have to" expresses external obligation.

L. E. S. (PAGE. 38)

- ဥပမာ
1. We must begin before five. (or we shan't finish in time for our supper.)
ငါးနာရီမတိုးခင် အလုပ်ကို စလုပ်ရမယ်။ ပြီးတဲ့အချိန် နောက်ကျမှစားဖို့လို့ပြောတဲ့ လူကိုယ်တိုင်ရဲ့ခံစားခံက (မလုပ်ရင် မဖြစ်လို့) လုပ်မယ်လို့ ပြောတဲ့စကား။
 2. We have to begin before five. (that's the time arranged.)
ငါးနာရီမတိုးခင် အလုပ် စလုပ်ရတယ်။ (အလုပ်စလုပ်ရမယ့်အချိန်ကို သတ်မှတ်ပြီး သားဖို့၊ မလုပ်ရင်မဖြစ်တဲ့အတွက် လုပ်ရတယ်လို့ ပြောတဲ့စကား။)
 3. I must write to Hnin Hnin. I haven't write to her for ages. (The speaker personally feels that he must write to Hnin Hnin.)
စာမရေးတာလဲကြာပြီ၊ နှင်းနှင်းဆီကို စာရေးရဦးမယ်။ (ပြောတဲ့လူကိုယ်တိုင်က ကိုယ့်ဟာကိုယ် ရေးမယ်လို့ပြောတာ ရေးချင်လို့။)
 4. Aye Aye's eyes are not very good. She has to wear glasses for reading.
အေးအေး မျက်စိသိပ်မကောင်းဘူး၊ စာဖတ်ရင် မျက်မှန်တပ်ရတယ်။ (မတပ်ရင် မမြင်ရလို့၊ မတပ်ရင်မဖြစ်လို့ တပ်ရတာ။)

There is sometimes a difference between "must" and "have to".

With "must" the speaker is giving his own feelings, saying what he thinks is necessary.

With "have to" the speaker is not giving his own feelings. He is just giving facts.

E. G. IN USE (PAGE. 64)

ဒါပေမယ့် လိုအပ်လို့လုပ်တယ်၊ လိုအပ်တယ် (necessary to do) ဆိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့ သုံးတာ ဆိုရင်တော့ must နဲ့ have to ဘယ်စကားလုံးနဲ့ပဲသုံးသုံး သုံးလို့ရပါတယ်။

We use must (do) and have to (do) to say that it is necessary to do something. Often it doesn't matter which you use:

- O dear, it's later than I thought I must / have to go now.
- You must / have to have a passport to visit most foreign countries.

E. G. IN USE (PAGE. 64)

To express necessity or strong obligation in English we generally use "must" or "have to". Today we are inclined to use "must" for the expression of orders and commands, while for everyday expressions of necessity we use "have to". In many cases, however, "must" and "have to" have the same meaning.

- John has to work tonight.
- John must work tonight.
- We must leave early.
- We have to leave early.

R. E. W. II (PAGE. 32)

- MUST ကို Present Tense နဲ့ Future Tense (ပစ္စုပ္ပန်နဲ့ အနာဂတ်) ကာလနှစ်မျိုး အတွက် ဖော်ပြရေးသားနိုင်ပါတယ်။
- ဥပမာ We must go now. (Present)
ကျွန်တော်တို့ အခု (ယခု) သွားရမယ်။
- We must leave tomorrow. (Future)
ကျွန်တော်တို့ မနက်ဖြန်ကျွန်ုပ်ရင် ထွက်ခွာရမယ်။
- HAVE TO ကိုတော့ ကာလအားလုံးအတွက် ဖော်ပြရေးသားနိုင်ပါတယ်။
- ဥပမာ 1. I have to go to hospital. (Present)
ဆေးရုံသွား (တက်) ရတယ်။

- 2. I had to go to hospital. (Past)
ဆေးရုံသွား (တက်) ခဲ့ရတယ်။
- 3. I will have to go to hospital. (Future)
ဆေးရုံသွား (တက်) ရလိမ့်မယ်။
- 4. I might have to go to hospital. (Infinitive)
ဆေးရုံသွား (တက်) ချင် တက်ရနိုင်တယ်။
- 5. Have you ever had to go to hospital? (Present Perfect)
မင်းဆေးရုံသွား (တက်) ဖူးသလား။

သတိပြုရန်

ပစ္စုပ္ပန်နှင့် အတိတ်ကာလပြုကြိယာ (has to, have to, had to) တို့နှင့် ရေးဖွဲ့ထားတဲ့ ဝါကျတွေကို ငြင်းဆိုဝါကျ (သို့) မေးခွန်းဝါကျအဖြစ် ပြောင်းလဲရေးဖွဲ့ချင်ရင်တော့ do, does, did သင့်တော်ရာ တစ်လုံးလုံး ဖော်ပေးရပါတယ်။ has, have, had တွေရဲ့အနားမှာ not ကပ်ထည့်ပြီး ငြင်းဆိုဝါကျ ပြောင်းတာတို့ has, have, had ကို ဝါကျရဲ့ ရှေ့ပိုင်း မေးခွန်း ဝါကျ ပြောင်းတာတို့ မလုပ်ရပါဘူး။

- ဥပမာ**
- 1. I have to go to hospital.
I do not have to go to hospital. (have not to လို့ မရေးရ)
Do you have to go to hospital?
(Have you to go လို့ မရေးရ)
 - 2. She has to wear glasses.
She does not have to wear glasses.
Does she have to wear glasses?
 - 3. He had to sell his car.
He did not have to sell his car.
Did he have to sell his car?

MUST နှင့် MUST NOT

MUST ကို ပြုလုပ်ရမယ်၊ (သွားရမယ်၊ စားရမယ်) လို့ အမိန့်ပေးတဲ့သဘောနဲ့သုံးရင် အတိတ်ကြိယာပုံစံ၊ အနာဂတ်ကြိယာပုံစံတို့ မရှိပါဘူး။

- You must finish your work before you go home.
အိမ်မပြန်ခင် အလုပ်ကို အပြီးလုပ်ရမယ်။ (လုပ်ပါ)
- You must write your exercise neatly.
လေ့ကျင့်ခန်းကို သေသေသပ်သပ် ရေးပါ။

MUST NOT ကို မပြုလုပ်ရဘူး၊ (မသွားရ၊ မစားရ) လို့ တားမြစ်တဲ့သဘော (မပြုလုပ်ရန် အမိန့်ပေးတဲ့သဘော) နဲ့ သုံးပါတယ်။

- You mustn't play football in the street.
လမ်းတံ နာ ဘောလုံးမကစားရဘူး။
- People must not try to feed these animals.
တိရစ္ဆာန်များကို အစာမကျွေးရ။

AM - IS - ARE + NOT TO = မပြုလုပ်ရ

is not to, are not to, စတဲ့ စကားလုံးတွေကိုလည်း မပြုလုပ်ရန် ပေးတဲ့အမိန့်၊ မပြုလုပ်ရန် တားမြစ်ဟန်တားမှုတွေမှာ သုံးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ**
- He says I am not to tell you about this.
မင်းကို ဒီကိစ္စမပြောဖို့ သူက ငါ့ကို တားမြစ်ထားတယ်။

**MUST ရဲ့ ငြင်းဆိုင်ခံစွမ်းချိုး
MUST NOT နှင့် NEED NOT**

Must ရဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ် အသုံးအနှုန်းကိုယ်တိုင်က နှစ်မျိုးရှိနေတဲ့အတွက် သူ့ရဲ့ဆိုလိုချက် အဓိပ္ပာယ်သွားပေါ် မူတည်ပြီး ငြင်းဆိုပုံစံလည်း နှစ်မျိုးထွက်လာပါတယ်။

Must (သွားရမယ်၊ လာရမယ်၊ လုပ်ရမယ်) လို့ အမိန့်ပေးတဲ့သဘောနဲ့သုံးတဲ့ must ကို (မသွားရ၊ မလာရ၊ မလုပ်ရ) လို့ တားမြစ်အမိန့်ပေးတဲ့သဘောနဲ့ ငြင်းဆိုပုံစံအဖြစ် သုံးချင်ရင် mustn't (must not) ကို သုံးရမယ်။

- ဥပမာ**
- You must do it now.
ဒါကို မင်းအခုလုပ်ရမယ်။ (အမိန့်ပေး)

- You must not do it now.
ဒါကို မင်း ခုမလုပ်ရဘူး။ (တားမြစ်)
- Cars must be parked in front of the school.
ကျောင်းရှေ့မှာ ကားရပ်ရမယ်။ (အမိန့်ပေး)
- Cars must not be parked in front of the school.
ကျောင်းရှေ့မှာ ကားမရပ်ရ။ (တားမြစ်)

2. Must (သွားဖို့၊ လာဖို့လိုအပ်တယ်၊ တာဝန်ရှိတယ်) ဆိုတဲ့ သဘောအဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့ သုံးထား တဲ့ must ကို ငြင်းဆိုဝါကျအဖြစ် ပြောင်းချင်ရင်၊ သုံးချင်ရင်တော့ ... သွားဖို့၊ လာဖို့ မလိုအပ်ဘူးဆိုတဲ့သဘောနဲ့ must ရဲ့ ငြင်းဆိုပုံစံအဖြစ် needn't (need not) ကို သုံးရ မယ်။

ဥပမာ Must I go to Mandalay tomorrow?
မနက်ဖြန် မန္တလေးကို သွားရမလား။
Oh no, you needn't go.
ဟင့်အင်း သွားဖို့မလိုပါဘူး။

သတိပြု

needn't အစား: doesn't need to, don't need to, didn't need to တို့ကိုလဲ သုံးနိုင်ပါတယ်။

MUST
Its main meaning suggests a "command" or an "obligation".
B. E. G. IV (PAGE. 76)

Negative
A peculiar thing about the negative of "must" is that there are two negatives according to the meaning. Sometimes the opposite of "must" is "must not" (mustn't), and sometimes it is "need not" (needn't).
- Use "mustn't" when the meaning suggests a command.
- Use "needn't" when the meaning is "it is not necessary".
BRIGHTER ENGLISH GRAMMAR IV (PAGE. 77)

"Must not" and "am - is - are + not to" are prohibitions. (Negative Commands)
To express the absence of obligation or necessity to do something (that is, the opposite of "must"), the form "need not" is used.
LIVING ENGLISH STRUCTURE (PAGE. 36, 37)

MUST
Notice that the negative form "mustn't" is a negative obligation; the opposite of "must" is "needn't". This is important for correct responses.
e.g. - "He needn't do that, need he?"
- "Yes, I'm afraid he must."
- "Must I go?"
- "No, you needn't."
HAVE TO
The above distinctions are also made in the "have to" forms.

| Obligation | No obligation | Prohibition |
|------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|
| He must go | He needn't go | He mustn't go |
| He has to go | He doesn't have to go | He isn't to go |
| He has got to go | He hasn't got to go | He hasn't to go |

L. E. S. (PAGE. 49)

| | | |
|------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|
| He must go | He needn't go | He mustn't go |
| He has to go | He doesn't have to go | He isn't to go |
| He has got to go | He hasn't got to go | He hasn't to go |

L.E.S. (P. 49)

MUSTN'T နှင့် DON'T HAVE TO

musn't & don't have to တို့ရဲ့ အသုံးနဲ့ ဆိုလိုချက်က လုံးဝကွဲပြားခြားနားပါတယ်။

- You mustn't tell anyone what I said. (Don't tell anyone) ငါပြောတာတွေကို ဘယ်သူ့ကိုမှ ပြန်မပြောရဘူး။
- I promised I'd be on time. I mustn't be late. (= I must be on time.) အချိန်မှန်ရောက်ဖို့ ကတိပေးပါတယ်ကွာ၊ နောက်မကျစေရပါဘူး။

musn't ကို သုံးရင် (it is necessary that you do not do it.) ပြုလုပ်ဆောင်ရွက်ခြင်း မပြုရလို့ တားမြစ်တဲ့သဘော၊ လိုက်နာဖို့ လိုအပ်တယ်ဆိုတဲ့သဘော သက်ရောက်ပါတယ်။ don't have to ကို သုံးရင် (it is not necessary to do it; you don't need to do it.)

- ပြုလုပ်ဖို့ မလိုအပ်ဘူးဆိုတဲ့သဘော သက်ရောက်ပါတယ်။
- She stayed in bed this morning because she didn't have to go to work. အလုပ်သွားစရာမလိုလို့၊ ဒီမနက် အိပ်ရာထဲက မထသေးဘူး။ (အိပ်နေတုန်း၊ အနားယူနေတုန်း) ခါတိုင်းလို စောစောထဖို့ မလိုအပ်ဘူးဆိုတဲ့သဘော။

MUST ရဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်ရပ်စဲမှု၊ HAD TO နှင့် MUST + PERFECT INFINITIVE

1. (obligation or Necessity) တာဝန်ရှိတယ်၊ လိုအပ်တယ်ဆိုတဲ့ သဘောအဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့ သုံးတဲ့ Must ရဲ့ Past Tense ကြိယာပုံစံဟာ Had to ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

e.g. I must do it. (Present)
I had to do it. (Past)

"Had to" is an obligation in the past.

L. E. S. (PAGE 37)

"Must" has no past form. Therefore, use "had to" to express necessity in the past.

e.g. I must work tonight.
I had to work last night.

GRADED EXERCISES IN ENGLISH (PAGE. 12)

2. အပြစ်အယှက် အကြောင်းအရာတစ်ခုနဲ့ပတ်သက်ပြီး (Certainty) သေချာမှုရှိတယ်ဆိုတဲ့သဘော အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ Must ရဲ့ Past Tense ကြိယာပုံစံဟာ Must + Perfect Infinitive (must have + V3) ပုံစံဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

e.g. My father must have written this letter a week ago. (She is certain that her father wrote the letter a week ago.)

IMPROVE YOUR ENGLISH (PAGE. 79)

The prisoner must have escaped this way for here are his foot prints.

A PRACTICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR (PAGE. 109)

ထင်မြင်ယူဆချက်ကို ဖော်ပြတဲ့ MUST

သိသာ၊ မြင်သာတဲ့ အကြောင်းအရာ၊ အပြစ်အယှက်တစ်ခုပေါ်မူတည်ပြီး ဒီလိုဖြစ်ရမယ်၊ ဒီလိုဖြစ်မှာပဲလို့၊ မိမိထင်မြင်ဖော်ပြချင်ရင်လည်း must ကို အသုံးပြုပြီး ဖော်ပြရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. He is not in school. He is not at home. He has a friend near the school. He must be at his friend's house. သူ ကျောင်းမှာလဲ မရှိဘူး၊ အိမ်မှာလဲ မရှိဘူး၊ ကျောင်းနားမှာတော့ သူငယ်ချင်း တစ်ယောက်ရှိတယ်။ သူငယ်ချင်းအိမ်မှာ သူရှိရမယ်။
 2. She has just read a letter. She is smiling. She must be very pleased with the letter. စာတစ်စောင်ကို ခုလေးတင် သူဖတ်ပြီးရုံ ရှိသေးတယ်။ သူပြုံးနေတယ်။ သူ့စာကို ရုလို့ ကျေနပ်ဝမ်းသာနေတာဖြစ်ရမယ်။

အဲဒီလို သိသာမြင်သာတဲ့ အကြောင်းအချက်ပေါ်မူတည်ပြီး မိမိရဲ့ထင်မြင်ချက်ကို ဖော်ပြတဲ့ အခါ ...

လက်ရှိ လောလောဆယ် (Present) မှာ ဖြစ်ပျက်တဲ့ အကြောင်းအရာပေါ် မူတည်ပြီး ထင်မြင်ချက်ပေးတာဆိုရင် ကြိယာတွဲက ...

- must + V1 (must know)
- must + be + Noun (must be a doctor)
- must + be + Adj (must be very fat)
- must + be + V-ing (must be coming)

- ဥပမာ 1. (a) The patients come to him every day.
(b) It is very likely that he is a doctor.
He must be a doctor.

သူ့ဆီကို လူမမာတွေ နေ့တိုင်းလာတယ်။ သူ့ကိုကြည့်ရတာ ဆရာဝန် တစ်ယောက်ဖြစ်ဟန်တူတယ်။

သူ ဆရာဝန်တစ်ယောက်ဖြစ်ရမယ်။

2. (a) He hasn't eaten anything since last night.
(b) It is ten o' clock now.
He must be very hungry now.

မနေ့ညကတည်းက သူ ဘာမှ မစားရသေးဘူး။ ခုလဲ (၁၀) နာရီထိုးနေပြီ။ သူ အခုဆိုရင် အရမ်းကိုဆာနေမှာပဲ။

3. (a) My friend said he would be at my house at nine and it's ten past nine now.
(b) I am sure he is waiting for me at home.
He must be waiting for me at home.

ကျွန်တော့်သူငယ်ချင်းက ကျွန်တော့်အိမ်မှာ (၉) နာရီကျရင် ရောက်မယ်လို့ ပြောခဲ့တယ်။ ခု (၉) နာရီထိုးပြီးလို့ (၁၀)မိနစ်တောင် ကျော်နေပြီ။ ကျွန်တော် ကျိန်းသေပြောရဲ့တယ်။ သူတော့ ကျွန်တော်ကို အိမ်က စောင့်နေလောက်ပြီ။ သူ ကျွန်တော့်ကို အိမ်က စောင့်နေတာဖြစ်ရမယ်။

အတိတ်ကာလ (Past) မှာ ဖြစ်ပျက်ခဲ့တဲ့ အကြောင်းအရာပေါ်မူတည်ပြီး ထင်မြင်ချက် ပေးတာဆိုရင် ကြိယာတွဲက ...

- must + have + V3 (must have known.)
- must + have been + Noun (must have been a doctor.)
- must + have been + Adj. (must have been very fat.)
- must + have been + V-ing (must have been sleeping.)
- must + have been + V3 (must have been sold.)

- ဥပမာ 1. (a) Your mother is very patient and she explains things ver well.

- (b) I think *she was a teacher before.*
She must have been a teacher before.
မင်းအမေက စိတ်လဲရှည်တယ်။ အရာရာကိုလည်း သေသေချာချာ ရှင်းပြ တယ်။
မင်းအမေက အရင်က ကျောင်းဆရာမတစ်ယောက်လို့ ငါထင်တယ်။
သူမဟာ အရင်က ကျောင်းဆရာမ ဖြစ်ခဲ့ရမယ်။

2. (a) Our dog was very healthy but it died suddenly last night.

- (b) It is very likely that *our dog was poisoned.*
Our dog must have been poisoned.
ကျွန်တော်တို့ခွေးက ကျန်းကျန်းမာမာ အကောင်းကြီး၊ ဒါပေမယ့် မနေ့က ရုတ်တရက် သေသွားခဲ့တယ်။ အဆိပ်မိပြီးသေတာဖြစ်ဖို့များတယ်။
ကျွန်တော်တို့ခွေး အဆိပ်မိခဲ့တာဖြစ်ရမယ်။

3. (a) The girl's face looks very familiar-to me.
(b) It is most likely that *I knew her before.*
I must have known her before.

ဒီကောင်မလေးရဲ့ မျက်နှာကြည့်ရတာ တော်တော်ကို ရင်းနှီးကျွမ်းဝင် သိရှိဖူး သလိုပဲ။ သူ့ကို အရင်က သိခဲ့ဖူးတာဖြစ်နိုင်တယ်။
ငါ သူ့ကို အရင်က သိကျွမ်းခဲ့ဖူးတာ ဖြစ်ရမယ်။

သတိပြုဖို့

- အဲဒီလို ထင်မြင်ချက်ကို ဖော်ပြတဲ့ဝါကျတွေကို ရေးဖွဲ့တဲ့အခါ ...
- ၁- Present & Past အတွက်သာ ရေးဖွဲ့နိုင်ပါတယ်။
 - ၂- Future အတွက်ကြိုတင် ထင်မြင်ချက် သဘောနဲ့ မရေးရပါဘူး။
 - ၃- (Affirmative) ရိုးရိုးဝါကျ၊ အဟုတ်ဝါကျတွေအဖြစ်နဲ့သာ ရေးရပါတယ်။
(Negative) ငြင်းဆိုဝါကျ၊ မဟုတ်ဝါကျအဖြစ်နဲ့ မရေးရပါဘူး။

SHALL = ရန်ပုံစံ

၁။ မဖြစ်သေးတဲ့ အနာဂတ်ကာလမှာ အလုပ်တစ်ခုကို ပြုလုပ်လိမ့်မယ်လို့ ဖော်ပြချင်တဲ့အခါ ...
I, We (first person) နာမ်စားတွေနဲ့ Shall ကို တွဲဖက်ရေးသားရပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ I shall go to Mandalay tomorrow.
မနက်ဖြန်မှာ ငါ မန္တလေးကို သွားမလို့ (သွားမယ်။)
We shall buy a house next year.
လာမယ့်နှစ်မှာ တို့အိမ်တစ်လုံးဝယ်မလို့။

၂။ You, He, She, It, They (စတဲ့ second and third persons) နာမ်စားတွေနဲ့ shall ကို တွဲဖက်ပြီး သုံးမယ်ဆိုရင်တော့ တာဝန်ရှိတဲ့သဘော၊ လိုအပ်တဲ့သဘော၊ အမိန့်ပေးတဲ့သဘော ...
To express obligation i.e. force, command, necessity... အဓိပ္ပာယ် တွေဖြစ်စေ၊ ကတိပေးတဲ့သဘော၊ အခိုင်အမာ ဆုံးဖြတ်တဲ့သဘော၊ အဓိပ္ပာယ် တွေဖြစ်စေ သုံးတာဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ You shall have a book.
မင်းစာအုပ်တစ်အုပ် ရလိမ့်မယ်။ (ရစေရမယ်) ဆိုတဲ့ ဝါကျရဲ့အဓိပ္ပာယ်က ...
I will give you a book.
မင်းကို ငါ စာအုပ်တစ်အုပ် ပေးမယ်လို့ ဆိုလိုတာ။

ခါစပမယ့်

အဲဒီအဓိပ္ပာယ် ဖွင့်ဆိုချက်ဟာ ရှေးရိုးသဒ္ဒါကျမ်းဟောင်းကြီးတွေထဲမှာပဲ ကျန်ပါတော့တယ်။ ခေတ်သစ်အင်္ဂလိပ်စာအုပ်အစုအစည်းမှာ ဒီသဘောနဲ့သုံးတဲ့ shall ရဲ့ အသုံးဟာ ပျောက်ကွယ်သလောက် ဖြစ်နေပါပြီ။

In common everyday English, however, "shall" expressing obligation has almost disappeared. Obligation is now expressed in other ways, e.g. "should", "must", "have to", etc. and "will" is used when there is a strong idea of future time.
PRACTICAL ENGLISH USAGE. (PAGE. 140)

Both these uses are old fashioned and formal and normally avoided in Modern English.
A. P. E. GRAMMAR (PAGE. 172)

ဒါကြောင့် shall ကို အဓိကအားဖြင့် အောက်မှဖော်ပြထားတဲ့ အချက်နှစ်ချက်မှာပဲ သုံးလေ့ရှိပါတယ်။

၁။ Shall ကို I, We (First Person) တွေကို Subject အဖြစ်ထားပြီး မေးခွန်းဝါကျ ရေးဖွဲ့တဲ့အခါမှာ

ဥပမာ Shall I come with him?
ကျွန်တော် သူနဲ့လာရမလား။
Shall we dance?
တို့တွေ ကကြမှာလား။

ဒါပေမယ့် အချို့နိုင်ငံတွေမှာ Will I? Will we? ဆိုပြီးတော့ သုံးနှုန်းမှုတွေ များလာနေပြီ ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

In some parts of the English-speaking world, notably Ireland, Scotland, and parts of America, the use of "will" is almost universal, even in the first person questions.
LIVING ENGLISH STRUCTURE (PAGE. 133)

၂။ Clause (ဝါကျပိုင်း) နှစ်ခုနဲ့ဆက်ပြီးရေးထားတဲ့ ဝါကျမှာ ...
Clause (ဝါကျပိုင်း) တစ်ခုကို If, Unless, When အစရှိတဲ့ စကားလုံးတွေနဲ့ အဖြေပြီး ရေးဖွဲ့ထားရင် ကျန်ဝါကျပိုင်း အတွင်းမှာရှိတဲ့ (Subject) ကတ္တား I, We တို့ကို Shall နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ရေးသား သင့်တယ်။

ဥပမာ 1. If the dog bites me, I shall go to hospital.
ငါ့ကိုသာ ခွေးကိုက်ရင် ဆေးရုံသွားမှာပဲ။
2. Unless you pass the examination, I shall not give you a prize.
မင်းစာမေးပွဲမအောင်ရင် ငါဆုပေးမယ် မဟုတ်ဘူး။
3. When it rains, we shall plough the fields.
မိုးရွာတဲ့အခါ တို့တွေ လယ်ထွန်ကြမယ်။

ဒီဝါကျတွေမှာ ပြုလုပ်သူရဲ့ ဆန္ဒမပါဘဲ၊ ပြင်ပအခြေအနေတစ်ရပ်ရပ်အပေါ်မှာ အမှီပြု အခြေခံပြီး အခြားအခြေအနေတစ်ရပ်ရပ်ကြောင်းကို ပြောတာဖြစ်တယ်။ ဒါကြောင့် shall နဲ့ပဲ သုံးသင့်ပါတယ်။ will နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ပြီး မသုံးသင့်ပါဘူး။

SHOULD = ဒဲ့လိမ့်မည်၊ သင့်သည့်

၁။ should ဟာ shall ရဲ့ အတိတ်ကြိယာဖြစ်ပါတယ်။ ဒါကြောင့် Direct က Indirect သို့ ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါ shall အစား should ကို ပြောင်းရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
- (D.S) I said, "I shall come tomorrow."
(I. S) I said that I should come the next day.
(I would လို့ သုံးရင်လဲ ရပါတယ်)
 - (D.S) He said, "I shall buy a car."
(I. S) He said that he would buy a car.

(ပြောသူက he ဖြစ်နေတော့၊ ပြောစကားအတွင်းက I ကို he ပြောင်းရတယ်။ ဒါကြောင့် he နဲ့ တွဲတဲ့ shall ရဲ့ Past Tense ကို would သို့ ပြောင်းလဲရေးသားရပုံကို သတိပြုပါ။)

၂။ should ကို shall ရဲ့ အတိတ်ကြိယာအနေနဲ့ မဟုတ်ဘဲ၊ အခြားအသုံးအနှုန်းတွေနဲ့လည်း သုံးပါ သေးတယ်။ အလုပ်တစ်ခုကို ပြုလုပ်သင့်တယ်။ ဆောင်ရွက်သင့်တယ်ဆိုတဲ့ (obligation and duty) တာဝန်ပိုင်းကို ဖော်ပြချင်တဲ့အခါ၊ (advice) အကြံဉာဏ်ပေးတဲ့သဘောနဲ့ ဖော်ပြချင်တဲ့အခါတွေမှာလဲ should ကို သုံးပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
- You should pay what you owe.
မင်းပေးရမယ့် အကြွေးရှိရင် ပြန်ပေးသင့်တယ်။
(ပေးစရာရှိတာတွေကို ပေးဖို့ တာဝန်ရှိတယ်)
 - A rich man should use his wealth for the good of others.
ချမ်းသာတဲ့လူ (သူငွေ) တစ်ယောက်ဟာ သူ့ရဲ့စည်းစိမ်းချမ်းသာတွေကို အခြားသူတွေရဲ့ ကောင်းကျိုးအတွက် အသုံးပြုသင့်တယ်။
 - You should read the newspaper every day.
သတင်းစာကို နေ့တိုင်းဖတ်သင့်တယ်။
 - You should buy a new shirt. It is too old for you to wear.
မင်း ရှပ်အင်္ကျီ အသစ်တစ်ထည် ဝယ်သင့်တယ်။ ဒီဟာက (ခု ဝတ်ထား တာက) ဟောင်းလွန်းနေပြီ။

5. The play was extremely funny. You should go and see it.
ပြဇာတ်က သိပ်ရယ်ရတာပဲ၊ မင်းသွားပြီးကြည့်သင့်တယ်။

WILL = လိမ့်မည်

၁။ အများဂုဏ်ကာလမှာ တစ်စုံတစ်ခုကို ပြုလုပ်မယ်ဆိုတဲ့သဘောနဲ့ သုံးပါတယ်။
ရှေးခေတ်သဒ္ဒါကျမ်းတွေ အလိုအရကတော့ second and third persons တွေနဲ့ တွဲဖက်ပြီး သုံးရပုံ၊ ရှိရှိအများဂုဏ်ကာလကို ဖော်ပြတယ်။
I, We စတဲ့ First person တွေနဲ့ ယှဉ်တွဲပြီးသုံးရင် ကတိပြုတဲ့သဘော၊ အခိုင်အမာ ဖော်ပြတဲ့သဘော သက်ရောက်တယ်လို့ ဖော်ပြပါတယ်။
ဒါပေမယ့် ဒီနေ့ခေတ် အင်္ဂလိပ်စာ အသုံးအနှုန်းမှာတော့ will ကို person (၃) မျိုးလုံးနဲ့ ယှဉ်တွဲပြီး သုံးနိုင်ပါတယ်။ သုံးကြပါတယ်။

The classic rules, however, governing shall and will are as follows:

(a) Use "shall" in the first person and "will" in the second and third to express simple future action.
e.g. I shall meet him at three o'clock.
He will be here at noon.

(b) Use "will" in the first person and "shall" in the second and third persons to express promise or determination.
e.g. I will do it no matter what happens.
He shall not spend another penny of my money.

Distinctions between "shall" and "will" are fast disappearing in Modern English,
- "shall", except in isolated uses, seems to be disappearing altogether from current speech, being replaced by the phrase "going to" and
"will" appears to be in use now in all three persons to express promise or determination.

၂။ (Request) ယုံကြားတဲ့၊ တစ်ဖက်သားရဲ့ဆန္ဒ (desire or willingness) ကို ဖူးစမ်းတဲ့ မေးမြန်းတဲ့သဘောနဲ့လဲ သုံးပါတယ်။

- ၉၀၈ 1. Will you type this, please?
ကျေးဇူးပြုပြီး လက်နှိပ်စက် ရိုက်ပေးနိုင်ပါလားဗျာ။
2. Will you have another cup of tea? (i.e is that your desire?)
လက်ဖက်ရည် နောက်တစ်ခွက်လောက် ထပ်ယူပါဦး။
(ယူဦးမလား၊ ယူချင် (သောက်ချင်) တဲ့ ဆန္ဒ ရှိသလား။)
3. Will you post this letter for me, please?
(i.e. are you willing?)
ကျွန်တော့်စာလေး ထည့်ပေးမလားဗျာ။

"Would you?" can also be used for a request in the present:
e.g. Would you show me the way to the station?
Would you give him this letter?
"Would you?" is less authoritative than "Will you?".
A. P. E. GRAMMAR (PAGE. 169)

၃။ Will ကို ရိုးရိုးဝါကျ (affirmative) နဲ့ ယှဉ်တွဲပြီး အမိန့်ပေးတဲ့သဘောနဲ့လဲ သုံးပါတယ်။

- ၉၀၉ 1. "Will you keep quiet!" (or)
"Keep quiet, will you!"
တိတ်တိတ်နေကြစမ်း။
2. "You will stay here."
မင်းတို့ ဒီမှာနေရမယ်။
3. "You will work here under U Kyaw."
မင်းတို့ ဦးကျော်ရဲ့လက်အောက်မှာ အလုပ်လုပ်ရမယ်။

ပြောသူ၊ အမိန့်ပေးသူအနေနဲ့ အပြောခံရသူ၊ အမိန့်ပေးခံရသူဟာ အမိန့်ကြံစာကို နာခံလိမ့်မယ်လို့ မျှော်လင့်ထားတဲ့အခါတွေမှာသာ Will ကို အသုံးပြုပြီး အမိန့်ပေးဝါကျကို တည်ဆောက်ရပါတယ်။

၄။ (habit) အကျင့်စရိုက်ကို ဖော်ပြတဲ့သဘောနဲ့လဲ will ကို အသုံးပြုနိုင်ပါသေးတယ်။ အကျင့်စရိုက်ကို ဖော်ပြချင်ရင် သာမန်အားဖြင့် Present Tense နဲ့ပဲ ဖော်ပြလေ့ရှိပါတယ်။

၉၀၈ A dog usually obeys his master.
မပွေးဟာ သခင်ရဲ့အမိန့်ကို နာခံလေ့ရှိတယ်။
(မပွေးရဲ့အကျင့်ကို ဖော်ပြတယ်)

ခါပေမယ့်

A dog will usually obey his master.
လို့ ဝါကျကိုရေးဖွဲ့ရင်တော့ သီးသန့်ခွေးတစ်ကောင်ရဲ့ အကျင့်ကို ဖော်ပြတာ မဟုတ်ဘဲ မပွေးကိုပဲ၊ မပွေးကိုပဲဟာ သခင်ရဲ့အမိန့်ကို နာခံတတ်တဲ့ စရိုက်သဘာဝရှိတယ်လို့ ခွေးကို အလေးအနက်ထားပြီး စာပေးဖော်ပြထားတာဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

...when we wish to emphasize the characteristics of the performer rather than the action performed.
A.P. E GRAMMAR (PAGE. 170)

၅။ မပြောဆိုရေးသားသူအနေနဲ့ မနှစ်မြို့ တစ်ဖက်သားရဲ့ ခေါင်းမာတဲ့၊ မပြုပြင်တဲ့ အကျင့်စရိုက်ကို ဖော်ပြချင်ရင်လဲ will ကို အသုံးပြုနိုင်ပါတယ်။

၉၀၈ My husband will drop ash on the carpet.

ယောက်ျားဖြစ်သူက ဆေးလိပ်သောက်ပြီးရင် ပြာကို ပြာခံခွက်ထဲ ထည့်လေ့ မရှိဘူး။ ကြမ်းပြင်ပေါ်၊ ကော်စောပေါ်ပဲ ချလေ့ရှိတယ်။ တယ်လောက်ပြောပြော၊ ဘယ်နှစ်ကြိမ်ပြောပြော မပြင်ဘူး။ အမြဲတမ်းကော်စောပေါ်ပဲ ချလေ့ရှိလို့ စနိုးဖြစ်သူက စိတ်ပျက်နေတယ်။ စိတ်အနှောင့်အယှက်ဖြစ်နေတယ်ဆိုရင် သူ့ ယောက်ျားရဲ့ အကျင့်ကို -
"ကျွန်မယောက်ျားကတော့ ဆေးလိပ်ပြာကို(ကြမ်းပြင်ပေါ်)ကော်စောပေါ်ချ(ပြ)ပါလိမ့်မယ်ရှင်" လို့ ဖော်ပြရေးသားနိုင်ပါတယ်။



6။ If clause အတွင်းမှာ သုံးတဲ့ "will" နဲ့ "would"

ယေဘုယျသဘောနဲ့ ပြောရရင်တော့ Conditional Sentences တွေရေးဖို့တဲ့အခါ If clause အတွင်းမှာရှိတဲ့ကြိယာကို will သို့မဟုတ် would နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ပြီး မရေးရပါဘူး။ ဒါပေမယ့် ယဉ်ကျေးဖွယ်ရာ ဖန်ကြားတဲ့၊ တောင်းဆိုတဲ့သဘောနဲ့ သုံးတဲ့ပါကတော့ If clause အတွင်းမှာရှိတဲ့ ကြိယာကို will, would တို့နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ရေးသားနိုင်ပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ If you will/ would kindly wait a moment, I'll come along with you.
ကျေးဇူးပြုပြီး ခဏလေးလောက် စောင့်နိုင်မယ်ဆိုရင်၊ ကျွန်တော်ခင်ဗျားနဲ့အတူ လိုက်ပါမယ်။

I shall be glad if you will kindly come and see me.
ကျေးဇူးပြုပြီး ကျွန်တော်ကို လာရောက်တွေ့ဆုံမယ်ဆိုရင်တော့ ဝမ်းမြောက် ဝမ်းသာရှိရပါမယ်။
I would be very grateful if you would send me your price list.
လူကြီးမင်းတို့ရဲ့ ဈေးနှုန်းစာရင်းကိုပို့ပေးမယ်ဆိုရင်အလွန်ကျေးဇူးတင်ရပါမယ်။

Normally future and conditional forms are not possible in an if - clause, but there are certain exceptions.

(a) "will/ would" may be used to express a polite request in types 1 and 2.
Both can be used in type 1.

e.g. - If you will/ would kindly wait a moment, I'll call Mr. Pitt.
- If you wouldn't mind waiting a moment, I'll go and get a taxi.
"would", "but not", "will" for type 2.

e.g. - If you would let me have an answer by return, I should be very grateful. (very common in business letters.)

A. P. E. G. (PAGE. 163)

Sometimes it is possible to say "if ... would", especially when you ask someone to do something in a formal way.

E. G. IN USE (PAGE. 72)

If ရဲ့နောက်က will နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ရေးသားနိုင်တဲ့ အသုံးတစ်မျိုးရှိပါသေးတယ်။ Can I? Shall I? May I? တို့နဲ့ အစပြုပြီးမေးတဲ့ ဖန်ကြားချက်၊ ပြောဆိုချက်တစ်ခုကို လက်ခံတဲ့သဘောနဲ့ ရေးသားသုံးနှုန်းမယ်ဆိုရင် "If you will" ကို အသုံးပြုပြီး ရေးရပါတယ်။

- "Shall I lend you this book? "Yes, if you will."
- "May I show you the way? "Yes, if you will."
The phrase "if you will" is often used when we are accepting an offer beginning with "Shall I?", "Can I?", "May I?", etc.
- "Can I help you?" "Yes, please, if you will."
PRACTICAL ENGLISH USAGE (PAGE. 135)

WOULD = ဒါ့လိမ့်မည်

။ would ဝ.က will ရဲ့ အတိတ်ကြိယာဖြစ်ပါတယ်။ ဒါကြောင့် Direct Speech က Indirect Speech သို့ ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါ will ကို would ပြောင်းပေးရပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ - She said, "I will study English."
She said that she would study English.
- The boy said, "I will do my homework."
The boy said that he would do his homework.

။ would ကို Conditional Sentences ပုံစံ (၂) နဲ့ (၃) ရဲ့ Main clause (Result clause) အတွင်းမှာထားပြီးတော့လဲ သုံးပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ 1. If he had much money, he would build a house.
2. If she were a tiger, she would kill me.
3. If they had done the homework, the teacher would not have punished them.
4. If I had had enough money, I would have bought a car.

၃။ would ကို will ရဲ့ အတိတ်ကြိယာဖြစ်တယ်လို့ တရားသေ ပုံသေမှတ်မထားရပါဘူး။ အတိတ်ကြိယာသဘောမဟုတ်တဲ့ အခြားအသုံးအနှုန်းတွေလဲ ရှိပါသေးတယ်။

(က) တစ်စုံတစ်ယောက်ကို တစ်ခုခုပြုလုပ်ပေးဖို့ ပန်ကြားတဲ့အခါမှာ would ကို သုံးပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ Would you open the window, please?

ကျေးဇူးပြုပြီး ပြတင်းပေါက်လေး ဖွင့်ပေးပါဗျာ။

Would you shut the door?

တံခါးလေး ပိတ်ပေးပါလား.....ဗျာ။

ဆိုတဲ့ဝါကျတွေမှာ would ကို အတိတ်ကြိယာတွေအဖြစ် သုံးထားတာ မဟုတ်ပါဘူး။ (Present Meaning) ပဲ ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

သို့သော် Will နဲ့ သုံးတာထက် ပိုပြီး ယဉ်ကျေးတဲ့သဘောကို ဆောင်ပါတယ်။

"Would you?" is less authoritative than "Will you?".
A. P. E. GRAMMAR (PAGE. 169)

- Would you mind နဲ့ သုံးရင်တော့ နောက်က (gerund) V-ing ပုံစံနဲ့ တွဲဖက်ရေးသား ရပါတယ်။

- Would you mind opening the window?
ကျေးဇူးပြုပြီး ပြတင်းပေါက်ကလေး ဖွင့်ပါလားဗျာ။

(ခ) Would like = want အလိုရှိသည်။ ဆန္ဒရှိသည်ဆိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့လည်း would ကို သုံးပါတယ်။

I want to see your father.
ငါ မင်းအဖေကို တွေ့ချင်လို့။ ... လို့ ရေးမယ်ပြောမယ်အစား

I would like to see your father.
ငါ မင်းအဖေကို တွေ့ချင်လို့ပါ ... လို့ ရေးတာက ပိုပြီး ယဉ်ကျေးတဲ့သဘော ရှိပါတယ်။

ငြင်းဆိုဝါကျအနေနဲ့ ရေးမယ်ဆိုရင်တော့ do not want နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ရေးသားရပါတယ်။ would not like နဲ့ မရေးရပါဘူး။

In the negative, however, we must use "do not want", as "would not like" means "would dislike".
A. P. E. GRAMMAR (PAGE. 171)

Should and would are sometimes used to express wishes.
e.g. - I should like to know what they are doing.
(I wish to know what they are doing.)
- He would like to know what time he may call on you.
(He wishes to know, what time he may call on you.)
A. S. HORNBY ELEMENTARY ENGLISH (PAGE. 251)

**OTHER USES OF THE AUXILIARIES
USED TO = နေ့ ... ရှိသည်**

အလုပ်တစ်ခုကို အတိတ်တစ်ချိန်က ပြုလေ့လုပ်လေ့ရှိတယ်။ ဒါပေမယ့် ယခုပြောဆိုနေတဲ့အချိန်မှာတော့ အဲဒီအလေ့အကျင့် မရှိတော့ဘူး... ဆိုတဲ့သဘောနဲ့ used to ကို အသုံးပြုရပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ U Kyaw Myint used to smoke. He used to smoke 10 cigarettes a day.

ဦးကျော်မြင့်က ဆေးလိပ်သောက်တဲ့အကျင့် ရှိခဲ့တယ်။ တစ်နေ့ကို ဆေးလိပ် (၁၀) လိပ် သောက်လေ့ ရှိခဲ့တယ်။

ဆိုတဲ့ ဝါကျရဲ့ဆိုလိုချက်က ဦးကျော်မြင့် ဟိုတုန်းက ဆေးလိပ်သောက်ခဲ့တယ်။ ယခု ပြောဆိုနေတဲ့အချိန်မှာတော့ အဲဒီအကျင့်မရှိတော့ဘူး။ မသောက်တော့ဘူး... လို့ ဆိုလိုပါတယ်။

သတိပြုဖို့

စာပေအတွေ့အကြုံ နုနယ်တဲ့ ကျောင်းသား/သူများ အနေနဲ့ ယခုလောလောဆယ်ထိ ဖြစ်ပျက် ဖြစ်နေတဲ့ အကျင့်စရိုက်တွေကို ဖော်ပြတဲ့အခါမှာ "used to" နဲ့ ယှဉ်တွဲပြီး မှားယွင်းရေးသားမိ တတ်ပါတယ်။

ယခုထိ တည်ရှိနေတဲ့အကျင့်ကို ဖော်ပြရင် Simple Present Tense နဲ့ပဲ ရေးသားရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ 1. (a) U Kyaw Myint smokes 10 cigarettes a day.
ဦးကျော်မြင့် တစ်နေ့ကို ဆေးလိပ် (၁၀) လိပ်သောက်တယ်။
(ယခု ပြောဆိုနေချိန်ထိလဲ သောက်လေ့ရှိတယ်။)
- (b) U Kyaw Myint used to smoke 10 cigarettes a day.
အတိတ်က သောက်ခဲ့တာ၊ ယခု မသောက်တော့ဘူး။

Used to နဲ့ ရေးထားတဲ့ ဝါကျတွေကို ငြင်းဆိုဝါကျပြောင်းရင် used ရဲ့ အနားမှာကပ်ပြီး not ထည့်ပေးရပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ He used to play tennis.
He usedn't (usen't) to play tennis.

- used to နဲ့ ရေးထားတဲ့ဝါကျတွေကို မေးခွန်းဝါကျအဖြစ် ပြောင်းရင်တော့ used ကို ဝါကျရဲ့ ရှေ့သို့ရိုက်ရပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ She used to do her work carelessly.
Used she to do her work carelessly?

ဒါပေမယ့် ဒီနေ့ခေတ် အင်္ဂလိပ်စာ အသုံးအနှုန်းမှာတော့ ငြင်းဆိုဝါကျနဲ့ မေးခွန်းဝါကျပြောင်းဖို့အတွက် Did ကို အသုံးပြုပြီးတော့လည်း ရေးဖို့ကြပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ ■ ■ (ငြင်းဆို)

- He used to go to bed early.
He usedn't to go to bed early.
(or) He didn't use to go to bed early.

(မေးခွန်း)

- He used to go to bed early.
Used he to go to bed early? (or)
Did he use to go to bed early?

In the negative and interrogative it is conjugated without the auxiliary verb "do", but in present-day English it is quite common to find it conjugated with the auxiliary verb "do".

In the negative and interrogative it is conjugated without the auxiliary verb "do", but in present-day English it is quite common to find it conjugated with the auxiliary verb "do".

- e.g.
- Used he to visit you regularly?
 - Did he use to visit you regularly?
 - She used to grumble very much.
 - She usedn't (usen't) to grumble very much.
 - Used she to grumble very much?
 - Did she use to grumble very much?

Note also the interrogative phrases in the following example:

- I used to live in London.
Did you? (or) Used you?
- You used to live in London, didn't you? (or) usedn't you?

Note that the final sounds of this verbs are *st*, not *zd*.

ELEMENTARY ENGLISH (PAGE. 52)

ELEMENTARY

The normal question form is *did use to ?*

- Did you *use to eat* a lot of sweets when you were a child?

The negative form is *didn't use to (or used not to.)*

- Jack *didn't use to go* out very often until he met Jill.

E. G. IN USE (PAGE. 50)

(E. G. IN USE P. 50)

OUGHT TO = သင့်သလို

ပြုလုပ်သင့်တယ်၊ ဆောင်ရွက်သင့်တယ်ဆိုတဲ့ (တာဝန်ရှိတဲ့၊ လုပ်သင့်တဲ့) သဘောအဓိပ္ပာယ်ကို ဖော်ပြချင်ရင် ought to ကို အသုံးပြုရပါတယ်။ (သင့်သည်လို့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်ထွက်တဲ့ should နဲ့ အသုံးပြုပါတယ်။)

■ ■ ought to ကို ပစ္စုပ္ပန်၊ အတိတ်၊ အနာဂတ် ကာလသုံးမျိုးလုံးအတွက် သုံးနိုင်ပါတယ်။

ပစ္စုပ္ပန်နှင့် အတတ်ကာလမှာ ought to ကို သုံးရင် အလုပ်တစ်ခုကို လုပ်သင့်တယ်၊ လုပ်ထိုက်တယ်ဆိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့ သုံးတာဖြစ်ပါတယ်။ အဲဒီ အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့ အတတ်ကာလအတွက် မသုံးရပါဘူး။ အတတ်ကာလအတွက် ought to ကို သုံးရင်တော့ အလုပ်တစ်ခုကို အတတ်က လုပ်သင့်လုပ် ထိုက်ခဲ့တာ မှန်တယ်။ ဒါပေမယ့် မလုပ်ဖြစ်ခဲ့ဘူးဆိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့ သုံးတာ ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

Present Tense နဲ့ Future Tense အတွက် ought to ပုံစံကို သုံးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ - Ought he to go? Yes, he ought. သူသွားသင့်သလား။ အင်း .. သွားသင့်ပါတယ်။
- You ought to start at once. မင်းတို့ ချက်ချင်းပဲ စ(တင်) လုပ်သင့်တယ်။
- Such things ought not to be allowed. ဒါမျိုးတွေ ခွင့်မပြုသင့်ဘူး။

Past tense အတွက် Ought to have + V3 ပုံစံကို သုံးရပါတယ်။

ဒါပေမယ့် ("ပြုလုပ်သင့်ခဲ့တယ်၊ ပြုလုပ်ခဲ့ဖို့ကောင်းတယ်၊ ဒါပေမယ့် မလုပ်ဖြစ်ခဲ့ဘူး။)ဆိုတဲ့ သဘော အဓိပ္ပာယ် သက်ရောက်ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ - I am feeling sick. I ought not to have eaten green mangoes. နေမကောင်းဘူးကွာ၊ သရက်သီးစိမ်းတွေ မစားသင့်ခဲ့ဘူး။ (ဒါပေမယ့် စားမိခဲ့တယ်လို့ ဆိုလိုပါတယ်။)
- I ought to have studied my lessons regularly. စာတွေမှန်မှန်ကျက်ခဲ့ဖို့ သင့်တယ်။ (တကယ်က မကျက်ခဲ့လို့ ပြောတဲ့စကား)
- You ought to have told me that yesterday. ဒီအကြောင်းကို မင်းမနေ့က ငါ့ကိုပြောခဲ့သင့်တာပေါ့။ (တကယ်က မပြောခဲ့လို့ ပြောတဲ့ စကား)
- You ought to have done earlier. မင်း စောစောက လုပ်ခဲ့သင့်တာပေါ့။ (မလုပ်ခဲ့လို့ ပြောတဲ့ စကား)
- He ought to have done his homework last night. မနေညက သူအိမ်စာတွေ လုပ်သင့်ခဲ့တယ်။ (ဒါပေမယ့် မလုပ်ခဲ့ဘူးလို့ ဆိုလိုပါတယ်။)

Ought is also used in the past in the same way as should. In the case of ought, however, the past form is obtained by changing the infinitive of the accompanying verb to perfect form.

e.g. You ought to have prepared your homework before coming to class. I ought to have telephoned Mr. Smith this morning. (but I forgot to do so.)

GRADED EXERCISES (PAGE. 67)

I ought to have telephoned Mr. Smith this morning. (but I forgot to do so.)

GRADED EXERCISES (P. 67)

၂။ ought to ကို subject အနည်းကိန်း အများကိန်း နှစ်မျိုးလုံးနဲ့ တွဲဖက်ရေးသားနိုင်ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ - We ought to study English. (ကျွန်ုပ်တို့) တို့ အင်္ဂလိပ်စာကို လေ့လာသင့်တယ်။
- He ought to go to school. သူ ကျောင်းတက် (သွား) သင့်တယ်။
- I ought to read the newspaper. ငါ သတင်းစာဖတ်သင့်တယ်။

၃။ ought to နဲ့ ရေးထားတဲ့ ဝါကျတစ်ကြောင်းကို ငြင်းဆိုဝါကျပြောင်းမယ်ဆိုရင် ought ရဲ့အနားမှာကပ်ပြီး not ထည့်ရတယ်။

မေးခွန်း ဝါကျပြောင်းမယ်ဆိုရင်တော့ ought ကို ဝါကျရဲ့ရှေ့သို့ ရှိရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ They ought to play football. They ought not to play football. Ought they to play football?

မိမိဆိုလိုချင်တဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ် အယူအဆပေါ်မူတည်ပြီး ...

I told him that he ought to have done it. (i.e. in the past) လို့လဲ

ရေးနိုင်ပါတယ်။

Ought has no Past Tense, no Infinitive and no Participles. Ought is used as a Past Tense in Reported Speech.

- e.g. - He asked me what ought to be done.
- He said that he ought to be in his office.
- It also refers to the Past when it is followed by a Perfect Infinitive.
- a.g. - The work ought to have been done long ago.

ELEMENTARY ENGLISH (PAGE. 28)

၅။ အချိန်ပြပုဒ်တွေမပါဘဲ၊ ဖော်ပြရေးသားရင်တော့ ယေဘုယျသဘောကို ဆောင်ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
- We ought to get up early. (ကျွန်ုပ်တို့) အိပ်ရာက စောစောထသင့်တယ်။
 - Every student ought to study the lessons regularly. ကျောင်းသားတိုင်း စာမှန်မှန်ကျက်သင့်တယ်။
 - We ought to obey our parents. (ကျွန်ုပ်တို့) မိဘစကားကို နားထောင်သင့်တယ်။

၆။ အနာဂတ် အချိန်ပြပုဒ်နဲ့ယှဉ်တွဲပြီးသုံးရင်တော့ အနာဂတ်ကာလမှာ ဖြစ်ရပ်တစ်ခုကို ပြုလုပ်သင့်ကြောင်း ဖော်ပြသုံးနှုန်းတာဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
- They ought to do it tomorrow. ဒါကို (သူတို့) မနက်ဖြန်မှ လုပ်သင့်တယ်။
 - He ought to buy this house next year. ဒီအိမ်ကို လာမယ့်နှစ်မှာ ဝယ်သင့်တယ်။

၇။ ယခုလောလောဆယ် ပစ္စုပ္ပန်ကာလမှာ အလုပ်တစ်ခုကို လုပ်ဆောင်သင့်ကြောင်း ဖော်ပြချင်ရင်တော့ ... ought to be + V-ing ပုံစံကို အသုံးပြုပြီး ရေးသားရပါတယ်။

You ought to be sleeping now.
မင်း ခုအိပ်သင့်နေပြီ။

၈။ အကြံပေးတဲ့သဘော၊ အလိုရှိအပ်တဲ့သဘော (what is advisable, desirable on right) နဲ့လဲ သုံးလိုရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ 1. There ought to be more buses during the rush hours.
လူကြပ်တဲ့အချိန်မှာ ဘတ်စ်ကားတွေ (ပိုမိုပြီး) တိုးပြေးဆွဲသင့်တယ်။
2. You ought (i.e. I advise you) to see that new film at the Odeon.
ရုပ်ရှင်အသစ်ကို မင်းသွားကြည့်သင့်တယ်။ (အကြံပေး)
3. Coffee ought to be drunk while it is hot.
ကော်ဖီဆိုတာ ပူပူလေးသောက်သင့်တယ်။

၉။ ဖြစ်နိုင်တဲ့သဘော (probability) နဲ့လည်း သုံးနိုင်ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ 1. If he started at nine, he ought to be here now.
သူ ၉ နာရီကထွက်ခဲ့ရင် ခု သူဒီမှာ ရောက်နေသင့်တယ်။
2. That ought to be enough fish for three people, I think.
ငါးတွေက လူသုံးယောက်စာအတွက်တော့ လုံလောက်မယ်လို့ ငါထင်တယ်။
3. Mar Mar Min ought to win the race.
မာမာမင်း ပြိုင်ပွဲမှာ နိုင်လောက်တယ်။

OUGHT & SHOULD

Ought အကြောင်းကို အပေါ်မှာ ရှင်းပြခဲ့ပြီး ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။
Ought နဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်တူ "သင့်သည်" ဆိုတဲ့ (duty or obligation) သဘော၊ အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ should ရဲ့ အသုံးအနှုန်းကိုလည်း သတိပြုမှတ်သားရပါမယ်။

ပစ္စုပ္ပန်နဲ့ အနာဂတ်ကာလကို ရည်ညွှန်းဖော်ပြချင်ရင်တော့ should + VI (Present) ပုံစံကို သုံးရပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ - You should study your lessons.
မင်း စာကျက်သင့်တယ်။

- I should answer this question.

ဒီမေးခွန်းကို ငါဖြေသင့်တယ်။

Should ရဲ့ဆိုလိုချက် အဓိပ္ပာယ်ကိုတော့ သတိပြုရပါမယ်။ should နဲ့ ရေးထားရင် ရေးထားတဲ့ဝါကျရဲ့ ဆန့်ကျင်ဘက်အဓိပ္ပာယ်ကို ကောက်ယူရပါတယ်။

- You should study your lessons.

"မင်း စာကျက်သင့်တယ်" ဆိုတဲ့ဝါကျဟာ စာမကျက်လို့ ပြောတာဖြစ်တယ်။

- I should answer this question.

"ငါ ဒီမေးခွန်းကို ဖြေသင့်တယ်" ဆိုတာ ဒီမေးခွန်းကို မဖြေဖြစ်လို့ ပြောတယ်လို့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်ကောက်ယူရပါတယ်။



အတိတ်ကာလကို ရည်ညွှန်း ဖော်ပြချင်ရင်တော့ should have + V3 ပုံစံကို အသုံးပြု ရပါတယ်။

အတိတ်တစ်ချိန်က အလုပ်တစ်ခုကို ပြုလုပ်သင့်ခဲ့တာမှန်တယ်၊ တကယ်တမ်း အဲဒီလုပ်သင့် လုပ်ထိုက်တာကို မလုပ်ခဲ့ဘူးဆိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်သက်ရောက်ပါတယ်။

အဲဒီလို လုပ်သင့်တဲ့အလုပ်ကို မလုပ်ဖြစ်ခဲ့တာ၊ မလုပ်သင့်တဲ့အလုပ်ကို လုပ်ခဲ့မိတာတွေကို ဖော်ပြချင်ရင် should have + V3 ပုံစံကို သုံးရပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ He should have studied before his examination.

(but he did not.)

စာမေးပွဲမတိုင်ခင်က သူ့စာကျက်ခဲ့ သင့်တာပေါ့။ (စာမကျက်ခဲ့လို့ ပြောတာ)

You should not have told him the truth.

(but you did.)

မင်း သူ့ကို အမှန်တွေ သွားမပြောသင့်ခဲ့ဘူး။ (ဒါပေမယ့် မင်းက အမှန်ကို သွားပြောခဲ့မိ တယ်လို့ ဆိုလိုတယ်။)



Exercise No. (184)

Supply the correct form of *should* in the following.

- I (study) my lessons today.
- I (do) my homework last night.
- She (go) to the doctor tomorrow.
- She (go) to the doctor last week.
- You (send) this cable to Mandalay yesterday.
- Everybody (learn) English every day.
- They (learn) English last year before they went to America.
- You (reply) this letter as soon as you received it.
- You (hear) Cho Pyone's song last night. It was ver sweet.
- If I were you, I (sell) this old car.
- If I had known your address, I (write) to you.
- He (tell) her about it yesterday.
- We (see) that film when it was here last week.
- She (know) by now that it is impossible.
- She (know) by then that it was impossible.



Exercise No. (185)

Supply the correct form of *ought* in the following.

- You (pay) what you owe.
- We (finish) our work before we go out.
- We (finish) our work yesterday.
- You (do) it tomorrow.
- You (not smoke) so much, you are wasting your money.
- You (take) those books back to the library last week.
- We (not cross) the road when the lights are red.
- We (not cross) the road when the lights were red.
- She (obey) her parents.
- You (wait) till the lights were green before crossing the road.
- You (buy) a new pen: this one is broken.
- Aye Aye (study) harder if she wishes to pass.
- You (begin) to study English a long time ago.
- We (be) more careful of our health.
- You (go) to the play with us last night.



SHOULD & HAVE TO

Should ရေး၊ have to နှစ်ခုလုံးကို အလုပ်တစ်ခုနဲ့ပတ်သက်ပြီး လုပ်သင့်လုပ်ထိုက်ထဲ (duty and obligation) သဘောနဲ့ ရေးသားပြောဆိုတဲ့အခါမှာ သုံးပါတယ်။ ဒါပေမယ့် ..

- should = ကို လုပ်သင့်လုပ်ထိုက်ရက်သားနဲ့ မလုပ်ဖြစ်တဲ့အခါမှာ သုံးပါတယ်။
- have to = ကို လုပ်သင့်လုပ်ထိုက်တဲ့ အလုပ်ဖြစ်တဲ့အတွက် လုပ်တယ်၊ လုပ်ဖြစ်တယ်လို့ ဖော်ပြချင်တဲ့အခါမှာ သုံးပါတယ်။

Exercise No. (186)

In the blanks of the sentences below, supply the proper form of either "should" or "have to".

1. I (go) to Ngapali tomorrow. (And I shall go.)
2. I (go) to Ngapali last week but I was too busy.
3. He (do) his homework yesterday, but he was too tired and went to bed early.
4. I (call) U Mya Win yesterday but I forgot.
5. I wanted to go to the movie last night, but I (stay) at home and study my lessons.
6. I am sorry I could not visit you last night, but I (work) very late.
7. U Chit Swe could not come to his office because he (attend) a meeting.
8. You (ask) permission before you went back home yesterday. The teacher was very angry.
9. She is seriously ill. She (take) the medicine.
10. I have a bad toothache. I (go) to the dentist.
11. She (go) to the doctor yesterday as she was ill.
12. The children don't (go) to school on Sundays and holidays.
13. He is in debt and is very poor now. He (sell) his car.
14. I (write) this letter last week (but I did not do it.)
15. She (buy) oil yesterday but she forgot.

NEED = လိုအပ်သည်

Need ကို ကြိယာအနေနဲ့ သုံးရင် အသုံးနှစ်မျိုးရှိပါတယ်။

- (a) Ordinary Verb လိုအပ်သည် လို၍နေသည်ဆိုတဲ့ ရိုးရိုးအဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့ သုံးတဲ့ need
- (b) Defective Verb တာဝန် (သို့) လိုအပ်ချက်တစ်ခုခုအရ အလုပ် တစ်ခုကို လုပ်ဖို့ လိုအပ်တယ်၊ (သို့) မလိုအပ်ဘူး။ (to be under an obligation to do something, to be under a necessity to do something) ဆိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ need တို့ ဖြစ်ကြပါတယ်။

(a) ရိုးရိုးကြိယာ (need) ကို စားသည်၊ သောက်သည်၊ နေသည်၊ ထိုင်သည်၊ သွားသည်၊ လာသည် ဆိုတဲ့ အခြားကြိယာတွေလိုပဲ သုံးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. We need warm clothes in the cold season.
ဆောင်းတွင်းမှာ အနွေးထည် လိုအပ်တယ်။
 2. You will need warm clothes when you go to Taunggyi.
တောင်ကြီးကို သွားတဲ့အခါ အနွေးထည်လိုလိမ့်မယ်။
 3. He needed much money last year.
မနှစ်က သူ ပိုက်ဆံအများကြီး လိုခဲ့တာပေါ့။
 4. Do you need warm clothes?
မင်းအနွေးထည်တွေ လိုသလား။
 5. We do not need warm clothes.
အနွေးထည်တွေ မလိုပါဘူး။

(Ordinary verb) ရိုးရိုးကြိယာအနေနဲ့ ရေးတဲ့အခါကာလ (Tense) အမျိုးမျိုးနဲ့ ရေးသားနိုင် ပါတယ်။ မေးခွန်း (သို့မဟုတ်) ငြင်းဆိုဝါကျများအဖြစ် ရေးမယ်ဆိုရင်လဲ Do, Does, Did သင့်တော်ရာ အကူကြိယာ တစ်လုံးလုံးနဲ့ တွဲဖက်ရေးသားရပါတယ်။

(b) need ကို တာဝန် (သို့မဟုတ်) လိုအပ်ချက်တစ်ခုခုအရ လုပ်ဖို့လိုအပ်တယ်၊ မလိုအပ်ဘူးဆိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့သုံးတဲ့ Defective Verb ဆိုရင်တော့ ...

- Simple Present Tense တစ်မျိုးတည်းနဲ့ပဲ သုံးရပါတယ်။
- မေးခွန်းဝါကျအဖြစ် ရေးမယ်ဆိုရင် need ကို ဝါကျရဲ့ရှေ့သို့ ပို့ရပါတယ်။
- ငြင်းဆိုဝါကျအဖြစ် ရေးမယ်ဆိုရင် need အနားမှာကပ်ပြီး not ထည့်ရပါတယ်။
- need ကို မေးခွန်းနဲ့ ငြင်းဆိုဝါကျတွေမှာသာ သုံးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ**
- Need you go so soon?
ဒီလောက် စောစောသွားဖို့ လိုအပ်လို့လား။
 - You needn't go yet, need you?
မင်းသွားဖို့ မလိုအပ်သေးပါဘူး၊ လိုအပ်လို့လား။
 - I needn't go.
ငါသွားဖို့ မလိုအပ်ပါဘူး။

need ကို မေးခွန်းဝါကျနဲ့ ငြင်းဆိုဝါကျတွေမှာ သုံးရကြောင်း အပေါ်မှာ ဖော်ပြခဲ့ပြီးဖြစ်ပါ တယ်။ ရိုးရိုးဝါကျ၊ အဟုတ်ဝါကျ (Affirmative) အနေနဲ့ သုံးမယ်ဆိုရင် have to, must စသည် တို့နဲ့ ရေးသားရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ** ငါသွားဖို့ လိုအပ်တယ်ဆိုတဲ့ (Affirmative) သဘော ရေးမယ်ဆိုရင် ...
1. I have to go.
 2. I must go.
 3. It is necessary for me to go.
 4. I am obliged to go.
- စသည်ဖြင့် ရေးသားရပါတယ်။

Direct Speech ကနေ Indirect Speech ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါမှာတော့ need not ကို အတိတ်ကာလ ရည်ညွှန်းတဲ့သဘောနဲ့ သုံးနိုင်ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ** He said to the children, "You need not stay."
He told the children that they need not stay.
need not + have + V3 ပုံနဲ့ ရေးမယ်ဆိုရင်တော့ အတိတ်ကဖြစ်စဉ်တစ်ခုခုကို ရည်ညွှန်းသုံးနှုန်းတာ ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။ အတိတ်က အလုပ်တစ်ခုကိုလုပ်ဖို့ မလိုအပ်ဘူး၊ ဒါပေမယ့် လုပ်ခဲ့ တယ်ဆိုတဲ့ သဘောအဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့ သုံးပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ** We need not have hurried so much.
တို့တွေ ဒီလောက် အလျင်စလို ကတိုက်ကရိုက်လုပ်ဖို့ မလိုအပ်ခဲ့ပါဘူး။

Need not with a perfect infinitive may refer to the past.
ELEMENTARY ENGLISH (PAGE. 29)

သတိပြုဖို့

need ကို (ordinary verb) ရိုးရိုးကြိယာအဖြစ် သုံးနှုန်းရေးသားတဲ့အခါ သတိပြုပါ။

Present Tense အနေနဲ့ ရေးတဲ့အခါ Subject (ကတ္တား) က He, She, It စတဲ့ အနည်းကိန်းတွေဖြစ်နေရင် need မှာ "s" ထည့်ပေးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ** He needs a new book.
သူ စာအုပ်တစ်အုပ်လိုတယ်။

need ကို (Defective Verb) အဖြစ် သုံးနှုန်းရေးသားမယ်ဆိုရင်တော့ Subject (ကတ္တား) အနည်းကိန်း ဖြစ်ပေမယ့်လဲ need မှာ "s" ထည့် မပေးရပါဘူး။

- ဥပမာ** He need not go at once.
သူ အခုချက်ချင်း သွားဖို့ မလိုအပ်ဘူး။

NEED ဟို ငြင်းဆိုဝါကျအဖြစ် ရေးတဲ့အခါ သတိပြုဖို့

need ကို ကြိယာအဖြစ်သုံးတဲ့အခါ အသုံးနှုန်းမျိုးရှိကြောင်း အပေါ်မှာ ရှင်းပြခဲ့ပြီးဖြစ်ပါ တယ်။

(need ရဲ့ အသုံးအနှုန်းပေါ်မူတည်ပြီး) ငြင်းဆိုဝါကျရေးဖို့တဲ့အခါ need not နဲ့ (do, does, did + not) နှစ်မျိုးလုံး ရေးသားနိုင်တယ်။

need not (needn't) နဲ့ ရေးတဲ့အခါ၊ ကြိယာရဲ့ရှေ့က "to" ခံမပေးရပါဘူး။ to နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ပြီး မရေးရပါဘူး။ (do, does, did + not) နဲ့ ရေးမယ်ဆိုရင်တော့ to နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ပြီးရေးသား ရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ** Present Tense ဆိုရင် ...
1. We needn't go back yet. (OR)
We do not need to go back yet.

- Past Tense ဆိုရင် ...
2. We needn't have gone back yet. (OR)
We didn't need to go back yet.

Sometimes "need" has "needn't" and sometimes it has "don't need" as its negative. When it is followed by "to + infinitive", the negative must be "don't need". When it is followed by an infinitive without "to", it is "needn't".

A GUIDE TO CORRECT ENGLISH (PAGE. 288) (L. A. HILL)

Instead of "needn't" you can use "don't/ doesn't need to".

ENGLISH GRAMMAR IN USE (PAGE. 66)

DIDN'T NEED TO vs NEEDN'T HAVE

အလုပ်တစ်ခုကို လုပ်ဖို့မလိုအပ်ဘူး... ဆိုတဲ့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်နဲ့ ရေးဖွဲ့မယ်ဆိုရင် didn't need to (သို့) needn't have နှစ်မျိုးလုံးနဲ့ ရေးသားနိုင်ပါတယ်။ ဒါပေမယ့် ဆိုလိုတဲ့သဘောကတော့ ကွာခြားပါတယ်။

- အဲဒီအလုပ်ကို လုပ်ဖို့ မလိုအပ်ဘူးဆိုတာ လုပ်နေတဲ့အချိန်မှာ သိရက်သားနဲ့လုပ်တာ (သို့မဟုတ်) မလုပ်တာဆိုရင် didn't need to ကို သုံးရပါတယ်။
- လုပ်နေတဲ့အချိန်မှာ လုပ်ဖို့မလိုအပ်ဘူးဆိုတာ မသိရင် needn't have ကို သုံးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ**
- I didn't need to go, so I didn't go.
သွားဖို့မလိုအပ်ဘူး (ဆိုတာသိတယ်) ဒါကြောင့် ငါ မသွားခဲ့ဘူး။
 - I didn't need to go but I decided to go anyway.
သွားဖို့မလိုအပ်ဘူး (ဆိုတာသိတယ်) ဒါပေမယ့် ဘယ်နည်းနဲ့ဖြစ်ဖြစ် သွားဖို့ ဆုံးဖြတ်ခဲ့တယ်။
 - I needn't have gone. (= I went - this was unnecessary, but I didn't know at the time that it was unnecessary)
သွားဖို့ မလိုအပ်ဘူး (ဆိုတာ မသိခဲ့လို့ သွားခဲ့မိတယ် ... လို့ ဆိုလိုပါတယ်)



- We use "didn't need to" to say that an action was unnecessary. This was known at the time of the action.
- When we use "needn't have", it was not known at the time that the action was not necessary.

ENGLISH GRAMMAR IN USE (PAGE. 66)

DARE = ဝံ့ဝံ့

Dare ကို အဓိကအားဖြင့် မေးခွန်းနဲ့ ငြင်းဆိုဝါကျတွေ conditional Sentence ကျွဲ ဂြိုဟ်သံသယကို ဖော်ပြချင်တဲ့ ဝါကျတွေမှာ သုံးပါတယ်။

- မေးခွန်းဝါကျအဖြစ် ရေးမယ်ဆိုရင် Dare ကို ဝါကျရဲ့ရှေ့မှာထားပြီး ရေးရပါတယ်။
- ငြင်းဆိုဝါကျအဖြစ် ရေးမယ်ဆိုရင်တော့ Dare ရဲ့အနားမှာ not ကပ်ထည့်ရပါတယ်။
- dare not ရဲ့ အတိုကောက်ပုံက daren't ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ**
- Dare you jump from the top of that building?
အဲဒီ အဆောက်အဦရဲ့အပေါ်ကနေ မင်းခုန်ချရဲ့သလား။
 - I dare not jump from the top of that building.
အဲဒီ အဆောက်အဦပေါ်ကနေ ငါ ခုန်မချရဲ့ဘူး။
 - I don't know whether he dare try.
I daren't do it.
သူတော့ ခုန်ချရဲ့ မရဲ့ မသိဘူး။ ငါတော့ မလုပ်ရဲ့ဘူး။
 - Dare you go there alone?
အဲဒီနေရာကို မင်းတစ်ယောက်တည်း သွားရဲ့လား။ (သွားဝံ့လား)
 - I dare not go there alone.
ငါ တစ်ယောက်တည်း မသွားရဲ့ဘူး။

သတိပြုဖို့

Subject အနည်းကိန်း (He, She, It, ... စသည်) တွေနဲ့ တွဲဖက်ရေးသားတဲ့အခါမှာလဲ dare ကို s နဲ့တွဲဖက်ပြီး (Present Tense အနည်းကိန်းအနေနဲ့) မရေးရပါဘူး။

- ဥပမာ**
- Dare he do it?
ဒါကို သူလုပ်ရဲ့သလား။

- He dare not do it.

သူ မလုပ်ရဲဘူး။

dare ကို မေးခွန်း၊ ငြင်းဆိုပါက တွေ့အဖြစ် ရေးဖွဲ့တဲ့အခါ အကူကြိယာ V/Do နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ပြီးတော့လည်း ရေးသားနိုင်ပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ - Dare he go there? ကို
Does he dare to go there?

- Dare he do it? ကို
Does he dare to do it?

- He dare not do it. ကို
He does not dare to do it.

- He dared not visit me. ကို
He didn't dare to visit me.

စသည်ဖြင့် ပြောင်းလဲရေးသားနိုင်ပါသေးတယ်။ အကူကြိယာ Do, Does, Did နဲ့ တွဲဖက်ရေးသားမယ် ဆိုရင် ကြိယာရဲ့ရှေ့က to ခံပေးရပါတယ်။ ဒီနေ့ခေတ် အသုံးအနှုန်းမှာတော့ V/Do ဖော်ပြီး သုံးတာက များပါတယ်။

Note that when conjugated without the auxiliary verb "do", the infinitive is used without "to".
e.g. I dare not go there.
But when conjugated with the auxiliary verb "do", the infinitive requires "to".
e.g. He didn't dare to visit me.
In present-day English the forms with "do" seem to be becoming more frequent.
ELEMENTARY ENGLISH IN USE (PAGE. 30)

PUNCTUATION

PUNCTUATION

Punctuation ဆိုတာ ရေးသားထားတဲ့ ဝါကျလေးတွေကို ဖတ်ရှုတဲ့အခါ၊ ဖတ်တဲ့သူ အလွယ်တကူ ဖတ်နိုင်စေဖို့ ရေးထားတဲ့ဝါကျရဲ့ဆိုလိုချက်ကို ပြတ်ပြတ်သားသား ထင်ထင်ရှားရှား နားလည်စေဖို့အတွက် ဝါကျတွေကို ပုဒ်ဖြတ်ပေးတာဖြစ်ပါတယ်။ ပုဒ်ဖြတ်တဲ့ အခါ၊ အောက်မှာ ဖော်ပြထားတဲ့ အမှတ်အသားလေးတွေကို အသုံးပြုရပါတယ်။

| Name (အမည်) | Punctuation Mark (အမှတ်အသား) |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Full Stop | . |
| 2. Question Mark | ? |
| 3. Exclamation Mark | ! |
| 4. Comma | , |
| 5. Colon | : |
| 6. Semicolon | ; |
| 7. Dash | - |
| 8. Parentheses also brackets | () |
| 9. Quotation Marks | “ ” |
| 10. Hyphen | - |
| 11. Apostrophe | ' |

THE FULL STOP (.)

၁။ (ပေးခွန်းဝါကျနဲ့ အမေ့ချိတ်ဝါကျတွေကလွဲရင်) ဝါကျတစ်ကြောင်းကို အဆုံးသတ်တိုင်း (.) Full stop ကို ထည့်ပေးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ I told him the story. (Statement)
 Sit down. (Command)
 Will you come tomorrow? (Question)
 He cried, "Help! Help!" (Exclamation)

၂။ အတိုကောက် စာလုံးတွေရဲ့အဆုံးမှာလဲ (.) Full stop ထည့်ပေးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ M.A. (= Master of Arts.)
 U.S.A. (= Unites States of America)
 e.g. (= Latin *exempli gratia*)
 = for example
 Nov. = November

သတိပြုမို့

စာလုံးတစ်လုံးကို အတိုကောက် အကျဉ်းချုံးပုံစံနဲ့ ရေးတဲ့အခါ အဲဒီစာလုံးရဲ့ အစ စာလုံးနဲ့ အဆုံးစာလုံးနှစ်လုံးကို ပေါင်းစပ်အကျဉ်းချုပ်ပြီး ရေးထားတဲ့ အတိုကောက်ပုံစံဆိုရင်တော့ သူတို့ရဲ့အဆုံးမှာ (.) Full Stop ကို မထည့်ဘဲလဲ ရေးသားနိုင်ပါ့မယ်။ ထည့်ချင်ရင်လဲ ထည့်နိုင်ပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ Dr. = (Doctor)
- Mr = (Mister)
- Mt = (Mount)
- Mt. Everest
- Mrs = (Mistress)

QUESTION MARK (?)

မေးခွန်းဝါကျအသီးသီးရဲ့အဆုံးမှာ (?) Question Mark ကို ထည့်ပေးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ Is she an actress?
- Have you done the homework?
- Will you help me?
- Do you like tea?
- What is your name?
- How old are you?

သတိပြုမို့

Direct Speech ရဲ့ ပြောစကားအတွင်းက မေးခွန်းဝါကျအဆုံးမှာ (?) ပါပေမယ့် Indirect Speech ပြောင်းတဲ့အခါ Indirect question ဝါကျရဲ့အဆုံးမှာ (?) ကို ထည့်မပေးရပါဘူး။

- ဥပမာ 1. (D.S) I said to her, "Why are you late?"
- (I. S) I told her why she was late.
- 2. (D.S) She said to Yan Aung, "Are you busy today?"
- (I. S) She told Yan Aung if he was busy that day.

THE EXCLAMATION MARK (!)

အာမေဇိုတ် စကားလုံးတို့၊ အာမေဇိုတ် ဝါကျတို့ရဲ့ အဆုံးမှာ Exclamation Mark ကို ထည့်ပေးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ - Oh!, Hey!, Alas!, Hello!
- What a beautiful girl!
- လှလိုက်တဲ့ မိန်းကလေး
- How cold this room is!
- အေးလိုက်တဲ့ အခန်း

THE COMMA (,)

(Punctuation) အမှတ်အသားတွေထဲမှာ Comma ဟာ အသုံးအများဆုံး အမှတ်အသားဖြစ်ပါတယ်။

မိမိရေးသားနေတဲ့ ဝါကျကို ဖတ်ရှုသူ ရှင်းရှင်းလင်းလင်း နားလည်စေဖို့ ပုဒ်ဖြတ်သင့်တယ်။ ပုဒ်ဖြတ်ဖို့ လိုအပ်တယ်လို့ သတ်မှတ်ထားတဲ့နေရာလေးတွေမှာ (,) comma ကို ထည့်ပေးရပါတယ်။ comma ကို (များသောအားဖြင့်) အောက်မှာ ဖော်ပြထားတဲ့ နေရာတွေမှာ သုံးပါတယ်။

- (၁) စကားလုံး သုံးလေးငါးလုံးကို (and) သို့ (or) နဲ့ ဆက်တဲ့အခါ အဲဒီစကားလုံး အသီးသီးရဲ့ကြားမှာ Comma ထည့်ပေးရတယ်။

- ဥပမာ 1. We can see **red, pink, yellow** and **white** roses in the garden.
- 2. He may be **honest, simple** or **kind**.

- (၂) Nouns in Apposition တွေနဲ့ ရေးတဲ့အခါ အထူးပြုပုဒ်နဲ့ မူတည်ပုဒ်ရဲ့ကြားမှာ Comma ထည့်ပေးရတယ်။

- ဥပမာ 1. U Su, our teacher, goes to school.
- 2. Cho Cho, a singer, and Moe Moe, a dancer, are friends.

- (၃) အပြောခံရသူ၊ အမေးခံရသူနဲ့ အခြားစကားလုံး (သို့) ဝါကျရဲ့ကြားမှာ Comma ထည့်ပေးရတယ်။

- ဥပမာ 1. "What is it, dear?" asked Sue.
- 2. "I will come to you, Thet Thet," said Than Than.

(င) Clause တချို့ရဲ့ကြားမှာ Comma ထည့်ပေးရတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. If you try hard, you will pass the examination.
 2. When I see my friend, she is very happy.
 3. You should study regularly, or you will fail in the examination.

*

(၅) Sentence Modifier နဲ့ Sentence ရဲ့ကြားမှာ Comma ထည့်ပေးရတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. Sitting under a tree, she waited for her friend.
 2. Sitting at the table, Htay Htay does her homework.

*

(၆) အောက်မှာဖော်ပြပါထားတဲ့ စကားလုံးတွေ၊ စကားစုတွေရဲ့ အဆုံးမှာ Comma ခံပေးရတယ်။

- | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. Therefore | 2. However | 3. Then |
| 4. Moreover | 5. Besides | 6. That is |
| 7. For instance | 8. For example | 9. By the way |
| 10. In fact | 11. At last | 12. Finally |

- ဥပမာ
1. Driving in the night is dangerous and one should, therefore, be very careful.
 2. In fact, I don't even know her name.

*

(၇) ရှည်လျားတဲ့ဝါကျတွေကို and, as, for, or စတဲ့ Conjunction တွေနဲ့ ဆက်တဲ့အခါ Comma ဖည့်ပေးရတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. We had been looking forward to meeting Nyo Nyo's husband, but discovered that he was not as pleasant as we had hoped.

*

(၈) လူတစ်ယောက် ပြောတဲ့စကားကို အဲဒီလူပြောတဲ့အတိုင်း အတိအကျဖော်ပြတဲ့ Direct Speech နဲ့ ရေးတဲ့ဝါကျတွေမှာ - အဲဒီ ပြောစကား နဲ့ ဝါကျထဲမှာရှိတဲ့ ကျန်စကားလုံးတွေရဲ့ကြားမှာ Comma ထည့်ပေးရတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. Aung Thu said, "I love you more than I can say."
 2. "Do the homework," said the teacher.
 3. "Study your lessons," said U Win, "or you will fail in the examination."

မြိုင်ချက်

တိုက်ရိုက်ပြောစကားဟာ မေးခွန်းတို့၊ အမေ့ဒီတိုဝါကျတို့ဖြစ်နေရင်တော့ Comma မထည့်ရပါဘူး။

- ဥပမာ
- "What are you doing?", said Hay Mar.
"How clever you are!" said Soe Soe.

*

(၉) တစ်ဆက်တည်းရှိရမယ့် ဝါကျရဲ့ကြားမှာ (အထူးပြုတဲ့အဘော၊ ဖွင့်ဆိုရှင်းပြတဲ့အဘောနဲ့) အခြားစကားစု (သို့) ဝါကျတစ်ကြောင်းပါလာရင် Comma ခံပေးရတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. Man has used wheels, in various farms, for about five thousand years.

THE COLON (:)

(၁) အကြောင်းပြချက်ကို ဖော်ပြတဲ့ စကားစု (သို့) ဝါကျပိုင်းတွေရဲ့ရှေ့မှာ Colon ခံပေးရပါတယ်။ (အဲဒီနေရာမှာ Full Stop တို့ Semicolon တို့နဲ့ သုံးရင်လဲ ရပါတယ်။)

- ဥပမာ
1. The garden had been neglected for a long time: it was over grown and full of weeds.
Than Tun's work is unsatisfactory: his answers are thoughtless, his spelling is careless and his writing is bad.

He isn't going to join our firm: we couldn't offer him a big enough salary (= because we couldn't ...)

*

(၂) ရှည်ရှည်လျားလျား ဖော်ပြထားတဲ့ ပစ္စည်းစာရင်းတွေရဲ့ရှေ့မှာလဲ Colon ခံပေးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ**
1. Your first aid kit should include the following items: cotton wool, lint, antiseptic lotion, sticking plaster, bandage and safety pins.
 2. He offered me the choice of any one of these for a wedding present: a set of fish knives, a pewter teapot, an electric toaster, a standard lamp.

*

(၃) ဝါကျတစ်ကြောင်းမှာ such as: for example: in the following example: as follows: စသည်တို့ပါဝင်နေရင်လဲ Colon ကို သုံးလို့ရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ**
1. Can means to be able. For example: Can you speak English?

*

(၄) ကိုးကားချက်တစ်ခုကို ဖော်ပြချင်တဲ့အခါ (To introduce a quotation) မှာလည်း Colon သုံးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ**
1. Shakespear said: "Neither a borrower nor a lender be."

*

(၅) အချိန်ပြပုံကိုရေးတဲ့အခါ နာရီနဲ့မိနစ်ကြားမှာ (:) Colon ကို သုံးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ**
- 8 : 30 a.m
 - 7 : 30 p.m
 - 9 : 30 in the morning

*

THE SEMICOLON (;)

(၁) ဝါကျတစ်ခုနဲ့တစ်ခုဟာ အနီးကပ်ဆက်နွယ်မှု (closely connected) ရှိပေမယ့် ဆက်သွယ်ပေးမယ့် conjunction တွေ မပါတဲ့အခါ Semicolon ကို သုံးရပါတယ်။

1. The sun was setting now; the shadows were long.
2. He had never been to Russia before; however, it had always been one of his life-long ambitions.
3. If you are young, the character may be old; if you are poor, he may be rich; if you are farm-bred; he may be from a city; and so forth.

*

(၂) ဝါကျတစ်ခုမှာ comma ရဲ့အစား သုံးလို့ရတယ်။ ဝါကျပိုင်းနှစ်ခုကို ခွဲခြားချင်တဲ့အခါ၊ တခြားဝါကျမှာလဲ ခွဲခြားရမယ့်အပိုင်းကို comma နဲ့ ခွဲခြားပြီးဖြစ်နေရင် ; ကို သုံးရပါတယ်။

There are two facts to consider; first, the weather; second, the expense.

THE DASH (—) [မျဉ်းချုပ်]

ကိုယ်ရေးသားချင်တဲ့ အကြောင်းအရာကို၊ အခြားအကြောင်းအရာထက် ပိုပြီးထင်ရှားလေးနက်အောင် ဖော်ပြချင်တဲ့အခါမှာ Dash ကို သုံးရတယ်။

- ဥပမာ**
1. Sirens blared, men shouted, and people crowded in to witness the scene — it was chaos.
 2. So you've been lying to me for years and years — how can I ever trust you again?

*

THE PARENTHESES (OR) BRACKETS ()

ကိုယ်ပြောချင် ရေးချင်၊ ဖော်ပြချင်တဲ့အပြင် နောက်ထပ်ပြီးပြောချင်၊ ရေးချင်တာကို ဖော်ပြချင်တဲ့အခါ (လက်သည်းကွင်း၊ ဝိုက်ကွင်း) Parentheses (or) Brackets ကို သုံးရတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. Schooldays (so we are told) are the happiest days of our lives.
 2. He said he'd never seen the sea before (but I think he was joking).

QUOTATION MARKS (OR) INVERTED COMMAS " "

လူတစ်ယောက် ပြောတဲ့ စကားကို အဲဒီလူ ပြောတဲ့ အတိုင်း ကိုးကား ဖော်ပြပြောဆိုတဲ့ Direct Speech ကို ဖော်ပြချင်တဲ့ အခါမှာ သုံးပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. "Who stole the book?" said Ko Tu.
 2. "I can't forget you," said Daisy.

သတိပြုမိ

- (?) Question mark , (!) Exclamation mark,
- (.) Full stop တွေကို " " ရဲ့ အတွင်းမှာ ထားပြီး ရေးရပါတယ်။

မှတ်ချက်

Inverted Commas တွေကို နှစ်ခုထပ် ရေးရင်လဲ ရပါတယ်။ တစ်ခုတည်းနဲ့လဲ ရေးလို့ရပါတယ်။

THE HYPHEN (-) [မျဉ်းတို]

စကားလုံးလေးတွေကို ပေါင်းစပ်ပြီး (သီးခြားအဓိပ္ပာယ်ထွက်တဲ့) အခြားစကားလုံးတစ်လုံး (Compound Word) ဖြစ်လာအောင် ရေးသားတဲ့အခါ အဲဒီစကားလုံးလေးတွေရဲ့အကြားမှာ (-) Hyphen ကို ခံပေးရပါတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
- Father - in - law = ယောက်ျား (ယောက်ျားသူ)
 - Mother - in - law = ယောက်ျား (မိန်းမသူ)
 - Brother - in - law = ယောက်ဖ
 - Daughter - in - law = ချွေးမ စသည်ဖြင့်

*

THE APOSTROPHE

- (၈) ပိုင်ဆိုင်မှုကို ဖော်ပြတဲ့အခါ "s" နဲ့ တွဲပြီး Apostrophe ကို သုံးရတယ်။
ဥပမာ
 1. Aye Aye's pencil.
 2. The girl's book.
 3. The boys'. A boy's
- (၉) စာလုံးအတိုကောက်တွေကို ဖော်ပြချင်တဲ့အခါမှာလဲ Apostrophe ကို သုံးရတယ်။
ဥပမာ
 1. I'm, He's, don't, doesn't, won't, isn't.

CAPITALIZATION (THE USE OF CAPITALS)

- (၁) ဝါကျရဲ့အစစာလုံးကို Capital Letter (စာလုံးအကြီး) နဲ့ ရေးရတယ်။
ဥပမာ
 1. He wants to become a famous doctor.
 2. He tries very hard to pass the examination.
- (၂) Direct Speech နဲ့ ရေးတဲ့အခါ ပြောစကားရဲ့ အစစာလုံးကို Capital Letter နဲ့ ရေးရတယ်။
ဥပမာ
 1. Ko Ko said, "What dou you want?"
 2. "She is afraid of dogs," said San San.
- (၃) ကဗျာစာပိုဒ်တိုင်းမှာရှိတဲ့ စာတစ်ကြောင်းစီရဲ့ အစစာလုံးကို Capital Letter နဲ့ ရေးရတယ်။
ဥပမာ

The mind has a thousand eyes.
And the heart but one;
Yet the light of a whole life dies.
When love in done.
- (၄) လူအမည်၊ မြို့အမည်၊ တိုင်းပြည်အမည်စတဲ့ Proper Noun ကိုယ်ပိုင်နာမ်တွေရဲ့ အစစာလုံးကို Capital Letter နဲ့ ရေးရပါတယ်။
ဥပမာ
 1. Myanmar, China, India.
 2. Yangon, Mandalay, P yay Myo.
 3. Soe Thu, Kyaw Thu, Aung Net.
 4. November, January, February.
- (၅) စာပိုဒ်တွေရဲ့ ခေါင်းစဉ်ကိုရေးတဲ့အခါ အစစာလုံးလေးတွေကို Capital Letter နဲ့ ရေးရတယ်။ ဒါပေမယ့် Article, Preposition နဲ့ Conjunction တွေဆိုရင်တော့ စာလုံးအကြီးနဲ့ မရေးရပါဘူး။
ဥပမာ
 1. The Wheel.
 2. The Circulation of the Blood.
 3. How to Read Short Stories.

(6) ကျွန်ုပ်တို့သည်လို့ အဓိပ္ပာယ်ထွက်တဲ့ "I" နဲ့ အမေဇိုက်အနေနဲ့ သုံးတဲ့ "O" ကို Capital Letter နဲ့ ရေးရတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
1. With a strong effort, **I** cut the last strands of the rope.
 2. **O** say what is that thing call'd light.



(၇) အတိုကောက် အမည်တွေကိုလဲ Capital Letter နဲ့ ရေးရတယ်။

- ဥပမာ
- WHO = World Health Organization.
 - B A = Bachelor of Arts.
 - B Sc = Bachelor of Science.

မှတ်ချက်

အင်္ဂလိပ် အသုံးအနှုန်းအရဆိုရင် အတိုကောက်စာလုံးတွေကြားမှာ (Full Stop) ထည့်လေ့ရှိပါ တဲ့။ အမေရိကန် အသုံးအနှုန်းအရဆိုရင် ထည့်ရပါတယ်။

ဥပမာ B.A. B.Sc. W.H.O. U.S.A.

Punctuation နဲ့ ပတ်သက်တဲ့စည်းကမ်းတွေကို သေသေချာချာ သဘောပေါက်အောင် လေ့လာပြီးပြီဆိုရင် လေ့ကျင့်ခန်းကလေးတွေကို လုပ်ကြည့်ကြရအောင်။



Exercise No. (187)

Punctuate the following.

1. mr frank knows that word
2. he will be there tomorrow
3. miss mary does her homework regularly
4. who invited cho pyone to dinner
5. whose book is on my table
6. what colour do you like
7. he gets up at 730 in the morning
8. he eats dinner at 630 pm
9. she gets back home at 600 pm

10. does miss daisy help mr john
11. my name is james johnson
12. ko moe ko soe ko toe and ko myo go to school
13. is ko tu sitting at the table
14. he and his wife went to mandalay sagaing pyinulwin and many other towns
15. yangon mandalay taunggyi bago and mawlamyine are big towns in our country



လေ့ကျင့်ခန်းကလေးတွေ လုပ်ကြည့်ပြီးရင် အောက်ကအဖြေနဲ့ တိုက်ဆိုင်စစ်ဆေးကြည့်ပါဦး။

1. Mr. Frank knows that word.
2. He will be there tomorrow.
3. Miss Mary does her homework regularly.
4. Who invited Cho Pyone to dinner?
5. Whose book is on my table?
6. What colour do you like?
7. He gets up at 7:30 in the morning.
8. He eats dinner at 6:30 p.m.
9. She gets back home at 6:00 p.m.
10. Does Miss Daisy help Mr. John?
11. My name is James Johnson.
12. Ko Moe, Ko Soe, Ko Toe and Ko Myo go to school.
13. Is Ko Tu sitting at the table?
14. He and his wife went to Mandalay, Sagaing, Pyin-U-Lwin, and many other towns.
15. Yangon, Mandalay, Taunggyi, Bago and Mawlamyine are big towns in our country.



Exercise No. (188)

Punctuate the following.

1. u nyo our class teacher goes to school
2. milton the great english poet was blind
3. he did not however gain his object

4. men may come and men may go but i go on for ever
5. when i was a bachelor i lived by myself
6. have you written your exercise said the teacher
7. u hla said to his children how annoying
8. what a wonderful achievement
9. i cant know nu nus address
10. is all this money for me i said
11. come here he said
12. havent you ever been to ngapali
13. how happy everyone would be if there were no pain
14. tell me i said how you know all that
15. you are not ill are you
16. she doesnt paint badly does she
17. she paints doesnt she
18. hes always finding fault whatever i do
19. we all die in the end but this man is dying needlessly
20. will you post this letter for me please said the girl

လေ့ကျင့်ခန်းလေးတွေ လုပ်ပြီးပြီဆိုရင် အဖြေခွဲ တိုက်ဆိုင်စစ်ဆေးကြည့်ပါ။

1. U Nyo, our class teacher, goes to school.
2. Milton, the great English poet, was blind.
3. He did not, however, gain his object.
4. Men may come, and men may go, but I go on for ever.
5. When I was a bachelor, I lived by myself.
6. "Have you written your exercise?" said the teacher.
7. U Hla said to his children, "How annoying!"
8. What a wonderful achievement!
9. I can't know Nu Nu's address.
10. "Is all this money for me?" I said.
11. "Come here," he said.
12. Haven't you ever been to Ngapali?
13. How happy everyone would be if there were no pain!
14. "Tell me," I said, "how you know all that."
15. You are not ill, are you?
16. she doesn't paint badly, does she?
17. She paints, doesn't she?
18. He's always finding fault, whatever I do.

19. We all die in the end, but this man is dying needlessly.
20. "Will you post this letter for me, please?" said the girl.

•

Exercise No. (189)

Punctuate the following:

1. id like to be a million miles from here
2. Where were you at 1230 on the night of november 27
3. do you recall the time of the accident
4. help i cried
5. my friend chit swe came to visit me last week end
6. my grandfather she said smokes a pipe
7. i wont take you to my house said nu nu
8. im not afraid of you said the boy
9. if the rain stops ill go for a walk
10. i cant eat meat unless its well cooked
11. though i was telling him the truth he still didnt believe me
12. no sir it isnt said the boy
13. the teacher said henry have you done your homework
14. yes sir ive just done it said henry
15. mary said are you hungry margaret
16. what do you want nilar said aung aung
17. tun tun said to the teacher shall i finish my exercise at home sir
18. whats the price of this bicycle said the boy
19. richards father said don't climb that tree in your new trousers
20. richard said read my exercises john and tell me if its correct
21. mary said to john open the box for me please
22. mrs green said please sing at our party margaret
23. did you ask what time is it
24. well i didnt think it was possible
25. john said to his teacher please sir i dont understand what implying a negative means

လေ့ကျင့်ခန်းလေးတွေ လုပ်ပြီးပြီဆိုရင် အဖြေနဲ့ တိုက်ဆိုင်စစ်ဆေးကြည့်ပါ။

1. I'd like to be a million miles from here.
2. Where were you at 12:30 on the night of November 27?
3. Do you recall the time of the accident?
4. "Help!" I cried
5. My friend, Chit Swe, came to visit me last week end.
6. "My grandfather," she said, "smokes a pipe."
7. "I won't take you to my house," said Nu Nu.
8. "I'm not afraid of you," said the boy.
9. If the rain stops, I'll go for a walk.
10. I can't eat meat unless it's well -cooked.
11. Though I was telling him the truth, he still didn't believe me.
12. "No, sir, it isn't," said the boy.
13. The teacher said, "Henry, have you done your homework?"
14. "Yes, sir, I've just done it," said Henry.
15. Mary said, "Are you hungry, Margaret?"
16. "What do you want, Nilar?" said Aung Aung.
17. Tun Tun said to the teacher, "Shall I finish my exercise at home, sir?"
18. "What's the price of this bicycle?" said the boy.
19. Richard's father said, "Don't climb that tree in your new trousers."
20. Richard said, "Read my exercise, John, and tell me if it's correct."
21. Mary said to John, "Open the box for me, please."
22. Mrs Green said, "Please sing at our party, Margaret."
23. Did you ask, "What time is it?"
24. Well, I didn't think it was possible.
25. John said to his teacher, "Please, sir, I don't understand what "implying a negative" means."

Exercise No. (190)

Punctuate the following passage, adding capitals where necessary.

george mellor was my friend a few years ago he isntmy friend any more a few years ago he was poor now hes rich when i knew him he wore shabby clothes was very thin and lived in a small flat he rode a bicycle he was an art student he always said some day im going to be a great artist then he met priscilla priscilla has a very rich father george married her now he wears expensive clothes is rather fat and lives in a huge house he drives a fast sports car now he what th y call a company director now he says some day im going to be prime minister oh well life is good for some people

Answer:

George Mellor was my friend a few years ago. He isn't my friend any more. A few years ago he was poor. Now he's rich. When I knew him he wore shabby clothes, was very thin and lived in a small flat. He rode a bicycle. He was an art student. He always said, "Some day I'm going to be a great artist!" Then he met Priscilla. Priscilla has a very rich father. George married her. Now he wears expensive clothes, is rather fat and lives in a huge house. He drives a fast sports car now. He's what they call a "company director" Now he says, "Some day I'm going to be Prime Minister!" Oh, well. Life is good for some people.

Exercise No. (191)

Punctuate the following passage, adding capitals where necessary.

david nelson is now a successful journalist only a few years ago he was a young very poor journalist he earned very little money think of all the things he used to do then the way he used to live the sort of car he used to drive etc is your own life very different from the way you used to live five or ten years ago describe what you used to do then

Answer:

David Nelson is now a successful journalist. Only a few years ago he was a young, very poor journalist. He earned very little money. Think of all the things he used to do then, the way he used to live, the sort of car he used to drive, etc. Is your own life very different from the way you used to live five or ten years ago? Describe what you used to do then.

Exercise No. (192)

Punctuate the following passage adding capitals where necessary.

im a millionaire in fact im one of the richest men in the world i cant say that i enjoy being so rich but i think id enjoy being poor even less people say im not a very happy man i dont suppose i am i remember being happy only once in my life that was just after id made my first million i remember my wife saying isnt life wonderful were rich life isnt really so wonderful having money doesnt solve all your problems but i dont mind having the problems as long as ive got the money too

Answers:

I'm a millionaire. In fact, I'm one of the richest men in the world. I can't say that I enjoy being so rich but I think I'd enjoy being poor even less. People say I'm not a very happy man. I don't suppose I am. I remember being happy only once in my life. That was just after I'd made my first million. I remember my wife saying, "Isn't life wonderful? We're rich!" Life isn't really so wonderful. Having money doesn't solve all your problems. But I don't mind having the problems as long as I've got the money, too.

Exercise No. (193)

Punctuate the following passage, adding capitals where necessary.

im a policeman not many people like policemen they say were always stopping people from doing what they want to do but i like my job when im on holiday i always look forward to getting back to work a lot of my work is hard and boring but in spite of the hard work i still enjoy being a policeman id never think of doing anything else

Answer:

I'm a policeman. Not many people like policemen. They say we're always stopping people from doing what they want to do. But I like my job. When I'm on holiday, I always look forward to getting back to work. A lot of my work is hard and boring. But in spite of the hard work, I still enjoy being a policeman. I'd never think of doing anything else.

Exercise No. (194)

Punctuate the following passage, adding capitals where necessary.

Im a nurse and i dont earn very much money at all in fact i have a lot of difficulty in just making ends meet as we say but i like being a nurse i suppose its because i enjoy helping people being a nurse is hard work it means working all sorts of hours and it isnt very pleasant sometimes there are all sorts of things i dont enjoy for example i dont enjoy seeing people in pain working ten hours a day and more in a hospital isnt much fun but at least you know youre doing something worthwhile

Answer:

I'm a nurse and I don't earn very much money at all. In fact, I have a lot of difficulty in just making ends meet, as we say. But I like being a nurse. I suppose it's because I enjoy helping people. Being a nurse is hard work. It means working all sorts of hours. And it isn't very

pleasant some times. There are all sorts of things I don't enjoy. For example, I don't enjoy seeing people in pain. Working ten hours a day and more in a hospital isn't much fun, but at least you know you're doing something worthwhile.

Adapted from Robert O'Neill "Kernel Lessons Plus"

ဝါကျတစ်ကြောင်းချင်း ပုဒ်ဖြတ်ပုံ၊ စာတစ်ပိုဒ်လုံး ပုဒ်ဖြတ်ပုံတွေကို လေ့ကျင့်ခဲ့ပြီး ဖြစ်ပါတယ်။ အင်္ဂလိပ် စကားပြောလေးတွေ ပုဒ်ဖြတ်ပုံကို လေ့ကျင့်ကြည့်ပါဦး။

Exercise No. (195)

Punctuate the following.

Friend: whats wrong with the job laura what dont you like abt it
 Laura: my boss i dont understand him
 Friend: what dont you understand
 Laura: i dont think hes human
 Friend: what do you mean
 Laura: for him business is everything business is his life
 Friend: oh laura he cant be so bad.
 Laura: oh yes he is hes a machine no triendly words no smiles no little compliments nothing just business he isnt human

Exercise No. (196)

Punctuate the following.

Laura: hi bill im late again
 bill: uh - huh fifteen minutes
 Laura: really
 Bill: yes really
 Laura: is my boss here
 Bill: yes he is good luck

Exercise No. (197)

Punctuate the following.

Laura: good morning sir
 Mr Crawford: good morning miss segura
 Laura: im sorry im late sir but this morning
 Mr. Crawford: you are always late miss segura
 Laura: but sir this morning
 Mr. Crawford: miss segura please be here at nine o'clock
 Laura: yes sir

Exercise No. (198)

Punctuate the following.

Paulo: hey joana why arent you ready its almost seven o'clock
 Joana: im sorry paluo im not going i have to study
 Paulo: but you can study later dont you want to go
 Joana: no not really i dont like dinner parties
 Paulo: but what can i tell the crawfords
 Joana: tell them im sick
 Paulo: but you arent sick come on Joana i dont like to lie
 Joana: and i dont like to go to dinner parties

Exercise No. (199)

Punctuate the following.

Friend: dont cry laura you dont have to work there
 Laura: but i need the money
 Friend: why dont you look for a new job
 Laura: where how i dont know my way around new york i feel lost

Exercise No. (200)**Punctuate the following.**

Bill : good morning sir
Man : good morning
Paulo : hello bill
 how are you today
Bill : fine thanks
 beautiful day
Paulo : good for business
Bill : sure is
Paulo : see you later
Bill : ok paulo see you later.

ADAPTED FROM NEW ENGLISH 900

Adapted from New English 900

KEY TO EXERCISES

Exercise No. (200)

Punctuate the following.

Bill : good morning sir
Man : good morning
Paulo : hello bill
 how are you today
Bill : fine thanks
 beautiful day
Paulo : good for business
Bill : sure is
Paulo : see you later
Bill : ok paulo see you later.

ADAPTED FROM NEW ENGLISH 900

Adapted from New English 900

KEY TO EXERCISES

KEY TO EXERCISE**Exercise No. (1)**

- | | | | | |
|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. am | 2. are | 3. is | 4. are | 5. are |
| 6. are | 7. is | 8. is | 9. is | 10. are |
| 11. is | 12. are | 13. is | 14. are | 15. are |
| 16. is | 17. are | 18. are | 19. are | 20. are |

Exercise No. (2)

- | | | | | |
|--------|---------|--------|---------|--------|
| 1. is | 2. are | 3. is | 4. is | 5. are |
| 6. are | 7. are | 8. are | 9. is | 10. is |
| 11. is | 12. are | 13. is | 14. are | 15. is |

Exercise No. (3)

- | | | | | |
|---------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| 1. was | 2. was | 3. were | 4. was | 5. was |
| 6. were | 7. were | 8. were | 9. were | 10. was |
| 11. was | 12. was | 13. was | 14. were | 15. was |
| 16. was | 17. were | 18. were | 19. was | 20. were |

Exercise No. (4)

- | | | | | |
|----------|----------|---------|----------|----------|
| 1. has | 2. has | 3. have | 4. have | 5. have |
| 6. has | 7. has | 8. has | 9. has | 10. has |
| 11. has | 12. have | 13. has | 14. has | 15. have |
| 16. have | 17. have | 18. has | 19. have | 20. has |

Exercise No. (5)

- | | | | | |
|-------------|--------------|------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. flies | 2. obeys | 3. saves | 4. gives | 5. sees |
| 6. laughs | 7. watches | 8. reaches | 9. helps | 10. digs |
| 11. lays | 12. carries | 13. sells | 14. matches | 15. fries |
| 16. bakes | 17. stops | 18. barks | 19. fixes | 20. fetches |
| 21. cries | 22. destroys | 23. lives | 24. stays | 25. teases |
| 26. applies | 27. denies | 28. allows | 29. answers | 30. marries |

Exercise No. (6)

- | | | | | |
|--------------|--------------|-----------|-----------|-------------|
| 1. wishes | 2. watches | 3. works | 4. tries | 5. drives |
| 6. studies | 7. flies | 8. speaks | 9. plays | 10. catches |
| 11. destroys | 12. punishes | 13. cries | 14. wants | 15. obeys |

Exercise No. (7)

- | | | | | |
|-----------|---------|------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. plays | 2. play | 3. shines | 4. make. | 5. tells |
| 6. die | 7. read | 8. speaks, | 9. lives, | 10. tastes. |
| 11. walks | 12. go | 13. sells, | 14. sings. | 15. loves, |

Exercise No. (8)

- | | | | | |
|--------------|--------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. He washes | 2. He tries | 3. He plays. | 4. He prepares | 5. He studies |
| 6. He is | 7. He is | 8. He carries | 9. He goes | 10. He writes |
| 11. He has | 12. He keeps | 13. He passes | 14. He sees | 15. He does |

Exercise No. (9)

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. I am not very busy now. | 11. Her name is not Su Su. |
| 2. They are not old friends. | 12. I am not in the eighth standard. |
| 3. It is not raining. | 13. My father is not a trader. |
| 4. He is not an officer. | 14. My father's name is not U Than. |
| 5. They are not having their dinner. | 15. It was not your box. |
| 6. She is not a beautiful girl. | 16. Zaw Zaw was not kicking a ball. |
| 7. There are not many students absent today. | 17. They were not brave soldiers. |
| 8. It was not a good movie. | 18. Yin Yin is not waiting for the bus. |
| 9. U Nu is not a good teacher. | 19. Kyi Kyi is not walking to the door. |
| 10. Today is not a holiday. | 20. They are not clever school boys. |

Exercise No. (10)

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. I do not do my homework every day. | 12. The girl does not walk on the pavement. |
| 2. We do not buy a new car. | 13. Daw Nwe does not teach the children. |
| 3. They do not speak English well. | 14. The teacher does not draw a map. |
| 4. You do not hope to see me. | 15. The workers do not paint the wall. |
| 5. The dog does not wag its tail. | 16. I do not want any books. |
| 6. They do not live in Mandalay. | 17. They do not live in a small village. |
| 7. The book does not cost ten kyats. | 18. We do not dig a well near the road. |
| 8. The class does not begin at 7 o'clock. | 19. The dog does not chase the cat. |
| 9. She does not bring the book to me. | 20. The cat does not climb up the tree. |
| 10. She does not sing very well. | |
| 11. The boys do not run across the road. | |

Exercise No. (11)

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Khin Khin did not get up late this morning. | 12. I did not do my homework last night. |
| 2. They did not watch television last night. | 13. She did not wake up at six o'clock yesterday. |
| 3. It did not rain heavily last night. | 14. They did not live in Padauk street. |
| 4. He did not go to his friend's house yesterday. | 15. The girls did not comb their hair. |
| 5. The chairman did not give a speech at the meeting. | 16. She did not wear a white blouse yesterday. |
| 6. The dog did not bark at night. | 17. The teacher did not clean the blackboard. |
| 7. She did not speak very slowly. | 18. They did not buy a car last week. |
| 8. I did not meet my old friend yesterday. | 19. The boys did not sit at the back of the class. |
| 9. The cat did not sit near the fire. | 20. Thi Thi did not put on her school uniform. |
| 10. The child did not cut his finger badly. | |
| 11. He did not shut the door and windows. | |

Exercise No. (12)

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. I do not have, | 11. He does not have, |
| 2. She does not have, | 12. I do not have, |
| 3. Win Win does not have, | 13. The teacher does not have, |
| 4. We do not have, | 14. We do not have, |
| 5. Aye Aye does not have, | 15. You do not have, |
| 6. She does not have, | 16. They do not have, |
| 7. The elephant does not have, | 17. The child does not have, |
| 8. They do not have, | 18. I do not have, |
| 9. They do not have, | 19. I do not have, |
| 10. The monkey does not have, | 20. The students do not have, |

Exercise No. (13)

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| 1. John has not lived, | 12. He has not worked, |
| 2. She has not been, | 13. I have not known, |
| 3. I have not seen, | 14. She has not been, |
| 4. They have not visited, | 15. They have not been married, |
| 5. I have not done, | 16. We have not been waiting, |
| 6. He has not read, | 17. Father has not returned, |
| 7. We have not learnt, | 18. We have not used, |
| 8. They have not looked, | 19. I have not been, |
| 9. They have not travelled, | 20. They have not been discussing, |
| 10. It has not rained, | |
| 11. He has not finished, | |

Exercise No. (14)

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. He will not be, | 11. They should not look after, |
| 2. You should not spend, | 12. She will not like, |
| 3. The train will not arrive, | 13. Our father will not be, |
| 4. She cannot make, | 14. We will not need any, |
| 5. She will not telephone, | 15. The teacher will not teach, |
| 6. You should not study, | 16. We cannot see any, |
| 7. I will not be, | 17. She will not have any, |
| 8. The weather will not be, | 18. They should not like, |
| 9. They will not sign, | 19. I will not buy any, |
| 10. The meeting will not last, | 20. There will not be any, |

Exercise No. (15)

- | | | | | |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------------|
| 1. some | 2. any | 3. some | 4. any | 5. any |
| 6. some | 7. some | 8. any | 9. some | 10. some, any |

Exercise No. (16)

- | | | | |
|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. anybody | 2. anyone | 3. anything | 4. something |
| 5. anything | 6. somewhere | 7. anywhere | 8. someone |
| 9. anyone | 10. anything | 11. anything | 12. anybody |
| 13. anywhere | 14. something | 15. somebody | 16. somewhere |
| 17. somewhere | 18. somewhere | 19. somewhere | |
| 20. something | | | |

Exercise No. (17)

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. There is not any news. Is there any news? | 12. I did not see any soldiers on the corner. Did you see any soldiers on the corner? |
| 2. There are not any pictures on the wall. Are there any pictures on the wall? | 13. There were not any flowers in the vase. Were there any flowers in the vase? |
| 3. She does not have any pencils. Does she have any pencils? | 14. She did not write any letters yesterday. Did she write any letters yesterday? |
| 4. They do not have any new books. Do they have any new books? | 15. I cannot do anything soon. Can you do anything soon? |
| 5. We do not want any paper. Do you want any paper? | 16. We did not see anybody in the park with Wai Mar. Did you see anybody in the park with Wai Mar? |
| 6. He does not know anything. Does he know anything? | 17. There is not anyone at the door. Is there anyone at the door? |
| 7. She will not buy any magazines. Will she buy any magazines? | 18. He will not put his box anywhere in this house. Will he put his box anywhere in this house? |
| 8. He must not sell any old books. Must he sell any old books? | 19. He should not tell anybody about it. Should he tell anybody about it? |
| 9. She did not give him any sugar. Did she give him any sugar? | 20. The doctor did not give her anything for her headache. Did the doctor give her anything for her headache? |
| 10. She did not put any more sugar in the tea. Did she put any more sugar in the tea? | |
| 11. They did not buy any magazines yesterday. Did they buy any magazines yesterday? | |

Exercise No. (18)

- | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. I'm not, | 11. She didn't write, |
| 2. I don't have, | 12. She can't write, |
| 3. I don't have, | 13. We aren't, |
| 4. I won't go, | 14. We mustn't study, |
| 5. I didn't go, | 15. We didn't telephone, |
| 6. I don't go, | 16. They haven't painted, |
| 7. She isn't, | 17. They don't watch, |
| 8. She doesn't have, | 18. They mayn't tell, |
| 9. She doesn't have, | 19. He couldn't drink, |
| 10. She doesn't write, | 20. He wasn't absent, |

Exercise No. (19)

1. She'll,
2. I'll,
3. He's,
4. It's,
5. They're,
6. I'm,
7. You'd, It's,
8. I'll,
9. I don't, he's,
10. Don't, It's,
11. he'll,
12. hadn't, wouldn't,
13. doesn't,
14. I'd,
15. shouldn't,
16. hadn't, wouldn't,
17. didn't,
18. didn't,
19. name's,
20. I've,
21. She hasn't,
22. Who's,
23. I'm,
24. I've,
25. I'll, won't,
26. you'll,
27. We've,
28. What's, It's,
29. Who's,
30. Where's,
31. That's, needn't,
32. didn't,
33. It's, isn't,
34. You're, can't,
35. doesn't, don't

Exercise No. (20)

1. Let's,
2. Let's,
3. The sun's, The weather's
4. wouldn't,
5. What's,
6. Who's, It's,
7. There's,
8. She's,
9. She's,
10. Didn't,
11. don't,
12. haven't
13. You're, aren't, ...
14. Won't you, ...
15. Haven't I, ...
16. oughtn't, ...
17. She's,
18. She's,
19. Don't, ... haven't, ...
20. It's, I shan't

Exercise No. (21)

1. Is he an excellent student?
2. Is she a good cook?
3. Is he studying to be a lawyer?
4. Is he an American?
5. Is there a book on the table?
6. Is Mary angry with me?
7. Were they interested in playing tennis?
8. Are they both good students?
9. Are the exercises easy for you?
10. Are there two lamps in the room?
11. Are there four windows in this room?
12. Is there anything in the bottle?
13. Are there many flowers in the garden?
14. Is the garden five minutes' walk?
15. Is it the front of the book?
16. Is that the back of a car?
17. Was she writing with a pen?
18. Is Htay Htay helping her mother?
19. Was there any grass in the garden?
20. Is this girl taller than that boy?

Exercise No. (22)

1. Does he come to class on time?
2. Do they live on the second floor?
3. Does their father smoke very much?
4. Does she study her lessons regularly?
5. Does Mya Mya bring her sister to school?
6. Does John speak English very clearly?
7. Does Soe Soe play the piano very well?
8. Does this new pen write very well?
9. Does he make many mistakes in spelling?
10. Does she spend much money on clothes?
11. Does that house belong to her?
12. Does this road lead to Mandalay?
13. Do you prefer the summer holidays?
14. Does she often cook the meal?
15. Does he drive a car to school?
16. Do dogs make better pets than cats?
17. Do the boys play football every day?
18. Do the men go to work daily?
19. Does the neem leaf taste bitter?
20. Do the little children often cry?

Exercise No. (23)

1. Did the doctor give her the pills to take?
2. Did he buy any stamps at the post office?
3. Did you see an accident yesterday?
4. Did U Lwin tell you anything about his trip?
5. Did you leave your umbrella on the table?
6. Did mother give you anything to eat?
7. Did she answer the phone?
8. Did they bring you a present?
9. Did the villagers catch the thief after a long search?
10. Did Zaw Zaw ride his bicycle to school yesterday?
11. Did U Khin teach them English?
12. Did she win the first prize last year?
13. Did the headmaster want to speak to my father?
14. Did they sell the old house last week?
15. Did the hunter tell his followers to follow him?
16. Did he eat more than he needed?
17. Did you meet him two days ago?
18. Did the girl do the homework yesterday?
19. Did you watch television last night?
20. Did the boys enjoy the football match yesterday?

Exercise No. (24)

1. Does he have a pretty cat?
2. Does he have a drink?
3. Do they have many friends?
4. Do cats have bright eyes?
5. Does Cho Pyone have beautiful lips?
6. Does this room have four windows?
7. Do you have a red car?
8. Does Yin Yin have her breakfast?
9. Does she have one sister and two brothers?
10. Does the sky have many stars tonight?
11. Do you have five kyats in your pocket?
12. Does he have an orange after lunch?
13. Does Kyaw Thu have a cup of coffee for breakfast?
14. Does the boy have a book and a pencil?
15. Does the dog have anything to eat?
16. Does the little boy have any cakes?
17. Does the tree have any leaves?
18. Does the patient have a bad cold?
19. Do you have two brothers?
20. Do the children have a bath?

Exercise No. (25)

1. Have you known him for a long time?
2. Has she been in England since 1988?
3. Has Hla Hla broken three cups so far this week?
4. Have they returned home?
5. Has Kyaw Kyaw done very little work recently?
6. Has he worked in that firm for many years?
7. Has John already bought the tickets for the game?
8. Have they lived there since 1980?
9. Have they already finished their work?
10. Has he driven a car for many years?
11. Has the boy studied this lesson over and over again?
12. Have you told your mother about it?
13. Have you read that book many times?
14. Has he seen that play four times?
15. Has mother been sick since Monday?
16. Has he bought the new books?
17. Have you waited for me for an hour?
18. Have you found your lost pen?
19. Has he left for Mandalay since yesterday?
20. Have they been married for a long time?

Exercise No. (26)

1. Will you wash all the dishes?
2. Must she leave immediately?
3. May I smoke out of the cinema?
4. Can Daw Marlar speak five different languages?
5. Can they go to Mandalay by plane?
6. Can you understand the lessons easily?
7. Should she stay at home?
8. Must you go to the dentist?
9. Must you learn at least ten new words everyday?
10. Will he finish the work tomorrow?
11. Will he do anything remarkable?
12. Will she be the best student in this class?
13. Will you tell me all about it?
14. Will they be married next year?
15. Will the nurse take good care of the patient?
16. Will you walk home from work tomorrow?
17. Will the girls learn how to swim?
18. Will they finish the bridge in one year?
19. Will he write the composition in twenty minutes?
20. Will Cho Pyone put on her make-up in half an hour?

Exercise No. (27)

1. Aren't they going to Mandalay tomorrow?
2. Isn't he a good swimmer?
3. Wasn't she given enough money?
4. Won't the boys be here on Monday?
5. Can't this man buy this expensive car?
6. Shouldn't they sell the house?
7. Doesn't he do the homework regularly?
8. Didn't they come to you last night?
9. Don't the girls want to play tennis?
10. Doesn't she live in this town?
11. Hasn't Thazin studied her lessons yet?
12. Haven't they repaired the engine yet?
13. Hasn't he watered the flowers?
14. Does she never come to class on time?
15. Isn't the weather warm today?
16. Won't you be in class tomorrow?
17. Isn't it raining now?
18. Didn't this girl take her examination last year?
19. Does he never look up new words in the dictionary?
20. Haven't they built a new house yet?

Exercise No. (28)

1. He is learning English, isn't he?
2. I am very stupid, aren't I?
3. They are interested in drawing, aren't they?
4. She is very curious, isn't she?
5. The boy can swim well, can't he?
6. She must answer the question, mustn't she?
7. They will be late for school, won't they?
8. He should study his lessons, shouldn't he?
9. She has done the house work, hasn't she?
10. They have repaired the roof, haven't they?
11. You want some more money, don't you?
12. He bought a new car, didn't he?
13. He doesn't love fishing, does he?
14. I shan't be in your way, shall I?
15. I haven't met you before, have I?
16. She didn't hurt you, did she?
17. U Ni drinks too much, doesn't he?
18. They didn't see the accident, did they?
19. He has been to Ngapali, hasn't he?
20. He hasn't been to Pyin-Oo-Lwin, has he?
21. She likes tea and coffee, doesn't she?
22. She doesn't like tea and coffee, does she?
23. They went to Mandalay, didn't they?
24. They did not go to Mandalay, did they?
25. They used to go to Mandalay, didn't they?

Exercise No. (29)

- | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|
| 1. Yes, I will | 11. Yes, he does |
| 2. No, they can't | 12. Yes, she did |
| 3. Yes, we should | 13. No, they haven't |
| 4. Yes, it is | 14. Yes, she has |
| 5. No, I'm not | 15. Yes, it has |
| 6. No, she isn't | 16. No, they haven't |
| 7. No, they don't | 17. Yes, she did |
| 8. Yes, he does | 18. Yes, they will |
| 9. Yes, I did | 19. Yes, I would |
| 10. Yes, it does | 20. No, he hasn't |

Exercise No. (30)

- | | | | |
|-----------|----------|-----------|----------|
| 1. Where | 2. How | 3. How | 4. How |
| 5. When | 6. When | 7. What | 8. Why |
| 9. How | 10. Who | 11. Why | 12. When |
| 13. Where | 14. Why | 15. Where | 16. How |
| 17. When | 18. What | 19. How | 20. Why |

Exercise No. (31)

- | | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|---------------|-----------|
| 1. What | 2. Which | 3. Who | 4. What | 5. Whose |
| 6. Who | 7. Which | 8. What | 9. Who | 10. What |
| 11. Which | 12. Whom | 13. Whom | 14. Who(Whom) | 15. Which |
| 16. What | 17. Whose | 18. Whose | 19. What | 20. Which |
| 21. What | 22. Where | 23. Whose | 24. What | 25. Who |
| 26. When | 27. What | 28. Which | 29. What | 30. How |

Exercise No. (32)

- | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. Who | 2. How | 3. Who | 4. What |
| 5. What | 6. Where | 7. Which | 8. Whose |
| 9. What | 10. Where | 11. When | 12. Where |
| 13. When | 14. Why | 15. Why | 16. Who |
| 17. When | 18. Which | 19. How | 20. What |
| 21. Which | 22. Who | 23. What | 24. What |
| 25. Which | 26. Whose | 27. Whose | 28. Which |
| 29. Who | 30. Which | | |

Exercise No. (33)

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Who is reading a book? | 10. Whom does Daw Mar love very much? |
| 2. Whom are the pupils listening to? | 11. Whose daughters are very curious? |
| 3. Who left for Mandalay? | 12. Whom did the robbers kill? |
| 4. Whose dog is this? | 13. Whose house will be sold next year? |
| 5. Whose pencil is it? | 14. Whose books did someone steal? |
| 6. Whose telephone number did you write in the note book? | 15. Whom did you see last month? |
| 7. Who like the English class? | |
| 8. Who have ploughed the fields? | |
| 9. Whom are they chasing? | |

Exercise No. (34)

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1. What is your name? | 12. What do ducks eat? |
| 2. What is your mother? | 13. What is your aunt's name? |
| 3. Who are your parents? | 14. What is she? |
| 4. What is your hobby? | 15. What is she doing now? |
| 5. What do you read? | 16. What is the teacher going to read us? |
| 6. What is your ambition? | 17. What does Thuzar's mother make for her? |
| 7. Who is her best friend? | 18. What did your father give you? |
| 8. What do they read every day? | 19. What has the man mended? |
| 9. What is your favourite flower? | 20. What time is it? / What is the time? |
| 10. What are white and small? | |
| 11. What have a very nice smell? | |

Exercise No. (35)

1. Which colour does she like?
2. Which boy is clever?
3. Which boy do you want to see?
4. Which girl is beautiful?
5. Which longyi has Daw Than bought?
6. Which pen is yours?
7. Which girl won the beauty contest?
8. Which room is the largest in your school?
9. Which train will they take?
10. Which cinema are they going to?
11. Which car can he buy?
12. Which dog will she give him?
13. Which tooth is hurting you?
14. Which boys failed in the examination?
15. Which dress was she wearing?
16. Which girl is opening the window?
17. Which boy is playing with a ball?
18. Which woman is carrying a basket?
19. Which girl did you see yesterday?
20. Which man do you see?

Exercise No. (36)

1. What do you want to eat?
2. Whose are these books? (or) Whose books are these?
3. What is Ni Ni wearing?
4. Whom did he see in the market yesterday?
5. Where did he see his friend?
6. When did he see his friend?
7. Who left this bag here?
8. Who is your new teacher?
9. What do they want to do?
10. Who taught you English?
11. What did U Lwin teach you?
12. Whom did U Lwin teach English?
13. What eat grass?
14. What do cows eat?
15. Where are the children playing?
16. Who is looking at the girl?
17. Whom is the boy looking at?
18. How will they go to school?
19. Where will they go on foot?
20. What will they do?

Exercise No. (37)

1. When is your father coming back?
2. How long have you spoken English?
3. Why is she sleeping?
4. How much did you give for this longyi?
5. How many cars does he have?
6. Why did they go to the post office?
7. Why didn't she buy the diamond ring?
8. How long do you intend to remain here?
9. When will she see you?
10. When will she leave? How will she leave?
11. How are they working?
12. Where do you swim?
13. Where does she take a plate?
14. Where does the picture hang?

15. When do you wake up?
16. Whose wife was angry with him?
17. Who was angry with him?
18. Who sings a song sweetly?
19. How does Cho Pyone sing a song?
20. What does Cho Pyone do?
21. Where do they go by bus every day?
22. How do they go to school every day?
23. When do they go to school by bus?
24. When did her mother die?
25. Whose mother died in 1988?
26. Who died in 1988?
27. Who goes to the market to buy vegetables every morning?
28. When does mother go to the market to buy vegetables?
29. Why does mother go to the market every morning?
30. Where does mother go to buy vegetables every morning?
31. What does mother do every morning?
32. How long has Moe Aung lived in Mandalay?
33. Where has Moe Aung lived since 1980?
34. Which car is your father's?
35. How many books does she have?

Exercise No. (38)

1. Where are the girls sleeping?
2. What are the girls doing in the room?
3. When will the train leave?
4. What does a new moon look like?
5. Why was the girl looking unhappy?
6. Why did the pupils stand up?
7. How long was the old man walking?
8. When are you going to the zoo?
9. How did the bird sing?
10. Where have the hunters gone?
11. Who have gone into the forest?
12. When did Ni Ni go to Pyin-Oo-Lwin?
13. Where did Ni Ni go last summer?
14. When did the students come?
15. Whose umbrella did Ko Tun take away?
16. How fast can jets fly? How can jets fly?
17. How many passengers can the big planes carry?
18. What has Mi Mi done?
19. Why did she wash her hands?
20. Who think that dogs are faithful?
21. Whose money is given away as prizes every years?
22. How long have you been living in Pyin-Oo-Lwin?
23. How long has she been away?
24. How long has he been a doctor?
25. How long have you been here?
26. Who has just left for work?
27. When had the train arrived?
28. When had the lesson started?
29. Why didn't you go out?
30. Why can't you do it now?

Exercise No. (39)

- | | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. a | 2. an | 3. an | 4. a |
| 5. an | 6. a | 7. a | 8. an |
| 9. a | 10. an | 11. a | 12. a |
| 13. an | 14. an | 15. a | 16. a |
| 17. a | 18. a | 19. an | 20. an |
| 21. a | 22. an | 23. an | 24. a |
| 25. a | 26. a | 27. an | 28. a |
| 29. an | 30. a | 31. a | 32. an |
| 33. an | 34. a | 35. an | 36. a |
| 37. an | 38. a | 39. an | 40. a |

Exercise No. (40)

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. တောင်ကုန်းတစ်ခု | 2. တောင်ကုန်းများ | 3. တောင်ကုန်း | 4. ကြက်မတစ်ကောင် |
| 5. ကြက်မများ | 6. ကြက်မ | 7. လိမ္မော်သီးတစ်လုံး | 8. လိမ္မော်သီး |
| 9. လိမ္မော်သီးများ | 10. နားရွက်တစ်ဖက် | 11. နားရွက် | 12. နားရွက်များ |
| 13. ငါးရှဉ့်တစ်ကောင် | 14. ငါးရှဉ့်များ | 15. ငါးရှဉ့် | 16. လူမမယ်ကလေးငယ် |
| 17. လူမမယ်ကလေးငယ်များ | 18. လူမမယ်ကလေးငယ်တစ်ယောက် | 19. ဆိတ်တစ်ကောင် | |
| 20. ဆိတ် | 21. ဆိတ်များ | 22. ပုရွက်ဆိတ်တစ်ကောင် | |
| 23. ပုရွက်ဆိတ် | 24. ပုရွက်ဆိတ်များ | 25. ဆင် | 26. ဆင်များ |
| 27. ဆင်တစ်ကောင် | 28. ထီးများ | 29. ထီးတစ်လက် | 30. ထီး |

Exercise No. (41)

- | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. The girl | 2. A girl | 3. Girls | 4. A book |
| 5. The book | 6. Books | 7. An axe | 8. The axe |
| 9. Axes. | 10. An arm | 11. Arms | 12. The arm |
| 13. The eye | 14. Eyes | 15. An eye | 16. The bear |
| 17. A bear | 18. A cup | 19. Cups | 20. The cup |
| 21. The bag | 22. A bag | 23. Bags | 24. A dog |
| 25. The dog | 26. A goat | 27. The goat | 28. A soldier |
| 29. The soldier | 30. Soldiers | | |

Exercise No. (42)

- | | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. C | 2. U | 3. C | 4. U | 5. U | 6. U |
| 7. U | 8. U | 9. C | 10. C | 11. U | 12. U |
| 13. C | 14. C | 15. U | 16. U | 17. C | 18. U |
| 19. U | 20. C | 21. C | 22. C | 23. C | 24. C |
| 25. C | 26. U | 27. U | 28. U | 29. U | 30. U |
| 31. C | 32. U | 33. U | 34. C | 35. C | 36. C |
| 37. C | 38. U | 39. U | 40. C | 41. C | 42. C |
| 43. C | 44. C | 45. U | 46. C | 47. U | 48. C |
| 49. U | 50. U | | | | |

Exercise No. (43)

- | | | | |
|--------------|----------------|-------------------|-------------|
| 1. buses | 2. lunches | 3. girls | 4. women |
| 5. boys | 6. men | 7. glasses | 8. months |
| 9. years | 10. toys | 11. mice | 12. rats |
| 13. teachers | 14. pupils | 15. wishes | 16. watches |
| 17. friends | 18. enemies | 19. geese | 20. deer |
| 21. days | 22. children | 23. chairs | 24. schools |
| 25. teeth | 26. Englishmen | 27. horses | 28. houses |
| 29. apples | 30. stories | 31. taxes | 32. duties |
| 33. oxen | 34. inches | 35. boxes | 36. keys |
| 37. copies | 38. policemen | 39. knives | 40. wives |
| 41. sheep | 42. tomatoes | 43. potatoes | 44. benches |
| 45. rays | 46. chiefs | 47. fishes (fish) | 48. thieves |
| 49. radios | 50. pianos | | |

Exercise No. (44)

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Books have covers. | 2. Boxes have lids. |
| 3. Dogs have tails. | 4. Girls have long hair. |
| 5. Cats are animals. | 6. Wives are women. |
| 7. Flies are insects.. | 8. Tables are made of wood. |
| 9. Dishes are on the table. | 10. Girls are curious. |
| 11. Children like sweets. | 12. Boys do the work well. |
| 13. Dogs hate cats. | 14. Men eat rice. |
| 15. Mangoes grow on trees. | 16. Soldiers must decide quickly. |
| 17. Children can catch cold very often. | 18. Mothers should love children. |
| 19. Babies will suck thumbs. | 20. Birds can fly in the sky. |

Exercise No. (45)

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. A boy has a book. | 2. A child has a toy. |
| 3. A girl has a watch. | 4. A cat has a nose. |
| 5. A student has a good fountain pen. | 6. An actress is a beautiful woman. |
| 7. A rose is a flower. | 8. A teacher is studious. |
| 9. A bird is singing this morning. | 10. A thief is caught by a policeman. |
| 11. A dog chases a rabbit. | 12. A student goes to school every day. |
| 13. A hen lays an egg today. | 14. A bird builds a nest. |
| 15. A dog barks at a stranger. | 16. A student must write an essay regularly. |
| 17. A book seller will have a magazine. | 18. A child should not play with fire. |
| 19. A boy will wear a shirt. | 20. A hungry man can eat a large dinner. |

Exercise No. (46)

- | | | | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. a | 2. a | 3. a | 4. an | 5. an | 6. a |
| 7. an | 8. an | 9. a | 10. a | 11. an | 12. a |
| 13. an | 14. an | 15. a | 16. an | 17. an | 18. a |
| 19. an | 20. a | 21. an | 22. a | 23. an | 24. an |
| 25. a | 26. a | 27. an | 28. a | 29. a | 30. an |
| 31. an | 32. a | 33. an | 34. an | 35. a | 36. a |
| 37. an | 38. an | 39. a | 40. a | 41. a | 42. an |
| 43. a | 44. a | 45. an | 46. a | 47. a | 48. a |
| 49. a | 50. an | | | | |

Exercise No. (47)

- | | | | | | |
|------------|---------|---------------------|---------|-------|------------|
| 1. an | 2. a | 3. The | 4. The | 5. a | 6. a |
| 7. an, The | 8. an | 9. a, | 10. The | 11. a | 12. The |
| 13. a, the | 14. the | 15. a, a, The, the | | 16. a | 17. a, The |
| 18. a, the | 19. a,a | 20. a,a,the,The,the | | | |

Exercise No. (48)

- | | | | | | | | |
|-------------|-------------|------------|------------|-------|------------------|---------------|---------|
| 1. an | 2. a,a | 3. The,the | 4. an | 5. an | 6. a | 7. a | 8. a |
| 9. the | 10. the | 11. The | 12. the,an | | 13. (An/The),The | | |
| 14. the,the | | 15. a,a, | 16. the | | 17. the | 18. a,The,the | |
| 19. The | 20. The,the | 21. the | 22. The | | 23. a,a | 24. The | 25. A,a |

Exercise No. (49)

- | | | | | | |
|-----------|---------|-------------|------------|----------|------------|
| 1. x | 2. x | 3. The, the | 4. x | 5. x, | 6. x, x |
| 7. The | 8. The | 9. the | 10. The | 11. The, | 12. the, a |
| 13. x | 14. the | 15. x | 16. the | 17. a,x | 18. x,x |
| 19. x,x | 20. the | 21. an,the | 22. the ,a | 23. The | 24. a,x |
| 25. The,a | | | | | |

Exercise No. (50)

- | | | | | |
|---------------------|-------------|----------------|---------------|-----------------------|
| 1. school | 2. hospital | 3. prison | 4. the prison | 5. prison, the prison |
| 6. the hospital | | 7. in hospital | | 8. the school |
| 9. work, home | | 10. bed | | 11. university |
| 12. television | | 13. the radio | | 14. dinner |
| 15. a big breakfast | | | | |

Exercise No. (51)

- | | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. (A) Oranges | 2. (B) The English people | 3. (B) All the students |
| 4. (B) the music | 5. (A) history | 6. (B) the mangoes |
| 7. (B) The second World War | 8. (B) All the clothes | 9. (A) All books |
| 10. (B) All the books | 11. (A) Life | 12. (B) the life |
| 13. (A) dogs | 14. (A) Most people | 15. (B) the people |

Exercise No. (52)

- | | |
|----------------------------|-------------|
| 1. Asia, The United States | 2. The Nile |
| 3. The United Kingdom | 4. Canada |
| 5. The Panama Canal | 6. Cairo |
| 7. Mount Everest | 8. Asia |
| 9. The Soviet Union | 10. Sweden |

Exercise No. (53)

- | | | | | | |
|---------------|-------------|-------------|---------|---------|-------------|
| 1. I | 2. me | 3. me | 4. I | 5. We | 6. him |
| 7. He | 8. They, me | 9. me | 10. him | 11. her | 12. He |
| 13. They, her | | 14. she, me | 15. him | 16. me | 17. We, him |
| 18. us | 19. us | 20. her | | | |

Exercise No. (54)

- | | | | | | |
|------------|---------------|----------|---------------|----------|---------|
| 1. her | 2. him | 3. them | 4. him | 5. She | 6. They |
| 7. He | 8. him | 9. her | 10. She, them | | 11. you |
| 12. He, us | 13. She, them | | 14. They, us | | 15. We |
| 16. It | 17. It | 18. it | 19. It | 20. They | 21. it |
| 22. them | 23. it | 24. them | 25. it | | |

Exercise No. (55)

- | | | | | | |
|---------|-----------|-----------|-----------|---------|-----------|
| 1. my | 2. her | 3. their | 4. his | 5. our | 6. its |
| 7. her | 8. their | 9. our | 10. its | 11. her | 12. their |
| 13. our | 14. your | 15. their | 16. their | 17. his | 18. my |
| 19. her | 20. their | | | | |

Exercise No. (56)

- | | | | | | |
|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|----------|
| 1. yours | 2. ours | 3. his | 4. hers | 5. theirs | 6. ours |
| 7. mine | 8. his | 9. ours | 10. yours | 11. yours | 12. hers |
| 13. ours | 14. hers | 15. yours | | | |

Exercise No. (57)

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. These books are interesting. | 8. Those chairs over there are broken. |
| 2. Those houses belong to U Tun. | 9. These are better than those. |
| 3. These exercises are very difficult. | 10. These girls are more beautiful than those girls. |
| 4. Those books on the table are for Ni Ni. | 11. These letters are for your father. |
| 5. I look at these boxes. | 12. Those mangoes are very sweet. |
| 6. Are these men you want to see? | 13. Those are my uncle's houses. |
| 7. I want these cars, not those cars. | 14. These are your friend's books. |

15. Those are my cars. 19. These men under the tree are my friends.
 16. These are good books. 20. These rings are very expensive.
 17. Those are interesting lessons.
 18. Those hats belong to the child.
 (children).

Exercise No. (58)

- | | | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------|----------------|-------------|
| 1. herself | 2. myself | 3. ourselves | 4. himself |
| 5. yourself | 6. herself | 7. yourself | 8. himself |
| 9. themselves | 10. itself | 11. myself | 12. herself |
| 13. oneself (himself, herself) | 14. himself | 15. themselves | |

Exercise No. (59)

- | | | | |
|-------------|---------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. myself | 2. yourself | 3. ourselves | 4. themselves |
| 5. himself | 6. himself | 7. herself | 8. himself |
| 9. herself | 10. herself | 11. herself | 12. herself |
| 13. himself | 14. ourselves | 15. myself | |

Exercise No. (60)

- | | | |
|------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| 2. older than | 3. more expensive than | 4. better than |
| 5. taller than | 6. more faithful than | 7. more difficult than |
| 8. fatter than | 9. wiser than | 10. hotter than |
| 11. braver than | 12. lazier than | 13. colder than |
| 14. happier than | 15. busier than | |

Exercise No. (61)

- | | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. the shortest | 2. the most difficult | 3. the cleverest |
| 4. the richest | 5. the youngest | 6. the most intelligent |
| 7. the most beautiful | 8. the bravest | 9. the highest |
| 10. the worst | 11. the most useful | 12. the most courageous |
| 13. the oldest | 14. the eldest | 15. the largest |

Exercise No. (62)

- | | | | |
|--------------|-------------------|------------|---------------------|
| 1. older | 2. largest | 3. longest | 4. more beautiful |
| 5. higher | 6. most expensive | | 7. better |
| 8. prettier | 9. tallest | 10. hotter | 11. fatter, fattest |
| 12. thinnest | 13. younger | 14. easier | 15. more plentiful |

Exercise No. (63)

- | | | | |
|--------------|-------------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| 1. beautiful | 2. more beautiful | 3. most beautiful | 4. most beautiful |
| 5. heaviest | 6. cool | 7. useful | 8. more useful |
| 9. sweeter | 10. sweetest | 11. wise | 12. more intelligent |
| 13. strong | 14. mightier | 15. better | |

Exercise No. (64)

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Pyin-Oo-Lwin is not so hot as Mandalay. | 13. No other actor in our country is so famous as Kyaw Hein. |
| 2. Physics is not so difficult as Chemistry. | 14. Yangon is more beautiful than any other town in Myanmar. |
| 3. I am not so handsome as Ko Tun. | 15. Kay Thwe is cleverer than any other girl in the class. |
| 4. Phyu Phyu is not more beautiful than Ni Ni. | 16. Wai Mar is thinner than any other girl in the village. |
| 5. Nilar is not fatter than Thidar. | 17. The Nile is longer than any other river in the world. |
| 6. Kyaw Thu is not taller than Soe Thu. | 18. Tun Tun is stronger than any other boy. (or) Tun Tun is the strongest of all boys. |
| 7. Mandalay is hotter than Pyin-Oo-Lwin. | 19. Tint Tint is prettier than any other girl in our class. (or) Tint Tint is the prettiest of all girls in our class. |
| 8. English is more interesting than Chemistry. | 20. The Shwedagon is more famous than any other pagoda in our town. (or) The Shwedagon is the most famous of all pagodas in our town. |
| 9. Min Min is as fat as Tun Tun. | |
| 10. Su Su is as rich as Nu Nu. | |
| 11. Nu Nu is as tall as Yu Yu. | |
| 12. No other man in our town is so rich as U Chit. | |

Exercise No. (65)

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Ni Ni <i>always</i> works hard. | 10. I <i>always</i> read three books a week. |
| 2. She <i>never</i> goes to the pictures. | 11. The poor old woman <i>never</i> has new clothes. |
| 3. He <i>often</i> listens to the radio. | 12. He <i>rarely</i> arrives at work early. |
| 4. Nyo Nyo <i>sometimes</i> washes the clothes every week-end. | 13. I <i>always</i> have a shower before I go to school. |
| 5. They <i>usually</i> have their dinner at five o'clock. | 14. He <i>usually</i> leaves home early. |
| 6. They are <i>always</i> at home at night. | 15. He doesn't <i>always</i> walk to his office. |
| 7. I don't <i>often</i> see my friend Yi Yi. | |
| 8. The girl is <i>generally</i> late for school. | |
| 9. She is <i>usually</i> early for work. | |

Exercise No. (66)

- | | | | | |
|----------|-----------|-------------|----------|----------|
| 1. from | 2. to | 3. in | 4. about | 5. at |
| 6. above | 7. by | 8. from | 9. in | 10. at |
| 11. of | 12. of | 13. off | 14. in | 15. near |
| 16. by | 17. for | 18. at | 19. to | 20. in |
| 21. up | 22. about | 23. between | 24. in | 25. by |

Exercise No. (67)

- | | | | | |
|-------------|------------|----------|-----------------|----------|
| 1. to | 2. besides | 3. At | 4. since | 5. of |
| 6. of | 7. for | 8. to | 9. on | 10. from |
| 11. between | 12. about | 13. in | 14. From, by | 15. on |
| 16. of | 17. with | 18. of | 19. for, on, by | 20. in |
| 21. out | 22. of | 23. with | 24. at | 25. from |
| 26. into | 27. on | 28. up | 29. at | 30. in |

Exercise No. (68)

- | | | | | |
|--------|-----------|-----------|--------|--------|
| 1. on | 2. by | 3. by, by | 4. in | 5. by |
| 6. by | 7. on, by | 8. by | 9. on | 10. on |
| 11. in | 12. In | 13. In | 14. on | 15. On |
| 16. in | 17. in | 18. at | 19. at | 20. in |
| 21. in | 22. in | 23. at | 24. in | 25. at |
| 26. in | 27. in | 28. in | 29. at | 30. in |

Exercise No. (69)

- | | | | | |
|---------|-------------|----------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. with | 2. with | 3. with | 4. with | 5. with |
| 6. by | 7. by | 8. by | 9. with | 10. with |
| 11. by | 12. with | 13. by | 14. at, in | 15. by, with |
| 16. in | 17. without | 18. with | 19. into/ in | 20. of |
| 21. in | 22. up | 23. by | 24. in | 25. into |

Exercise No. (70)

- | | | | | |
|-----------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. in, in | 2. in | 3. in | 4. in | 5. in |
| 6. in | 7. in | 8. in | 9. on | 10. on |
| 11. on | 12. on | 13. at | 14. at | 15. at |
| 16. in | 17. by | 18. on | 19. on | 20. on |
| 21. by | 22. by | 23. by | 24. at | 25. at |

Exercise No. (71)

- | | | | | |
|----------|---------|---------|------------|------------|
| 1. are | 2. is | 3. has | 4. have | 5. comes |
| 6. likes | 7. are | 8. ask | 9. was(is) | 10. chases |
| 11. kill | 12. is | 13. go | 14. goes | 15. has |
| 16. have | 17. are | 18. is | 19. is | 20. are |
| 21. does | 22. do | 23. are | 24. are | 25. has |
| 26. make | 27. is | 28. is | 29. is | 30. has |

Exercise No. (72)

- | | | | | |
|-----------|------------|------------|---------|------------|
| 1. wants | 2. is | 3. admires | 4. is | 5. visit |
| 6. is | 7. is | 8. have | 9. help | 10. allows |
| 11. comes | 12. was | 13. has | 14. is | 15. has |
| 16. was | 17. was | 18. is | 19. is | 20. likes |
| 21. makes | 22. desire | 23. wants | 24. is | 25. has |
| 26. does | 27. looks | 28. is | 29. has | 30. was |

Exercise No. (73)

- | | | | | |
|---------|----------|----------|---------|----------|
| 1. cost | 2. is | 3. likes | 4. has | 5. are |
| 6. are | 7. is | 8. is | 9. is | 10. are |
| 11. is | 12. are | 13. is | 14. is | 15. do |
| 16. is | 17. want | 18. are | 19. has | 20. is |
| 21. is | 22. is | 23. has | 24. are | 25. were |

Exercise No. (74)

- | | | | | |
|----------|----------|-----------|------------|--------------|
| 1. has | 2. were | 3. are | 4. are | 5. is |
| 6. makes | 7. tell | 8. makes | 9. speaks | 10. flock |
| 11. live | 12. make | 13. has | 14. thinks | 15. likes |
| 16. lays | 17. take | 18. makes | 19. is | 20. troubles |
| 21. is | 22. is | 23. is | 24. seek | 25. do |

Exercise No. (75)

- | | | | | |
|-------------|--------------|------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. are | 2. are(were) | 3. attends | 4. are | 5. talks |
| 6. contains | 7. lives | 8. Is | 9. is | 10. is |
| 11. likes | 12. do | 13. are | 14. deserves | 15. is |
| 16. was | 17. is | 18. is | 19. are | 20. thinks |
| 21. is | 22. is | 23. are | 24. have | 25. was(is) |

Exercise No. (76)

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 2. is stopping | 3. is opening | 4. is putting | 5. are studying |
| 6. are leaving | 7. is buying | 8. is making | 9. is writing |
| 10. am watching | 11. is ringing | 12. is smoking | 13. is knocking |
| 14. is sitting | 15. are playing | | |

Exercise No. (77)

- | | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 2. is turning | 3. are learning | 4. is preparing | 5. is ringing |
| 6. is doing | 7. is having | 8. is blowing | 9. is sleeping |
| 10. is studying | 11. are falling | 12. is speaking | 13. is teaching |
| 14. are swimming | 15. are digging | | |

Exercise No. (78)

- | | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. is singing | 2. study | 3. are playing | 4. goes |
| 5. tells | 6. is singing | 7. are having | 8. is preparing |
| 9. takes | 10. is signing | 11. sleeps | 12. cleans |
| 13. am getting | 14. are shaking | 15. come | |

Exercise No. (79)

- | | | | | |
|----------------|------------------|-----------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 1. comes | 2. is having | 3. has | 4. stops | 5. is stopping |
| 6. is sleeping | 7. sleep | 8. comes | 9. is coming | 10. is teaching |
| 11. teaches | 12. fall | 13. is sleeping | 14. sleeps | 15. does |
| 16. is doing | 17. is writing | 18. writes | 19. smokes | 20. smokes |
| 21. have | 22. are studying | 23. love | 24. loves | 25. rains |
| 26. is raining | 27. knows | 28. remember | 29. is | 30. is thinking |

Exercise No. (80)

- | | | | | |
|----------|--------------|-----------|-------------|------------|
| 1. was | 2. were | 3. was | 4. was | 5. had |
| 6. had | 7. had | 8. bought | 9. went | 10. sat |
| 11. read | 12. put | 13. wrote | 14. swam | 15. smiled |
| 16. ran | 17. listened | 18. came | 19. took | 20. drank |
| 21. woke | 22. wanted | 23. knew | 24. shouted | 25. read |

Exercise No. (81)

- | | | | |
|------------------|-------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 2. was driving | 3. was washing | 4. was cooking | 5. was doing |
| 6. were waiting | 7. were listening | 8. was going | 9. were clapping |
| 10. were playing | 11. was drawing | 12. was blowing | 13. was wearing |
| 14. was sitting | 15. were writing | | |

Exercise No. (82)

- | | | | |
|------------------|-----------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. was preparing | 2. left | 3. were sleeping | 4. was shining |
| 5. slept | 6. was writing | 7. rained | 8. read |
| 9. played | 10. died | 11. spoke | 12. were having |
| 13. saw | 14. entered | 15. was drawing | 16. took |
| 17. was watching | 18. met | 19. came | 20. discovered |
| 21. went | 22. was still burning | 23. cut | |
| 24. was running | 25. was going | | |

Exercise No. (83)

- | | | | |
|----------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. will arrive | 2. will return | 3. will write | 4. will like |
| 5. will speak | 6. will bring | 7. will play | 8. will write |
| 9. will walk | 10. will teach | 11. will be | 12. will be |
| 13. will be | 14. will be | 15. will be | 16. will have |
| 17. will have | 18. will have | 19. will have | 20. will have |

Exercise No. (84)

- | | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. am, was, will be | 2. are, were, will be | 3. is, was, will be |
| 4. is, was, will be | 5. is, was, will be | 6. has, had, will have |
| 7. have, had, will have | 8. has, had, will have | 9. sits, sat, will sit |
| 10. gives, gave, will give | 11. see, saw, will see | 12. help, helped, will help |
| 13. comes, came, will come | 14. attend, attended, will attend | 15. speaks, spoke, will speak |

Exercise No. (85)

- | | | | |
|---------------|-------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. has asked | 2. have shaken | 3. have closed | 4. have written |
| 5. has drawn | 6. has stolen | 7. has eaten | 8. has blown |
| 9. has taught | 10. have finished | 11. have dug | 12. has been |
| 13. has been | 14. have learnt | 15. has been | 16. have had |
| 17. has had | 18. have had | 19. have had | 20. has had |

Exercise No. (86)

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. has been | 2. have been | 3. has washed | 4. have painted |
| 5. has finished | 6. has broken | 7. has cleaned | 8. has dropped |
| 9. have done | 10. has eaten | 11. have read | 12. has taken |
| 13. has sold | 14. has written | 15. has bought | |

Exercise No. (87)

- | | | | |
|----------------|----------------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. have heard | 2. have seen | 3. has been | 4. has advised |
| 5. have been | 6. have had | 7. has studied | 8. has been |
| 9. has studied | 10. has been | 11. have known | 12. have lived |
| 13. has been | 14. have already had | | 15. has had |

Exercise No. (88)

- | | | | | | |
|----------|----------|---------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. for | 2. since | 3. for | 4. since | 5. for | 6. since |
| 7. since | 8. since | 9. for | 10. since | 11. since | 12. since |
| 13. for | 14. for | 15. for | | | |

Exercise No. (89)

- | | | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. since | 2. for | 3. for | 4. since | 5. ago | 6. ago |
| 7. for | 8. for | 9. since | 10. since | 11. for | 12. ago |
| 13. ago | 14. for | 15. ago | 16. ago | 17. ago | 18. ago |
| 19. ago | 20. since | 21. for | 22. for | 23. since | 24. since |
| 25. since | 26. since | 27. for | 28. for | 29. since | 30. since |

Exercise No. (90)

- | | | | | | |
|-------------|-------------|------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. already | 2. yet | 3. yet | 4. yet | 5. already | 6. already |
| 7. already | 8. already | 9. already | 10. already | 11. yet | 12. yet |
| 13. yet | 14. already | 15. yet | 16. already | 17. already | 18. already |
| 19. already | 20. already | | | | |

Exercise No. (91)

- | | | | |
|----------------|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. had met | 2. had read | 3. had had | 4. had left |
| 5. had written | 6. had done | 7. had swindled | 8. had gone |
| 9. had taken | 10. had been | 11. had washed | 12. had written |
| 13. had done | 14. had gone | 15. had made | 16. had taught |
| 17. had been | 18. had bought | 19. had gone | 20. had asked |

Exercise No. (92)

- | | | | |
|----------------|--------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. had cooked | 2. had slept | 3. had washed | 4. had left |
| 5. had done | 6. was | 7. came | 8. came |
| 9. went | 10. went | 11. went | 12. ironed |
| 13. understood | 14. talked | 15. broke | 16. got |
| 17. went | 18. had come | 19. had retired | 20. had been |
| 21. had read | 22. sowed | 23. had bought | 24. had cleaned |
| 25. broke | | | |

Exercise No. (93)

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. had heard, wept | 2. thought, had stolen | 3. told, had seen |
| 4. was, had never seen | 5. thanked, had done | 6. had gone, took |
| 7. went, had finished | 8. found, had broken | 9. arrived, had gone |
| 10. arrived, had begun | 11. asked, had not done | 12. had gone, began |
| 13. (had) entered, rang | 14. had put, began | 15. had written, began |
| 16. had already died, arrived | 17. had started, got | 18. had arrived, got |
| 19. had left, got | 20. went, had finished | |

Exercise No. (94)

- | | | | |
|-------------|------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| 1. has been | 2. was | 3. has written | 4. wrote |
| 5. read | 6. has read | 7. lost | 8. has lost |
| 9. visited | 10. have visited | 11. has not rained | 12. did not rain |
| 13. was | 14. have been | 15. had | 16. has had |
| 17. fell | 18. have fallen | 19. studied | 20. have studied |

Exercise No. (95)

- | | | | | |
|----------------------|---------------|---------------------|-------------------------|---------------|
| 1. got | 2. brought | 3. fought | 4. have been | 5. was |
| 6. went | 7. bought | 8. studied | 9. have had | 10. have lost |
| 11. did | 12. have done | 13. have not seen | 14. did not see | 15. have cut |
| 16. has got | 17. got | 18. lost, has found | 19. went, has come back | |
| 20. bought, has sold | | | | |

Exercise No. (96)

- | | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. will be doing | 2. will be listening | 3. will be travelling |
| 4. will be watching | 5. will be having | 6. will be cooking |
| 7. will be raining | 8. will be meeting | 9. will be staying |
| 10. will be playing | 11. will be working | 12. will be waiting |
| 13. will be preparing | 14. will be having | 15. will be studying |

Exercise No. (97)

- | | | | |
|------------------------|----------|---------------------|-----------------|
| 1. will | 2. will | 3. are you going to | 4. are going to |
| 5. is going to | 6. will | 7. am going to | 8. Will you |
| 10. am going to | 11. will | | 9. will not |
| 13. is going to (will) | 14. will | | 12. will you |
| | | | 15. is going to |

Exercise No. (98)

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. had fled | 2. is raining | 3. had already done | 4. was watering |
| 5. had already cooked | 6. dug | 7. had finished | 8. was still cooking |
| 9. lay | 10. struck | 11. have already explained | 12. is singing |
| 13. takes | 14. was still writing | 15. sings | 16. had already done |
| 17. is reading | 18. has sold | 19. had left | 20. has |

Exercise No. (99)

- | | | | | |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|-----------------|--------------|
| 1. went | 2. believes | 3. is having | 4. had done | 5. to become |
| 6. rises | 7. broke out | 8. happened | 9. is preparing | 10. has been |
| waiting | 11. had done | 12. forget | 13. played | 14. had read |
| 15. contains | | | | |

Exercise No. (100)

(၆၆၆၆၆၆)

Exercise No. (101)

- | | | |
|--|---|-------------------------|
| 1. Do you know | 2. Did she do | 3. Did he water |
| 4. Have you heard | 5. Does the girl sweep | 6. Have you ever been |
| 7. Were you crossing | 8. Were you reading | 9. does the boy study |
| 10. will you paint | 11. did you paint | 12. Do you know |
| 13. are you doing, have you been doing | 16. is she doing | 14. have you lived |
| 15. were the boys doing | 19. Is the teacher writing | 17. Do you study |
| 18. does she wash | 22. Do you like | 20. did he go |
| 21. does he go | 23. Did the wind blow, Was the wind blowing | 24. Has he been writing |
| | | 25. were you doing |

Exercise No. (102)

(၆၆၆၆၆၆)

Exercise No. (103)

- | | | |
|-------------------|------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. have not eaten | 2. does not understand | 3. did not rain |
| 4. is not shining | 5. has not lived | 6. have not worked |
| 7. has not drunk | 8. will not go | 9. will not write |
| 10. does not get | 11. was not | 12. does not need |
| 13. have not had | 14. did not enjoy | 15. have not found |

Exercise No. (104)

- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------------|----------------|--------------------|
| 1. went | 2. is studying | 3. was reading | 4. will understand |
| 5. have visited | 6. has been singing | 7. will study | 8. rises |
| 9. is crying | 10. grow | 11. comes | 12. is drawing |
| 13. loves | 14. is having | 15. has | |

Exercise No. (105)

- | | | | | |
|----------------|---------------|----------------|--------------------|---------------|
| 1. is | 2. are | 3. is | 4. was | 5. am |
| 6. was | 7. will be | 8. is | 9. was | 10. is |
| 11. is | 12. is/was | 13. is, is | 14. is | 15. are |
| 16. will be | 17. were | 18. wou'd be | 19. has been | |
| 20. have been | 21. are | 22. have been | 23. are | 24. were |
| 25. was | 26. had | 27. has | 28. am having | |
| 29. have | 30. will have | 31. had | 32. had | 33. will have |
| 34. has | 35. have | 36. are having | 37. have | 38. has had |
| 39. has | 40. have | 41. would have | 42. would have had | |
| 43. would have | 44. will have | 45. have | 46. has | 47. have |
| 48. will have | 49. has | 50. has | | |

Exercise No. (106)

- | | | | | |
|----------------|-------------|-------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. do, do | 2. does | 3. do | 4. Do | 5. Did |
| 6. was doing | 7. had done | 8. are done | 9. do | 10. Do |
| 11. Does | 12. Do | 13. does | 14. did | 15. Did |
| 16. did | 17. do | 18. do | 19. did | 20. Does |
| 21. does | 22. do | 23. do | 24. does | 25. does |
| 26. do | 27. do | 28. do | 29. do | 30. was doing |
| 31. is | 32. are | 33. has | 34. have | 35. writes |
| 36. get | 37. tell | 38. sweep | 39. sing | 40. teaches |
| 41. carry | 42. plays | 43. explain | 44. is studying | 45. is raining |
| 46. is washing | 47. spends | 48. drink | 49. speak | 50. helps |

Exercise No. (107)

- | | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1. Do you eat | 2. Did you eat | 3. Will you eat |
| 4. Are you eating | 5. Does he know | 6. Did he know |
| 7. Do they plough | 8. Did they plough | 9. Will they plough |

- | | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|---------------------|
| 10. Are they ploughing | 11. Have they ploughed | 12. Do they read |
| 13. Are you reading | 14. Have you read | 15. Will you read |
| 16. Did you read | 17. Do you do | 18. Are you doing |
| 19. Have you done | 20. Did you do | 21. does not tell |
| 22. do not tell | 23. do not drink | 24. has not written |
| 25. did not read | 26. is not cooking | 27. did not play |
| 28. does not like | 29. does not go | 30. does not do |
| 31. did not do | 32. has not done | 33. is not doing |
| 34. did not wash | 35. will not do | |

Exercise No. (108)

- | | | |
|--------------------|--|---------------------|
| 1. was taught | 2. is written | 3. will be finished |
| 4. were kept | 5. is being cut | 6. are sold |
| 7. will be written | 8. was taken | 9. is/was seer. |
| 10. was discovered | 11. was destroyed | 12. has been used |
| 13. has been read | 14. has been repaired | 15. can be borrowed |
| 16. tries | 17. invites. (Subject he or she (၆၆၀)) | |
| 18. know | 19. will get | 20. will/shall go |
| 21. had | 22. studied | 23. would buy |
| 24. would lend | 25. would have called | 26. would have been |
| 27. had invited | 28. had left | 29. were |
| 30. were | 31. dancing | 32. beating |
| 33. talk | 34. cook | 35. sing |

Exercise No. (109)

- | | | | | | |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. A.V | 2. P.V | 3. A.V | 4. P.V | 5. A.V | 6. P.V |
| 7. A.V | 8. P.V | 9. A.V | 10. P.V | 11. A.V | 12. P.V |
| 13. A.V | 14. P.V | 15. A.V | 16. P.V | 17. A.V | 18. P.V |
| 19. A.V | 20. P.V | 21. A.V | 22. P.V | 23. P.V | 24. A.V |
| 25. A.V | 26. P.V | 27. A.V | 28. P.V | 29. A.V | 30. P.V |

Exercise No. (110)

- | | | | | | |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. P.V | 2. A.V | 3. A.V | 4. P.V | 5. A.V | 6. A.V |
| 7. P.V | 8. A.V | 9. A.V | 10. A.V | 11. A.V | 12. P.V |
| 13. A.V | 14. A.V | 15. A.V | 16. A.V | 17. A.V | 18. A.V |
| 19. A.V | 20. A.V | | | | |

Exercise No. (111)

1. This book is written by U Thu Kha.
2. The cake is eaten by the boy.
3. The coffee is brought by Than Than.
4. The books are returned by Zaw Zaw.
5. A cup of tea is drunk by Ko Ko.
6. The pupils are helped by the teacher.
7. The door is opened by the girl.
8. The windows are shut by the girl.
9. A kite is made by the boy.
10. The apples are bought by Daw Su.
11. The house is sold by Daw Nu.
12. The newspaper is read by our father.
13. The cat is chased by the dog.
14. The mouse is killed by the cat.
15. Television is watched by Thazin.

Exercise No. (112)

1. A doll is bought by him.
2. The accident is seen by her.
3. The flowers are watered by him.
4. The birds are killed by him.
5. Essays are written.
6. The mountain is climbed.
7. The ball is kicked by you.
8. The meal is cooked by me.
9. A picture is drawn by her.
10. The cows are milked by him.
11. The mice are chased by it.
12. The bridge is repaired.
13. A well is dug.
14. The old books are sold by her.
15. The money is stolen by him.

Exercise No. (113)

1. I am loved by my parents.
2. She is teased by the boys.
3. He is beaten by the old woman.
4. We are bitten by the dogs.
5. They are taught by U Myint.
6. She is watched by the police.
7. You are seen by the teachers.
8. He is hated by the boys.
9. We are praised by the headmaster.
10. She is forgotten by the girls.
11. The children are loved by parents.
12. The girls are teased by the boy.
13. The child was beaten by the old woman.
14. The girl is bitten by the dog.
15. The thief is watched by the police.

Exercise No. (114)

1. A well is dug near the village.
2. All the work is finished.
3. The new things are invented.
4. A house is built in the village.
5. The flowers are watered every day.
6. The meeting is held in the hall.
7. Our new television set is stolen.
8. The teacher is seen in front of the school.
9. The exercises are prepared before we go to school.
10. Much time is spent on their homework.
11. English is learnt every day.
12. Rice is eaten to live every day.
13. Our lessons are studied before we go out to play.
14. I am telephoned from the market.
15. The thief is caught after a long search.

Exercise No. (115)

1. His proposals were accepted.
2. The house was built in 1980.
3. I was seen in the market.
4. A meeting was held last week.
5. The children were taught by Daw Htar Htar.
6. The letter was sent by airmail.
7. Our essays were corrected by the teacher at home.
8. Many books were written by U Thu Kha.
9. The dinner was prepared by our mother yesterday.
10. My bicycle was stolen last week.
11. The wall was painted last week.
12. The old bridge was repaired two days ago.
13. The singers were invited to their wedding.
14. The books were printed in Mandalay.
15. The windows were cleaned last month.
16. Yesterday, the grass was cut to feed the cows.
17. America was discovered by Columbus in 1492.
18. The lost child was found at last.
19. The book was published in Mandalay.
20. A dacoit was shot by a policeman.

Exercise No. (116)

1. His lessons are prepared every day.
2. Her lessons were prepared last night.
3. Their house was sold last week.
4. Their house is sold because they have no money.
5. Some money is wanted to buy rice.
6. A worker was wanted to clean the compound.
7. I was telephoned at two o'clock.
8. He is telephoned every day.
9. His homework is always done in time.

11. All the exercises were done because we wanted to pass the examination.
12. All the exercises are done to pass the examination.
13. The truth is usually told by her.
14. We were told the truth.
15. The money was taken by the servant.
16. Tickets are bought to go to Mandalay.
17. A present was bought for her birthday.
18. Our exercises are studied daily.
19. English was studied three years ago.
20. The snuff is taken as he has a bad headache.
21. Our compositions are corrected by the teacher.
22. My essay was corrected by the teacher in the class.
23. My new suit is bought from this shop.
24. The new dresses were bought yesterday.
25. The work was finished at about three o'clock.

Exercise No. (117)

1. The room is being cleaned by the maid.
2. A map is being drawn on the blackboard by the teacher.
3. The bridge is being repaired.
4. The clothes are being washed near the well.
5. The flowers are being watered in the garden.
6. Rice is being grown all over the country.
7. A new road is being built by the villagers.
8. The old building is being painted.
9. The food is being cooked by mother in the kitchen.
10. An article is being written by Daw Moe Moe.
11. The pigs were being fed when the lights went out.
12. Rice was being eaten when the visitors arrived.
13. The plants were being watered when it began to rain.
14. Dinner was being prepared by mother when I got home.
15. Television was being watched when we arrived.
16. The homework was being done by Thida when I went to see her last night.
17. When we got there, a newspaper was being read by U Tun.
18. A letter was being written when you called me.
19. Football was being played when it began to rain.
20. The children were being beaten by mother when father came home.

Exercise No. (118)

1. The school has been repainted by the workers.
2. The engine has been repaired by the mechanic.
3. The accident has been seen.
4. The book has been published.
5. The package has been wrapped by mother.
6. The book has been stolen by one of the boys.
7. Our housework has been done.
8. English has been studied for many years.
9. Very little work has been done.
10. The letters have been delivered.
11. The book has been left on the table.
12. U San has been chosen for president.
13. The report has just been finished.
14. Two men have been held by the police for further questioning.
15. The contract has been signed.
16. The dinner has been served by the waiter.
17. The whole building has been destroyed by fire.
18. The meeting has been attended by all the workers.
19. Many boys have been arrested by the police.
20. We have been invited to attend the meeting.
21. Our homework had been done when we went to bed.
22. The dinner had been prepared by mother when father came back home.
23. It was said that the mangoes had been stolen by the boys.
24. He seemed to think that the girl had been met somewhere before.
25. I was sure that the same mistake had been done by Ni Ni.
26. It was said that the movie had been seen.
27. It was said by the teacher that that lesson had been taught. (by her)
28. When we arrived home, we saw that the house had been broken into.
29. When the police got there, the rich lady had been killed by the robbers.
30. It was known that a serious mistake had been made.

Exercise No. (119)

1. A dancing class will be started next month.
2. The camp will be captured by the enemy.
3. These men will be arrested by the police.
4. The book will be torn by the little boy.
5. A house may be bought next month.
6. The money must be returned tomorrow.
7. The lecture will be attended by many people.
8. A representative should be chosen.

9. I shall (will) be advised to take a rest by the doctor.
10. The book would be taken from the table.
11. We will be met tomorrow.
12. A message will be left on the table for him.
13. We will be written to on Friday.
14. Our father must be told about it.
15. The exercises will be done before Sunday.
16. Lunch will be eaten in the same restaurant.
17. The work will be finished in April.
18. We can be seen in the morning.
19. I will be helped with that work.
20. Several letters will be sent to her. (OR) She will be sent several letters.

Exercise No. (120)

1. The good fight is fought.
2. The good fight was fought.
3. The good fight is being fought.
4. The good fight will be fought.
5. The good fight has been fought.
6. The snake is killed by the boy.
7. The snake was killed by the boy.
8. The snake will be killed by the boy.
9. The snake is being killed by the boy.
10. The snake has been killed by the boy.
11. The snake will have been killed by the boy.
12. This house is built by my grandfather.
13. This house was built by my grandfather.
14. This house is being built by my grandfather.
15. This house has been built by my grandfather.
16. This house will be built by my grandfather.
17. The complaints are sent to the head office.
18. The complaints were sent to the head office.
19. The complaints will be sent to the head office.
20. The complaints are being sent to the head office.
21. The complaints have been sent to the head office.
22. The complaints will have been sent to the head office.
23. The bird is caught by a cruel boy.
24. The bird was caught by a cruel boy.
25. The bird will be caught by a cruel boy.
26. The bird has been caught by a cruel boy.
27. The bird is being caught by a cruel boy.
28. The bird will have been caught by a cruel boy.
29. The letter is written by the clerk.
30. The letter was written by the clerk.
31. The letter was being written by the clerk.
32. The letter is being written by the clerk.

33. The letter has been written by the clerk.
34. The letter will be written by the clerk.
35. The agreement has been signed.
36. The agreement will be signed.
37. The agreement is signed.
38. The agreement was signed.
39. The agreement will have been signed.
40. The letter will have been written by the clerk.
41. The new hotel is opened.
42. The new hotel was opened last year.
43. The new hotel will be opened next year.
44. The new hotel has been opened since 1990.
45. The new hotel is going to be opened.
46. The room was cleaned yesterday.
47. The room is not cleaned.
48. The room should be cleaned.
49. The room has not been cleaned.
50. The room has to be cleaned.

Exercise No. (121)

1. Let the truth be told.
2. Let him be sent to England.
3. Let the work be done.
4. Let the bird be kept in the cage.
5. Let the medicine be taken.
6. Let the truth be told.
7. Lies must not be told.
8. Let your camera be lent.
9. These exercises must not be studied.
10. It must not be signed on the bottom line.
11. The package must not be wrapped.
12. Let rice and curry be eaten.
13. Let a new shirt be bought.
14. He must not be told about it.
15. Much money must not be spent on the clothes.
16. Let me be forgiven this time. (You are requested to forgive me this time.)
17. Let this letter be taken to the post.
18. Let my dinner be ordered.
19. The poor must not be insulted.
20. Let a cup of milk be drunk by her.

Exercise No. (122)

1. Are the books being printed in Mandalay?
2. Was the thief being caught?
3. Is the class being taught by U Lwin?
4. Was the child being bitten by the dog?
5. Were the strangers being barked at by the dog?
6. Is the ball being kicked by the boys?
7. Are all the sweets being eaten?
8. Am I being watched?
9. Is a new suit being made by the tailor?
10. Is a wall being built by the mason?

- | | |
|--|---|
| 11. Is the cow being milked? | 14. Is the cat being chased by the dog? |
| 12. Were the pigs being fed? | |
| 13. Are our compositions being corrected by the teacher? | 15. Are games being played by the boys? |

Exercise No. (123)

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Have all the boys been scolded by the teacher? | 10. Have the crops been ruined by the rain? |
| 2. Has that box not been opened? | 11. Have two of my books been stolen? |
| 3. Has a little girl been run over by a car? | 12. Has one of the plates been broken by the servant? |
| 4. Has a bridge been built? | 13. Have these books been taken away? |
| 5. Have the books been stolen? | 14. Have the questions been answered? |
| 6. Has the bird been caught by the cat? | 15. Has a sound not been heard? |
| 7. Has the telegram been sent? | |
| 8. Has the room been swept? | |
| 9. Has the enemy been driven back by our army? | |

Exercise No. (124)

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Was a child knocked down by a car? | 8. Is this article written? |
| 2. Are flowers plucked in the garden? | 9. Are telegraph wires cut? |
| 3. Is the dinner prepared? | 10. Is an angry letter written? |
| 4. Were all your neighbours loved? | 11. Was the thief caught by the police? |
| 5. Are the school windows broken? | 12. Was the harvest spoiled by the heavy rain? |
| 6. Was the case decided by the judge? | 13. Is English regularly studied? |
| 7. Were the trees blown down by the wind? | 14. Is the newspaper read? |
| | 15. Was the accident not seen? |

Exercise No. (125)

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Will the work be finished today? | 5. Will he be held by the police for several days? |
| 2. Should it be packed more carefully? | 6. Will she be given a present? |
| 3. Will the class be taught by U Sein? | 7. Shall I be asked many questions? |
| 4. Can the bill be paid later? | 8. Will a reception be held? |
| | 9. Must milk be used for making butter? |

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 10. Should much rice be eaten by the patient? | 13. Will you be told about it? |
| 11. Can English be spoken well? | 14. Will the house be sold? |
| 12. Will much money be spent on clothes? | 15. Will any warm clothes be needed? |

Exercise No. (126)

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Was the money returned by Su Su? | 17. Will the homework not be done? |
| 2. Is the money returned by Su Su? | 18. Is the homework not being done? |
| 3. Will the money be returned by Su Su? | 19. Is a new road being made? |
| 4. Has the money been returned by Su Su? | 20. Is a new road made? |
| 5. Was that village destroyed by fire? | 21. Was a new road made? |
| 6. Will that village be destroyed by fire? | 22. Will a new road be made? |
| 7. Is that village destroyed by fire? | 23. Has a new road been made? |
| 8. Has that village been destroyed by fire? | 24. Is a canal dug by the villagers? |
| 9. Is the old bridge repaired? | 25. Was a canal dug by the villagers? |
| 10. Is the old bridge being repaired? | 26. Will a canal be dug by the villagers? |
| 11. Has the old bridge been repaired? | 27. Has a canal been dug by the villagers? |
| 12. Will the old bridge be repaired? | 28. Is a canal being dug by the villagers? |
| 13. Was the old bridge repaired? | 29. Is tea drunk by Ni Ni? |
| 14. Has the homework not been done? | 30. Was tea drunk by Ni Ni? |
| 15. Is the homework not done? | 31. Is tea being drunk by Ni Ni? |
| 16. Was the homework not done? | 32. Has tea been drunk by Ni Ni? |
| | 33. Will tea be drunk by Ni Ni? |
| | 34. Was tea being drunk by Ni Ni? |
| | 35. Had tea been drunk by Ni Ni? |

Exercise No. (127)

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. When will the coffee be brought by the waitress? | 7. Where are these books used? |
| 2. Why must all the questions be answered on the paper? | 8. Where is English spoken? |
| 3. Where is the meal cooked? | 9. How must your work be planned? |
| 4. How is the window broken? | 10. When are you given a pair of gloves? |
| 5. Why am I suspected? | 11. How was that house built by the carpenters? |
| 6. When is the work finished? | |

12. Why isn't the work finished?
13. Why has he been offered a post in this office?
14. When was my watch stolen?
15. When was he made a President?
16. How has my pocket been picked?
17. Why has that name never been heard?
18. Where were the mice killed by the cat?
19. Why is a song being sung?
20. How are the fields being ploughed by the farmers?
21. Why shall we be blamed?
22. How is the dinner being prepared by the waitress?
23. Where has the little dog been run over by a car?
24. How is the newspaper being published?
25. When will the whole incident be forgotten?

Exercise No. (128)

1. Who is loved?
2. Whose daughter is hated?
3. By whom is the coffee brought?
4. By whom were the boxes opened?
5. What will be brought by the waitress?
6. By whom was she laughed at?
7. What is eaten for the breakfast?
8. What was said by the teacher?
9. What has been stolen by the thief?
10. What was found in the jungle by the soldiers?
11. Who is made prisoner?
12. By whose father has this story been told?
13. Whose father will be seen tomorrow?
14. By what was the little bird caught?
15. What was caught by the cat?
16. What was bought by Daw Lay yesterday?
17. What is being made by the tailor?
18. By whom have all my books been taken?
19. By whom is the crime being investigated?
20. How much money is needed?
21. How many boys were caned by the teacher?
22. How many trees will be cut down?
23. How many mangoes have been stolen by the naughty boys?
24. How much milk can be given by this cow?
25. How much rice is eaten by the patient?

Exercise No. (129)

1. The landlord is paid the money.
2. I was bought a red longyi.
3. Ni Ni was told the whole story.
4. U Phyu is sent some flowers.
5. I am not told the truth.
6. I can't be lent a book.
7. I will be brought a present from Pyin-Oo-Lwin.
8. Our father was bought a new suit.

Exercise No. (130)

1. I was given two hours to make my decision.
2. Nu Nu was paid ten thousand kyats.
3. We have been shown the new machine.
4. The work ought to have been done long ago.
5. A lot of money will be needed if he goes abroad.
6. Wealth is desired by all and acquired by some.
7. That door has not been used for twenty years.
8. Pure butter is used in these cakes.
9. Books must not be taken away in the Reference Library (by readers.)
10. Portuguese is spoken in Brazil.
11. He was awarded the Nobel Peace Prize in 1990.
12. It was said that he will be the next Prime Minister.
13. The unfortunate should not be laughed at.
14. The nest was being built by the bird in a tree.
9. Our mother is bought a new dress.
10. She was taken the flowers.
11. His friend will be shown this letter.
12. He wasn't sent the money.
13. You won't be written a letter.
14. Daw Pu has not been lent a large sum of money.
15. The girl is paid some money.
15. You cannot be told what time the train leaves.
16. This is the second time we have been written to about this.
17. Some very interesting stories were told by our grandfather.
18. Happiness is desired but it isn't got.
19. U Nyo is being sent abroad on business.
20. It is time for the shop to be shut up.
21. One's promises should be kept.
22. The weak must not be insulted.
23. Our house was entered by a thief last night and some money was stolen.
24. I was not told all the details of the case.
25. It is time he should be told what is wrong.
26. The plans for the building have been approved by the council but the money hasn't been raised.
27. They had only lived in that house for three weeks when it was destroyed by fire.
28. You were promised that you would be met at the station.

29. We were astonished to hear that our letter had not been received.
30. His parents were bitterly disappointed by his failure, especially as they had been counting on his success.

Exercise No. (131)

- | | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. must be finished | 2. was killed | 3. was published |
| 4. are corrected | 5. will be sent | 6. were heard |
| 7. was attended | 8. was caught | 9. is studied |
| 10. has already been eaten | 11. is being dug | 12. had already been fed |
| 13. are being ironed | 14. is read | 15. were prepared |
| 16. was caned | 17. was sung | 18. is boiled |
| 19. is being repaired | 20. was taken | 21. will be printed |
| 22. is taught | 23. is forgotten | 24. was bitten |
| 25. was beaten | 26. was invented | 27. can be made |
| 28. is being taught | 29. can be solved | 30. was dug |
| 31. must be done | | |

Exercise No. (132)

- | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. was given | 2. has been done | 3. is given |
| 4. were punished | 5. is cooked | 6. are washed |
| 7. had been killed | 8. was caught | 9. was repaired |
| 10. is polished | 11. isn't closed | 12. are fed |
| 13. being | 14. will be painted | 15. will be held |
| 16. was beaten | 17. is being made | 18. has been cooked |
| 19. were photographed | 20. was destroyed | |

Exercise No. (133)

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. U Aye builds this house. | 9. A large number of people speak English. |
| 2. U Aye built that house. | 10. The mechanic did the repair work. |
| 3. U Aye built those houses. | 11. The students respect the teacher. |
| 4. The inspector checked the machine. | 12. The President announced the news. |
| 5. Our teacher corrects our homework. | 13. People read the newspaper every day. |
| 6. The maid cleaned the room yesterday. | 14. They teach English in the schools. |
| 7. A thief stole all her valuable jewellery last night. | 15. They repainted the walls. |
| 8. The secretary wrote all of the reports. | 16. He gives many courses in English during the summer. |

17. They transferred U Hlaing to another department.
18. Someone spreads a second coat of paint over that surface.
19. Workers load the truck.
20. His frank attitude surprised all of us.

Exercise No. (134)

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. U Sein is writing the articles. | 13. U Sein Ohn is writing many interesting stories. |
| 2. The girl was reading the books. | 14. He is selling the newspapers there. |
| 3. The bullocks are carrying the logs. | 15. We are learning many new words every day. |
| 4. The postman was delivering the letters. | 16. They are selling all the books at the school book-store. |
| 5. The workers are repairing the roof. | 17. The students were bringing the copybooks to the lesson. |
| 6. They were pulling down the old building. | 18. She is sweeping the whole house. |
| 7. The maid is cleaning my shoes. | 19. Mother is preparing the dinner for the whole family. |
| 8. We are spending more money on food. | 20. Listen! Someone is knocking at the door. |
| 9. The cat is catching the mouse. | 21. We are writing the compositions in the class. |
| 10. A girl was singing a song. | |
| 11. They are selling many different things in that store. | |
| 12. The teacher is telling the answers to the exercises. | |

Exercise No. (135)

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. The government has called out the troops. | 8. We have studied English for many years. |
| 2. Her father has given a clock to her. (given her a clock) | 9. They have spoken me about it many times. |
| 3. Someone has shown the boy the easiest way to do it. | 10. Mr. Brown has taught many students to speak English. |
| 4. The author has written a special edition for children. | 11. We have cleaned the house from top to bottom. |
| 5. He has switched on a light and opened the door. | 12. He has read that novel many times. |
| 6. Someone has cut an enormous hole in the door. | 13. She has seen this movie three times. |
| 7. The burglars have broken into the house. | 14. We have studied the same exercise three or four times. |

15. The police have captured the thief at last.
16. Htar Htar has written many letters to her brother. (written her brother many letters.)
17. They have put all the books on the teacher's table.
18. They have held the meeting three times.
19. U Aung has lent some money to Ko Tun. (lent Ko Tun some money)
20. Someone has brought some flowers to her. (brought her some flowers)

Exercise No. (136)

1. He should buy a new suit for his son. (buy his son a new suit)
2. Ko Myo will bring many presents for Nyo Nyo. (bring Nyo Nyo many presents)
3. The teacher will give us some homework. (some homework to us)
4. Her lover will send her some post-cards.
5. We must give some money to the poor.
6. You should not laugh at the young girl.
7. The doctor will give some medicine to the patient.
8. They will give a silver cup to the champion.
9. Fire may destroy the house.
10. She should hide the money in the safe.
11. The guide will show us the interesting places.
12. The teacher will return our written work
13. He will finish the report soon.
14. The wind will blow away the smoke.
15. She will start a dancing class next week.
16. People will see this film soon.
17. We must help her in every possible way.
18. They may organize a new group next week.
19. He must do that work today.
20. You should send the letter to the police immediately.

Exercise No. (137)

1. Are the pupils answering the questions?
2. Are the villagers repairing the bridge?
3. Was the teacher teaching the class?
4. Is a powerful engine pulling a train?
5. Is the girl learning the exercises?
6. Was the boy learning the poem?
7. Was Hnin Hnin knitting these gloves?
8. Are the horses pulling the big wagon?
9. Is our mother cooking the breakfast?
10. Is the secretary writing the letters?
11. Was the farmer ploughing the fields?

12. Are they moving the troops to the battle area?
13. Was the postman delivering the letters?
14. Are the soldiers defending the city?
15. Is the wind blowing away the clouds?

Exercise No. (138)

1. Does Tun Tun make a kite?
2. Did the girl open the door?
3. Did the hunters catch the birds?
4. Does the cat kill the mice?
5. Did Columbus discover America?
6. Did the teacher praise the clever girl?
7. Do the villagers expect good news?
8. Do they sell good books in that shop?
9. Does the teacher teach English grammar?
10. Does the manager give Nu Nu a ticket?
11. Does the gate keeper refuse the boys admission?
12. Did he paint the walls red?
13. Did the loud noise frighten the baby?
14. Did they take the patient to the hospital?
15. Did a car knock down the boys?

Exercise No. (139)

1. Will the audience enjoy the concert?
2. Can U Kyaw manage this department?
3. Should the teacher punish the naughty boy?
4. Can you hear the cries of the wolves?
5. Will he report the event?
6. Should we distrust him?
7. Will the shoemaker make the shoes?
8. Will the teacher ring the bell?
9. Must we keep the answer papers on the table?
10. Will the wind blow away the smoke?
11. Can she finish this task today?
12. Will they hold the meeting in the hall?
13. Can we use the classroom as a meeting place?
14. Will the people welcome the soldiers?
15. Must we listen to his words?

Exercise No. (140)

1. Has the earthquake destroyed the town?
2. Has the maid cooked the dinner?
3. Has someone heard the noise of the explosion?
4. Has our team won the match?
5. Has the class teacher appointed Thet Thet monitor?
6. Have the members elected U Sein President?
7. Has the Prime minister opened the exhibition?

8. Have you invited the singers to your party?
9. Have you heard that name before?
10. Have they pulled down the old bridge?
11. Has the officer ordered the policemen to pursue the thief?
12. Has the government built many new highways?
13. Have they cut the telegraph wires?
14. Has the wind blown down these trees?
15. Has the bird built a nest?

Exercise No. (141)

1. Why do the students study Physics?
2. How do you give the information to the teacher?
3. When does he open the windows every day?
4. Why do the children watch television every day?
5. Why is the manager studying some important papers?
6. Where are the boys reading the books?
7. How do the children like the teacher?
8. How will the waitress wash the table?
9. When will he print the English assignment?
10. When have the students copied the assignment?
11. How should he explain the lesson to the children?
12. Where has the clerk counted the money?
13. When have people listened to that radio programme?
14. Where has the teacher taught a different class?
15. Where has the teacher told the answer to the question to the students? (OR) Where has the teacher told the students the answer to the question?
16. Why will you sell the house at a low price?
17. Why must everyone read the instructions very carefully?
18. Where do they copy the names from the list?
19. How was the clerk preparing the report for the officer?
20. Why does your wife wear a new silk dress?
21. Who bought a camera?
22. Who gave all of the instructions?
23. What did the photographer keep in a case?
24. What did the girl bring to the class?
25. Whom does Ko Ko send the photographs?
26. Whom is the teacher beating?
27. What is chasing the cat?
28. Whose mother will the boy show the photographs?
29. Whose friend will bring a guitar?
30. Who was repainting the car?

Exercise No. (142)

1. No one should speak about such things in public.
2. Did you tell her to be quick?
3. Has someone brought this child up very badly?
4. Will they take the patient to hospital tomorrow?
5. They have left the gate open and the oxen run away.
6. No one told the truth about the situation to the officer.
7. My father promised me a watch if I passed the examination.
8. They have told her not to come here again.
9. Someone has told him the news.
10. When did an unseen hand open the window?
11. The guide pointed out the interesting places to the tourists.
12. When will the nurse show the mother the new baby?
13. The police gave one thousand kyats to the reporter as a reward.
14. Must the teachers make the lessons more interesting?
15. When will the farmers reap the paddy?
16. Why can nobody do it properly?
17. How did they push her into the water?
18. When will she send the children to school?
19. Where did she ask you a difficult question?
20. Why did the manager request the drunkard to leave the restaurant?

Exercise No. (143)

1. We should plan the work carefully.
2. The officer was given a pretty present by the clerks when he retired.
3. Is English spoken all over the world?
4. The cupboard was opened and the clothes were taken out.
5. Someone built this building in 1962.
6. The whole incident will be forgotten after a few months.
7. The instructions must be read before all the questions are answered.
8. She should not be blamed for something that she had not done.
9. We will take the girl for a drive in the new car.
10. The accident is being talked about everywhere.
11. I was told that U Soe had gone abroad.
12. I showed him my new car.
13. She has been given some good advice.
14. Does he promise you a bicycle for your birthday?
15. The lawyer wasn't told all the details of the case.
16. The poor girl was given a scholarship to the University by the government.
17. No one should treat her as if she were a baby.

18. They had only lived in that house for one month when it was destroyed by fire.
19. This pagoda hasn't been repaired for many years.
20. No one must take away the reference books from the library.
21. I was not told that you liked music.
22. May your dictionary be borrowed?
23. You must answer every question on the paper.
24. My book shouldn't be left out in the rain.
25. The pupils ought to be told about this by the teacher.

Exercise No. (144)

1. The girl said that she was in the tenth standard.
2. The boy said that he was only ten years old.
3. Mi Mi told Ko Ko that she would refuse his offer.
4. Soe Thu told Thida that he loved her more than he could say.
5. Thida told Soe Thu that she didn't believe him.
6. The woman told her husband that the telephone was out of order.
7. Sandar told Thuzar that she had often told her not to tell lies.
8. Kyaw Kyaw told Maw Maw that he wanted her to pass the examination.
9. Wai Mar told Naing Win that she had read that book.
10. Kyaw Swa told Thanda that she could have his book if she liked.
11. Yu Yu told Ko Kyaw that she hated him.
12. Ma Ei told Ko Naing that he was a liar.
13. Myo Myint told Nyo Nyo that he would write a letter to her the next day.
14. Tun Tun told Kyi Kyi that she must tell him the truth.
15. Swe Swe told Ko Win that their father told them a strange story.
16. The teacher told Shwe Zin that she should do her homework.
17. Lwin Lwin told Ko Moe that she would show him her photograph.
18. Mon Yi Win told Phyo Win that that interesting book was for him.
19. U Tin Win said that he would come to bed when he finished those letters.
20. Mr. Brown told Mary that she was very talkative.
21. U Htay told Ma Su that he could not help her as he was busy then.
22. U Pe Tin told Kyaw Min that his mother was kind to him.
23. Daw Win told her son that she would go home the next day.
24. Aung Lwin said that that was the key he lost.
25. The teacher taught us two years ago that the earth is round.
26. U Khin said that he always goes to bed at nine o'clock every day.
27. Win Lwin said that his father always goes to the Shwedagon Pagoda every Friday.
28. He said that blood is thicker than water.
29. He said that fire is a good servant but a bad master.
30. Our grandfather said that lost time is never found.

Exercise No. (145)

1. Khin Hnin says that one Today is worth two Tomorrows.
2. Wai Wai says that she doesn't know what time it is.
3. Kay Thwe has said that she gets up before five o'clock every day.
4. Nyunt Nyunt tells Ne Win that her watch is fast and his watch is slow.
5. Win Win tells Nyunt Nyunt that her watch is correct and so is hers.
6. Moe Moe says that she will go with her brother.
7. Htar Htar says that that is not what she means.
8. War War tells Htar Htar that she doesn't know what she means.
9. Tun Myint says that a thief was caught the previous night.
10. Thiha will say that liars are always ready to take an oath.
11. Aye Tun says that he lent him some money.
12. Toe Myint says that he passed the examination the year before.
13. Kyaw Hein says that he was born in a little town.
14. Mi Mi says that she is going home then.
15. Ko Win says that he went to bed at eleven o'clock the night before.
16. Htay Htay says that she has finished her lessons.
17. Thuzar tells her friend that she thought Moe Kyaw was the best boy in the class.
18. San Maung says that he can see that clearly.
19. Zaw Zaw tells Soe Soe that he hears quite well what she says.
20. The little boy says that he was going to school when it rained.
21. Ko Myo says that his watch is broken.
22. Ko Tu says that one of their books has been stolen.
23. All my friends come to me and say that they have come to greet me.
24. After thinking carefully, our father says that misfortune proves our friends although wealth makes.
25. Nodding the head, our mother says that she agrees.

Exercise No. (146)

1. U Su asked his son if he was living in another house then.
2. Daw Nu asked her daughter if she was working hard enough for her examination.
3. Tun Zaw asked Thida if she was ready to come with him.
4. Thiha asked Nilar if she was interested in English.
5. Moe Moe asked War War if she was waiting for the bus.
6. Aye Aye asked Nyo Nyo if she would go to the pagoda with her mother.
7. Than Than asked Zaw Zaw if he would be there soon.
8. Ko Gyi asked Ko Lay if he could repair his watch.

9. Aung Aung asked Thanda if she would write a few sentences the next day.
10. The patient asked the doctor if he had to take some medicine the following day.
11. The officer asked Tint Tint if she had known how to use the typewriter.
12. Khin Pa Pa asked Yan Aung if he had ever ridden in a bullock cart.
13. Hay Mar asked Ne Win if he had visited Pyin-Oo-Lwin many times.
14. Ma Khaing asked Hlaing Hlaing if she had completed writing her exercise.
15. Mary asked Daisy if she had washed the clothes.
16. John asked Mary if she liked tea.
17. Ohn Mar asked Soe Thu if he came to her the day before.
18. Myo Chit asked Khin Khin if she understood what he said.
19. U Kyaw asked Ma Win if she lent her friend much money.
20. He asked his friends if they thought they would be in time if they ran.
21. Zin Mar asked Ma Cho if she went to school the previous day.
22. She asked Win Maung if he could stay for a few minutes there.
23. Ko Kyin asked Nwe Nwe if he would see her there the next day.
24. Yin Yin asked Mi Mi if she had ever heard of the poet Tin Moe.
25. Sandar asked Kyaw Min if it was true that he was getting married.

Exercise No. (147)

1. Helen asked Dolly what she wanted.
2. Richard asked Margarete when she had finished her homework.
3. Sandar asked Thandar where she lived.
4. Ma Wai asked Ko Latt why he took him to his house.
5. The teacher asked his pupil why he had made the same mistake again.
6. Mar Mar asked Ko Zaw why he left her alone.
7. Win Win asked Zaw Zaw where he slept the previous night.
8. Moe Zaw asked Thida how she knew that he was a doctor.
9. The teacher asked me what I was going to do when I left school.
10. Nandar asked Wai Wai why she thought she could solve that problem.
11. Han Tun asked his sister when she would get back from Mandalay.
12. She asked me where I was going.
13. He asked me how I would go to school the next day.
14. Kay Thi asked Win Mar which book she was taking.
15. Swe Swe asked Thet Thet how she did that.
16. Tin Win asked Chit Swe why the train was very full.
17. Chit Swe asked Kyaw Tun if he had ever been to Ngapali.
18. The man asked me when I was born.

19. Win Aung asked Yi Yi how much she paid for that longyi.
20. Mi Mi asked Thant Thant when she would come again.
21. The police asked Mg Ni where he was the previous night.
22. Tom asked what the matter was.
23. Tun Tun wanted to know which was the nearest way to the station.
24. Win Lwin asked his sister why she didn't get up earlier.
25. Nilar asked me how I knew someone was coming.
26. The children asked Daw Lay how she had cooked the dinner.
27. The teacher asked her pupils how they would study their lessons.
28. The boy asked his friend how he was that day.
29. Wai Mar asked Kyaw Kyaw when she was leaving for Mandalay.
30. Hay Mar asked Kyaw Kyaw how long it took to get to Mandalay.

Exercise No. (148)

1. He requested her to wash her face.
2. The teacher ordered him to close his book.
3. Mr. P'own told us to come in and sit down.
4. The patient requested the nurse to open her book and read.
5. The doctor ordered the visitors not to sit on the bed.
6. The teacher ordered his pupils not to talk in the class.
7. Daw Nu ordered her pupil to write that exercise out carefully.
8. Thein Zaw requested Aye Aye Myint to open the box for him.
9. Maung Maung requested Hay Mar to sing at their party.
10. The examiner ordered him to write his name at the top of his paper and answer six questions.
11. The officer ordered the soldier to release the prisoners.
12. The teacher advised me to think carefully before I answered.
13. Our father ordered me not to tell a lie.
14. The old man ordered his daughter to take care of the pence and the pounds will take care of themselves.
15. U Sein ordered his daughter not to speak evil of others.
16. Mother ordered her son to trust in God and do the right.
17. The eldest brother advised his sister not to run to meet misfortune.
18. The teacher ordered his pupils to obey him at once and not to ask questions.
19. Mother ordered her son to go to bed and not to get up till he was called.
20. U Seing ordered his daughter to do what she liked, but not to blame him if she found that she had done wrong.

Exercise No. (149)

1. He said that he had left his watch at home and asked if I could tell him the time.
2. Nu Nu said that she had no money and asked if I would buy her that longyi.
3. He asked me if I had tasted that curry and said that it was very salty.
4. The teacher asked me why I was late for school and asked (inquired) if I came to school on foot.
5. Ko Tu asked me which shirt I liked and I said that I liked the white one.
6. He said that he had something to tell me and requested me to promise not to tell the others.
7. She ordered not to eat sweets and asked if I knew that I would have a toothache.
8. He said that he would be there at noon and asked if I would come to him.
9. Zaw Zaw said (that) that lesson was very difficult and asked if I could help him.
10. The traveller asked how far it was to the station and said that he hoped to get there in time.
11. He asked me if I had ever been to Mandalay and said that it was his native town.
12. He said (that) that ring was very pretty and asked how much it cost.
13. The traveller asked if there was any water in the pot and said that he was very thirsty.
14. U Hla asked where he was going and asked me if I knew anything about him.
15. Thiha said that he was leaving for Pyin-Oo-Lwin and asked me where I was going.
16. Mar Lar asked why I didn't come to class that day and asked (inquired) if I felt sick again.
17. He asked Nilar where she lived as he wanted to know her address. (OR) He asked Nilar where she lived and said that he wanted to know her address.
18. She requested to lend her a pencil as (and said that) she had left hers at home.
19. She asked if she might shut the window as (and said that) it was rather cold in there.
20. He said that my hands were very dirty and asked if I forgot to wash them.

Exercise No. (150)

1. She asked me if I would like to come and I answered that I would.
2. He asked her if she had to do the homework and she answered that she had to.
3. He asked her if she could help him and she answered that she could.
4. He asked me if I had ever been to Inle Lake and I answered that I had.

5. I asked her if she had spoken to him about it and she answered that she had.
6. Yi Yi asked me if I had told Ko Ko what she said and I answered that I had.
7. He asked her if she was listening to the radio and she answered that she was.
8. She asked him if he was very busy that day and he said that he was.
9. He asked me if I saw his father and I said that I did.
10. I asked her if she wanted to learn English and she said that she did.

Exercise No. (151)

1. He asked her if she saw what he showed, but she said that she didn't.
2. He asked me if I understood what he said, but I answered that I didn't.
3. He asked her if she heard a loud noise, but she said that she didn't.
4. He asked her if she had put salt in the curry, but she said that she hadn't.
5. I asked him if he had left the banana skin on the platform, but he said that he hadn't.
6. She asked him if he had washed his face, but he said that he hadn't.
7. U Nyunt asked Ni Ni if she was sorry for what she did, but she said that she wasn't.
8. He asked her if she was looking through the keyhole, but she said that she wasn't.
9. Ko Tu asked the doctor if he could lose five pounds in ten days, but the doctor said that he couldn't.
10. She asked him if he would like to see it, but he said that he wouldn't.

Exercise No. (152)

1. The teacher told Mon Mon that if she spent more time on her lessons, she would get better marks.
2. I told her that if I had much money, I would give it to her.
3. She tells me that if I have a good teacher, I will make more progress.
4. He told her that if she worked hard, she would be successful.
5. He told her that if she had left early, she would have got there on time.
6. I tell him that if she telephones me, I will let him know.
7. He said that if he had a headache, he would take the medicine.
8. The doctor advised me to take the medicine if I was ill.

9. He advised me to tell Nwe Ni about our plans if she came.
10. She advised me to go to the doctor if I was ill.
11. She told me to open the windows if I was hot.

Exercise No. (153)

Win Win asked Aung Aung if she could borrow his exercise book. Aung Aung said that he was sorry as he had lent it to Tun Tun. Then Win Win asked if he would lend her his text book and she would return it the next day. Aung Aung said that he would lend it.

Exercise No. (154)

U Htay greeted Su Su and asked how she was that day. Su Su answered that she was not very well. U Htay said he was very sorry and asked what was the matter. Su Su answered that she had a cold. U Htay asked if she had a cough too. Su Su said that she had. U Htay exclaimed sadly and advised her to drink that medicine. Su Su thanked U Htay.

Exercise No. (155)

Father asked Hnin Hnin how she did in her test that month. Hnin Hnin told her father that she stood first. Father said that her mother would be pleased. Hnin Hnin said that she had told her that morning and her mother was delighted. Father praised and told Hnin Hnin to keep on working hard. Hnin Hnin told her father that she would.

Exercise No. (156)

1. Mother asked Mg Win what he was looking for. Mg Win answered that he was looking for his pencil. Mother asked if it wasn't on the table and she thought she saw it there. Mg Win answered that it wasn't there. Mother asked if it wasn't in his pocket. Mg Win answered that it wasn't. Mother asked what was that in his bag. Mg Win exclaimed that he was very forgetful and said it was his pencil.

Exercise No. (157)

- The old man says that when poverty comes, false friends flee.
- Our teacher says that who never climbs will never fall.
- The judge said that liars should have good memories.
- U Yi says that there is no friend like an old friend.
- The teacher has said that indecision and delay are the parents of failure.

- The girl said that when there is no danger, all men are equally brave.
- The poor man said that a friend in need is a friend indeed.
- She remarked that it was a very beautiful flower.
- The old man remarked that it was very cold.
- He exclaimed that he was very stupid.
- U San ordered his son to do his homework at once or he would beat him.
- Daw Htay ordered her daughter to sit down quietly for ten minutes and she would give her a doll.
- U Htay asks me if I have been in an aeroplane many times.
- Ko Moe asked his friends if the game had started when they arrived at the football field.
- Sanda asked her friends whether they would come and see her if they had a holiday.
- U Kyaw asked Than Than where she was going for her holidays.
- The dentist asked Thida if she brushed her teeth properly.
- The teacher ordered her pupils to answer only five questions but they had to write their roll number at the top of their paper.
- Daw Win told Than Than that she could not find her purse and asked if she could lend her ten kyats.
- Mother asked the nurse if her new baby was a boy or a girl and requested to show her at once.

Exercise No. (158)

- U Win said that his name was U Win. He was born and brought up in a small town. He studied at Yangon University for six years. Then he became a teacher. He had been teaching English for more than twenty years.
- Tun Aung said that the previous summer, he went to a village of his friend. When he was in the village, he went fishing with his friend. Early in the morning they sat quietly by the side of a lake. They could smell the sweet fragrance of colourful flowers which were blooming beautifully near the lake. They could also hear the sweet song sung by a cuckoo from a tree near them. At five o'clock in the evening they came back home.

Exercise No. (159)

- Our father said that I must not tell lies.
- The doctor told the patient that he must not drink cold water.
- The teacher said that she didn't have to read that lesson.
- He said that he wouldn't have to learn that exercise the following week.
- Ni Ni said that I must not (wasn't to) leave earlier than others.
- She told me that I must not (wasn't to) decide everything quickly.

7. He said that every man had to do his duty.
8. He said that he wouldn't have to go to school the next day.
9. She said that she wanted to go to school the following day.
10. The patient said that he had to take the medicine.

Exercise No. (160)

1. He wondered if he would ever remember his lover.
2. She asked if she should take the car.
3. She wondered if she would ever get married.
4. He asked if he should put it on the table.
5. He wondered if they would arrive in time.
6. She asked if they should read that book.
7. He wondered if they would leave for Europe.
8. She asked if they should go to buy rice.
9. She asked his father if they should go to the seashore on their vacation.
10. She wondered if she would visit Ni Ni the next day.
11. He wondered if he would be late for his lesson.

Exercise No. (161)

1. He requested me to let him read my book.
2. The stranger requested that he might be allowed to come in. (or) requested to let him come in.
3. The girl requested her brother to let her know what happened.
4. He requested his father to let him go there.
5. She told me that she might be allowed to know when I would come again (requested to let her know when ...)
6. The soldier proposed that they should do their duty.
7. They suggested that they should build a new bridge.
8. He suggested me that we should repaint the old car.
9. Cho Cho requested to let her sing a song at the party.
10. He proposed that we should inspect the machine.

Exercise No. (162)

1. Htay Htay said, "I am going to Pyin-Oo-Lwin with my father."
2. The policeman said to the little girl, "I will take you to your house."
3. Aung Aung said, "I like my cat Shwe War."
4. U Pwa said, "I do not like English food very much."
5. Ko Ko said to Ni Ni, "I do not believe you."
6. The boy said, "I am very hungry."
7. Yi Yi said, "I will not do my work."
8. U Su said, "I hope it will not rain tomorrow."
9. The teacher said to her pupils, "I have taught you this lesson."
10. John said to Mary, "I can't go to school with you."
11. Aung Aung said, "I am very fortunate."
12. Kyi Kyi said, "I am very ill yesterday."
13. U Hlaing said, "I have never been there before."
14. Nyi Nyi said to Yi Yi, "I will come to you as soon as I can."
15. The man said, "I will not buy the house."
16. He said to me, "I want to speak to you."
17. She says to me, "I am ready to go with you."
18. Nilar said, "I have been shopping all the morning."
19. Nwe Lay says to Sandi, "We should always try our best."
20. Shwe Zin says to Win Aung, "You have been smoking too much."

Exercise No. (163)

1. Ko Tun said, "I have read this book."
2. Nyo Nyo said, "I will go to Mandalay tomorrow."
3. Nyunt Win said to his lover, "You have deceived me."
4. Than Than said to Aung Aung, "I do not believe a word you are saying."
5. She said to me, "I can speak English."
6. He said to me, "I go to my class every day."
7. Ni Ni said to him, "We have plenty of time to do our work."
8. Nwe Lay said to me, "I will take you to my house."
9. She said to Tun Tun, "I have written you a long letter."
10. Aung Aung said, "I love my father very much."
11. He said, "This book is difficult for me."
12. U Win said, "I have to go to the dentist every day."
13. The traveller said, "I shall go to the shop before it closes."
14. Ko Kyaw said to Sandi, "I hope you can decide what you want to do."
15. Ko Ko says to Thanda, "I can never talk easily with you."
16. He says to her, "I will examine you on the work you have done."

17. I say to Win Win, "I want to save you from making the mistake that I made."
 18. She said, "The brothers are so alike and I cannot tell one from the other."
 19. Our father said to us, "When I advise you to do this, I am speaking from experience."
 20. The teacher says to me, "If I were in your place, I would wait for a time."

Exercise No. (164)

1. Mary said to John, "Are you going to school?"
 2. Nwe Nwe said to Sandi, "Are you very happy?"
 3. Aung Lwin said to Ni Ni, "Are you ready to come with me?"
 4. U Sein said to Phyu Phyu, "Are you giving a party this week?"
 5. Daw Lay said to U Saw, "Are you angry with me?"
 6. U Nyo said to his wife, "Have my children gone to school?"
 7. The teacher said to her pupils, "Have you done your homework?"
 8. The traveller said to me, "Have you heard the news?"
 9. Wai Wai said to Mar Mar, "Have you bought a new hat?"
 10. The officer said to the clerk, "Have you finished your work?"
 11. Thein Thein said to Ko Zaw, "Can you repair the watch?"
 12. Htar Htar said to Ko Moe, "Will you help me today?"
 13. He said to Moe Moe, "Will you be here at noon?"
 14. Ko Naing said to Myint Myint, "Will you give me a present?"
 15. Ohn Ohn said to Ko Myo, "Will you try to please your mother?"
 16. Mar Mar Aye said to Hla Hla, "Can you play the piano very well?"
 17. He said to her, "Do you live in this house?"
 18. Than Than said to Ko Nyi, "Do you try to be in time today?"
 19. San San said to Thida, "Do you write essays regularly?"
 20. Win Win said to Tun Tun, "Do you really come from Pyin-Oo-Lwin?"

Exercise No. (165)

1. He said, "How should the rich help the poor?"
 2. He said to me, "Why can you do difficult exercises correctly?"
 3. He said to Daw Lay, "Why do you do all your housework?"
 4. Tun Tun says to Thida, "Why do you always go about without an umbrella?"
 5. U Tun said to me, "How long can you stay with me?"
 6. Thuzar said to Nyo Maung, "When will you buy me a diamond ring?"
 7. She said to me, "Why have you come here?"
 8. He said to her, "When have you known the truth?"

9. They said to U Chit, "When will you build a new house?"
 10. U Zaw said to Daw Nyein, "Where have you bought a piece of land?"
 11. We say to the villagers, "Where will you dig a well?"
 12. He said to the girl, "When will you come?"
 13. The pupils said to the teacher, "What should we study for the examination?"
 14. The passenger said, "What time does the train for Mandalay leave?"
 15. He said to the boy, "What do you see when you peep through the keyhole?"
 16. U Phyu said to Ni Ni, "Which of the two girls is your sister?"
 17. She said to me, "What are you doing at the station?"
 18. U Hlaing said to Than Than, "When have you learnt these exercises?"
 19. My friends said to me, "Where have you bought this beautiful longyi?"
 20. Aye Aye said to Yin Yin, "Where do you spend your holidays last year?"

Exercise No. (166)

1. He said to me, "Go and get me a packet of cigarettes."
 2. Marlar said to Nu Nu, "Please show me the way."
 3. The old man said to her, "Please give me some food."
 4. She said to me, "Please give me a piece of good advice."
 5. He said to her, "Pack your bag in time."
 6. She said to me, "Please don't look at me like this."
 7. The teacher says to us, "Don't hope to get everything you want from life."
 8. She said to me, "Don't switch the light on."
 9. They said to the girl, "Don't run away."
 10. The captain said to the soldiers, "Don't march through the forest."
 11. The doctor said to me, "Don't sleep before 10 o'clock."
 12. She said to me, "Please come to me on time."
 13. She said to me, "Don't come to me every day."
 14. She said to me, "Put the light out."
 15. I said to Ni Ni, "Don't laugh at what I say."
 16. The boy said to his mother, "Please don't prevent me from speaking."
 17. She said to him, "Tell me about your work."
 18. The patient said to the nurse, "Come and see me tomorrow."
 19. Our mother said to me, "Go and sit beside your sister."
 20. The teacher said to me, "Go in and don't wait outside."

Exercise No. (167)

- | | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. would | 2. could | 3. was | 4. was | 5. lived |
| 6. might | 7. had | 8. was | 9. was | 10. had |
| 11. might | 12. could | 13. rang | 14. would | 15. would |

Exercise No. (168)

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. (အခြေခံအားဖြင့်) | 12. He promised that he would not tell lies again. |
| 2. She swore she had never loved the other boys before. | 13. She said that she had a bad cold. |
| 3. We hoped we would pass the examination. | 14. The boy said that he had known the girl. |
| 4. He said he could not do the homework. | 15. I was sure that she would come tomorrow. |
| 5. U Nyunt said he was very busy. | 16. She promised that the error would not occur again. |
| 6. I thought she was innocent. | 17. I bought the book because it was interesting. |
| 7. I was certain the teacher would punish the naughty boy. | 18. She wept because she was sad. |
| 8. The newspaper said the weather today would be hot. | 19. We were certain that prices would go up soon. |
| 9. She said she could not speak English. | 20. The merchant said that prices were sure to rise. |
| 10. I thought I might finish my work by three o'clock. | |
| 11. She didn't think she would succeed. | |

Exercise No. (169)

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. (အခြေခံအားဖြင့်) | 9. She says she cannot understand what I mean. |
| 2. I don't think he will pass the examination. | 10. He says he will leave for Pyin-Oo-Lwin. |
| 3. Does she say she will come? | 11. She says her father is U Han. |
| 4. Do they promise they will tell the truth? | 12. We hope we may reach home in time. |
| 5. Do you think it will rain heavily? | 13. He says he has done the homework. |
| 6. I am sure U Phyu is honest. | 14. He says he will bring the book tomorrow. |
| 7. The judge declares that the prisoner is guilty. | |
| 8. The newspaper says it will rain today. | |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 15. The girl complains that she has a headache. | 18. They think that she will buy a car. |
| 16. She promises that she will never go with him. | 19. He says he is too tired to walk. |
| 17. She says her father is a doctor. | 20. The girl says she is old enough to go to school. |

Exercise No. (170)

- | | | | | |
|---------------|----------------|---------|-----------|---------------------|
| 1. discovered | 2. moves | 3. is | 4. are | 5. rises |
| 6. bathes | 7. is | 8. is | 9. is | 10. floats |
| 11. help | 12. values | 13. see | 14. loves | 15. is |
| 16. do | 17. have lived | 18. was | 19. came | 20. spent/had spent |

Exercise No. (171)

- | | | | | |
|-----------|-------------|-------------|--------------|----------|
| 1. might | 2. may | 3. will get | 4. tries | 5. asks |
| 6. sleeps | 7. visit | 8. hear | 9. shouts | 10. stay |
| 11. barks | 12. washes | 13. says | 14. finishes | 15. try |
| 16. get | 17. visited | 18. says | 19. are | |

Exercise No. (172)

- | | | | | |
|----------|-------------|-----------|-------------|------------|
| 1. think | 2. am | 3. said | 4. is | 5. could |
| 6. felt | 7. could | 8. ran | 9. believes | 10. met |
| 11. saw | 12. arrived | 13. told | 14. felt | 15. like |
| 16. rode | 17. ran | 18. comes | 19. died | 20. failed |

Exercise No. (173)

- | | | | | |
|--------------|------------|---------|-----------|----------|
| 1. thought | 2. reached | 3. does | 4. knew | 5. talk |
| 6. is | 7. want | 8. said | 9. expect | 10. have |
| 11. dislikes | 12. wait | 13. buy | 14. help | 15. can. |

Exercise No. (174)

- | |
|--|
| 1. (အခြေခံအားဖြင့်) |
| 2. (a) stops, will go ..., (b) stopped, would go ..., (c) had stopped, would have gone ... |
| 3. (a) make, will try ..., (b) made, would try ..., (c) had made, would have tried ... |
| 4. (a) find, will give ..., (b) found, would give ..., (c) had found, would have given ... |
| 5. (a) studies, will pass, (b) studied, would pass ..., (c) had studied, would have passed ... |
| 6. (a) do, will be ..., (b) did, would be ..., (c) had done, would have been ... |
| 7. (a) work, will have ..., (b) worked, would have ..., (c) had worked, would have had ... |

8. (a) likes, will buy ..., (b) liked, would buy ..., (c) had liked, would have bought ...
9. (a) have, will buy ..., (b) had, would buy ..., (c) had had, would have bought ...
10. (a) am, will eat ..., (b) were, would eat ..., (c) had been, would have eaten ...
11. (a) sign, shall let ..., (b) signed, should let ..., (c) had signed, should have let ...
12. (a) is, will know ..., (b) were, would know ..., (c) had been, would have known ...
13. (a) suits, will buy ..., (b) suited, would buy ..., (c) had suited, would have bought ...
14. (a) needs, shall cut ..., (b) needed, should cut ..., (c) had needed, should have cut ...
15. (a) have, will type ..., (b) had, would type ..., (c) had had, would have typed ...

Exercise No. (175)

- | | | | |
|-------------|---------------|----------------|-------------|
| 1. calls | 2. will be | 3. will tell | 4. shall be |
| 5. will pay | 6. shall go | 7. rains | 8. receive |
| 9. will see | 10. drinks | 11. will catch | 12. is |
| 13. will be | 14. will have | 15. is | |

Exercise No. (176)

- | | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|---------------|
| 1. stops | 2. are | 3. works | 4. call | 5. eat |
| 6. goes | 7. see | 8. has | 9. find | 10. read |
| 11. will buy | 12. will pass | 13. will be | 14. shall try | 15. will give |
| 16. will arrest | 17. shall go | 18. shall be | 19. will have | 20. shall see |
| 21. are not | 22. is not | 23. am not | 24. do not have | |
| 25. do not eat | 26. do not ask | 27. do not invite | 28. does not rise | |
| 29. do not work | 30. does not hear | 31. will not make | | |
| 32. will not bite | 33. will not be | 34. will not let | 35. shall not believe | |
| 36. will not be | 37. will not work | 38. will not get | 39. shall not go | |
| 40. will not have | 41. do not like | 42. will you buy | 43. will you give | |
| 44. will you eat | 45. will you repay | 46. will you go | 47. will he have | |
| 48. will you let | 49. will you call | 50. will she pass | | |

Exercise No. (177)

- | | | | | |
|----------|----------|-----------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. get | 2. add | 3. make | 4. ask | 5. reports |
| 6. get | 7. is | 8. say | 9. is | 10. complain |
| 11. take | 12. lend | 13. beats | 14. telephone | 15. look |

Exercise No. (178)

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|---------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. knew | 2. had | 3. studied | 4. invited |
| 5. had | 6. would go | 7. would make | |
| 8. should stay/would stay | 9. would be | 10. would be | |
| 11. were | 12. would get | 13. would be | 14. would drive |
| 15. would help | | | |

Exercise No. (179)

- | | | | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------|------------------|----------|-----------|
| 1. asked | 2. knew | 3. worked | 4. knew | 5. slept |
| 6. had | 7. had | 8. worked | 9. spoke | 10. spent |
| 11. would buy | 12. would consider | 13. would punish | | |
| 14. will speak | 15. would understand | 16. would lay | | |
| 17. would earn | 18. would understand | 19. would give | | |
| 20. should ask/ would ask | | | | |

Exercise No. (180)

- | | | | | |
|----------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|---------|
| 1. were | 2. were | 3. were | 4. were | 5. were |
| 6. were | 7. were | 8. would tell | 9. would buy | |
| 10. would come | 11. would be | 12. were | 13. were | |
| 14. would eat | 15. would fly | | | |

Exercise No. (181)

- | | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. had known | 2. would have gone | 3. had been |
| 4. had been | 5. had done | 6. had eaten |
| 7. had called | 8. had left | 9. had waited |
| 10. had seen | 11. would have drunk | 12. would have caught |
| 13. would have gone | 14. would have told | 15. would have been |
| 16. had told | 17. had worn | 18. would have brought |
| 19. had been | 20. would have given | |

Exercise No. (182)

- | | | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|---------------|
| 1. had told | 2. had known | 3. had studied | 4. had passed |
| 5. had known | 6. had seen | 7. had discussed | 8. had told |
| 9. had had | 10. had known | 11. would have hurried | |
| 12. would have seen | 13. would have gone | | |
| 14. would have decided | 15. would have bought | | |
| 16. had been | 17. would have known | 18. would have been | |
| 19. would have been | 20. would have lent | | |

Exercise No. (183)

- | | | | |
|----------------|------------------------|--------------------|---------------|
| 1. would be | 2. will leave | 3. would have been | 4. had been |
| 5. would be | 6. will call | 7. would fail | 8. stop |
| 9. were | 10. will get | 11. would arrive | 12. were |
| 13. is | 14. has | 15. had | 16. will fail |
| 17. will get | 18. will be | 19. will get | 20. ate |
| 21. would grow | 22. would sew | 23. had had | 24. were |
| 25. would fly | 26. would paint | 27. would go | 28. had known |
| 29. had had | 30. would have stopped | | |

Exercise No. (184)

- | | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. should study | 2. should have done | 3. should go |
| 4. should have gone | 5. should have sent | 6. should learn |
| 7. should have learnt | 8. should have replied | 9. should have heard |
| 10. should sell | 11. should have written | 12. should have told |
| 13. should have seen | 14. should know | 15. should have known |

Exercise No. (185)

- | | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. ought to pay | 2. ought to finish | 3. ought to have finished |
| 4. ought to do | 5. ought not to smoke | 6. ought to have taken |
| 7. ought not to cross | 8. ought not to have crossed | |
| 9. ought to obey | 10. ought to have waited | 11. ought to buy |
| 12. ought to study | 13. ought to have begun | |
| 14. ought to be | 15. ought to have gone | |

Exercise No. (186)

- | | | |
|------------------|------------------|----------------|
| 1. have to go | 2. should go | 3. should do |
| 4. should call | 5. had to stay | 6. had to work |
| 7. had to attend | 8. should ask | 9. has to take |
| 10. have to go | 11. had to go | 12. have to go |
| 13. has to sell | 14. should write | 15. should buy |

Exercise No. (187) မှ (194) အထိကို မေးခွန်း၏ အောက်တွင် ဖော်ပြထားပြီးဖြစ်သည်။**Exercise No. (195)**

- Friend : What's wrong with the job, Laura? What don't you like about it?
- Laura : My boss, I don't understand him.
- Friend : What don't you understand?
- Laura : I don't think he's human.
- Friend : What do you mean?
- Laura : For him, business is everything. Business is his life.
- Friend : Oh, Laura. He can't be so bad.
- Laura : Oh, Yes, he is. He's a machine. No friendly words, no smiles, no little compliments. Nothing. Just business. He isn't human.

Exercise No. (196)

- Laura : Hi, Bill. I'm late again.
- Bill : Uh-huh. Fifteen minutes.
- Laura : Really?
- Bill : Yes, really.
- Laura : Is my boss here?
- Bill : Yes, he is. Good luck.

Exercise No. (197)

- Laura : Good morning, sir.
- Mr. Crawford : Good morning, Miss Segura.
- Laura : I'm sorry I'm late, sir, but this morning ...
- Mr. Crawford : You are always late, Miss Segura.
- Laura : But, sir, this morning ...
- Mr. Crawford : Miss Segura, please be here at nine o'clock.
- Laura : Yes, sir.

Exercise No. (198)

- Paulo : Hey, Joana. Why aren't you ready? It's almost seven o'clock!
- Joana : I'm sorry, Paulo. I'm not going. I have to study.
- Paulo : But you can study *later*. Don't you want to go?
- Joana : No, not really. I don't like dinner parties.
- Paulo : But what can I tell the Crawfords?
- Joana : Tell them I'm sick.
- Paulo : But you *aren't* sick. Come on, Joana. I don't like to lie.
- Joana : And I don't like to go to dinner parties.

Exercise No. (199)

- Friend : Don't cry, Laura. You don't have to work there.
- Laura : But I need the money!
- Friend : Why don't you look for a new job?
- Laura : Where? How? I don't know my way around New York. I feel lost.

Exercise No. (200)

- Bill : Good morning, sir.
- Man : Good morning.
- Paulo : Hello, Bill. How are you today?
- Bill : Fine thanks.
- Paulo : Beautiful day!
- Bill : Good for business.
- Paulo : Sure is.
- Bill : See you later.
- Paulo : O K! Paulo. See you later.

A BASIC
ENGLISH
GRAMMAR
with answers

Part-2

BY
SAYA U THEIN LWIN